



**EXPOUNDING DELIVERANCE
FROM A BIBLICAL PERSPECTIVE
DERIVING FROM
SUPREME SPIRITUAL WARFARE**

by

Susanna Francina Maria de Lange



Cover Art for Chapters: Susan Langeveldt
Graphic Design: SL Studios



**EXPOUNDING DELIVERANCE
FROM A BIBLICAL PERSPECTIVE
DERIVING FROM SUPREME SPIRITUAL WARFARE**

by

SUSANNA FM DE LANGE

(6003010094082)

Master of Ministry in Theology (Cum Laude)

Submitted in accordance with the requirements for the degree

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

In

DIVINITY

at

ST CLEMENTS PRIVATE SWISS UNIVERSITY

PROMOTOR

PROF DR CONNIE MJ BRAND DLitt PhD MTh

July 2012

DECLARATION OF AUTHENTICITY

I, the undersigned, _____,
declare that this dissertation is my original work, compiled and utilized especially
to fulfil the purposes and objectives of this study and has not been previously
submitted to any other University for a higher degree. I certify that all information
contained herein, in all my application materials submitted by me are true,
correct and accurate to the best of my knowledge, and believe.

Signature

Date

DEDICATION

I dedicate this research to the Lord Jesus Christ, the Servant King, who came to rescue the world, there is no one like You! Freely You gave it all for us, surrendered your life upon that Cross – so that we can know our Holy Wonderful Father God! By Your precious Spirit I am renewed, and restored, O God. Great is your love! I will fall down at Your feet and I worship You forever and more! To You my God I pledge anew my whole heart, my whole soul and all my might. Forever our God is glorified!

I would like to dedicate this thesis to God - my heavenly Father for His Saving Grace, to Jesus Christ my beloved Redeemer and friend and to God's awesome Holy Spirit. *Soli Deo Gloria!*

Not by might, nor by power, but by my spirit, saith the LORD of hosts.

Zechariah 4:6

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

A research project is rarely the work of only one author. It is more accurately, the end product of a personal journey and the distillation of many influences and valuable contributions of others along the way – especially the wells of knowledge and personal impartation from my mentor, Prof Dr Connie Brand.

I would like also to thank my husband, Johan, for his love, support, patience and encouragement every step along the way. Thank you for believing in me, I love you dearly. For my cherished children, Marisa, Liezel and Craig, Jan and his best friend Carlien and my two wonderful grandchildren, thank you for all the hours of sacrifice and support. To Craig a special word of appreciation for the word processing.

Lastly, I thank all those who made this thesis possible. May God bless each and every one of you in a very special way! To those who is not with us any more, my greatest appreciation in memorial of your contribution to humanity!

Susan de Lange

SUMMARY
EXPOUNDING DELIVERANCE
FROM A BIBLICAL PERSPECTIVE
DERIVING FROM SUPREME SPIRITUAL WARFARE

By

SUSANNA FM DE LANGE

PROMOTOR: PROF DR CONNIE MJ BRAND (DLitt PhD MTh)
DEGREE: PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR IN DIVINITY
INSTITUTION: ST CLEMENTS PRIVATE SWISS UNIVERSITY

Humanity is captured in a multidimensional sin war. The conflict against evil lures on three different areas of our lives: internal – against the flesh or our sinful nature, external – from dysfunctional social systems to evil world systems and spiritual – in the supernatural regime of the invisible diabolic spiritual forces. Satan is the enemy of God and man. From the beginning, his plan was to destroy the revelation of God in the heart of every believer.

Supreme Spiritual Warfare involves three levels, namely: (1) Ground-level Spiritual Warfare, (2) Occult-level Spiritual Warfare and (3) Strategic-level Spiritual Warfare.

Different strongholds in each area exist and should be dealt with: *Ground-level Spiritual Warfare* pertains to individual deliverance of internal strongholds of the flesh and evil belief systems. Occult-level Spiritual Warfare pertains to the direct involvement in god and goddess worship and will involves super demonic strongholds. Strategic / Territorial level Spiritual Warfare involves specific principalities, which are assigned to specifically geographical locations. Their domain can include a household, a neighbour, a city or a nation.

For anybody to understand the Supreme Spiritual Warfare humanity is engage in, we need a foundational revelation of the proto-evangelium in Genesis 3:15. Immediately after the fall, God proclaim a war between Satan and the women's seed and between the seed-line of Satan and the seed-line of Jesus Christ. Forever there will be enmity and war between light and darkness and between righteousness and iniquity.

God is able to intervene. His might is infinitely greater than all the power Satan can amass. Believers are called to recognize the power of doctrinal prayer and unite with God.

The Prophetic is that which permits the believer to discover and see the designs of God in the heavens and where His disciples have the authority to make proclamation and symbolic acts that establish the will of God in the celestial regions. It is this anointing that produces the power to straighten the crooked paths, loose the high mountains, exalt the valley and prepare the way for the Lord.

God designed the Church to be His temple – His dwelling place. When the Church worship in Spirit and Truth, the heavens open and they can look at Him with open faces – and then they are transformed into His image.

Table of Contents

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

*[Let] the high [praises] of God
[be] in their mouth, and
a twoedged sword in their hand*

Psalms 149:6



Table of Contents

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

*[Let] the high [praises] of God
[be] in their mouth, and
a twoedged sword in their hand*

Psalms 149:6



Cover Art for Chapters: Susan Langeveldt
Graphic Design: SL Studios

TABLE OF CONTENTS (Abbreviated)

THEME.....	i)
DECLARATION OF AUTHENTICITY	iii)
DEDICATION	v)
ACKNOWLEDGMENT.....	vii)
SUMMARY.....	ix)
TABLE OF CONTENTS (Abbreviated)	xi)
TABLE OF CONTENTS	xiii)
LIST OF TABLES, FIGURES AND BOXES.....	
PROLEGOMENA.....	1
CHAPTER 1: EXTREME MEASURES PERTAINING TO SPIRITUAL WARFARE, REFLECTING ‘THE END-TIMES’	19
CHAPTER 2: SUPREME SPIRITUAL WARFARE AND DELIVERANCE	111
CHAPTER 3: KINGDOM ANALYSIS UNDERGIRTH BY THE APOSTOLIC AND PROPHETIC	187
CHAPTER 4: INIQUITY, THE ROOT OF ALL EVIL, THE SEAT OF THE GREAT PROSTITUTE.....	295
CHAPTER 5: THE EXCERPTS PERTAINING TO THE REALITY OF. THE HEAVEN AND THE HELL	367
CHAPTER 6: IMMERSSED IN THE KING OF KINGS, RULING FROM HEAVEN AND EARTH.....	441
CONCLUSION	505
BIBLIOGRAPHY.....	515
TERMS, DEFINITIONS, ABBREVIATIONS AND ADDENDUM	539
CERTIFICATE OF EDITING.....	557

-----oOo-----



Table of Content

	PROLEGOMENA	1
CHAPTER 1:	EXTREME MEASURES PERTAINING TO SPIRITUAL WARFARE REFLECTING THE END-TIMES	
1.	INTRODUCTION.....	19
2.	SECRETS FOR 'THE ELECT'.....	24
3.	TIMES, LIKE IN THE DAYS OF NOAH.....	26
3.1	Biblical Sign's of the End-Times.....	28
3.1.1	The First Sign of the End-Times: The reappearance on earth of beings from the Principalities of the Air and their unlawful intercourse with the human race	31
3.1.2	The Second Sign of the End-Times: Preaching righteousness.....	35
3.1.3	The Third Sign of the End-Times: Not all angels fell.....	37
4.	THE SEED PLOT OF THE BIBLE.....	39
4.1	The Etymology of the word 'Enmity'.....	40
4.2	The Etymology of the word 'Seed'.....	41
5.	THE WATCHERS / "SONS OF GOD" AND THE SECOND REBELLION.....	41

5.1	The appearance of the Nephilim on earth for the first time.....	44
5.2	The appearance of the Nephilim on earth for the second time.....	45
5.2.1	Nimrod, the first Tower Builder and possible Nephilim.....	46
5.2.2	Reaching for heavens, Towering Monuments to ‘strange gods’.....	47
5.2.3	Nimrod, the first Anti-Christ.....	48
5.3.	Demon’s, plaguing mankind.....	50
5.3.1	The End-Time onslaught of Devils and Demons.....	51
5.3.2	Modern attempts to built a “Tower of Babel” World-Order.....	54
5.3.2.1	Mystery, Babylon The Great, Mother Of Harlots.....	55
5.3.2.2	The seat of the Great Prostitute.....	57
5.3.3	Luciferian Science of Deity Resurrection.....	58
6.	THE BEAST EXPOSED.....	60
6.1	Mythological views.....	61
6.1.1	Abaddon (Hades), the dark god of the underworld.....	66
7.	TRANSHUMANIST NEW FACE OF SPIRITUAL WARFARE.....	68
7.1	Extreme measures pertaining to Spiritual Warfare needed in the End-Times.....	72
7.1.1	Transhumanist Philosophies and GRIN Technology.....	75
7.1.1.1	I-dosing Games on Internet.....	76
7.1.1.2	Internet itself.....	76
7.1.1.3	Genetically Modified Food.....	77
7.1.1.4	Synthetic Biology.....	77
7.1.1.5	Human Cloning.....	77
7.1.1.6	Nano-technology and Cybernetics.....	78
7.1.1.7	Transhuman Eugenics.....	79

7.1.1.8	Germ-line Engineering.....	80
7.1.2	Techno-dimensional Spiritual Warfare (Metaphysics).....	80
7.1.2.1	A Metaphysical Problem.....	83
7.1.2.1.1	The New Science of the Mind.....	84
7.1.2.1.2	Forbidden Gates and Portals.....	87
7.1.2.1.3	The fifth dimension of the Mind.....	89
7.1.2.1.3.1	The Fifth Abnormal Faculty of the Mind.....	91
7.1.2.1.3.2	Facts of Imagination.....	92
7.1.2.1.3.3	Sin conceived first the Imagination.....	93
7.1.2.1.3.4	Imagination and Spiritual Warfare.....	94
7.1.2.1.3.5	Gateways into the Fifth Dimension.....	94
7.1.2.1.3.5.1	Ear portals.....	95
7.1.2.1.3.5.2	Mind-gates as Spiritual Gateways.....	97
7.1.2.1.4	The Mystical Parlance.....	97
7.1.2.1.5	Astral projections / Soul Travel.....	98
7.1.3	A Humanistic View of all Supernaturalism.....	99
7.1.4	The Biblical Key for Transformation.....	100
7.1.4.1	The Danger of Visualization	104
7.1.4.2	Workings of Occult Manipulation.....	105
8.	The Hell Scenario will be nothing to GRIN about.....	108
9.	CONCLUSION	109

CHAPTER 2: SUPREME SPIRITUAL WARFARE AND DELIVERANCE

1.	INTRODUCTION.....	111
2.	THE MEANING AND IMPLICATIONS OF WAR AND WARFARE...	114
2.1	A General Overview of War on Natural and Supernatural Arenas	120
2.2	The Concept of Spiritual Warfare and Deliverance.....	128
3.	UNDERSTANDING SATAN'S ASSAULT, AS A KEY ISSUE IN SPIRITUAL WARFARE.....	130
3.1	The first Line Assault, a Spirit of Heaviness enhancing Passivity and Defenselessness.....	132
3.1.1	A Spirit of Heaviness as Satan's first line Assault.....	132
3.1.1.1	A Spirit of Heaviness enhancing Passivity.....	134
3.1.1.2	Breaking the bondage of Passivity.....	137
3.1.2	The Second Line of Assault, the Lying Spirit.....	137
3.1.3	The Third Line of Assault, Sin Reign.....	138
4.	Supreme Spiritual Warfare.....	140
4.1	ELEMENTS INVOLVED IN SUPREME SPIRITUAL WARFARE.....	141
4.1.1	Objects / Goals of Spiritual Warfare.....	143
4.1.2	Strategies of Spiritual Warfare.....	144
4.1.3	Tactics.....	145
4.1.3.1	Different Tactics / Methods to Identify the Presence of Evil Spirits...	146
4.1.3.1.1	Discernment (Godly Insight).....	146
4.1.3.1.2	Detection (Evaluate by Person's Behaviour).....	146
4.1.3.2	Common symptoms of Indwelling Demons.....	146
4.1.3.3	Important Steps to Deliverance.....	147
4.1.3.4	Steps for Retaining Deliverance.....	147
4.1.3.5	Discover the designs of Darkness in a Person's Life.....	148
4.1.3.6	Open Doorways how Demons enter.....	149
4.1.4	Logistics.....	150
4.1.4.1	Requirements for Spiritual Warfare.....	150
4.1.4.2	Equipping the Spiritual Warrior.....	152

4.1.4.3	Principles of Spiritual Warfare (The Kingdom of God).....	153
4.1.4.3.1	Authority as chief weapon in Spiritual Warfare.....	154
4.1.4.3.2	Prayer as Chief weapon in Spiritual Warfare.....	156
4.1.4.3.2.1	Words of Power as Ultimate Weapons of Spiritual Warfare.....	158
4.1.4.3.3	Confession of Sin One to Another.....	158
4.1.4.3.4	Healing and Exorcism as Manifestations of God's Power.....	159
4.1.5	Weapons of Spiritual Warfare.....	161
4.1.5.1	God's Warrior Army on the Offence.....	162
4.1.5.2	God's Warrior Army on the Defence	163
4.1.6	The Different Types / Levels of Spiritual Warfare.....	164
4.1.6.1	Ground-level Spiritual Warfare.....	165
4.1.6.1.1	The Breaking of Strongholds in an Individual Person.....	166
4.1.6.1.1.1	Super Strongholds.....	167
4.1.6.1.1.1.1	The Control-Rebellion-Rejection strong-hold.....	168
4.1.6.1.1.2	The Shame-Fear-Control Stronghold.....	168
4.1.6.1.2	Specific open doors by which Demons can Gain Entrance into the Lives of People.....	169
4.1.6.1.3	Keys to Deliverance.....	170
4.1.6.2	Occult-level Spiritual Warfare.....	170
4.1.6.2.1	Rebellion, the root of Spirit of the Anti-Christ Spirit.....	171
4.1.6.3	Strategic-level / Territorial Spiritual Warfare.....	173
4.1.6.3.1	Biblical example of Difference between Territorial Spirits and Ground-level Spiritual Warfare.....	174
4.1.6.3.2	Overcoming the Strategic-level Demonic Force Ruling Territory.....	175
4.1.6.3.2.1	Identify the Foundation of Strongholds.....	175
4.1.6.3.2.2	Identify the different Towers of Evil / Strongholds.....	176
4.2.6.3.2.3	Breaking Stronghold Over Cities.....	177
4.1.6.3.2.4	Discerning Evil Roots and Satanic Covenants in History.....	179
4.1.6.3.2.5	Spiritual Mapping.....	180
4.1.6.3.3	A Spiritual Map of the City of Babel.....	181
4.1.6.3.4	Pulling Down Strongholds, An Offensive Warfare Weapon.....	182

5.	CONCLUSION.....	183
----	------------------------	-----

CHAPTER 3: KINGDOM ANALYSIS UNDERGIRTH BY THE APOSTOLIC AND PROPHETIC

1.	INTRODUCTION.....	187
2.	KINGDOM ANALYSIS.....	191
2.1	A Kingdom Defined.....	192
2.2	One Kingdom was founded Originally and One Kingdom will be Established in the End.....	194
2.3	The Origin of Evil.....	195
2.3.1	The Beginning of Sin as the Origin of Evil.....	196
2.3.2	The Nature of Lucifer’s sin.....	197
2.4	The Fall.....	200
2.5	The Doctrine of Original Sin.....	202
2.5.1	The Lost Doctrine of Original Sin.....	202
3.	THE TWO KINGDOMS.....	205
3.1	Conflict Between Light and Darkness.....	206
4.	SECTION A: KINGDOM OF SATAN.	210
4.1	The Hierarchy of Satan.....	210
4.2	Satan in Context.....	212
4.2.1	The Unholy / Satanic Trinity.....	212
4.2.2	The Enemy of God and men Exposed from A Biblical perspective..	215
4.2.3	The Fiery Serpent, The Nachash.....	220
4.2.4	Satan and the First Rebellion.....	222
4.3	The Four Principalities Functioning under Satan’s General,	225

	Beëlsebub.....	
4.3.1	Prince of the North: The False Lion.....	227
4.3.1.1	Characteristics of the Spirit of Belial.....	231
4.3.2	Luciferian Prince of the East: Appolyon / Abaddon.....	231
4.3.2.1	The Functioning of Appolyon.....	232
4.3.2.1.1	The Characteristics of Appolyon.....	234
4.3.2.2	The Functioning of Abaddon (East).....	234
4.3.2.2.1	The Characteristics of Abaddon.....	236
4.3.3	Satanic Prince Of The South, The Beast: (Saturn / Sirius / Shaitan / Hellhound (Pluto) / Dag-Star / Marduck / Celtic Religions / Cullan / Pluto).....	237
4.3.4	Satanic Prince of the West: Leviathan.....	239
4.4	Four Occult Kingdoms.....	241
4.4.1	Occult Kingdom of 'Earth Realm' Under the Northern Prince: Belial.	243
4.4.2	Occult Kingdom of 'Water realm' Under the Western Prince: Leviathan.....	244
4.4.3	Occult Kingdom of 'Fire Realm' Under the Southern Satanic Prince: The Beast.....	244
4.4.4	Occult Kingdom of 'Air Realm' Under the Eastern Prince: Lucifer..	245
4.5	Eight Powers and Dark Forces.....	245
4.5.1	Ashtoreth (Jezebel).....	251
4.5.2	Baal.....	247
4.5.3	Magog.....	453
4.5.4	Ariton.....	249
4.5.5	Paimon (Crystal Demon).....	249
4.5.6	Baphomet.....	250
4.4.7	Asmodee / Asmodeus.....	250

4.5.8	Mammon.....	251
4.6	Rulers.....	251
4.7	Supreme Elements Spirits – Wicked Demons.....	253
4.8	A Brief Overview of Demonology.....	254
4.8.1	A Biblical-Theological Perspective on Demonology From the Old Testament.....	256
4.8.2	A Biblical-Theological Perspective on Demonology From the New Testament.....	257
4.9	The Difference between Devils (Fallen Angels/ Watchers) and Demons.....	257
5.	SECTION B: THE KINGDOM OF GOD	258
5.1	The Hierarchy of God.....	260
5.1.1	The Triune God.....	260
5.1.1.1	God the Father	261
5.1.1.1	The Characteristics of God the Father.....	261
5.1.1.2	Jesus Christ, the Son of God.....	262
5.1.1.3	Gods Holy Spirit as part of the Trinity.....	263
5.1.2	The Body of Christ (Church).....	264
5.1.3	Angels as Part of Gods Kingdom.....	265
5.1.3.1	Names, Classification and Abode.....	265
5.1.3.1.1	General Names of Angels revealing Angels’ ministries.....	265
5.1.3.1.2	Names Revealing Angels’ Natures.....	268
5.1.3.2	Types of Angels.....	270
5.1.3.2.1	Cherubim (Arch-Angels).....	271
5.1.3.2.1.1	Description of Cherubim.....	271
5.1.3.2.1.2	Designs and Duties of the Cherubim.....	273

5.1.3.2.1.3	The Four principal Cherubim.....	275
5.1.3.2.2	Seraphim (Burning ones / healing angels).....	276
5.1.3.2.2.1	Description of the Seraphim.....	276
5.1.3.2.2.2	Designs and Duties of the Seraphim.....	277
5.1.3.2.3	Teraphim (Watchers / Guardian Angels).....	278
5.2	The Theology of God.....	279
5.2.1	The Kingdom Commission.....	281
5.2.2	The Great Re-Commission.....	283
5.3	The Signs of the Kingdom of God.....	285
5.3.1	The First Sign of the Kingdom: The Presence of the King.....	285
5.3.2	The Second Sign; The Rule/Reign of the King.....	286
5.3.3	The Third Sign: The Power of the Kingdom.....	288
5.3.3.1	Pentecost the Sign of the Power of God's Holy Spirit.....	289
5.3.3.2	The Church almost lost the Concept of Indwelling.....	290
6.	CONCLUSION	292

CHAPTER 4: INIQUITY, THE ROOT OF ALL EVIL, THE SEAT OF THE GREAT PROSTITUTE

1.	INTRODUCTION.....	295
2.	THE PROBLEM OF EVIL CLARIFIED.....	298
2.1	The Problem of Evil Defined.....	299
2.2	Responses to the Problem of Evil.....	300
2.3	Theodicy Defined.....	301
3.	AN OVERVIEW PERTAINING TO INIQUITY.....	303
4.	EVIL DEFINED.....	306

4.1	The Mystery of Iniquity.....	308
4.2	The Biblical Differentiation between Sin and Iniquity.....	309
4.3	The Nature of Man defined, as background for the Place of Iniquity in Body, Spirit and Soul.....	315
4.3.1	The Nature of Man Defined.....	318
4.3.1.1	The Monist View on the Nature of Man.....	318
4.3.1.2	The Dichotomous view on the Nature of Man.....	318
4.3.1.3	The Trichotomous View on the Nature of Man.....	319
4.3.2	The Different Parts of Man’s Spirit.....	322
4.3.2.1	Commune (The Spiritual Heart for Relationship).....	323
4.3.2.2	Intuition (Spiritual Intelligence For Discernment).....	323
4.3.2.3	Conscience (The Spiritual Discerning Organ).....	324
4.3.2.4	The Mind of the Spirit.....	325
4.3.2.5	Spiritual Senses (Spiritual Faith Organ).....	325
4.3.2.6	The Will, the seat of Power.....	326
4.3.2.7	Spiritual DNA.....	326
4.3.3	The Different Parts of Man’s Soul.....	327
4.3.4	The Dwellings of Iniquity.....	327
4.3.4.1	Iniquity as part of man’s Spirit.....	329
4.3.4.1.1	The Old Man (Un-regenerated) as Root of Evil Dwellings of Iniquity.....	329
4.3.4.1.2	Regeneration and the Root of Evil Dwellings of Iniquity.....	331
4.3.5	The Dwellings of Iniquity / Evil deriving from the Soul.....	333
4.3.5.1	The Veil of Iniquity and Science.....	338
4.4	Dwellings affect the Believers’ Governances.....	340
4.5	Iniquity, the Root of All Evil.....	342
4.5.1	The Operation of Iniquity.....	344
4.5.2	Iniquity Produce Spiritual Prisons.....	345
4.5.2.1	The Captivity of the Body.....	345
4.5.2.2	The Captivity of the Soul.....	345
4.5.2.3	Torments of Perversity.....	346

4.5.3	Devastation of Cities.....	346
4.5.4	Iniquity and Curses.....	346
4.5.5	Iniquity produce the following Manifestation.....	347
4.5.5.1	Iniquity manifested through Pride and Stubbornness.....	347
4.5.5.2	Iniquity manifested through Spiritual Deadness.....	347
4.5.5.3	Iniquity manifested through Spiritual Blindness.....	348
4.5.5.4	Iniquity manifested through Sickness and Pain.....	348
4.5.5.5	Iniquity manifested through affront.....	349
4.6	Righteousness and Iniquity Two Opposing Spiritual Forces.....	349
4.6.1	The Transforming Dangerous Power of the Force of Iniquity....	351
4.6.2	The Reign of God through Righteousness versus the Reign of Satan through Iniquity.....	352
4.6.3	The Counterfeit Covenants of Deception.....	353
4.6.3.1	The First Counterfeit Covenant Type: Servants of Satan.....	355
4.6.3.2	The Second Counterfeit Covenant Type: Friends of Satan.....	355
4.6.3.3	The Third Counterfeit Covenant Type: Covenant of Inheritance from Satan.....	356
4.6.3.4	The Fourth Counterfeit Covenant Type: Betrothal covenant (Hyros Gamos).....	357
4.6.4	The Powerful Delusion.....	358
5.	CONCLUSION	359

CHAPTER 5: THE EXCERPTS PERTAINING TO THE REALITY OF HEAVEN AND HELL

1.	INTRODUCTION.....	367
2.	WARNINGS AND CHRIST'S SECOND COMING.....	373
2.1	Living in the Days of Laodicea.....	375
2.2	Every Knee shall bow and Every Tongue Confess that He is Lord On the Day of Judgment.....	379

3.	EVIDENCE OF THE REALITY OF THE SPIRIT REALM.....	385
3.1	We are at War.....	385
3.2	The Necessity of Purification as Evidence of the Spiritual Realm..	385
3.3	Spirits in Prison as Evidence of the Spiritual Realm.....	387
3.4	Spiritual Warfare as Evidence of the Spiritual Realm.....	388
3.5	Demonic Manifestations as Evidence of the Existence of the Reality of the Spirit Realm.....	390
4.	HEAVEN DEFINED.....	393
4.1	Biblical Evidence of the Reality of Heaven.....	395
5.	HELL DEFINED.....	398
5.1	Biblical Evidence of the Reality of Hell.....	401
6.	BIBLICAL REASONS FOR PEOPLE TO END UP IN HELL.....	403
6.1	The Wicked and the Ungodly will be send to Hell.....	403
6.2	The Unforgiving will be send to Hell.....	404
6.3	The Sexual Depraved will be send to Hell.....	405
6.4	Those who's Hearts are Hardened by Sin, will be send to Hell.....	406
6.5	Those who do Iniquity and do not bear fruit.....	407
6.6	Those who do not belief will be send to Hell.....	408
6.7	Those who glorify the Creature and not the Creator will be send to Hell.....	409
6.8	The Hypocrites.....	409
6.9	Those to whom their riches weight more than God, will be send to Hell.....	410
6.10	The fearful, the unbelieving, the murderers, the sorcerers, the idolaters and the liars will be send to Hell.....	411
7.	THE JUDGMENT OF GOD ON THE WICKED AND ACCOMPANYING SPIRITS.....	411
8.	DECEPTION AS RATIONALE FOR THE GREAT FALLING AWAY..	413

9.	PRACTICAL SUBSTANTIAL PROVE OF THE REALITY OF HEAVEN AND HELL.....	415
9.1	Living Testimonies of People who where involved in the Occult as Evidence of the Reality of Heaven and Hell.....	416
9.1.1	Case Study A: Jacqueline.....	416
9.1.1.1	Spiritual Evidence of the reality of hell in the life of Jacqueline.....	418
9.1.2	Case Study of B: Isaac.....	418
9.1.2.1	Spiritual Evidence of the reality of hell in the life of Isaac.....	422
9.1.3	Near Death Experiences as Prove of the Reality of Heaven and Hell..	423
9.1.3.1	The Testimony of Howard Pitman after a Near Death Experience..	426
9.1.3.2	The Testimony of Bill Wise after a Near Death Experience.....	428
9.1.3.3	The Testimony of Don Piper after a near Death Experience.....	430
9.1.3.4	The Testimony of Captain Dale Black after a Near Death Experience..	431
10.	Conclusion	434

CHAPTER 6: IMMERSSED IN THE KING OF KINGS, RULING FROM HEAVEN AND EARTH

1.	INTRODUCTION.....	441
2.	WHO IS THIS 'MAN" KNOWN AS THE KING OF KINGS.....	445
2.1	The Mystery opposition.....	446
2.2	The Argument on Who Jesus Christ is Not.....	449
2.2.1	The Real Jesus is not the Avatar of the New Age Movement.....	451
2.2.2	Jesus is not, the Cosmic Christ.....	454
2.2.3	Jesus is not, the Anti-Christ of the New-World-Religion.....	458
2.2.4	Jesus is not 'Jah-bu-Ion', the God of Freemasonry.....	461
2.2.5	Jesus is not the God of Psychology	463
2.3	Jesus Christ – is the True King of Kings and the Lord of Lords.....	466

2.3.1	Historical Overview of the life of Jesus Christ.....	468
2.3.2	Jesus Christ as the Lamb of God.....	473
2.3.3	Jesus Christ as the Warrior King.....	476
3.	THE WARRIOR KING AND HIS BRIDE.....	479
3.1	The Believer, the Dwelling place of God.....	482
3.2	True Salvation, a Process of Transformation.....	483
3.3	Covenant Types as Patterns of Relationship with God.....	484
3.3.1	Covenant One: The Blood Covenant Type.....	484
3.3.2	Covenant Two: The Salt Covenant Type.....	486
3.3.3	Covenant Three: The Salt Covenant Type.....	486
3.3.4	Covenant Four: The Betrothal Covenant.....	488
3.4	The Covenant as Foundation of Relationship.....	488
3.4.1	Understanding God as the Covenant God.....	490
3.4.2	The Covenant of Everlasting Priesthood.....	491
4.	PRAYER AND INTIMACY WITH GOD.....	493
4.1	The Apostolic and the Prophetic Ministry.....	494
4.1.1.1	Apostolic and Prophetic Revelations deriving from Intimacy with God...	495
4.1.1.2	God seeks Intercessors.....	496
4.1.2.1	Does a Omni-Potent God really needs People's Prayer to Act on.....	497
4.1.2.2	The Victory is Won in the Inner Chamber.....	498
4.1.2.3	Perseverance As The Root Of Boldness.....	
4.12.3	The Outcome of prayer and Intimacy with God.....	
4.1.3	The Power Of Intercession.....	500
5.	Conclusion	503
	CONCLUSION	505
	TERMS, DEFINITIONS AND ABBREVIATIONS	515
	BIBLIOGRAPHY	539



List Of Tables, Figures And Boxes

BOXES

Box 1	Crucial Info concerning the Two Kingdoms.....	119
Box 2	The Nature of Lucifer's Sin.....	199
Box 3	Stages of Rebellion.....	201
Box 4	The Contrast Between the Two Kingdoms.....	209

FIGURES

Figure 1	Spiritual Warfare.....	122
Figure 2	The Lost Doctrine of Original Sin.....	204

TABLES

Table 1	Types and Symptoms of Occult Involvement.....	171
Table 2	Types and Symptoms of Occult involvement.....	172
Table 3	Hierarchy of the Fallen Kingdom of Darkness and the Occult	211

	Kingdoms.....	
Table 4	Principalities / Princes.....	224
Table 5	The Four Principalities.....	242
Table 6	Rulers of Darkness / Joshua 12.....	252
Table 7	Hierarchy of the Kingdom of Light	259
	 ADDENDUM	
Table 8	Satanic Revival.....	556

-----oOo-----

Prolegomena

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

*In that day the LORD with his sore
and great and strong sword shall punish
leviathan the piercing serpent,
even leviathan that crooked serpent; and he
shall slay the dragon that [is] in the sea.*

Isaiah 27:1



Prolegomena

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

*In that day the LORD with his sore
and great and strong sword shall punish
leviathan the piercing serpent,
even leviathan that crooked serpent; and he
shall slay the dragon that [is] in the sea.*

Isaiah 27:1



The slaying of Leviathan, Western Berlin, Germany
Photographer: Daniel Brand

Cover Art for Chapters: Susan Langeveldt
Graphic Design: SL Studios



*Expounding Deliverance
From a Biblical Perspective
Deriving From Supreme Spiritual Warfare*

PROLEGOMENA

For anybody to understand the high-level spiritual warfare humanity is engage in, we need a foundational revelation of the proto-evangelium in Genesis 3:15. Immediately after the fall, God proclaim a war between Satan and the women's seed and between the seed-line of Satan and the seed-line of Jesus Christ. Forever there will be enmity and war between light and darkness and between righteousness and iniquity.

And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

Genesis 3:15

One of the most powerful dominions ruling the earth now is the "*Great Prostitute*" of the book Revelations, also known as "*the Queen of heaven*". Scripture reveals that it is this City,¹ which governs over the kings of the world. The question arises to where this *evil spiritual city* is situated with whom the kings of the earth have commits fornication.²

¹ Revelations 17 and 18.

² Revelations 17:2.

Apostle Paul reveals that the spiritual realm is an invisible intermediary division, seated right here on earth with us. The kingdom of darkness contains well-organized armies; their generals successfully coordinate their troops, perfectly stationing them all over the world. They all fought for the same thing. Their principalities and rulers were perfectly united and structured in order to carry out Satan's plan at the highest political, economic and religious levels over the entire face of the earth. The hierarchy of darkness is positioned in the form of secret societies, which governed not only the visible realm but also protected diabolical plans. The plans were hidden by subterranean powers, which made them undetectable on the surface, therefore making them almost indestructible.

In several areas, Scripture mentioned that Satan was cast out of heaven unto earth and the disciples of the LORD have to overcome her with the blood of the Lamb and with the power of their testimony.³ Christians have to establish Gods Kingdom on earth, entering territories that are terribly occupied by the forces of darkness. The power of God through prayer must first destroy the spiritual principalities ruling those territories before the Gospel can advance successfully – if done in any other way – the result will be poor.⁴

We live in a world that is increasingly dominated by revolutionary new technology. Transformation is upon us. The greatest occult explosion of all times is in progress. Occultism has become scientific. The modern trend is art, psychology, medicine, education, the military, business, music and especially the media – from television games to major feature films humanity are exposed to a demonic onslaught. It is an understatement to say that technology often works hand in hand with unseen forces to challenge faith or to open new channels for spiritual warfare.⁵ Swift advance technologies in combination with the unseen, challenge the Christian's Worldview.

³ Revelations 12:11.

⁴ Mendez-Ferrell, Ana (2012) High Level Warfare. Ponte Vedra, Florida: Voice of the Light Ministry, p.50.

⁵ Horn, Tom and Nita (2010) Forbidden Gates. Crane, Missouri: Defender Publishers, p.x.

Spiritual Warfare is not a subject to go into or take lightly, since it is a battle against a very real enemy. It requires a warfare methodology, spiritual weapons, tactics, preparation and very strict rules. In many sections in the Bible the seen and the unseen is working together – God’s heavenly army and his earthly army interact when our LORD Jesus Christ calls us to battle. For Elisha this was so obvious that he stayed in perfect peace, even when surrounded by his enemies, knowing he was very well protected in the midst of their aggression.⁶ The earthly army of the Lord has very distinct characteristics.

As Prof Dr Brand, aptly teach: The Christian soldier must walk in the Characteristics of his LORD, Master and Teacher, “Jesus Christ our Victory” and Him as all Powerful Overcomer. Anointed, called, empowered by His Holy Spirit, in-crafted in the image of Christ, the Warrior and soldier after death of the flesh and the self, will move in Godly aggressiveness, Godly attitudes, Godly associations and Godly applications.⁷

I have commanded my sanctified ones, I have also called my mighty ones for mine anger, even them that rejoice in my highness. The noise of a multitude in the mountains, like as of a great people; a tumultuous noise of the kingdoms of nations gathered together: the LORD of hosts mustereth the host of the battle.

Isaiah 13:3-4

God always sends His heavenly troops to carry out the most difficult part of the fight. In most battles, the LORD allows us to face danger up to a certain point and then by His grace He sends His angels to do what we cannot accomplish. In view of this, Ana Mendez Ferrell wrote: Today, God still has His generals of war in the Kingdom of Light, united and called to liberate cities and countries. They are under a genuine covering, with lives that have been tested in – Great Fire – able to transmit their anointing and lead armies in victory.

⁶ II Kings 2:11; Matthew 4:6; Psalms 91:11.

⁷ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (200r) Master Degree: An Exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian Involvement in A Theodicy considered from Philosophic-Theological Perspective. Waterkloof, Pretoria: Self-Published, p. 67.

Unfortunately, there are those who are acting on impulse - although with a true desire to see their cities liberated, they are launching wars without a calling or an anointing to do so by God. What subsequently occurs upon those who lead into battle and those who follow them are accidents and misfortune. Even worse, these errors become the weapon the devil uses to intimidate the army of God.⁸

Any kind of sin creates an alliance (covenant) with the devil and that gives the devil and his demons the legal right to touch a child of God. It is possible to keep a permanently firm stand in the midst of EVIL⁹ attacks without being touched by the devil – however, it can only be by God’s standards and His provision.

According as his divine power hath given unto us all things that pertain unto life and godliness, through the knowledge of him that hath called us to glory and virtue: Whereby are given unto us exceeding great and precious promises: that by these ye might be partakers of the divine nature, having escaped the corruption that is in the world through lust. And beside this, giving all diligence, add to your faith virtue; and to virtue knowledge; And to knowledge temperance; and to temperance patience; and to patience godliness; And to godliness brotherly kindness; and to brotherly kindness charity. For if these things be in you, and abound, they make you that ye shall neither be barren nor unfruitful in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ.

II Peter 1:3-8

Christ warns his disciples – as his mighty warriors on earth – about a devastating danger coming in the End-time, which will be like it was in the days of Noah. For preparatory purposes, an indebt exposition on “***the signs of the days of Noah***” will be of great value to make clear sense of the End-Time spiritual warfare we are entering into NOW.

⁸ Mendez-Ferrel, Ana (2012) High Level Warfare. Ponte Vedra, Florida: Voice of the Light Ministry, p.75.

⁹ ***Evil*** is operating on the following three levels in humanity: (1) ***Internally*** – within the hearts of people where a lifestyle of sin and iniquity is chosen, against God’s will; (2) ***Externally*** – where evil social, religious or governmental structures is functioning, that is harmful to humanity; and (3) ***Supernaturally*** – within the invisible realm, where Satan and his hierarchy is war against the Kingdom of God.

When the quantum leap of modern technology is bear in mind, it will be imperative to expound the different ways of present human genetic corruption, as instrument of war, which Satan is using to regenerate his seed-line and his counterfeit king – the anti-Christ.¹⁰

This hypothesis will challenge some religious fundamentalists and atheists who insist on their viewpoints. Chapter One will look into the past to establish a new enhanced spiritual warfare view, which will help the believer to be prepared for the highly dynamic technological changes.

- Expounding the days of Noah involves the exposition into genetic corruption – which implies part-human, part-angelical creatures called the Nephilim offspring – born from sexual intercourse between some earthly women and the angelical “sons of God”.
- Add to it, the progressing highly developed computer explosion, which works hand-in-hand with spiritual wickedness in high place, trying to bring about a final corruption of human makeup on genetic / DNA level – and the prophetic picture of Matthews 24:37 comes into complete focus.

But as the days of [Noah] were, so shall also the coming of the Son of man be.

Matthew 24:37

In agreement with the PhD thesis of Prof Dr Brand, this thesis believes that DEMONOLOGICAL¹¹ is intrinsically linked to SATAN, SIN and EVIL as bound into the larger realm of Spiritual Warfare.

¹⁰Personal Interview with Prof Dr Connie Brand, (2012) Highly dynamic technological change in 2012 and thereafter. Waterkloof, Gauteng.

¹¹Brand, Connie Prof Dr (2006) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence pertaining to the Structures and strategies to destruct Christianity: Involving the Theodicy of Darkness (Three Volumes). Waterkloof, Gauteng: Self-Published.

On a popular level, deliverance-advocating researchers, rely on experiential work mostly, eliminating the thorough Academic expounding of the exegeses of the penetrating knowledge of the Ministry of Jesus Christ in His capacity as Man.

This thesis will not concentrate on polemics against other viewpoints. There will be an attempt, rather, to combine into a useful perspective the Biblical data about the meaning of the kingdom of darkness and the role of Jesus Christ and His church in it.

A call is going out – to expose the **spiritual wickedness in high places** of these strange troubled times in which we live. It is possible not only to survive, but to overcome these challenges through a fundamental knowledge of the transhumanist philosophy and GRIN technologies as well as a solid understanding of the Christian's authority in Christ and equipment as Biblical spiritual warrior.¹²

TITLE

Expounding Deliverance from a Biblical Perspective, Deriving from Supreme Spiritual Warfare.

THEME

The theme will be elaborated by the expounding of the following Chapters in a nutshell. In Chapter One the sub-theme is titled as follows: *Extreme Measures Pertaining to Spiritual Warfare Reflecting the End-Times*

AXIOM

The axiom of the thesis (starting point) is proved to be the Word of God and attempts to reveal the End-Time onslaught in the battle to destroy the image that man was created in. We are entering times, like in the Days of Noah.

¹² Horn, Thomas (2011) *Pandemonium's Engine: Satan's Imminent and Final Assault on the Creation of God*. Crane, MO: USA, p.1.

But as the days of [Noah] were, so shall also the coming of the Son of man be.

Matthew 24:37

The aim of **Chapter One** is to investigate the prophecy of God in Genesis 3:15 from the pages of the Bible – seeking for a Genetic Prospective deriving from a historical viewpoint to expose the End-Time danger. A crucial point to note is that Genesis 3:15 mentions that both the serpent and the woman were to have seed and seed-lines. This is corroborated by Satan’s assault and the ongoing multi-dimensional *bloody sin war* that is revealed in the Bible – from Genesis to the book of Revelations.

Chapter Two: *An Analysis of the Methodology of Spiritual Warfare.* Most Christian and Churches do not know how to defend themselves against the assault of the devil, while millions are dragged into hell. God is preparing His army of courageous and uncompromising people, who are willing to lay down their lives for Him – even unto death. They dare to confront the powers of wickedness so that the Gospel can penetrate and save millions of lost souls. For the most part of Spiritual Warfare, dealing with the demonic has been limited to possession or oppression of individuals.

Chapter Three is a revelation of the King, Jesus Christ who was sent by the Father to come to the earth as the Kingdom Himself. Thus the Kingdom of Light and Love and Justice came to search and seek the sinners on the earth to save them from the Kingdom of Darkness. Both, the Hierarchy of God as well as the Hierarchy of Satan is covered as foundation for Deliverance.

Chapter Four emphasize’ Iniquity, as root of all evil. Iniquity has formed part of “the spiritual body of sin” within man’s spirit, which is affecting behavior. No human methods can liberate the spirit of man. *Many spirits and souls are trapped in spiritual prisons.*

Chapter Five Chapter five deals with *real life experiences*, how real people experienced death, entering into either heaven or hell and granted a second chance by God to come back to earth as a living witness to relate to the experience pertaining to the eternal destiny, which awaits every living person on planet earth.

Chapter Six reveals who is the King of kings and emphasis on His relationship with his Warrior bride. The place and power of prayer is little understood. If prayer is viewed as a means to maintain your life, it will not be fully understood. Only when prayer is regarded as the highest part of the work entrusted to the believer – the root and strength of all other work. Then the art of praying will be found to be the most essential practice of all.

This dissertation will attempt to present the following problems:

Without a foundational Biblical theology, as well as no or little knowledge of the supernatural world, Christians are in serious danger of deception and therefore in desperate need of Spiritual discernment and deliverance.

- The ancient Watchers plan of conspiracy pertaining to the creating of Nephilim, versus a dark conspiracy unfolding by the way of GRIN science and transhumanist philosophy, which specifically allow the fulfillment of the prophecy as it was in the days of Noah.
- It seems if Satan has initiated an extraordinary conspiracy to revive species-altering supernaturalism as exists in the days of Noah.
- Parallels between different human modifying technologies through species-altering supernaturalism.

PRIMARY PURPOSE OF THIS THESIS

- The aim of the Hypothesis in Chapter One is to investigate the prophecy of God in Genesis 3:15 from the pages of the Bible – seeking for a Genetic Prospective deriving from a historical viewpoint to expose the End-Time danger.
- To establish a broad Biblical teaching on Deliverance, especially on presupposition level, deriving from a Spiritual Warfare perspective.

A. CRITICAL / RESEARCH QUESTIONS

For the purpose of this research, one has to be willing to think about the power of God, the reality of evil and the influence of Satan in an untraditional way:

1. What is the difference between Devils, Demons and Fallen Angels and what is the Biblical perspective pertaining to them, the days of Noah and the End-Times?
2. The question arises if genetic engineering and **Transhumanism** is the method by which the **Nephilim** will return – the method the Anti-Christ will use to incarnate himself?
3. As we see the day of the final conflict between the Kingdom of God and the Kingdom of Satan approaching, an outpouring of demonic evil such as the Church and the world has not known since the earliest centuries of the Christian era will occur. If we are entering that period and most Biblical scholars suspect we are, then we should expect Satan to come into the open and through lying, deceitful spirits assault mankind in general and in the Church. Is that what humankind are witnessing today?

4. Beyond our Churches, effective Worldwide Evangelism is impeded by our having missed the Biblical teaching regarding territorial spirits. These high-level principalities and powers hold whole people groups in their grip. How is their power broken so that people become free to choose for or against Christ?
5. Since the Garden of Eden, man's ignorance has been a major and essential condition that has caused him to be deceived by Satan and evil spirits. How does such ignorance enhance demonization in the End-Times?
6. Since the proto-evangelium refers to (Genesis 3:15) mention that both the Serpent and the woman were to have seed and seed-lines, is there enough evidence from a Biblical prospective to presume that Satan truly have physical descendants?
7. How does freedom of choice and the unambiguously challenge of obedience affect the destiny of the Christian's life, in days where the Church place too much emphasis on grace and barely any on holiness? Could this be part of the last day's deception that is revealed in II Thessalonians 2: 1-11?
8. More and more people who had near-death experiences, proclaim that God send them back with a message to the Church:

Remember therefore from whence thou art fallen, and repent, and do the first works; or else I will come unto thee quickly, and will remove thy candlestick out of his place, except thou repent.

Revelation 2:5

HYPOTHESIS

The possible solution to the growing deception of Christians is the Liberation / Deliverance of their human mind.

SCOPE / LIMITATION OF THE FIELD OF STUDY

Human beings are dependant on the self-revelation of God and His revelations of the Spiritual world; therefore this dissertation is limited to the revelations of God to different individual people, as well as to my own and others Biblical and fundamental theology of the spirit world, power encounters and spiritual warfare.

ROLE OF THE RESEARCHER

The researcher is a Pastoral Counselor at a High School in the Northwest Province (South Africa) with an accompanied hostel. A Master of Ministry in Theology was achieved from Calvary University (UK) by the researcher in the year 2010.

THEORETICAL FRAMEWORK

A framework indicates how research might be operated, i.e. how a general set of research aims and purpose can be translated into a practical, researchable topic. *“A framework acts as a bridge between the theoretical discussion of the opening chapter and the subsequent chapters that cover: (a) Specific styles of research; (b) Specific issues in planning a research design; (c) Planning data collection (instrumentation, strategies) and (d) Data analysis.”*¹³

Elements of Research Styles in this thesis include the following models: A Survey on deception of the uninformed Christian, Action research, Case studies, as well as Testing and Assessment of the affects of deception experienced by present-day Christian's.

¹³ Cohen, Louis & Manion, Lawrence & Morrison, Keith (2002) *Research Methods in Education – 5th Edition*. London, EC4P 4EE; Routledge Falmer Publishers.

METHODOLOGY

- The goal of this thesis is by no means uncontroversial, not necessarily because of this thesis that we defend, but because of the issues it invites.
- This thesis aims to develop a Biblical Theology about Satan, demons, demonization and Deliverance. In deed it would render an attempt to arrive at the Biblical perspective on any matter impossible.
- We would argue for an objective, author-centered hermeneutical approach rooted in a strong unifying view of divine inspiration.

In the development of a Biblical Theology of Satan, Sin, the demonic and human experience of evil from a Spiritual Warfare outlook, this thesis will use a dual approach – basic a qualitative research method, but on a small scale just to confirm the existence of the phenomena with statistics, the quantitative research methods will also be used.

DATA COLLECTION STRATEGIES

Data collection encompasses identifying, locating and collecting information about the research theme. It includes primary sources and secondary sources. The material, its authenticity and its accuracy were evaluated by external (moderator) and internal criticism (own). The report approach was to synthesize themes with central ideas or concepts into meaningful wholes.

TYPES OF DATA COLLECTION STRATEGIES

Historical approach – The use of primary and secondary source material. The key to historical case studies is the notion of investigating the phenomenon over a period of time. Historical research is fundamentally descriptive, relying on primary and secondary documents (cultural & physical).

Descriptive approach represents a detailed account of the phenomenon under study.

Interpretive approaches are descriptive, which are to develop conceptual categories or illustrate, support or challenge theoretical assumptions held prior to the data gathering.

Phenomenological approach is a philosophical perspective, as well as a qualitative approach. It has a history in several social research disciplines including Psychology, Sociology and Social work. Phenomenology is a school of thought that emphasizes a focus on people's subjective experiences and interpretations of the world.

Biblical Hermeneutical approach is the traditional Christian Biblical exegesis and considers hermeneutics in the tradition of explanation of the text, or exegesis, to deal with various principles that can be applied to the study of Scripture. The canon of Scripture must be interpreted as an organic whole, rather than accumulation of disparate individual texts written.

DISCUSSION OF OVERALL RESEARCH FINDINGS

Satan presents himself as the god in this present-day occult explosion, using deception with counterfeit experiences and false teaching as his battle-plan of operation.

STYLE

- The dissertation is aiming to provide an academic work on Spiritual Warfare, Satan, sin and evil out of pastoral counselor's perspective.

- The dissertation is also written in a way to build a bridge between intellectual scholarship and the lay reader. It is an awakening call to the church today to discover how organized Satan is and how systematically he is working against us and that it is the believer's task to be a Christian soldier, active in Spiritual Warfare. Christians have to be trained in "pulling down strongholds" (II Corinthians 10:4) and in how to resist the devil (James 4:7), how to wrestle against principalities, powers, rulers of the darkness of this world, as well as against spiritual wickedness in high places (Ephesians 6:12).

CENTRAL OBJECTIVE

- The central objective in this thesis is Spiritual Warfare. The thesis encompasses broad information about the multi-dimensional sin war Christians are involved in, which rages in every person's life, although it is done in the invisible supernatural realm. This war rages on three levels, personal in the area of the sinful nature, social in the area of evil social systems and supernatural in the area of the demonic.
- Two main themes, which flow from beginning to the end of this dissertation, are the following:

An indebt exposition on "*the signs of the days of Noah*" will be of great value to make clear sense of the End-Time spiritual warfare we are entering into NOW.

To establish a broad Biblical teaching on Deliverance, especially on presupposition level, deriving from a Spiritual Warfare perspective.

- Deception as Satan's main objective to disguise the un-regenerated, as well as the uninformed Christian is discussed from different approaches:

(1) Pertaining to the individual. (2) Pertaining to different evil approaches within world systems – the cults, the Occult, in philosophy, in some education systems and psychiatric systems. (3) Pertaining to Satan and his followers as the enemy of God and humanity.

PRESUPPOSITIONS

This dissertation is written out of a Monotheistic Redemptive viewpoint.

- There is only one God and He is both one and personal. God is also transcendent (apart from the universe as its creator and sustainer) and yet He is immanent as everywhere present and accessible to humanity. God knows all (Omniscient), is all powerful (Omni-Potent) and is present everywhere (Omnipresent).
- God's revelation is primarily centered on redemption. It focuses on God's action to bring men and women back to Himself, following the fall. A redemptive Worldview declares that as soon as people sin, God comes to them. He not only comes to humanity in judgment for our rebellion against His Lordship, but he also comes to us in redemption – and send the Redeemer, Jesus Christ, to free us from bondage to the serpent, who is Biblically called, the devil, or Satan (Genesis 3:15).

THE EFFECTS OF PRESUPPOSITIONS

The Monotheistic Redemptive view of God contrast directly with pantheism and polytheism.

- Pantheism is the doctrine that “...all is God.” Pantheism has made renaissance in the so-called secular society of the West in the New Age Religions.
- Polytheism is the belief in and worship of a plurality of gods.
- Polytheism and its by-products, idolatry, became the prevalent religious view of the ancient Biblical World after “the fall”.

SEMANTICS AND THEORIES OF MEANING

Semantics is the study of meaning in language. It involves the study of how the meaning in language is created by the use and interrelationships of words, phrases and sentences. The study of symbols involves the study of the relationships between symbols and what they represent. The study of logic includes the study of interpreting and analyzing theories of logic.

Theories of meaning imply to the body of rules, ideas, principles and techniques which applies to subjects, especially when considered as distinct from actual practice.

- This dissertation is written from a historical perspective. Studies on Spiritual warfare were done by various scholars with excellent theoretical, as well as practical experience in this field, from whom this dissertation drew deep from their wells of knowledge. The study is also supported by facts from history, using case studies to prove the historical sequence. Different phenomena are discussed within the historical sequence.
- Systematic theological structures are used to build a foundation of theoretical material.

APPROACHES TO LANGUAGE

“The main point is that the etymology of a word is not a statement about its meaning, but about its history.”¹⁴

According to Edmond Jacob, *“the first task of the Hebraist in the presence of a word is to recover the original meaning, from which other words were derived.”¹⁵*

When words are not interpreted according to their original etymology, the meaning of the word may be different. It is interesting to use diachronic studies to demonstrate that the meaning of Greek words has been changed between Plato and the New Testament.

HISTORICAL CRITICISM

Historical criticism involves the support and methods used in a study of any narrative (or case study), which claims to convey historical information in order to determine what actually happened and is described or refers to in the passage in question.

Apart from historical methods, this dissertation states that the main emphasis will be in the area of Biblical interpretation. Accompanying support is given by the following fields: Etymology, Physiology, Sociology, Ancient Mythology, Esoteric, Mystery Religions, Gnostics and Education. Research sources that are used include the following: worldwide literature pertaining to books, encyclopedias, articles, conferences, seminars, as well as various internet systems.

-----oOo-----

¹⁴ Barr J, op. cit., p. 109 (my italics).

¹⁵ Jacob, E (1958) *Theology of the Old Testament*. London: Paternoster Press, p. 159.

In that day the LORD with His sore and great and strong Sword shall punish Leviathan the piercing Serpent, even Leviathan that crooked Serpent; and He shall slay the Dragon that [is] in the sea.

Isaiah 27:1



Chapter One

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

*And at that time shall Michael stand up,
the great prince which standeth for
the children of thy people: and there shall be
a time of trouble*

Daniel 12:1



Chapter One

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

*And at that time shall Michael stand up,
the great prince which standeth for
the children of thy people: and there shall be
a time of trouble*

Daniel 12:1

Cover Art for Chapters
Graphic Design

Susan Langeveldt
St. Sulpice



Chapter 1

Extreme Measures Pertaining to Spiritual Warfare Reflecting the End-Times

In recent years, astonishing technological developments have pushed the frontiers of humanity toward far-reaching, morphological transformation that promises, in the near future, to redefine what it means to be human.

Thomas Horn¹

1. INTRODUCTION

Something ominous is coming upon the world: It is Satan's final onslaught in the battle to destroy ***the image*** that man was created in. If Satan can destroy the image and likeness of God in man, then Satan can avert his own destruction.

According to Hamp: God created man in His own image and likeness. When man sinned, the image of God was flawed in humanity, but not lost.² As a result, man cannot come into a living relationship with God since man's blood genetic code and spiritual composition have been corrupted by ***original sin***. God sent His Son to give His life to correct the genetic and moral problem through the cross.

¹ Horn, Thomas (2011) Pandemonium's Engine: Satan's Imminent and Final Assault on the Creation of God. Crane, MO: USA, p. back page.

² Hamp, Douglas (2011) Corrupting the Image. USA: Defender Publishing, p.17.

From the beginning, Satan sought for a way for his seed-line to become a reality. Many scholars agree that there is a move of Satan in these last days, to destroy what is left of *the image of God in humanity*. God warns about a great destruction coming just before the second coming of Jesus Christ – destruction as it was in “**the days of Noah**” where all flesh has corrupted their ways and the earth was filled with violence.³

Scripture reveals that the same immorality pervaded pre-Flood societies in the days of Noah that caused the degradation of the human corruption at genetic / DNA level,⁴ will most probably disgrace humanity at the End of days. Satan is lurking behind gates, waiting for a final opportunity to mingle himself with human DNA as in the days of Old.

The question arises if genetic engineering and **Transhumanism**⁵ is the method by which the **Nephilim** will return – the method the Anti-Christ will use to incarnate himself? Genesis six is an account of rebel angels, leaving their assigned region and cohabiting with human females, therefore it is reasonable to assume that Satan, will again try to manipulate DNA genetics to produce an offspring at this last hour.

The **aim of the Hypothesis in Chapter One** is to investigate the prophecy of God in Genesis 3:15 from the pages of the Bible – seeking for a **Genetic Prospective** deriving from a historical viewpoint to expose the End-Time danger. A crucial point to note is that Genesis 3:15 mentions that both the Serpent and the woman were to have seed and seed-lines. This is corroborated by Satan’s assault and the ongoing multi-dimensional *bloody sin war* that is revealed in the Bible, from Genesis to the book of Revelation. Humanity’s two greatest enemies are revealed as its own selfish sinful fleshly nature in collaboration with the enemy of God and humankind.

³ Genesis 6:1-2,4,11-13.

⁴ Horn, Thomas R Dr (2012) *Nephilim: Star-gates*. Crane, Missouri: Anomalos Publishers, pp.197-198.

⁵ **Etymology: Transhumanism** is an international and intellectual movement that affirms the possibility and desirability of fundamentally transforming the human condition by developing and making widely available technologies to eliminate aging and to greatly enhance human intellectual, physical and psychological capacities. Bostrom, Nick (2005) “A history of transhumanist thought”. *Journal of Evolution and Technology*. (<http://www.nickbostrom.com/papers/history.pdf>)

And I will put enmity between thee and the woman and between thy seed and her seed: it shall bruise thy head and thou shalt bruise His heel.

Genesis 3:15

Most Theologians teach that the seed of the women promised in the Proto-Evangelium or the *First Gospel*, was the promised Messiah.⁶

Most Modern Theologians tragically fail to admit that the Serpent also had a literal progeny although they freely admit that the Seed of the woman – who is Jesus Christ, included a seed-line through which Jesus Christ was incarnated into a fleshly body. They deny that the Serpent of Old called Satan or the Dragon – could have a literal seed-line too.⁷ Astonishing, we found that those who are involved in the Kingdom of darkness not only acknowledge these facts, but that they have designed an *End-Time structure* around their philosophy about it, which endangers humanity without little resistance of God's Church.

Scripture however, reveals a bloody war between the two seed-lines from Genesis tot Revelation, for anybody who wants to see. The story of the Bible opens with the serpent's primal challenge of God's newly created order and it culminates with the ultimate triumph of Jesus on the cross of Calvary.

Genesis describes how the struggle begins, while the book of Revelation reveals how the kingdoms of this world finally became the Kingdom of our God and His Christ. The rest of Scripture – its history, its story of redemption and its prophecy is concerned with the struggle to establish God's Kingdom of righteousness on earth. Until the final event unfolds, when Jesus will reign eternally, the saints of God have a commission: to proclaim the Kingdom of God (to be seen in Chapter Three).

⁶ Irenaeus of Lyons (1885) *Against Heresies* – Book III: Chapter 23, 7 and Book V, Chapter 21, 1, in Coxe AC (ed): *The Apostolic Fathers, American Edition of the Ante-Nicene Fathers.* Edinburg.

⁷ Genesis 3; Revelations 12; II Corinthians 10:3-5; Ephesians 6:11-18; Revelations 22:10-17.

The Targum of Onkelos, an ancient commentary of sorts, also asserts that both the Serpent and the woman would each have a son of promise.⁸

Douglas Hamp notes⁹ that according to these two sources, we can understand that the remedy for the striking of the heel will center on the Messiah and also that her seed referring to a son who is connected with Eve. However, “*thy son*” is a reference to Satan’s one who, according to hermeneutical consistency, must also be a genetic descendant.¹⁰

The early Church father Irenaeus, in his book, *Against Heresies* identified *Jesus as the Seed of the women and the anti-Christ as the seed of the Serpent*, who would be trampled down by the Messiah.¹¹ The Woman’s seed brought forth *the Saviour* and the Satan’s seed will bring *the Destroyer*. As Jesus Christ was “*the seed of the woman*”, the Anti-Christ will be the “*seed of the Serpent*”.¹² It is evident in the Four Gospels that the satanic seed-line repeatedly attempt to refute and destroy Jesus Christ and His Truth. Luke 4:1-13 reveals how the devil even tempted Jesus Christ to sin. Nevertheless, Jesus triumphed over Satan by His sinless life, His sinless blood and the Word of His testimony.¹³

Satan is a *real being* – a rebellious fallen angel and not a symbol or an idea. He constantly fight against God and those who follow and obey Him. Knowing and obeying God’s Word is an effective weapon against temptation, the only offensive weapon provided in the Christian armour.¹⁴ Jesus use Scripture to counter Satan’s attack and so should we – however we must spiritually be seated with Christ in heavenly places.

⁸ Pentateuchal Targumim: The Targum of Jonathan Ben Uzziel on the Book of Genesis. (<http://targum.info/pj/pjgen1-6.htm>)

⁹ Hamp, Douglas (2011) *Corrupting the Image*. USA: Defender Publishing, p.20.

¹⁰ Apparently Eve believed that Cain was the fulfillment of this promise because upon his birth, she declares that she got “*a son from the Lord*”.

¹¹ Irenaeus *Against Heresies*, Book 5, Chapter 19 to 31. (<http://carm.org/irenaeus-heresies5-19-31>)

¹² Genesis 3:5

¹³ Revelations 12:11

¹⁴ Ephesians 6:11-17.

Just as Jesus told His disciples that he had meat to eat – and that implied His Fathers will, just so should we strengthen our spiritual lives with the spiritual food – by doing God’s will.¹⁵

Jesus saith unto them, My meat is to do the will of Him that sent me, and to finish His work.

John 4:34

According to Emahiser the first manifested seed of the Serpent upon the earth was Cain, since Cain’s name is missing from Adam’s genealogy. This is not because Cain sinned, but because he was not of Adam’s seed.¹⁶

The Bible defines that the Anti-Christ will be the *son of perdition* – probably the progeny of Greek *apeleia*, or Apollyon. The implication could not be clearer, the *Man of Sin* will be the physical offspring of the Destroyer demon, probably a *transgenic* of the highest order. Add to this, the progressing highly developed computer explosion and the picture of the End-Time battlefield we are now in, the possibility became greater.

An international fast growing cultural movement, know as ***Transhumanism*** intend to use GRIN technologies,¹⁷ to create a future dominated by a new species of unrecognizable superior humans. As technology works hand in hand with spiritual wickedness in high places, the current direction that GRIN technology and transhumanist philosophy are taking, exceed all past dangers and threatens to elevate to quantitatively higher levels.

Biological Science is moving into forbidden gates – genetics, robotics, artificial intelligence, synthetic biology, nanotechnology and human enhancement is the order of the day, which automatically announce the dawn of Techno-Dimensional Spiritual Warfare. ***Science is on the edge of a quantum advance with one goal in mind – to transform and recreate mankind itself.***

¹⁵ I Corinthians 10:3,4.

¹⁶ Emahiser, Clifton A. The Two seeds of Genesis 3:15.
(http://www.childrenofyahweh.com?Other%Reading/two_seeds.htm)

¹⁷ **Etymology:** GRIN stands for Genetics, Robotics, Artificial intelligence and Nanotechnology.

The plan raised in human-transforming science, is liable to faith issues of eschatological significance regarding the End-Times.

Transhumanism intends to use GRIN technologies as tools to redesign the human mind, memories and Physiology, with catastrophic results – it will irrevocably corrupt human existence on genetic/DNA level and will destroy the one and only tool God gave humanity for regeneration purposes – **a free sovereign will** to choose for himself. Many intellectuals realize that the real danger of Biological Science, thus, lies in the loss of individuality, comprehensibility, privacy and even loss of free will as a result of integration.

Tal Brook, in his book, *One World*, uncovers the hidden forces behind the sweeping changes taking place right now: *The growing Leviathan of World Governments however, cannot break through as long as the free world stands in its way, mindful of their former spiritual aptitudes and virtues. In close relation to a One-World-Order, the New Age piece of the puzzle is serving its purpose of seduction – instigating people to search for a mystical heaven of earth, working alongside with the globalist plan. The world has a “secret few elite people”, operating probably to enhance a messianic plan guided by spiritual dimensions.*¹⁸

2. SECRETS FOR ‘THE ELECT’

THE BIBLE without question is the most influential book ever produced. Until Archaeological advances, beginning in the nineteenth century, virtually everything humans knew about their origins came from the Bible, filtered through the Church priesthood. Individuals were both canonized and executed, culture built and destroyed and wars fought – all based on this *one Book*.¹⁹

¹⁸ Brooke, Tal (2000) *One World*. Berkeley, CA: End Run Publishers, p. back page.

¹⁹ Mars, J (2000) *Rule by Secrecy. The Hidden History That Connects the Trilateral Commission, the Freemasons and the Great Pyramids*. New York: Harper Collins, p.346.

Biblical scholar Analyst Pat Eddy wrote: “One of the most important purposes of tampering with the Bible was to support the aims of those who sought to make Christianity more attractive to potential Jewish converts by proving that the events of Jesus’ life fulfill prophecy from the Old Testament. Christians have all been told, from their earliest trip to Sunday school, that the birth, death and important events in the life of Jesus were all foretold in the Old Testament. Few have ever questioned this assertion.”²⁰

Add to this, John Klein and Adam Spears comments on the translation problem: “The assumption that the entire New Testament was originally communicated in Greek has led to a considerable amount of misunderstandings on the part of Scholars and lay people alike. The ancient Greek philosophers believed that the text worked on one of two levels only, while the Hebrew Hermeneutics is in fact operating on four levels simultaneously. This reveals the reason behind misunderstandings even more clearly.”²¹

What Bible scholars euphemistically term as small redactions of the Bible, has contributed to huge misunderstandings and erroneous translation problems, keeping many of its messages a secret from the uninitiated. In other words the *Soli Sacerdotibus*, for the initiated only.

The secret things belong unto the LORD our God: but those things which are revealed belong unto us and to our children for ever, that we may do all the words of this law.

Deuteronomy 29:29

According to some scholars within the New Testament, there are tantalizing hints that Jesus kept some secrets. God’s secrets are only for His Elect – His children. Not all God’s secrets were given to the public. Of this, the parables of the New Testament are an excellent example.

²⁰ Eddy, Patrica G (1993) *Who Tampered with the Bible*. Nashville, TN: Winston Derek Publishers, Inc. p.81.

²¹ Klein, John (2007) *Lost in Translation*. Bend, OR: Covenant Research Institute, pp.13-14.

And the disciples came, and said unto Him, Why speakest thou unto them in parables? He answered and said unto them, Because it is given unto you to know the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but to them it is not given... Therefore speak I to them in parables: because they seeing see not; and hearing they hear not, neither do they understand.

Matthew 13:10-13

The Biblical scholar Prof Dr Brand, could be taken as representative of those holding the view that Jesus Christ is Light and Truth, but also the *Epitomé of Freedom*, therefore not to be associated with the esoteric, hidden covert secrecies altogether seen as Deep Dark Secrets.²² Whenever Jesus, the Son of Man walked on earth, He carried the Light and the Light expelled the Darkness and set people free. His goal and purpose was and is thus to break the bondage of secrecy.

As this study will show, none of this Secret Societies, Agenda's, Governments, Global Politics and all the rest, functions out of selfless, all-encompassing, unconditional Agape Love – as Jesus proposes.

3. TIMES, LIKE IN THE DAYS OF NOAH

In 1876, the English theologian George Hawkins Pember who was affiliated with a branch of Protestant Evangelical Christianity studied the book of Matthew, where Jesus discussed that the most fearful sign of the End-Times shall be “*the reappearance on earth of beings from the Principality of the Air and their unlawful intercourse with the human race*”.²³

²² Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2005) Masters Degree: Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence pertaining to the Structures and Strategies to Destruct Christianity-Involving the Theodicy of Darkness. Pretoria, Gauteng: Un-Published, p.59.

²³ Pember, GH (1975) Extract from Earth's Earliest Age by G.H. Pember, Chapter 8 & 9.. Kregal Publications; pp. 127-148. (<http://www.stevequayle.com/Gaints/days.of.noah.pdf>)

Scripture reveals the increase of EVIL during these last days will be “**like unto the days of Noah**”.²⁴ Genesis six reveals that in the days of Noah, beings from the spirit world, “**the Sons of God**”, looked upon the earthly women and took those who were willing as wives. Their offspring is known to us, as “**giants**” and mighty men of renown. This union between “**Fallen Angels**” and humans genetically introduced Evil Seed into humankind.

The *sons of God* are plainly distinguished from the descendants of Cain and Seth alike. It appears that in the Old Testament the title, “**sons of God**”²⁵ is restricted to angels.²⁶ Their offspring, the Nephilim,²⁷ is known to us as **giants** and **mighty men of renown**. THIS union between Fallen Angels and humans genetically introduced Evil Seed into humankind. The increase of EVIL during these last days will be like unto the days of Noah.²⁸

In agreement to well-known author Tom Horn, this thesis will explore the concept that the End-Times will be as the days of Noah and consider the following aspects of it:

- The ancient Watchers plan of conspiracy pertaining to the creating of Nephilim, versus a dark conspiracy unfolding by the way of GRIN science and transhumanist philosophy, which specifically allow the fulfillment of the prophecy as it was in the days of Noah.

²⁴ Matthew 24:3-5, 12-15, 21-22, 37.

²⁵ In the Hebrew Bible the phrase “**sons of God**” occurs in Genesis 6:2; Job 1:6; Job 38:7 and Psalm 29:1 as “**b'ney ha-Elohim**”. (<http://www.blueletterbible.org/Bible.cfm?Job&c=38&t=KJV#cons/7>)

Westermann claims the text of Genesis 6 is based on an Ugaritic urtext as seen in Westermann, C (1982) Genesis, BKAT 1/3. Neukirchen-Vluyn: NeuKirchener Verlag, p.42.

The interpretation of “**the sons of God**” as **Fallen Angels** is found in Philo and in Josephus Antiquities 1:73 (or1:3.1) as seen in Flavius Josephus, translation and commentary. Volume 4 Flavius Josephus, Steve Mason, Louis H Feldman, cf. Niese Josephus – Greek Critical Edition with Apparatus Logos Software.

²⁶ This is the view taken by Josephus, Philo Judaeus, the “**Books of Enoch**” and the “**Testament of the Twelve Patriachs**”, indeed it was the view generally accepted by learned Jews in the early centuries of the Christian ear. Even Augustine, admits that in his time the greater number of copies read “angels of God”.

Pember, GH (1975) Extract from Earth’s Earliest Age by G.H. Pember, Chapter 8 & 9.. Kregal Publications; pp. 127-148. (<http://www.stevequayle.com/Gaints/days.of.noah.pdf>)

²⁷ The Septuagint translates the word “**Nephilim**” as “**giant**” and the King James Version carried this definition through. This also appears consistent with Numbers 13:33, where the returning spies describe themselves as “**grasshoppers**” by comparison with the Nephilim. Adding to it that the word itself derive from the verb “**nephal**” meaning “**to fall**”, no other more suitable explanation can be that Scripture refers to Nephilim, as the “**Fallen Angelic beings**” from heaven.

²⁸ Matthew 24:3-5, 12-15, 21-22, 37; Luke 21: 34-35; II Peter 3:4.

- It seems if Satan has initiated an extraordinary conspiracy to revive species-altering supernaturalism as exists in the days of Noah.
- Parallels between different human modifying technologies through species-altering supernaturalism.

3.1 BIBLICAL SIGN'S OF THE END-TIME

Jesus Christ is warning his disciples about the signs of *the End-Times* and of the coming of the end of the world – saying that it would be “*as the days of Noah were*”. Scholars conclude that the reappearance of the “*beings from the principalities of the Air*” and their ***unlawful intercourse*** with the human race upon earth, will be the most fearful sign of the End-Times.

Tell us, when shall these things be? and what shall be the sign of thy coming, and of the end of the world? And Jesus answered and said unto them, Take heed that no man deceive you. For many shall come in my name, saying, I am Christ; and shall deceive many... And because iniquity shall abound, the love of many shall wax cold. But he that shall endure unto the end, the same shall be saved. And this Gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world for a witness unto all nations; and then shall the end come When ye therefore shall see the abomination of desolation, spoken of by Daniel the prophet, stand in the holy place... For then shall be great tribulation, such as was not since the beginning of the world to this time, no, nor ever shall be. And except those days should be shortened, there should no flesh be saved: but for the elect's sake those days shall be shortened... But as the days of [Noah] were, so shall also the coming of the Son of man be.

Matthew 24: 3-5, 12-15, 21-22, 37

The question arises: What does the Bible say about “***the signs of the days of Noah***”?

And it came to pass, when men began to multiply on the face of the earth, and daughters were born unto them, that the sons of God saw the daughters of men that they were fair; and they took them wives of all which they chose. And the LORD said, My spirit shall not always strive with man, for that he also is flesh: yet his days shall be an hundred and twenty years. There were giants²⁹ in the earth in those days; and also after that, when the sons of God came in unto the daughters of men, and they bare children to them, the same became mighty men which were of old, men of renown... And God looked upon the earth, and, behold, it was corrupt; for all flesh had corrupted his way upon the earth.

Genesis 6:1-4,12

Peter had the following to say about the *sons of God* that surpassed their borders and sin sexually with women on the earth:

For if God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast them down to hell, and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment; And spared not the old world, but saved Noah the eighth person, a preacher of righteousness, bringing in the flood upon the world of the ungodly; And turning the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah into ashes condemned them with an overthrow, making them an ensample unto those that after should live ungodly; And delivered just Lot, vexed with the filthy conversation of the wicked: (For that righteous man dwelling among them, in seeing and hearing, vexed his righteous soul from day to day with their unlawful deeds.

II Peter 2:1-8

God did not spare the angels that sinned and surpassed their abode, but cast them into HELL and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment.

In the time of Noah, the world was corrupted before the LORD and filled with violence. God had not only to destroy every living thing but also the animals. According to the Book of Enoch, exactly 200 watchers fell to earth to take human wives. Some of the names of the watchers are revealed in the book.

²⁹ The NIV Bible and other translations states that the “the ***Nephilim*** were on the earth in those days (Genesis 6:4).”

Deuteronomy reveals that even after the Great Flood there were Giants on the earth – referred to as the “**gobbor**” and “**rephaim**.”³⁰

The Emims dwelt therein in times past, a people great, and many, and tall, as the Anakims; Which also were accounted giants, as the Anakims; but the Moabites call them Emims. (That also was accounted a land of giants: giants dwelt therein in old time; and the Ammonites call them Zamzummims; A people great, and many, and tall, as the Anakims; but the LORD destroyed them before them; and they succeeded them, and dwelt in their stead.

Deuteronomy 2:10-11,20-21

For only Og king of Bashan remained of the remnant of giants; behold, his bedstead was a bedstead of iron; is it not in Rabbath of the children of Ammon? nine cubits was the length thereof, and four cubits the breadth of it, after the cubit of a man. And the rest of Gilead, and all Bashan, being the kingdom of Og, gave I unto the half tribe of Manasseh; all the region of Argob, with all Bashan, which was called the land of giants.

Deuteronomy 3:11,13

Brand notes that the Hebrew word for Nephilim occurs only in one other verse in the Bible is referring to the great giants – the sons of Anak.

And there we saw the giants, the sons of Anak, which come of the giants: and we were in our own sight as grasshoppers, and so we were in their sight.

Numeric 13:33

In a time where the entire human race was infected, Noah was pure and uncorrupted. Noah was a friend of God and walked in the ways of the LORD. Just as God saved Noah and his household – only eight people – from the judgment of the Flood, He will save the faithful from the coming Great Tribulation that will surely come soon upon the earth.

³⁰ Brand, Connie Prof Dr (2006) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence pertaining to the Structures and strategies to destruct Christianity: Involving the Theodicy of Darkness (Three Volumes). Waterkloof, Gauteng: Un-Published, p. 1815

For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first: Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord.

I Thessalonians 4:16-17

3.1.1 THE FIRST SIGN OF THE END-TIMES: SPECIES-ALTERING SUPER-NATURALISM BY HUMAN-MODIFYING TECHNOLOGY

When Scripture is read alongside with other ancient texts, it unfolds that the giants of the Old Testament were part-human, part-animal, part-angelic offspring of supernatural corruption of species like centaurs, chimeras, furies, satyrs, gorgons, nymphs, minotaurs and other genetic aberrations.³¹

The ***Book of Enoch***,³² gives the clearest historical account of the fall of the Watchers/ Fallen angels, who fathered the Nephilim. This book was not incorporated into the Canon of Scripture, though it is included in the Ethiopian Orthodox Church's Canon, the Beta Israel Canon and referred to and quoted in some books of the Christian Bible.

Enoch was always considered part of the Canon by early church fathers such as Justine Martyr, Irenaeus, Origen, Athenagoras, Clement of Alexander and Quintus Septimius Florens Tertullianus.

³¹ Horn, Thomas (2011) *Pandemonium's Engine: Satan's Imminent and Final Assault on the Creation of God.* Crane, MO: USA, p.40.

³² ***Etymology: Nephilim*** is the Hebrew word used to describe the offspring of the union between angels and women of Genesis 6. The word means "fallen ones". We read that the angels came down twice, evidently once after the Flood, to again bear offspring with women. The word Nephilim is used again to describe the giants living in the land that the spies reported were so huge, the Israelites feel like grasshoppers in comparison to them. Josephus wrote that the bones of the giants in the land were much evidence in his day, about 75 A.D. It is to be understood that Josephus made this observation some two thousand years ago and most of these bones would have decayed, been deeply buried or used for various purposes. *The Origins of Enochic Judaism* (ed. Gabriele Boccaccini; Turin: Zamorani, 2002).

The loss of a book such as Enoch from the Bible, leaves the *believer uninformed* and therefore *passive about the spiritual warfare* he is engaged in, with no or little knowledge to comprehend the subtle workings of the serpent of old.

Other ***texts in the Old Testament*** contains references to the development of “*genetic mutations*” among humans, such as unusual size, unusual strength, six fingers, six toes, animal appetite for blood and even lion-like features. The Old Testament also refers to the Book of Jasper in Joshua 10:13 and II Samuel 1:18.

The ***Book of Jasper*** gave relevant information to ***genetic engineering***: “*And their judges and rulers went to the daughters of men and took their wives by force from their husbands according to their choice and the sons of men in those days took from the cattle of the earth, the beasts of the field and fowls of the air and taught the mixture of animals of one species with the other, in order therewith to provoke the LORD and God saw the whole earth and it was corrupt, for all flesh had corrupted its ways upon earth, all men and all animals.*”³³

Horn wrote: “*After the Watchers instructed humans ‘in the secret of heaven’, then the sons of men began teaching the mixture of animals of one species with the other, in order to therewith to provoke the LORD.*”³⁴ This theory posits that Satan understood the proto-evangelium promise.

Horn concludes after a decade of research – that the chief motive of the *Watchers* should be understood within the context of their foremost goal – which is to leave their plane of existence and to enter ours. They want to incarnate within the human realm. “*The challenge deriving then was to hypothesize how they will do it. This could be only possible if the human or animal spirit can be displaced by their own. It seems as if the transhumanist are using the pattern of Jasper.*”

³³ The Book of Jasper 4:18. (<http://www.ccel.org/a/anonymous/jasher/4.htm>)

³⁴ Jasper 4:18.

The **ancient Sumerian clay tablets** gave more detailed information about how this inbreeding might have happened.

Dr Joye J Pugh reveals: “*These [Fallen] Angels were looking to humankind to produce their doubles. The tablets reveal examples of cross-fertilization and special cloning birthing chambers. The fallen Angels reportedly used the wombs of human females to achieve their desires to walk upon the Earth as mortal beings. The **ancient Mesopotamian Documents** explain that the creation of advance man was obtained through genetic manipulation. The fallen angels took earthly flesh, united it and mixed it with their blood. The Documents call the making of man “lullu”, when it is translated means ‘one that is mixed’.*”³⁵

Thom Horn gave the following explanation of it: *It seems that through the blending of existing DNA of several living creatures, something is created that neither human spirit nor beast would enter at conception – for it is not man nor beast (bodies made of human, animal and plant genetics).*³⁶

Mysterious World distributes an article, *Giants in the earth*: The Nephilim were genetically manufactured beings created from the genetic material of various pre-existing animal species... The fallen angels did not personally interbreed with the daughters of men, but used their godlike intellect into the secret of YHWH’s Creation and manipulate it to their own purpose. The key to creating or recreating a living being, is human genetics - at DNA level.³⁷

Some transhumanist students of prophecy even envision the reviving of dead Nephilim or the possibility to create versions of new engineered demigods as part of the kingdom of the anti-Christ. The Bible Book of Daniel speaks about this mixing of seeds in the last days.

³⁵ Puch, Joye Jeffries Dr (2006) Eden. Mustang, OK: Tata Publishing, p.35.

³⁶Horn, Thomas (2011) Pandemonium’s Engine: Satan’s Imminent and Final Assault on the Creation of God. Crane, MO: USA, p.41.

³⁷ Giants in the Earth. (2003) Part I: “Giants of the Ancient Near East”, Mysterious World (Springs 2003), accessed April 26, 2011. (<http://www.mysteriousworld.com/Journal/2003/Spring/Giants>)

And whereas thou sawest iron mixed with miry clay, they shall mingle themselves with the seed of men: but they shall not cleave one to another, even as iron is not mixed with clay.

Daniel 2:43

Such genetic tinkering is already taking place in thousands of research laboratories around the world, including the United States, Britain and Australia.

According to Dr Joye Pugh, the genealogy between Cain and Seth (the third son of Eve), are recorded in various history books to appear similar: “*Cain’s lineage gave birth to the **Dragon bloodline** – who practice the Sacred Science from esoteric knowledge, they gained most probably through enlightenment from their father, Satan. These power- hunger and selfish Dragon Kings – who lived to kill, were filled with sinful **pride** pattern forming attitudes deriving from Satan Himself and believed that they were superior to the lineage of Seth – the natural offspring of Adam and Eve.*

*There were two groups of people on earth – the offspring of the women and the offspring of Satan. It seems as if some of **the bloodlines of Satan** still exist, on earth. Satan and his entourage, as well as his human initiates, are of the opinion that the illumination of Satan makes them superior. These two groups are the players in the ongoing battle between Light and darkness, between good and evil, between righteousness and iniquity. These bloodlines are the masterminds behind many deceitful acts that are slowly forcing the human race into accepting Satan instead of God as Messiah of the End-Time.”³⁸*

The first of the many battles started in the Garden of Eden and the last one will be completed at the final Battle of Armageddon. The End-Time battle is quickly approaching. Every living person on earth has a final chance to choose as to whom we will serve – one side or the other. Attempting to be on neutral ground will automatically result in the army of the EVIL-ONE.

³⁸Puch, Joye Jeffries Dr (2006) Eden. Mustang, OK: Tata Publishing, p.39, 43.

3.1.2 THE SECOND SIGN OF THE END-TIMES: PREACHING RIGHTEOUSNESS

Noah was a just man and found grace in the eyes of God. Noah was walking in a close relationship with God and became a **preacher of righteousness**³⁹ in a time when the sins of **the Watchers** spread like cancer – infecting all of humanity both genetically and philosophically.⁴⁰

Noah preached with boldness and warns his generation of the Biblical danger of sexual sin with Angelic beings. Noah did not buy into the transhumanistic lies of **the Watchers** who promised advanced technology to the world.

These are the generations of Noah: Noah was a just man and perfect in his generations, and Noah walked with God.

Genesis 6:9

In Greek the word preacher (**kerux**), means “**one who announces**”. Noah became a proto-type of a Biblical high-level warrior. He revealed the light of God in a dark world. THIS call to spiritual warfare is central to the Gospel.⁴¹ Noah’s life reflects the Light of God and he was demonstrating **the image of God** in a fallen world.

In the spiritual warfare we are engaged in, it will be the manifestation of the glory of God, which will destroy the power of the devil. This spiritual war took tremendous steps of obedience for Noah. To obey was an intense fiery experience but the only way to deliver his family and the pure lineage from which the LORD was to be born. One of the keys to understand how the image of God will be corrupted in the last days is found in Daniel 2:43.

And whereas thou sawest iron MIXED with miry clay, they shall mingle themselves with the seed of men: but they shall not cleave one to another, even as iron is not mixed with clay.

Daniel 2:43 (emphasis added)

³⁹ II Peter 2:5.

⁴⁰ Genesis 6:5.

⁴¹ Mendez-Ferrell, Ana (2012) High-level Warfare. Ponte Vedra, Florida: Voice Of The Light Ministries, p.63, 86.

King Nebuchadnezzar had a dream about a large image fabricated from different kinds of metals. The mixed statue was crushed by a big rock.

Bible commentators Keil and Delitzsch note that the meaning of the mixed iron and clay represent the attempt to bind two distinct and separate materials into one combined whole, as fruitless and altogether in vain, two things that should not be mixed together.⁴² Iron and clay will not adhere.

As humankind move into unfamiliar technology that instigates a possible **resurrected human transformation**, the key to victory for believers is to keep your faith in and focus on God, not willing to compromise your flesh or that of your family for any temporal therapeutic benefits, but to stand up and *preach righteousness*.

Progressive abandonment of what we would call “**moral law**” based on Judeo-Christian values – is progressively giving way to the dead hand of the great planners and conditioners who would decide what men should biologically become. The serpent promised godlike abilities to those who partake in forbidden fruit; however, it seems that in 2012 and beyond, Transhumanism will come in the form of genetic engineering through advanced technology.

The cost of defiling our human DNA⁴³ will completely and finally destroy what is left of **the image of God** in humanity!⁴⁴

We are at war, if we like it or not. The question is if the believer is acquainted with the multi-dimensional sin war humanity is involved in. Believers can be either asleep on duty or actively engaged in a devastating spiritual sin war for the souls of this generation.

⁴² Hamp, Douglas (2011) *Corrupting the Image*. Defender Publishing LLC, pp. 171,173.

⁴³ Etymology: **DNA** – ‘*Deoxyribonucleic acid is a nucleic acid*’ containing the genetic instructions used in the development and functioning of all known living organisms. The DNS segments carrying this genetic information are called genes.

⁴⁴ See Book of Enoch, chapter 8.

A brilliant exegeses on the Systematic Exposition of the Biblical Doctrine of Sin and Evil is proof of the high-level warfare we are involved in, seen in the PhD of Prof Dr Brand:

“Unless we replace man’s value system of sin with God’s value system concerning TRUTH, we are not going to resist the evil emanating from the One-Word-Power/One-Word-Religion.”⁴⁵

3.1.3 THE THIRD SIGN OF THE END-TIMES: NOT ALL ANGELS FELL

The **friends** of Jesus Christ will unveil the *Good News* that God’s *covenant people* can turn back the plans of Nephilim through their *faith*.

The Bible reveals how faith can overcome the attack of the Nephilim on a nation through a young boy who knows and love the Lord above all.

King David is another excellent **proto-type of a Biblical high-level warrior**.⁴⁶ In the days of King Saul, the young son of Jesse, his Father sent the teenager named David on a mission. When he met the nine-foot-tall Nephilim warrior, Goliath, who challenges the armies of the God of Israel, David responded immediately to the lack of Israel’s faith and with nothing but a staff, a sling and five smooth stones, David emerged on the battlefield and ran towards the giant. When Goliath saw the youth approaching, he thundered, **“Am I a dog that you send a boy at me with a stick?”** After cursing in the name of his gods, he proclaimed that he would give David’s flesh as supper to the birds of the air and the beasts of the field. David reportedly answered:

⁴⁵ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2005) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence pertaining to the Structures and Strategies to Destruct Christianity-Involving the Theodicy of Darkness. Waterkloof, Pretoria: Un-Published, pp.1907-2211.

⁴⁶ Personal interview with Prof Dr Connie MJ Brand on *“The different Signs of the End-Times”* (2012).

Then said David to the Philistine, Thou comest to me with a sword, and with a spear, and with a shield: but I come to thee in the name of the LORD of hosts, the God of the armies of Israel, whom thou hast defied.⁴⁶ This day will the LORD deliver thee into mine hand; and I will smite thee, and take thine head from thee; and I will give the carcasses of the host of the Philistines this day unto the fowls of the air, and to the wild beasts of the earth; that all the earth may know that there is a God in Israel.

I Samuel 17:46

With that, David rushed forward and with one stone in his sling, hit Goliath at the centre of his eyes – where-after David beheaded the giant. If it is true that Goliath was a Nephilim and was defeated by a young servant of God, David, it can be seen as an analogy of the church of Christ in the End-times, as well. This too then is a prophetic symbol.

Like Saul's army later did, the children of Israel trembled at the sight of the sons of Anak – the giants of Nephilim – when the people of Israel camped along the southern border of Canaan and twelve spies were sent in to survey the land and found walled cities inhabited by Nephilim giants. In one of King David's writings we read what happened at this discovery.

Yea, they turned back and tempted God, and limited the Holy One of Israel.

Psalms 78:41

The Israelites insulted the Almighty God by trembling at the sight of the Nephilim – in utterly and hopeless despair they added that they were in their own eyes as grasshoppers and so were in the sight of others.⁴⁷

Only two of the spies had "***another spirit***" in them. They were trusting in God who would help those who eagerly wait on Him.⁴⁸ Joshua reveals the message of God in the Book of Joshua.

⁴⁷ Numbers 13:32-33.

⁴⁸ Isaiah 64:4.

Moses my servant is dead; now therefore arise, go over this Jordan, thou, and all this people, unto the land which I do give to them, even to the children of Israel. Every place that the sole of your foot shall tread upon, that have I given unto you, as I said unto Moses.

Joshua 1:2-3

God is seeking people who **trust** in Him wholeheartedly. The fact that God's people could prevail over the spirit of the Nephilim is an ageless reality, which proclaims that believers not only would survive at the End-time. They will also triumph over the inhuman threat represented by GRIN technology and the transhumanist agenda.⁴⁹

This will occur as believers recall specific Bible knowledge and engage in dynamic activity alongside with the angels of God.

Although Revelation 12 reveals that the great red dragon's tail drew a third part of the stars of heaven (angels) and cast them to the earth, the opposite is also true. ***The third sign of Noah encompass the good news that two thirds of the remaining angels in the kingdom of God's is used by God to assist the believers in our spiritual battle on earth.*** Angels has specific tasks in assisting preachers of righteousness and making known the manifold wisdom of God to the world.

4. THE SEED PLOT OF THE BIBLE

The implication of Genesis 3:15, is **WARFARE** between the **TWO SEEDS** and this **HATRED** was placed there as a **JUDGMENT** from God. The book of Genesis is called "**the seed book**" of the Bible and Genesis 3:15 is the most, probably the most important verse in the Bible, concerning the Seed Plot. This key turns the lock on the door of God's Word.⁵⁰

⁴⁹ Horn, Tom and Nita (2010) *Forbidden Gates*. Crane, Missouri: Published in USA, p. 263.

⁵⁰ Emashiser, Clifton A. *The Two Seeds of Genesis 3:15*.
(http://www.childrenofyahweh.com/Other%20Reading/two_seeds.htm)

And I will put ENMITY between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

Genesis 3:15 (emphasis added)

From the beginning, two opposing seed-lines have been operating in history. It is evident in the Four Gospels, that the satanic seed-line repeatedly attempt to refute and destroy Jesus Christ and His Truth. The denominational Church and most Bible Scholars have spiritualized the literal truth of Genesis 3:15 – divorcing themselves from the reality taught therein.

Prof Dr Brand notes: *“The seed of the Serpent constitutes a literal, flesh and blood people, who are determined to claim the dominion of this earth to the glory of Satan. The Bible provides no neutral ground for anyone; therefore our world today is divided between the left and the right side of Genesis 3:15. You either stand on the right of Genesis 3:15 on the side of the children of the Kingdom, the children of Light, the true SEED-LINE of Adam, Shem, Eber (Hebrews) and Abraham, Isaac and Jacob-Israel, or you stand on the left side of Genesis 3:15 on the side of SATAN and the anti-Christ minions that have gathered there at this consummation of the ages... Today this conflict between the two opposing factions of Genesis 3:15 is reaching the grand finale of the ages.”*⁵¹

4.1 THE ETYMOLOGY OF THE WORD ‘ENMITY’

The Hebrew word for enmity is **“*hbya or ayab* (#342; #340)”, meaning “*hostility; hatred; to hate; one of an opposite tribe; hence to be hostile; to be an enemy.*”⁵²**

⁵¹ Brand, Connie Prof Dr (2006) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence pertaining to the Structures and strategies to destruct Christianity: Involving the Theodicy of Darkness (Three Volumes). Waterkloof, Gauteng: Un-Published, pp. 610- 615.

⁵² Strong’s, James (1890) Strong’s Exhaustive Concordance of the Bible. Hendrickson Publishers.

4.2 THE ETYMOLOGY OF THE WORD 'SEED'

The Hebrew word "**seed**" as seen in Genesis 3:15, is "**ZERA**", meaning "sees, sowing, offspring, semen, virile, descendants, posterity and children". The word originated from the word "**zara** (#2232)", meaning "to sow, producing or yielding seed, to become pregnant, to be sown". The Greek word "**sperms**" are talking about "**gametes**", reproductive material - in women it is the Ovum and in men it is the sperm. The genetic material, (information) provide the twenty three chromosomes / genetic DNA code.

The crucial point of Genesis 3:15 is that both the serpent and the woman were to have seed. Modern Theologians identified that the SEED of the woman was the promised Messiah, Jesus Christ.

Douglas Hamp refers to the two records of Jesus' Biblical genealogies: The Bible refers to Jesus the Messiah as coming genetically from the seed of David. Matthew's account gives Jesus' line through his adopted father, Joseph and from Luke's account that Jesus is a blood descendant of David by way of Mary's line. To understand genetics and Information Technology will help us to understand why Scripture reveals that we are corrupted. Our DNA is the source code of humanity and it is the essence of the "**seed**".⁵³

5. THE WATCHERS / "SONS OF GOD" AND THE SECOND REBELLION

The earliest records of civilization tell of an era when powerful beings mingled themselves with woman on earth.

The Interlinear Hebrew Bible (IHN) interpreted Genesis 6:2 as, "**The sons of God**" saw the daughters of Adam that they were fit extensions (emphasis added)."

⁵³ Hamp, Douglas (2011) *Corrupting the Image*. United States of America: Defender Publishers, pp. 68, 72.

The book of I Enoch, gave a name to “**the sons of God**” involved in the cosmic conspiracy, calling them “**Watchers, [the b’nai ha Elohim]**”.⁵⁴ The “**Watchers**” departed their proper habitation assigned to them by God, which led to divine penalization. The book of Jude also describes this rebellious envy against God authority.

And the angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation, he hath reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day.

Jude 1:6

The Watchers were not part of Satan’s rebellion – they however, created their own rebellion by deciding to leave their abode and go to the earth to cohabit with human women.

The questions arise, “*Why does not the Church ever address this issue? Why did they try to cover it up by leaving the book of Enoch out of the canon version of the Bible and then manipulate the meaning of **the sons of God**?*”⁵⁵

The Septuagint (Hebrew Old Testament) and the Torah translate the term **sons of God** as **angels** and thereby creates one of the most disturbing doctrinal dilemmas for the church, ever.

The Bible however, also, defines the term **sons of God**, with angelical beings or fallen angels and Job mentioned the sons of God a few times in correlation to angelical beings. The Targum of Jonathan is very poignant in just how the sons of God are and even mentions them by name: Schmchazai and Uzziel, who fell from heaven, were on the earth in those days; and also after the sons of the Great had gone in with the daughters of men.

⁵⁴ I Enoch 10:3-8.

⁵⁵ Shriner, Sherry (2005) Bible Codes Revealed, The Coming UFO Invasion. USA: Universe, p.35.

Josephus, the premier Jewish historian of the first century without whose work we would know very little concerning the fall of Jerusalem, specifically states that it was angels who mingled their seed with women. *“For many angels of God accompanied with women and begat sons that proved unjust and despisers of all that was good, on account of the confidence they had in their own strength; for the tradition is these men did what resembled the act of those whom the Grecians call giants.”*⁵⁶

Bible commentators who rejected this view readily acknowledge the fact that the precise term is clearly defined in Scripture.

Specialized research of the Biblical scholar, Gary Stearman revealed in the recent edition of *Prophecy in the News* magazine, stating how the manifestation of these powers is quickening now because the world is under conditions ***in which the influence of God's Holy Spirit is diminishing.***⁵⁷

Deffinbaugh argues⁵⁸ that the Bible stipulates that angels are sexless, but the question derives if this statement is really true?

Jesus answered and said unto them, Ye do err, not knowing the Scriptures, nor the power of God. For in the resurrection they neither marry, nor are given in marriage, but are as the angels of God in heaven.

Matthews 22:29-30

Jesus compared men in heaven to angels in heaven. Neither is referred to as sexless in heaven, though, the text actually highlights the fact that in heaven there will be no marriage. Where a reference to angels is given in the book of Genesis, they can assume a human-like form. It is also assumed that their sex is masculine. Two passages in the New Testament refer to this incident and support this view.

⁵⁶ Josephus, *Antiquities of the Jews* Book 1, Chapter 3.

⁵⁷ Stearman, Gary (2010) *The Extraterrestrial Question. “Prophecy in the News magazine”*: Edition, March 2010, p.10. See also Socio-Economics History Block: <http://socioecohistory.wordpress.com/2011/01/15/tom-horn-gary-stearman-la-marzulli-the-secret-alien-agenda-return-to-the-days-of-noah-nephilim-alien-human-hybrids-the-enttimes-grand-deception/>

⁵⁸ Deffinbaugh, Robert L (2005) *The Sons of God and the Daughters of Men (Genesis 6:1-8)*. (http://www.bible.org/page.asp?page_id=67)

For if God did not spare angels when they sinned, but cast them into hell and committed them to pits of darkness reserved for judgment.

II Peter 2:4

And angels who did not keep their own domain, but abandoned their proper abode, He has kept in eternal bonds under darkness for the judgment of the great day.

Jude 6

5.1 THE APPEARANCE OF THE NEPHILIM ON EARTH FOR THE FIRST TIME

The Hebrew word Nephilim comes from the root “**nephal**” meaning “to fall”. Those who used to interpret the passage in Genesis of the fall of angels, were accustomed to render Nephilim fallers, rebels, and apostates. The word Nephilim was used in classical Greek literature to refer to men or creatures that were half god and half man.⁵⁹

The ancient Greek version of the Hebrew Old Testament (the LXX or Septuagint) *refers to the word “Nephilim” as the part-human offspring of the Watchers.* The word was translated as “**gegenes**” – a word which implies to be “**earthborn**”. These half bred creatures were physically giants – perhaps mentally as well – therefore established themselves as *men of renowned* for their physical competence and military might.⁶⁰

Thomas Horn argues⁶¹ that it seems that after the bodies of NEPHILIM (demons) were wiped out by the flood, their spirits did not go to Sheol – but, they attached themselves to the earth – waiting to inhabit flesh. When looked at the wild man of Gadara in Mark 5:8, Jesus set him free of an **unclean spirit** that tormented him.

⁵⁹ Hamp, Douglas (2011) *Corrupting the image.* Printed in United States of America: Defender Publishers, p. 143.

⁶⁰ Horn, Tom and Nita (2010) *Forbidden Gates.* Crane, Missouri: USA, p.181.

⁶¹ Horn, Thomas (2011) *Pandemonium’s Engine.* Crane, MO: USA, p. 350-352.

The unclean spirit who was roaming the mountains during the day, crying and weeping; and was cutting himself with stones giving a blood offering to his tormentors by night. Could it be that a *tormentor spirit* by implication means that a *demon* has attached itself to the man?

It is more probable that the unclean demon spirits – who recognized Jesus Christ as the Son of God, feared that Jesus Christ would command them to leave the body of the man of Gadara – that it could be the madman of Gadara himself that recognized Jesus as the Son of God. Could it be possible that demons fear losing access to physical bodies and will forever be banished to a netherworld to be eternally disembodied? If so, that could be enough reason for angelic hybrids (Nephilim) to work perpetually on a conspiracy plan to escape the judgment of God awaiting them at the second coming of God.

5.2 THE APPEARANCE OF THE NEPHILIM ON EARTH FOR THE SECOND TIME

When a person read about angelic hybridization returned after the Flood, it could be that angels continue *to fall* and that the spirits of such ***demons / Nephilim*** now plagued mankind – not only for habitation, but to recreate mankind through genetic manipulation.

And there we saw the giants, the sons of the Anak (Nephilim), which come of the giants: and we were in our own sight as grasshoppers and so we were in their sight.

Numbers 13:33

The Satanic seed-line multiplied and grew into a large body of people by the time Noah of the righteous seed-line is born into the earth.⁶² A synonym for the word *Seed-lines* is ***Bloodlines***.

⁶² Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2006) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence pertaining to the Structures and Strategies to destruct Christianity: Involving the Theodicy of Darkness (Three volumes). Pretoria, Gauteng: Un-Published, p.644.

The Greek word given for Nephilim, “**gegenes**” meaning “*breed or kind*” suggested a genetic component to the creation of these giants.⁶³ While modern ethics prevents scientists from pursuing eugenics,⁶⁴ it is completely possible that modifications in human genetic components might create a very different being from human DNA.

Klein and Spears confirms the goal of the Nephilim: “*To see the big picture of the distant past, it is important to read the original Hebrew text, along with the book of Enoch. Noah and his family was the only being, which was not tainted by Nephilim blood or in alliances with them. By bringing Noah and his family through alone, God was saving humanity from total corruption and from total extinction in the God-breathed, Holy spirit-infused form He had originally made them. Although the bodies of the NEPHILIM were obliterated, their half-devil, half-human souls “lived” on, wandering the earth and were seeking habitation. THIS was the consequences of all the intentional SIN and sexual perversion.*”⁶⁵

The agenda of the disembodied Nephilim race are striving for their lost humanity. All true humanity has authority over them – but in the Name of **Yeshua** alone. Demons feed on human’s sensations – regardless of the cost for the person. Devils desire and want your personality and the authority God gave humanity. Dealing with devils requires a lifestyle of prayer and fasting to establish authority in submission to the Almighty.⁶⁶

5.2.1 NIMROD, THE TOWER BUILDER AND POSSIBLE NEPHILIM

Nimrod was mythologized as **the god Apollo** by the Occult elite on the great seal of the United States detailed as Apollyon Rising 2012.

⁶³ Quayle, Stephen (2008) *Giants: Master Builders of Prehistoric and Ancient Civilizations*. Bozeman, MT: End Time Thunder Publishers, p. 129.

⁶⁴ **Etymology: Eugenics** is the creation of more perfect **supermen** by modifying human genetic components

⁶⁵ Klein, John and Spears, Adam (2005) *Devils and Demons and the Return of the Nephilim*. Bend, OR: Xulon Press Publishers, pp. 77-78.

⁶⁶ Matthew 17:14-21.

The Biblical historical information of Nimrod can be read in Genesis 10:8. Not much is known of Nimrod – only that his father was Cush and that he “**began to grow**” to be a mighty warrior on the earth. The Hebrew word for “**began**” is “**chalal**”, meaning “*to become profound, defiled, polluted, or desecrated ritually, secularly or genetically*”. Is it possible that Nimrod began to change - was in transit to be changed - into a **gibbor / gibborim**? A *gibbor / gibborim* are an offspring of a Nephilim.

5.2.2 REACHING FOR HEAVENS, TOWERING MONUMENTS TO STRANGE GODS

Texe Marrs gave a profound explanation of the devious nature of **Nimrod**: The Tower of Babel was built by Nimrod and his queen, Semiramis with an instructive goal for the end-time – reaching into the heaven. Was this not the sin of **pride** (*hubris*)?⁶⁷

The question arises as to why to seek and supplicate the great God in heaven, why build a tower to reach unto heaven. With a desire to be gods and a **goal to marry heaven and earth** – to fuse the Cosmic Order, to melt the terrestrial and the celestial. They tend not only to build a city but to build a tower (monument) too, which will stamp Babylon as a great, earthly kingdom and power of renowned reputation to demonstrate their majesty and **grandeur**. The builders reasoned that the construction of a tower was necessary, **lest they be scattered abroad upon the face of the whole earth**.

This **goal for unity**, symbolized by the Tower of Babel – was their ultimate purpose. We thus find an alchemically volatile combination of reason for the grandiose city and tower (monument) projects:

⁶⁷ Marrs, Texe Prof (2008) *Mysterious Monuments: Encyclopaedia of Secret Illuminati Designs, Masonic Architecture and Occult Places*. Austin, Texas: RiverCrest Publishing, pp. 478-482.

An excess of human pride, a **haughty spirit of rebellion** against the true God, the desire to claim a name and a kingdom and the quest to spiritually and physically unify the people, creating “**Ordo Ab Chao** (Order out of Chaos)”. On top of this, the Occult object of pursuing spiritual equilibrium, the making of “**as above So Below**” a reality, was paramount: the alchemical marriage of heaven and earth – reaching unto the heavens.

Interesting how God well understood the rationale behind this ancient, pre-Weishaupt Illuminati building project and how He took appropriate action to end their E Pluribus Unum (Out of Many, One) scheme.⁶⁸

5.2.3 NIMROD, THE FIRST ANTI-CHRIST

The story of Nimrod (Gilgamesh / Apollo / Osiris) in the book of Genesis may illustrate how this could happen through genetic influence that integrates with a host genome and rewrites the living specimen’s DNA, thus making it a “**fit extension**”.

And Cush begat Nimrod: he began to be a mighty one in the earth.

Genesis 10:8

Annette Yoshiko Reed declares in the Cambridge University book, *Fallen Angels and the History of Judaism and Christianity* that, the Nephilim of Genesis 6:4 are grouped together with the gibborim as the progeny of the Watchers and human woman.⁶⁹

The third part of this text says that the change started of Nimrod, while he was on earth. It can be appropriate to say that, ***Nimrod began to change genetically, becoming a gibborim, the offspring of watchers on earth.***⁷⁰

⁶⁸ Genesis 11:5-9.

⁶⁹ Reed, Annete Yoshiko (2005) *Fallen Angels and the History of Judaism and Christianity: The Reception of Enochic Literature*. Cambridge, p.214.

⁷⁰ Horn, Thomas Dr (2009) *Apollyon Rising 2012*. Crane Missouri: Defender, p.195.

This happens in the same way a person began to be a diabetic in Biology, just so Nimrod was *in transit* and began to be a mighty one / gibborim. It triggered a **genetic inheritance**, which began to change him powerfully in a metabolic way. It can be possible that a person can be a carrier of genetic mutation, which only increases the risk of developing the particular disease; however, it will only be triggered due to an earlier lifestyle.

One of the Hypotheses pertaining to this research inquires the following: Can the transformation indicated in the life of Nimrod be “*something similar about his genetics, DNA or bloodline that turned on the change because of a sexually depraved lifestyle?*” Could it be possible that such a type of genetic rewriting is implied in Genesis 10:8? As soon as Nimrod *began to be*⁷¹ a **mighty one** (a violent one) in the earth, he began to build the tower of Babel, whose top would **reach unto heaven** (**Shamayim**, meaning the abode of God).⁷²

Several historical records confirmed that Nimrod was also identified by various ancient cultures as Osiris, Orion, Apollo and Gilgamesh building the Tower of Babel in an attempt **to ascend** into the “*presence of God*”.

God profoundly said that Nimrod’s plan was accomplishable. The question derived if Nimrod’s *spiritual eye* has opened to realities that are outside man’s normal mode of perception.

The Hebrew word for Babel implies **the gate of God** or **the gateway to God**. Numerous records appear to substantiate the idea that heaven could be trained on high towers or mountainous locations.⁷³ An example of meeting places with God on maintains includes Sinai, Mount of Lives, and Mount Hermon.

⁷¹ Symptoms of Demonization: pp. 171 -172. No human being can be changed into a Nephilim.

⁷² Genesis 11:4.

⁷³ Horn, Thomas Dr (2009) Apollyon Rising 2012. Crane Missouri: Defender, p.197.

5.3 DEMON'S, PLAGUING MANKIND

The book of Job revealed that Satan has the power to plague mankind. In a Divine Council Meeting of God, Satan appeared, but not to worship God, just the contrary – to accuse the creation of God. Satan bluntly insulted God, saying that Job only loves God because God protects and provides for Job and his family.⁷⁴

Klein and Spears argues that the bottom line of their teaching integrates perfectly with Scripture:⁷⁵ We know that ***mythological systems of belief*** spring from every corner of the world, having many roots and tell variations on common stories however, they all tell the same story of gods having sex with human women and produce offspring that became *heroes* and *great men of renown*. Tragically, many polytheistic religions rooted in mythology, having been handed down through the generations are still with us. Their *sacred stories* attempt to convince mankind that other beings are the *real gods*.

The truth is precisely opposite, that these *great men of renown* are not created by God at all, but are Satanic inspired beings. All these satanic initiatives will lead humanity directly into counter-covenants with Satan – IF we do not discern the difference between godly and satanic creations. In the time of Yeshua, the book of Enoch was part of the Hebrew Scripture! The Rabbi's of that era were most familiar with it – as with the rest of Scripture.

But these, as natural brute beasts, made to be taken and destroyed, speak evil of the things that they understand not; and shall utterly perish in their own corruption; And shall receive the reward of unrighteousness, as they that count it pleasure to riot in the day time. Spots they are and blemishes, sporting themselves with their own deceiving while they feast with you.

II Peter 2:12-13

⁷⁴ Job I:7-9.

⁷⁵ Klein, John and Spears, Adam (2005) *Devils and Demons and the Return of the Nephilim*. Bend, OR: Xulon Press Publishers, pp. 77-78.

And Enoch also, the seventh from Adam, prophesied of these, saying, Behold, the Lord cometh with ten thousands of his saints, To execute judgment upon all, and to convince all that are ungodly among them of all their ungodly deeds which they have ungodly committed, and of all their hard speeches which ungodly sinners have spoken against him. These are murderers, complainers, walking after their own lusts; and their mouth speaketh great swelling words, having men's persons in admiration because of advantage.

Jude 1:14-16

5.3.1 THE END-TIME ONSLAUGHT OF DEVILS AND DEMONS⁷⁶

Scripture reveals that mankind could experience an End-Time renaissance of the influence of Nephilim. The Nephilim – offspring of ***the Watchers*** were bred as a result of the ***rebellious union*** between human females and fallen angels – the “***sons of God [b’nai ha Elohim]***” – just as it was in the days of Noah, before ***the great flood***.⁷⁷ This implies an onslaught of sexual degradation by angelical beings.⁷⁸

Former college professor Dr IDE Thomas in his recommended book, ***The Omega Conspiracy***, journals the rapid increase of so-called ***Alien Abduction*** activity and considers it ***End-Time Prophecy*** concerning the return of the Nephilim. Documentation by ***abductees*** worldwide and the stories of DNA harvesting by ***aliens*** led Dr Thomas to conclude that the identity of the Watchers and whoever ***the alien entities*** are – is in someway connected. The need for human and animal molecule matter would explain why animals have been killed, mutilated, and stolen by aliens.⁷⁹

UFO researcher, DR Jacques F Vallee, raised similar questions: “***These entities require a source amount of energy – a human medium – in order to materialize. Our sciences have not reached a point where they can offer us any kind of working hypothesis for this process.***

⁷⁶ See the difference between Devils and Demons: pp257-258.

⁷⁷ Genesis 6:4.

⁷⁸ Horn, Tom and Nita (2010) *Forbidden Gates*. Crane, Missouri: USA, p.181.

⁷⁹ Thomas, IDE Dr (2007) *The Omega Conspiracy: Satan’s last Assault on God’s Kingdom*. Anomalos Publishing LLC.

*We [Vallee] can speculate that these beings need living energy, which they can reconstruct into physical form. A possibility exists that these ultra terrestrials used the living cells of those animals to create a manifest of themselves in visible forms.*⁸⁰

American researcher Sherry Shriner argues that the Bible says that in the last days it will be a time of mass hybridization and the mixture and corrupting of human DNA by fallen angels known as Aliens. The government is and has been, conditioning the existence of Aliens through Hollywood, science fiction, cartoons and other sources. However, they are not telling you the whole truth.⁸¹ The tragedy is that the Enemy used the Occult world-backed Walt Disney, to bring the message of *Alien-beings* to children, example E.T.

Specialized research has revealed that since 1947 the world has become aware of a world-wide phenomenon that refuses to go away.⁸² UFO's have been seen in the skies and on the ground all over the world for decades. UFO's/Aliens have been studied by researchers from all walks of life. Those who make an open-minded study of the subject conclude that it is real, that it is physical and that it is tremendously important.

The world's most profound expert on UFO's and Alien Abduction, Dr David M Jacobs wrote: *Everything that Aliens do is logical, rational and goal-oriented. With the use of the superior technology, both physical and biological, they are engaging in the systematic and clandestine physiological exploitation. Perhaps alteration of human beings for the purpose of passing on their capabilities to progeny who will integrate into the human society and without doubt, control it. Their agenda is **self-centred**, not human-centred, as would be expected from a program that stresses reproduction.*⁸³

⁸⁰ Vallee, Jacques (1975) *The Invisible College: What a Group of Scientists Has Discovered About UFO Influences on the Human Race.* New York: Dutton, p. 1975.

⁸¹ Shriner, Sherry (2005) *Bible Codes Revealed, The Coming UFO Invasion.* USA: iUniverse, p.34.

⁸² Hamilton, FW (2002) *The New Evidence Cosmic Top Secret: America's Secret UFO Program,* USA: Timothy Green Beckley, p.5.

⁸³ Jacobs, DM (1998) *The Threat, Revealing the Secret Alien Agenda,* New York: Simon & Shuster, p.257.

Record of antiquity confirms the ability of the offspring of the Watchers (Nephilim) to turn to physical form at particular moments in time. The relationship between the **Rephaim**⁸⁴ and the **Nephilim** is important. The rephaim were associated with the “**shades of the dead**”, including Nephilim in *Sheol*. The meaning of the word “**rephaim**” is especially relevant, as it carries with it the idea “*to heal*” or “*to be healed*” as a “*resurrection*” from the place of the dead, Sheol-Hades.

In Hebrew, the **seraphim** were powerful angels whose name combined **ser**, meaning “*a higher being or angel*”, and **rapha**, to “*heal*”. This connotes *angels of healing* or *those that can be healed*. The rephaim may therefore be considered the seraphim, which followed Lucifer in the fall.⁸⁵

The Book of Daniel speaks of such a mixture of **miry clay** pertaining to the forth Kingdom of the Last days. Nebuchadnezzar had a dream of a statue of a man, which symbolize ten nations or states (ten kings, ten horns). He relates the ten toes as being mixed with miry clay. The toes of the kingdoms are partly strong and partly broken. Such a mixture can be nothing else other than man. The miry clay is Nephilim (Aliens).

In the Ras Shama text, the rephaim were described as demigods who worshipped the Amorite god Baal, the ruler of the underworld. When rephaim died, their spirits went into the underworld where they joined Baal’s acolyte assembly of lesser gods, kings, heroes and rulers. These beings had the power to return from the dead through reincarnation into bodily form as *Nephilim*.

Moses notes the Rephaim giants as being the return of the pre-historic Nephilim - the Rephaim giants that have been destroyed in the flood. The prophet Isaiah may have considered this Amorite dogma factual and that he tied the power of these beings to the king of Babylon and Lucifer himself. After prophesying against the Babylonian leader, Isaiah says in parallel to Rephaim Theology:

⁸⁴ **Rephaim** are giant occupants of Canaan of which Og, King of Bashan whose bed was eighteen feet long, belonged.

⁸⁵ Horn, Thomas Dr (2009) *Apollyon Rising 2012*. Crane Missouri: Defender, p.191.

“**Hell** / Sheol-Hades” from beneath is moved for thee to meet thee at they coming: it stirred up the dead (rapha); (rapha) for thee, even all the chief ones of the earth; it raised up from their thrones all the kings of the nations. And they shall speak and say unto thee, Art thou also become weak as we? Art thou become like unto us?⁸⁶

Isaiah perceived beyond the rephaim who their Baal actually was and identified him as **Lucifer, son of the morning**.⁸⁷ In Job 26:5 it seems as if the Bible agrees with the idea of Luciferian power that can, under some circumstances – return Rephaim from the underworld to physical bodies known as **Nephilim**. Job notes that dead things are formed from under the water.

The dead in this text are referring to rapha (raphaim) and the phrase “*are formed*” is from “**chuwf**”, meaning to twist or whirl as in a double helix coil or genetic manufacturing. The startling implication is that beneath the surface of the earth, agents of darkness await the moment of their return.⁸⁸

Brilliant exposition of the Alien abduction can be read in the Philosophiae of Doctor’s degree of Prof Dr Connie Brand: “**Exoteric and Esoteric**” Evidence pertaining to the Structures and Strategies to destruct Christianity: Involving the Theodicy of Darkness (Volume III).⁸⁹

5.3.2 MODERN ATTEMPTS TO BUILT A “TOWER OF BABEL” WORLD ORDER

According to Archaeologists, the Sumerians/Babylonians founded **Babylon** in the late third millennium B.C. Its original name was the **Tower of Babel**. According to Biblical accord, the Tower was built during the reign of King Nimrod – the first King of Babylon.

⁸⁶ Isaih 14:9-10.

⁸⁷ Isaih 14:12.

⁸⁸ Horn, Thomas Dr (2009) Apollyon Rising 2012. Crane Missouri: Defender, p.193.

⁸⁹ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2006) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence pertaining to the Structures and Strategies to destruct Christianity: Involving the Theodicy of Darkness (Three volumes). Pretoria, Gauteng: Un-Published, p.1621.

As Richard Vizzutti notes that the End-Time empire will be a coming together of the military forces of evil. This empire will be called Babylon, *The Great* as seen in the book of Revelations.⁹⁰ Everything that is revealed of Nimrod in Scripture centres on around the building of the Tower.⁹¹ The Bible reveals a dominant **city in the Last-days** that is a major center of commerce that will be destroyed in our time. As to the meaning of Mystery Babylon, the Great, most of the Church will tell you that it refers to the Romans Catholic Church.

5.3.2.1 MYSTERY, BABYLON THE GREAT, MOTHER OF HARLOTS

Many famed scholars content that Mystery, Babylon the Great, Mother of Harlots is a Church (religious system) and not a city. The Apostle Paul refers to the Church as ‘a *Mystery*’ and in Book of Ephesians. That Christ was to have a *Bride* was first revealed to the Apostle Paul in Ephesians 5:23-32 as well as in Revelation 21:9-10, while ‘*the Mystery*’ that **the Anti-Christ is to have a Bride** was first revealed to the Apostle John and described in Revelation 17.

The interpretation of Larkin gave much insight to the mystery of the **Great Harlot**.⁹² The name of the **Anti-Christ’s bride** is **Babylon the Great**. It is important to note that **the inhabitant** of the city is the bride, and not the city itself. Mystical Babylon the Great, is not a literal city, but a system – **a religious and apostate System**. As the Church, the Bride of Christ, is composed of regenerated followers of Christ, so – Mystery, Babylon the Great – the bride of the Anti-Christ, will be composed of the **followers of all False Religions**. Babel, or Babylon was built by Nimrod as seen in Genesis 10:8-10. It was the seat of the Great Apostasy – here the Babylonian Cult was invented – a system claiming to have the highest wisdom and to hide its esoteric secrets.

⁹⁰ Vizzutti, Richard (2003) *Return of the Stargods*. Canada: Trafford Publishing, p.201.

⁹¹ <http://www25.brinkster.com/lowestroom/watchers/fallen.html>, p.16.

⁹² Larkin, Clarence (1918) *Dispensational Truth*. Glenside, Pa: Rev. Clarence Larkin Est., p.140.

Before a member could be initiated into the Babylonian cult, he had to “confess” to the priest – which afterwards had such a person in his power. This is the secret of the power of the Priest of the Roman Catholic Church today.

According to the view of Amanda Buys,⁹³ the goal of the spirit of harlotry is to infiltrate a believer’s life. Clearly, introspection on the believers’ personal life, his/her habits, attitudes and actions is of cardinal essence – looking and identifying the form of **Jezebel the Great Harlot** in a spiritual sense. This spirit is living in “*the false Trinity, the false king, false priest or the false prophet*”. God calls his children to *come out of Babylon*. The Great Harlot will mix/combine the world government with the Kingdom of God.⁹⁴

The Wycliffe Bible Dictionary refers to Babylon the Great, the Mother of Harlots in Revelation 17 as symbolic for all *pagan systems*. In certain passages of the OT the concept of Babylon emerges into an **archetypal figure for the proud**. In the NT it is even more clearly a type of pan-deism formed from a **synthesis of Christianity and paganism**; this is indicated symbolically in the description of the woman riding on the Beast as seen in Revelation 17.

And there came one of the seven angels which had the seven vials, and talked with me, saying unto me, Come hither; I will shew unto thee the judgment of the great whore that sitteth upon many waters: With whom the kings of the earth have committed fornication, and the inhabitants of the earth have been made drunk with the wine of her fornication. So he carried me away in the spirit into the wilderness: and I saw a woman sit upon a scarlet coloured Beast, full of names of blasphemy, having seven heads and ten horns. And the woman was arrayed in purple and scarlet colour, and decked with gold and precious stones and pearls, having a golden cup in her hand full of abominations and filthiness of her fornication: And upon her forehead was a name written, MYSTERY, BABYLON THE GREAT, THE MOTHER OF HARLOTS AND ABOMINATIONS OF THE EARTH.

Revelations 17:1-5

⁹³ Buys, Amanda (2012) *The Defiled Bride: Harlotry and Idolatry. We are all Guilty.* Panorama, Cape Town: Self-Published, pp.58-71

⁹⁴ Revelation 17:9,18. “*And the woman that you saw is herself the great city which dominates and control the rulers and the leaders of the earth.*”

In the Apostle John's day the city Rome was the contemporary embodiment of Babylon – built on seven hills, while blasphemous names was given to Roman emperors. But Babylon is more than the Rome of history. It prefigures the ***apostate ecclesiastical system of the End Time***,⁹⁵ as well as the political power of the Anti-Christ. It is a ***demonic Kingdom***, the habitation of demons and the haunt of every unclean spirit.⁹⁶

In this demonic Kingdom, will the *Mystery of Iniquity*⁹⁷ work. See Chapter Four, *Iniquity, the Root of All Evil, the seat of the Great prostitute.*

5.3.2.2 THE SEAT OF THE GREAT PROSTITUTE

The city of Babylon continued to be the seat of the Satan. In A.D. 378 the Head of the Babylonian Order became the Ruler of the *Roman Catholic Church*. Satan united Rome and Babylon into One Religious System. The worship of the Virgin Mary was set up in A.D. 381. All the major festivals of the Roman's Catholic Church are of Babylonian origin. All these festivals were a mystery in the Apostle John's days, since the "***Papal Church***" had not yet developed, although the "Mystery of Iniquity" was already at work. It is clear that the "Women, Babylon the Great, the Mother of Harlots" is the Roman's Catholic Church.⁹⁸

Amanda Buys give a clear overview of the Babylonian system: "***Babylon is the seat of the great Prostitute.*** *It is the fountainhead of all false religions in the Post-Flood world. All paganism, all idol worship, all mystery religions and secret societies have their roots in the **Babylonians legends** having to do with Nimrod, Semiramus and Tammuz.*

⁹⁵ Revelation 19:2.

⁹⁶ Pfeiffer, Charles F; Vos, Howard F; Rea, John (1999) Wycliffe Bible Dictionary. Peabody, Massachusetts: Hendrickson, p. 190.

⁹⁷ II Thessalonians 2:7.

⁹⁸ Larkin, Clarence (1918) Dispensational Truth. Glenside, Pa: Rev. Clarence Larkin Est., p.140.

Historic Babylon was founded in rebellion and the might of the flesh. *The lust for power is revealed through their rebellion, pride, self-will, self-exaltation, and the arrogance and presumption that holds that men could, by themselves, build the gateway to God. Fear led the Babylonians to build the religious tower to try to control their lives and their future, to make a name for themselves and to share the glory of God.*⁹⁹

5.3.3 LUCIFERIAN SCIENCE OF DEITY RESURRECTION

The Interlinear Hebrew Bible, it interpreted Genesis 6:2, and refers to the daughters of Adam and notes that they were fit extension to the **sons of God**. The Watchers wanted to leave their proper sphere of existence in order to enter earth's three-dimensional reality.

Apocryphal, pseudo-epigraphic, Jewish traditions related to this legged of the **watchers**, and mythologized accounts tell the stories of gods using humans to produce heroes of demi-gods (half-gods). When the ancient Greek version of the Hebrew Old Testament (the LXX or Septuagint) was written, the word Nephilim is used referring to the part-human offspring of the Watchers.¹⁰⁰ The word **Watchers** was translated as "**genes**", meaning "**earth born**".¹⁰¹

Stephan Quayle in his book, Genesis 6 Giants explains: "*The collective memories of myths, fables and fairy tales from various cultures and ages of mankind are overwhelming evidence that the Nephilim existed. This indicates that the Watchers not only modified human DNA during constructing the Nephilim, but animals as well and as such corroborates information given in the book of Enoch.*"¹⁰²

⁹⁹ Buys, Amanda (2012) Overcoming Jezebel, Athaliah & Belial in the heavenlies: Renunciation for Babylon – Sarah Victor. Gauteng, SA: Self-Published, pp.139-165. (www.kanaanministires.org)

¹⁰⁰ Horn, Thomas Dr (2009) Apollyon Rising 2012. Crane Missouri: Defender, p.184.

¹⁰¹ Etymology: **Gilgamesh** is born of two-thirds god and one-third human child (Lugalbanda and Ninsun).

¹⁰² Quayle, Stephan (2002) Genesis 6 Giants. End time Thunder, p.60.

JR Church points out that since such activity is satanic in nature; it refers to the “**seed of the Serpent**”. The concept of a reptilian race continues throughout the Bible as a metaphoric symbol of the devil.¹⁰³

Scripture refers to the term Dragon, with the implications that these other-world creatures were designed with the DNA code of a reptilian race. The most telling extra-biblical script is from the Book of Jasher.¹⁰⁴ It records the familiar story of the fall of the Watchers with additional details about something that only could be understood as advanced biotechnology, genetic engineering or trans-modification of species – crossing species boundaries by mixing incompatible animals of one species with the other. What is of significance is the ***motive of the Watchers*** for such a rebellion and assault through genetic alteration.¹⁰⁵ As previously mentioned:

- Some believe that the corruption of antediluvian DNA by Watchers was ***an effort to cut of the birth line of the Messiah***, which reveals that Satan understood the proto-evangelism – the promise in Genesis 3:15 – that a Saviour will be born who would destroy the fallen angels’ power. Satan’s followers intermingle with the human race in a conspiracy to stop the birth of Christ by corrupting human DNA – no Saviour could be born and humankind would be lost for ever. The universal flood indicates how widespread the altered DNA was in the days of Noah.
- The overriding motive of the Watchers should be understood within the context of their foremost goal, which was to leave their plane of existence and to enter humankind’s. The question to raise is: “***How blending its various species – provides the Watchers with a method of departure from high heaven and incarnation into man’s habitation.***”

Horn hypothesized that ***the Watchers try to blend species with a soulless and spiritless body*** into which they could apparently extend themselves, so to speak.

¹⁰³ Church, JR (2009) Article: Prophecy in the News magazine.

¹⁰⁴ The book of Jasher is referred to in the Bible in two texts: Joshua 10:13 and II Samuel 1:18.

¹⁰⁵ Horn, Thomas Dr (2009) Apollyon Rising 2012. Crane Missouri: Defender, pp.185-189.

Scripture reveals however that all creatures have their beginning in God, who ordered all **species to reproduce after its kind**, and that verifies what kind of spirit can enter into an intelligent being at conception. The divine order of God kept the Watchers from displacing the spirit of humans or animals with their own.

The Nephilim solution to their problem is to blend existing DNA of several living creatures and make something that neither the spirit of man or beast would enter at conception – for it was neither man nor beast. The research of many scholars deem that the Nephilim were thus probably **genetically manufactured beings created from the genetic material of various pre-existing animal species.**

Some adhere to the possibility that Fallen Angels did not personally interbreed with the daughters of men, but used their godlike intellect to delve into the secrets of YHWH's Creation and manipulate it to their own purposes. And the **key to creating or recreating man**, as we have (re)discovered in the twentieth century, *is the genome – the genetic DNA.*

6. THE BEAST (OUT OF THE EARTH) / THE ANTI-CHRIST EXPOSED

The Anti-Christ will probably be a Nephilim. The Biblical name for the Anti-Christ is Lucifer, King of Babylon or The Beast.

How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! how art thou cut down to the ground, which didst weaken the nations! For thou hast said in thine heart, I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God: I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north: I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the most High. Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit. They that see thee shall narrowly look upon thee, and consider thee, saying, is this the MAN that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms.

Isaiah 14:12-16 (emphasis mine)

Specialized research by Prof Dr Brand reveals that the **alien agenda** is clearly outlined in Scripture: *The use of the word man in this text is not by accident, nor is it lightly referring to a symbolic reference to Satan. It is possible that Satan will do what his counterparts, the “sons of God” did, in Genesis 6. Satan will come down and take a woman, thus incarnating himself as a man as a Nephilim.*

*The works of Satan and the writings of his human followers also confirm this interpretation. Occult dogma and doctrine would seem to confirm this interpretation from Scripture. This is why the demons from hell will mock him when he is finally cast into the pit. The question arises: **How did the NEPHILIM know they will be scattered?** The key lies hidden in Nimrod.*

*One of the secrets of Freemasonry (Luciferianism) is the belief that worship of Fallen Angels that came to earth and created a HOLY GRAIL (bloodline), which will eventually give the world the “**second Messiah [false]**”. The Freemasons deem that some of the offspring of this bloodline are Jesus Christ, Gatauma Buddha, Charlemagne, Constantine, the Merovingian dynasty, King Solomon, King Og of Bashan, Nimrod and Anak and his seven sons, to name a few. This is covert material and supposed to be kept highly secret. Those who are still alive from this bloodline are said to be the **Rothschild dynasty, the Habsburg’s and the Royal families**. The Father of the bloodline, (Nephilim) are referred to as Adepts or Hierophants or the Illuminated Ones and are communicated to through channelling (Spiritism).¹⁰⁶*

In the original Hebrew translation this offspring is called *Nephilim*, but the Greek translation changed it to *giants*. Modern Bibles also translated the word *Nephilim* to *giants*.

¹⁰⁶ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2006) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence pertaining to the Structures and Strategies to destruct Christianity: Involving the Theodicy of Darkness (Three volumes), Waterkloof, Pretoria: Un-Published, p. 1725.

The Great Flood was brought about by God to rid the Earth of this EVIL half-breed race called the **giants**, who were born through the wicked lineage of Cain and Fallen Angels, with the intent to prevent the pure seed-line from which the Messiah should be born. This seed-line provided liberation for all humanity through the blood of the Cross.

Like the book of Enoch, the Bible refers to the **Fallen Angels** as **Watchers**. The Bible would seem to use this term – Watchers – in a negative connotation and connect them to an invasion from a far country. When the Bible speaks of the End-times, Babylon is a central theme. Giants are mentioned in a variety of historical records.

The term **Watchers** appears in the Bible book of Daniel 4:13, 17 and 23. The term also appears in the non-canonical book of Jubilees. It is even used today as seen in Whitley Strieber's books on UFO material as being visitors into the human dimension, from another dimension. The Fallen Angels were cast down from Heaven to Earth due to their allegiance with Satan and had directly participated in his rebellion against Jehovah.

According to Dr Joye J Pugh, the Watchers and their sons – the giants – are mentioned in an Essenes manuscript that was found along with the famous *Dead Sea Scrolls*. This manuscript is called *the Damascus Document*.¹⁰⁷

In the first Century, Flavius Josephus wrote: *Many angels of God accompanied with women and begat sons. They became unjust on the account of the confidence they had in their own strength; for the tradition is that these men did what resembled the acts of those whom Grecians called giants.*¹⁰⁸

Commentators David Icke trace the word **Watcher** to the root:

¹⁰⁷ Oxford (1961) *Damascus Document, Manuscripts A: The Essene Writings from Qumran*, p.2: 17-19.

¹⁰⁸ Flavius, Josephus (1870) *Antiquities of the Jews I: The Works of Flavius Josephus*. London: Milner and Sowerby, p.3:1.

*“The existence of long-established links between Earth-bound humanity and beings from other dimensions and planets in the Universe has been suppressed for years, by the world’s power-broking Hierarchy.”*¹⁰⁹

Icke considers that when ordinary people learn the role they have to play within cosmic society, rebellion against those who have kept this extraordinary truth from them, will be inevitable.

It seems clear that the interpretation of Dr Joye J Pugh does justice to the meaning of the word **giant / Nephilim**. She notes that there can be no doubt that we are living in the last days spoken of in the Bible, as we are witnessing the Aliens’ promotion of nature worship through animal abduction.¹¹⁰ Not only have humans been used for experiments during UFO abductions, so have animals.¹¹¹

As prophesied, it will take the **Second Coming of Jesus** to rid the EVIL hold of Satan and his fallen angels on the world. Jehovah wanted the Spirit of Cain, which is the **spirit of selfishness** to be removed from the earth.¹¹²

The New-ager Wayne Herschel reveals relevant research material that confirm the existence of **“gods [most probably fallen Watchers or Nephilim – their offspring]”** that visited earth, in his book **“The Hidden Records”**: All Egyptian pyramids have ancient names, except the largest, which is called the **“Great Pyramid”** – also referred to as the **“Sun Pyramid of Ra”, the Cheops.**

¹⁰⁹ Icke, David (2004) *The Robots Rebellion*. Park West, Dublin: Gateway Publishers, p. viii.

¹¹⁰ Define: **Animal mutilations** have been occurring world-wide for sometime. Many cases are documented around the world from 1960. Research is ongoing that details facts about UFO sights and animal mutilation. While abducted humans are usually returned alive following medical probing aboard UFO’s, animals are returned to their pastures mutilated. From the incisions’ left on the animals’ maimed bodies, it appears they have also been exposed to some unknown form of probing. Mutilation are by no means a small problem. Numerous animals have been discovered throughout the world with what appears to be surgical intervention using an unknown heating element. Right before a mutilated animal is found by its owner, there is usually some type of UFO disturbance that is witnessed in the sky over the area of the mutilation site. Once the animal is found and its remains tested by vegetarians, their reports indicate that the animals are covered with strange cuts and incisions. Their examination of the remains indicate that the animal’s skin is typically burned along the edge of what appears to be surgical sites. The most unusual finding is the complete absence of blood within the animal’s veins, muscles and ligaments.

¹¹¹ Puch, Joye Jeffries Dr (2006) *Eden*. Mustang, OK: Tata Publishing, p.323.

¹¹² Puch, Joye Jeffries Dr (2006) *Eden*. Mustang, OK: Tata Publishing, p.305.

They deceptively belief, that the moment “**the head of a god**” was endowed with a sun-disc crown, the god’s name would be altered to “**Ra**”. In essence, the prime Egyptian “**Sun God Ra**” is the ram headed deity **Khum** most often depicted in his celestial ‘ship [spaceship]’.¹¹³

Apparently Herschel deems that the Egyptians and the Aztecs and the Mayans also claimed that their gods were from the stars and that they were actually visited by these “**gods**” in person. A Mexican legend has it that **Quetzacoatl** – a much-revered *serpent god*, who had left this world, would return again some day. Sound like the improvisation of religious accounts of the coming of the Messiah!

The question arises as to what link this deity have with a “**Cosmic Serpent**” who was the ultimate god of the Aztecs? These gods were identical in appearance to human beings. Perhaps his celestial ship incorporated an interpretation similar to that of the Egyptians (RA) of this strange phenomenon referred to as a “**Cosmic Serpent**”, which may have inspired this being to become known as “**the Serpent god**”.¹¹⁴

Wayne Herschel is of meaning: *All these irregularities lead me to believe that it is reasonable to assume that the human race is descendant from foreign genome. A gene lineage appears on this earth, which has been interpreted as “**Cro Magnon**”. It can be implicitly confirmed by the research that “**gods**” of physical form, were once quite prevalent in all the pyramid cultures. As already suggested, this is why I (Herschel) intentionally placed the word “**gods**” in inverted commas. Yes, they were advanced, but mortal... superhuman beings worshipped as having power over nature, performing **miracles** with their technology and intervening with human fortunes”.*¹¹⁵

¹¹³Herschel, Wayne (2003) *The Hidden Records*. Printed and bound by Printability, pp.43, 47. (thehiddenrecords.com web)

¹¹⁴ Herschel, Wayne (2003) *The Hidden Records*. Printed and bound by Printability, pp.59, 62. (thehiddenrecords.com web)

¹¹⁵ *Ibid.*, p. 265 (thehiddenrecords.com web)

From Scripture we learn that God will remove His own from the planet at **the End of Time** by means of the Rapture, though there are different theories as to when it will happen: pre-tribulation, mid-tribulation or post-tribulation Rapture.¹¹⁶

One thing is unchanged-able, the Church as the Body of Christ is representing God in His **image** and **likeness**¹¹⁷ and will play a unique role in the **End-Time**. If indeed Satan has initiated an extraordinary conspiracy to revive evil species-altering supernaturalism, “**as in the days of Noah**”, and assuming there is a gap between *the signs of Noah* and *the End-time* and *the Rapture* – the Church will be the only social influential power against which the gates of hell cannot prevail. True believers are to be the salt of the earth and the light in the darkness.

Secret Societies of today hold the identities of bloodlines that are said to be direct descendants of NIMROD and of the *gods*. This is the whole idea behind the so-called Holy Blood and Holy Grail or the Holy Bloodline.

This abominable belief and legend has been around for 4000 years, through the Egyptian, Assyrian, Romans, Greeks, etc, on up through the Merovingian kings and up through the Middle Ages. The Modern day Royal bloodlines of Europe, hold that they are the ancestors of those Merovingian’s, back to the time of Babylon, and beyond. It is clear that there is a peculiar connection between the Aliens that are reported today and the Giants of Ancient times.¹¹⁸

6.1 MYTHOLOGICAL VIEWS

Mythological views exposes in that ancient times includes the following.

¹¹⁶ De Lange, Susanna FM (2010) Master’s Degree: An Exposition of Biblical Spiritual Warfare pertaining to the Deception of the Uninformed Christian as Satan’s main Objective. Brits, Gauteng, Un-Published, pp.258-259.

¹¹⁷ Genesis 1:26-28

¹¹⁸ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2006) Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence pertaining to the Structures and Strategies to destruct Christianity: Involving the Theodicy of Darkness (Three volumes), Waterkloof, Pretoria: Un-Published, pp. 1874-1875.

6.1.1 ABADDON (HADES), THE DARK GOD OF THE UNDERWORLD

The Greek myth of Hades about the god of the underworld who fell in love with a beautiful woman called Persephone and the myth's connection to other deities and their ability to migrate between the spiritual and the physical worlds was dominant at the times of Christ. Both the Old and the New Testaments make it clear that behind Pagan idols personal evil exists, which seeks to connect with and mislead mankind.

Persephone became the upper world goddess of youth and happiness and the underworld queen of the dead – a role that depicted her as both good and evil. Pagans who believed such myth has created rituals according to their beliefs.

The New Testament rejects all rituals as demon worship, any sacrifices made, as sacrifices to devils.¹¹⁹

Scholars note that contrary to what contemporary Christianity interprets Babylon to be, an economic and spiritual system, it actually is a *physical place*. There are over 150 parameters identifying this Great Babylon of the last days related to the Tribulation period.

It is interesting that according to the Hebrew Dictionary the use of the word **great** refers to the word **Anakim**. This word is borrowed from the ancient Sumerian word **Annunakki** – whom were gods in the ancient Babylonian archetype of Gilgamesh. They were said to have been descended from the *skies*, mated with women produced **demi-gods** and then re-ascended after the flood. The word used here is *skies* (heaven) – but it is being used in reference to outer space and the universe at large.

Jeremiah links the “**locusts**” closely to the “**invasion of the Great Babylon**”.¹²⁰ These “**horn-like locusts**” are hidden now, but will be brought forth from there Cocoon (pupa). Their “**horns**” are directly associated with **Nephilim**.

¹¹⁹ I Corinthians 10:20.

Scripture reveals that this “**locusts**” will come from the bottomless pit – the abyss (**akris**) and they will be given power to torment humankind. The prince of the Abyss is called Abaddon. The locusts definitely refer to demonic beings – high up in the demonic hierarchy. They will be subordinate under four commanders and their head / prince is called Abaddon.

And the fifth angel sounded, and I saw a star fall from heaven unto the earth: and to him was given the key of the bottomless pit. And he opened the bottomless pit; and there arose a smoke out of the pit, as the smoke of a great furnace; and the sun and the air were darkened by reason of the smoke of the pit. And there came out of the smoke locusts upon the earth: and unto them was given power, as the scorpions of the earth have power. And it was commanded them that they should not hurt the grass of the earth, neither any green thing, neither any tree; but only those men which have not the seal of God in their foreheads. And to them it was given that they should not kill them, but that they should be tormented five months: and their torment was as the torment of a scorpion, when he striketh a man. And in those days shall men seek death, and shall not find it; and shall desire to die, and death shall flee from them. And the shapes of the locusts were like unto horses prepared unto battle; and on their heads were as it were crowns like gold, and their faces were as the faces of men. And they had hair as the hair of women, and their teeth were as the teeth of lions. And they had breastplates, as it were breastplates of iron; and the sound of their wings was as the sound of chariots of many horses running to battle. And they had tails like unto scorpions, and there were stings in their tails: and their power was to hurt men five months. And they had a king over them, which is the angel of the bottomless pit, whose name in the Hebrew tongue is Abaddon, but in the Greek tongue hath his name Apollyon. One woe is past; and, behold, there come two woes more hereafter. And the sixth angel sounded, and I heard a voice from the four horns of the golden altar which is before God, Saying to the sixth angel which had the trumpet, Loose the four angels which are bound in the great river Euphrates. And the four angels were loosed, which were prepared for an hour, and a day, and a month, and a year, for to slay the third part of men. And the number of the army of the horsemen were two hundred thousand thousand: and I heard the number of them. And thus I saw the horses in the vision, and them that sat on them, having breastplates of fire, and of jacinth, and brimstone: and the heads of the horses were as the heads of lions; and out of their mouths issued fire and smoke and brimstone.

¹²⁰ Jeremiah 51:27.

By these three was the third part of men killed, by the fire, and by the smoke, and by the brimstone, which issued out of their mouths. For their power is in their mouth, and in their tails: for their tails were like unto serpents, and had heads, and with them they do hurt. And the rest of the men which were not killed by these plagues yet repented not of the works of their hands, that they should not worship devils, and idols of gold, and silver, and brass, and stone, and of wood: which neither can see, nor hear, nor walk: Neither repented they of their murders, nor of their sorceries, nor of their fornication, nor of their thefts.

Revelation 9:1-21

Revelation 9 reveals their appearance to us – the power in their tails and their man/women/beast appearances. The inference is very subtle, but they look like serpents – as seen in Isaiah 14:29, which describe the fiery, flying, Serpent, the Nachas (Serpent/devil/Satan). The etymology of the word Serpent will be discussed later in Chapter Three.

For, behold, I will send serpents, cockatrices, among you, which will not be charmed, and they shall bite you, saith the LORD. When I would comfort myself against sorrow, my heart is faint in me. Behold the voice of the cry of the daughter of my people because of them that dwell in a far country: Is not the LORD in Zion? is not her king in her? Why have they provoked me to anger with their graven images, and with strange vanities?

Jeremiah 8:17-19

To conclude, it is possible that the watchers who will invade earth are genetically altered or modified HYBRIDS of all types, shapes and sizes.¹²¹

7. THE NEW FACE OF TRANS-HUMAN SPIRITUAL WARFARE

God created man in His own image and likeness, but SIN defiled man and his *image* was corrupted.

¹²¹ Brand, Connie Prof Dr (2006) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence pertaining to the Structures and strategies to destruct Christianity: Involving the Theodicy of Darkness (Three Volumes). Waterkloof, Gauteng: Un-Published, pp.1735-1741,1834.

The loved ones of the Lord Jesus Christ should strive to become shoulder to shoulder to Him, maturing into His very Image.¹²² The image of God however, does not only refer to His character and attributes, but also to His physical shape. The book of Revelation reveals God as a Holy Righteous God with eyes of fire, His voice is as the sound of many waters, in His mouth is the sharp two-edged sword to judge and divide, and His countenance is as the sun shining in its strength.¹²³ Before the fall when *the image* of humankind was untouched, humans were holy and had bodies of light, as God.¹²⁴ After God's Holy Spirit left them, the light source was broken and the image was corrupted.

Satan attempted to destroy *the image* of man, genetically with the Nephilim both before the flood and after the flood. Daniel prophesied of a mixing of seed (corruption of the image) in "***the End-Times***" as well.

The goal of Transhumanism is therefore to go beyond being human. Behind this genetic engineering and modern technology onslaught lays the spirit of transhumanism – ***Leviathan*** – the spirit of pride and arrogance.

This thesis built on the concept of the signs of the End-Time, suggesting that parallels between human-modification technology and what the ancient Watchers did in creating Nephilim may be no coincidence at all.

The question at stake for every living person on earth is: ***“Do you belief in Jesus Christ – that He is the Son of God? Or who will you follow?”***

Transhumanist, Richard Seed openly declared that, men are going to become gods.¹²⁵

¹²² I John 3:1-12.

¹²³ Revelations 1:12-18; Matthews 17:2.

¹²⁴ I John 1:5; Revelations 21:23; I John 3:2; Psalms 17:15; Ephesians 4:24; Philippians 3:21.

¹²⁵ See, Richard (2010) Retrieved from: (http://en.wikiquote.org/wiki/Richard_Seed)

Cloning and the mixing of human seed with animals is merely a stepping-stone to the final attempt of Satan to mingle his seed with the seed of a woman – the Anti-Christ will genetically be the son of Satan.

One example of this humanistic viewpoint is Prof Hugo De Garis, an artificial brain designer: *“It would be nice to be a god, a supremely powerful omnipotent being. I could be such a creature [soon]. It’s possible . It’s not an unattainable dream... All I can do here is attempt to convey some measure of the strength of **religious** feelings that I and other(s) will make public this century.”*¹²⁶

This thesis holds to the pre-millennial position that the LORD will return bodily to set up His thousand year reign on earth and will use it as the axiom to the discussion on trans-humanism, genetic engineering and the *Alien* deception. As stated previously, the alien phenomenon is in fact demons masquerading as intelligent forms from other parts of the universe, calculating to alter man’s way of thinking. The present wave of evil Supernaturalism includes a foremost deception. The effect upon mankind would be so successful that heresy and delusion would become firmly entrenched even within Christianity.

Now the Spirit speaketh expressly, that in the latter times some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to seducing spirits and doctrines of devils.

I Timothy 4:1

In accordance with Douglas Hamp, this Chapter will reveal part of the end-time **deception**. Apparently the message from the “**aliens**” and the New Agers are currently proclaimed that major earth changes and cataclysms are coming upon the earth. As a result, many will be removed from the earth in the twinkling of an eye by the “**aliens**” or will remain in the third dimension while everyone else moves into the fourth dimension.

¹²⁶ Horn, Tom and Nita (2010) *Forbidden Gates*. Crane, Missouri: Defender Publishers, pp.177.

Since the Rapture is implied, Satan has prepared for the event through the movies and through channellers receiving messages from aliens of the impending event. Because if **deception**, many will not look to God after the rapture, but to '**aliens**' posing as man's saviour.¹²⁷

New Age writer, Thelma Terrell, claims to have received messages from *Ashtar*, the leader of an **alien confederation**, concerning the evacuation of millions around the globe. Those familiar with the Bible will recognize Ashtar, as the same demon from Biblical times, called Asherah / Ashtoreth / Queen of Heaven.

Terrell notes that Ashtar has come back as an alien to warn the citizens on earth of the impending Rapture, but does not give the true reason for the Rapture. Ashtar has also noted that, "*earth changes will be the primary factor in mass evacuation of this planet.*"¹²⁸ The Aliens will presumably save lots of people.

The foretold **increase in demonism** and its **influence within secular and religious society** is rapidly unfolding now. The areas, which are contaminated most, are the following:

- Metaphysics (Philosophies and Science of the mind)
- Science and Technology – where genetic engineering and Transhumanism seems hell-bent on repeating what the **Watchers** did in the times of Genesis – giving birth to the spirits of Nephilim *as in the days of Noah*.¹²⁹

As seen previously, the seventh and most feared sign of the End-Times would *be the return of the spirit of the Nephilim*. To *mingle* nonhuman seed with humanity through alteration of human DNA while simultaneously returning NEPHILIM to earth – has been the inspiration of the **spirit of the Anti-Christ** ever since God hated the practice before the great Flood.

¹²⁷ Hamp, Douglas (2011) *Corrupting the Image*. Printed in the United States, pp. 202-203.

¹²⁸ Terrell, Thelma (1993) *Tuella, Project World Evacuation*. Inner Light Publications.

¹²⁹ Horn, Tom and Nita (2010) *Forbidden Gates*. Crane, Missouri: Defender Publishers, pp.178-179.

If Science is to resurrect dead Nephilim tissue through CLONING, it may include a lineage connection with the armies of Armageddon and the kingdom of the Anti-Christ.¹³⁰

- Apart from the assumption that the Anti-Christ can most probably be the “re-creation” of Nimrod (Apollo) as prophesied by the Apostle in II Thessalonians 2:3 and by Apostle John in Revelation 17:8, he will also be the forerunner of the return of the Nephilim. The Prophet Isaiah spoke of the return of these beings in Isaiah 13 and 14 as well as in Isaiah 19 - 22.
- The Bible portrays an ultimate End-Time Spiritual Warfare’ between the “Mythological Gods” and “Christ”. Zephaniah 2:1 and Jeremiah 46:25 declare however, that God will famish all gods of the earth. Human followers of pagan deities will join the conflict,¹³¹ uniting with the ***spirits of devils*** working miracles, who will finally gather them to the battle of the great day in a place called Armageddon.¹³²

7.1 EXTREME MEASURES PERTAINING TO SPIRITUAL WARFARE NEEDED IN THE END-TIMES

Science is about to transform and recreate humankind itself. Genetic engineering will have moral implications to such an extent that it will strip humanity off its *free will* and with it the prospect for Salvation. The question deriving is, “**How can Christians defend themselves and their loved ones against this deceitful End-Time onslaught?**” Except to obtain information, people should identify the schemes, structures and designs of Satan behind the “new transgenic revolution”, deliberately resist it and turn toward the one and only True God, the LORD Jesus Christ of Nazareth.

¹³⁰ Horn, Tom and Nita (2010) *Forbidden Gates*. Crane, Missouri: USA, pp.185-186, 191.

¹³¹ Revelations 9:20.

¹³² Revelations 16:13–14, 16.

It can be done by the following ways: (1) By the increase of knowledge about the “transgenic revolution,” its philosophies and the spirit behind it; (2) Through the increase of Biblical wisdom about it; (3) By our awareness about it; (4) and by taking our place in as warrior bride in God’s army – revealing all deception.

If we could see into the ***invisible domain***, we would find a world alive with good . against evil L. We are not alone in this battle. God’s heavenly angles are fighting alongside with us and they are twice as much as the fallen ones.

The Victory took place more than 2000 years ago on the cross of Calvary and through the resurrection power of our LORD. He is sitting in Heavenly places, waiting for his followers to turn every enemy into His footstool. He gave them all they need to live and to serve Him through His Holy Spirit. If they could pray and ask their God to reveal the war in the heavenlies to them, they would see their Heavenly helpers – just as Elijah prayed and the eyes of the young warriors with him was opened by the LORD.

And he answered, Fear not: for they that be with us are more than they that be with them. And Elisha prayed, and said, LORD, I pray thee, open his eyes, that he may see. And the LORD opened the eyes of the young man; and he saw: and, behold, the mountain was full of horses and chariots of fire round about Elisha. And when they came down to him, Elisha prayed unto the LORD, and said, Smite this people, I pray thee, with blindness. And he smote them with blindness according to the word of Elisha. And Elisha said unto them, This is not the way, neither is this the city: follow me, And it came to pass, when they were come into Samaria, that Elisha said, LORD, open the eyes of these men, that they may see. And the LORD opened their eyes, and they saw; and, behold, they were in the midst of Samaria.

II Kings 6:17-20

God also gave His followers HIS armour to clothe themselves and their love-ones, as seen in Ephesians 6. Every part of the armour implies a spiritual part of us that needs covering. It symbolizes the different areas that Satan is launching as onslaught on our *Divine Living*.

As Christians, believers should anew belief that Jesus Christ is sufficient for every need of them and they should make sure that they are covered with Him, daily:

His love and righteousness as their breast plate; His salvation as helmet for their thought-life; His Truth (Jesus Christ is the Truth) as our foundational Biblical principle girding their loins; His Gospel of peace as the shoes on their feet; His Word as Sword of the Spirit – in their hearts and in their mouths, and *Faith in Him* as our Protector and Saviour. As Christians we should be **immersed** in Jesus Christ our LORD and always pray with perseverance and supplication for all saints.

Finally, my brethren, be strong in the Lord, and in the power of his might. Put on the whole ARMOUR OF GOD, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places. Wherefore take unto you the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand. Stand therefore, having your loins girt about with truth, and having on the breastplate of righteousness; And your feet shod with the preparation of the gospel of peace; Above all, taking the shield of faith, wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked. And take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God: Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints; And for me, that utterance may be given unto me, that I may open my mouth boldly, to make known the mystery of the gospel, For which I am an ambassador in bonds: that therein I may speak boldly, as I ought to speak.

Ephesians 6:10 - 20

II Peter 1:3-11 reveals that God sufficiently provided a way through His Holy Spirit, and if we do sin in this process of being transformed (sanctification) we have our LORD Jesus Christ as our advocate, ready to present His sinless BLOOD to the Father, if we REPENT. Believers are wrestling not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places – therefore we need to be immersed in our LORD and His armour.

The New Ager, Michael Tellinger¹³³ openly concurs to the fact that Techno developments have pushed humanity to redefine what it means to be human in his deceptive book, “*Slave species of god*”. This thesis refers to Tellinger’s philosophies as possible evidence of the “*New-World-Religions*” viewpoint, since he was the organizer of the UFO conference held in South Africa 2012.

Tragically, deception plays part in false religions, which is demonically instigated; however, such false philosophies could lead many people straight into HELL and should therefore be exposed. New Agers rejects the *Doctrine of SIN* and through it the depraved sinful nature of humanity, deceptively stating that billions of people are held captive by religious dogma [values and principles]. They also reject all teachings on human responsibility towards salvation and sanctification, the repercussions of sin, a day of judgment and the reality of heaven or hell.

7.1.1 TRANSHUMANIST PHILOSOPHIES AND GRIN TECHNOLOGIES

Biological Science is an evil intervention that must provoke the judgment of God the creator of heaven and earth. Humankind’s in a life-and-death struggle against ‘spiritual wickedness’ in high places. The forces that surface through Metaphysics, swiftly advanced GRIN technologies and transhumanist philosophies in combination with the unseen are challenging the Christian religion.

Michael Tellinger reveals the driving force behind the Transhumanist philosophy: “*We became the CREATORS OF SPECIES. And so, we have become ‘GOD’ to those species we creates.*”¹³⁴ Biotechnology not only redefine what it means **to be human**, it subsequently is redefining all **human rights**. Some of the present, SPIRITUAL HAZARDS, which is surfacing, include the following:¹³⁵

¹³³ Tellinger, Michael (2005) *Slave Species of god*. Waterval Boven, SA: ZULU Planet, pp. 3-4.

¹³⁴ *Ibid.*, p.9.

¹³⁵ Horn, Tom and Nita (2010) *Forbidden Gates*. Crane, Missouri: USA, pp. 153-176.

Metaphysics as well as I-doing, Internet, genetic modified food, Synthetic Biology, Human cloning, Nano-technology and cybernetic biology, transhumanism eugenics and germ-line genetic engineering.

7.1.1.1 I-DOING GAMES ON INTERNET

I-doing is the use of auditory tones in an attempt to alter consciousness in ways that mimic recreational drugs. I-doing is used in crafty internet videos and enslave uninformed teens. These technologies induce particular brain wave states that make the sounds appear to come from the center of the head – providing a “high” that might be experienced with cocaine or marijuana and is a devious satanic way to addictions.¹³⁶ **Shamans** have used various dangerous techniques, such as repetitive tones and drumming to stimulate and focus the center mind for centuries to make contact with the evil spirit world and to achieve altered states of reality.¹³⁷

7.1.1.2 INTERNET WITH ITS ELECTRONIC INFORMATION-DRIVEN TECHNOLOGY

All ages of humanity, especially the youth and teens are exposed to various types of moral evil as well as **evil super-naturalism** on the internet. Many are not informed and warned about the dangers of Occult websites.¹³⁸ Nora Volkow, a world-renowned brain scientist, and director of the National Institute of Drug Abuse declares: Internet itself, together with its increasing forms of electronic information-driven technology is creating a new kind of addiction by “rewiring human brains”.

¹³⁶Hartney, Elizabeth Dr. Addictions.

(<http://addictions.about.com/od/lesserknownsaddiction/g/What-Is-I-Dosing.htm>)

¹³⁷ Hunt, Dave & McMahn, TA (1985) *The Seduction of Christianity*. Eugene, Oregon: Harvest house Publishers, pp.123-136

¹³⁸ Volkow, Nora D. A General in the Drug War.

(http://www.nytimes.com/2011/06/14/science/14volkow.html?_r=1)

7.1.1.3 GENETICALLY MODIFIED FOOD

Genetically modified foods or biotech foods are foods derived from genetically modified organisms – specifically changes is introduced into their DNA through techniques such as plant-breeding, animal breeding or mutagenesis – where an organism is exposed to radiation or chemicals to create a non-specific but stable change.¹³⁹

7.1.1.4 SYNTHETIC BIOLOGY

Biological research seeks to design new forms of life and biological functions that are not found anywhere in nature. Genetic codes will be written to create better life forms: new improved mice, dogs, horses, cows, or humans can grow from this science. The Transhumanists openly declared: *These new creations will not be like any that God made.*¹⁴⁰ In 2010, J Craig Venter Institute created a new form of life called “**Synthia**”.¹⁴¹ Artificial genetic material was inserted into cells and enables it to grow. This enables researchers to “read” the genetic code of organisms from all branches of life by sequencing the four parts that make up DNA. This technology could be harmful when it is used to modify the human genotype to “**improve**” it and will be an inconceivable affront to God and could result in divine repercussions.

7.1.1.5 HUMAN CLONING

Somatic-cell transfer is a laboratory technique for creating clone embryo with a donor nucleus. Dolly, the female domestic sheep was created with this type of cloning.

¹³⁹ Holmes, Bob. Altered animals: Creatures with bonus features.
(<http://www.newscientist.com/article/mg20727680.300-altered-animals-creatures-with-bonus-features.html>)

¹⁴⁰ Horn, Thomas (2011) Pandemonium’s Engine. Crane, Missouri: Defender Publisher, p.12.

¹⁴¹ Smith, Jeffrey M. Doctores Warn: Avoid Genetically Modified Food.
(<http://articles.mercola.com/sites/articles/archive/2010/03/25/doctors-warn-avoid-genetically-modified-food.aspx>)

The process involved removing some of the DNA from an unfertilized egg and replacing the nucleus of it with the DNA that was to be cloned. This is presently a common practice in genetic engineering and used for “**therapeutic cloning**” of human and human-animal embryos. Another form of cloning is called “**reproductive cloning**” and is the technology that could be used to create a person who is genetically identical with a current or previous human.

Government bodies have considered legislation to ban mature human cloning and in a few states have implemented restrictions. The United Nations, European Union, and Australia likewise did not place a ban on human cloning technology – leaving the door open to perfect the science.¹⁴²

7.1.1.6 NANOTECHNOLOGY AND CYBERNETICS

Astonishing technology development has pushed humanity towards far-reaching transformation that promises in the near future the redefining of humanity. The early twenty first century immense advancement in prosthetics – starting with artificial limbs as medical replacement gives humanity a glimpse of super human abilities. No **human modification** was allowed until the first half of the twenty first century. In order for humankind to understand this better, Tom Horn gave a profound overview of this subject in his book, “**Forbidden Gates**”:

*“The international, intellectual cultural, movement TRANSHUMANISM intend the use of genetics, robotics, artificial intelligence, and Nano-technology (**GRIN**) as tools to redesign the human mind, our memories, our physiology, our offspring and our souls. Synthetic hidden human forces are in process manufacturing humankind’s wholesale destruction in leading laboratories funded by the most advanced nations on earth.*”

¹⁴² Laws and Public Policy about Cloning.
(<http://staff.lib.msu.edu/skendall/cloning/laws.htm#unitedstates>)
(<http://news.bbc.co.uk/2/hi/health/4328919.stm>)

*As a result strong artificial intelligence, humanlike machines, is emerging whose rise will prove profoundly disruptive to human culture, leading to a stark division between the pro- and the against technological evolution groups. These opposed worldviews will result in a pre-emptive New World War – already being described as **gigadeath – the bloodiest battle in history!***¹⁴³

Leon Kass, former chairman of the President’s council on Bioethics provided a status report on how real and how immanent the dangers of GRIN technologies could be in the hands of Transhumanists: *“Human nature itself is on the operating table, ready for alteration, for eugenic and psychic “enhancement”, for wholesale redesign. In leading laboratories, academic and industrial, new creators are confidently amassing their powers and quietly honing their skills, while on the street their evangelists (Transhumanists) are zealously prophesying a post-human future. For anyone who cares about preserving our humanity, the time has come for paying attention.”*¹⁴⁴

NEW TECHNOLOGIES are changing warfare as profound. Chris Floyd, in an article for Counter Punch, notes that some of the research now underway involves actually altering the genetic code of soldiers.¹⁴⁵

Science of human enhancement and transhumanism is playing into the hands of evil supernaturalism towards a Luciferian End-Time, just as it was Scriptural prophesied before.

7.1.1.7 TRANSHUMAN EUGENICS

Transhuman Eugenics involves **selective human breeding** to counter dysgenic aspects to improve human “*genetic qualities*”.

¹⁴³ Horn, Tom and Nita (2010) *Forbidden Gates*. Crane, Missouri: Defender Publishers, p. 129.

¹⁴⁴ Kass, Leon R (2010) *Life, Liberty and the Defence of Dignity: The Challenge for Bioethics*. New York: Encounter.

¹⁴⁵ Floyd, Chris (2003) *Monsters, Inc.: The Pentagon plan to Create Mutant ‘Super-Soldiers’*. CounterPunch (1/13/03).

Since transhumanistic goals are to create a superior man, these practices decrease genetic default problems in reproduction. The history of Transhumanism thought is revealed in a profound Academic writing of Nick Bostrom.¹⁴⁶

7.1.1.8 GERM-LINE / HUMAN GENETIC ENGINEERING

Human genetic engineering is the alteration of an individual's genotype with the aim of choosing the phenotype of a newborn or changing the existing phenotype of a child or adult. BBC News reveals that Scientists have confirmed that the first genetically altered human have been born and are healthy. This is the most dangerous of all human enhancement technologies as it has the power to alter the very nature of humanity into post-humans with NO hope of reversal.

The Human fertilisation and Embryology Authority (HFEA) – the body that monitors and regulates UK reproductive medical activities – told BBC News that it was aware of the technique but had decided not to allow it in the UK because its uncertainties and the possible alteration of the human germline.¹⁴⁷

7.1.2 TECHNO-DIMENSIONAL SPIRITUAL WARFARE (METAPHYSICS)

Nachash (Satan), The Dragon manifests in *Transhumanist Philosophies and GRIN technology*. Surely behind the face of transhumanism, is an evil force instigating it. The spirit of pride was at the heart of Lucifer's downfall - just so is the spirit behind the transhumanism the spirit of pride.

¹⁴⁶ Bostrom, Nick. A History of Transhumanism Thought.
(<http://www.nickbostrom.com/papers/history.pdf>)

¹⁴⁷ BBC News: Genetically altered babies born.
<http://news.bbc.co.uk/2/hi/science/nature/1312708.stm>

Transhumanism center on the ***battle of the mind*** – but the spiritual battle is staged in the ***imagination*** and then send to the senses where after the decision to act is finally given. Everything in the material and immaterial world has potential to influence our mental and emotional existence and decision.¹⁴⁸ Hidden in the shadows of the National Institute of Health and DARPA, lies ***the truth***.¹⁴⁹

Technology is in a position to change the “*mind-body-spirit connection*”, through ***new technologies*** that will ***transform brain function*** and ***bypass the free will***. The main ideal of the military Neurobiology (DARPA) is to enhance the cognitive capacities of soldiers – through a brain implanted (chip) – to record and manipulate mental processes of the brain from a distance – in order to control the “*artificial human warrior*”.¹⁵⁰

Intel Labs Pittsburgh is already designing such BRAIN CHIPS, while GRIN technology has notified of established ***nonverbal transmitters*** that can be used between people - a mind-to-mind-thought transformer that allows people to communicate without words -. Dr Christopher James was the administrator demonstrating it a year ago at the University of Southampton’s Institute of Sound and Vibration Research. He commented that true brain interfacing is achieved by the BCT (brain-to-machine interfacing) technology.¹⁵¹

Once again they are the instigators – the “***watchers of old***” exceeding their boundaries, trying to resurrect their race – ***the Nephilim*** – through the recreation of humanity. Wherever humankind are investing in areas outside their Biblical given abode, they are working in close relation to the realm of evil supernaturalism.

¹⁴⁸ Jeffress, Robert (2006) *The Divine Defense: Six Simple Strategies for Winning Your Greatest Battle*. Colorado Springs, CO: WaterBrook Publishers, p.78.

¹⁴⁹ Horn, Tom and Nita (2010) *Forbidden Gates*. Crane, Missouri: USA, pp. 206.

¹⁵⁰ Horgon, John (1/25/06) “We’re Cracking the Neuron Code, the Brain’s Secret Language.” *Adjusters’*. (https://www.adbusters.or/the_magazine/63/Were_Cracking_the_Neural_Code_the_Brains_Secret_Language.html)

¹⁵¹ James, Christopher (10/06/09) “*Brain-Computer Interface Allows Person-to-Person Communication Through Power of Thought*.” *Science Daily Article*. (<http://sciencedaily.com/release/2009/10/091006102637.htm>)

In accordance with Tom Horn, this thesis states that if the Anti-Christ is to be the reincarnation of the ancient demon Apollo (Nimrod), he be ***the forerunner of the return of the Nephilim.***

The prophet Isaiah spoke of the return of these beings in the Book of Isaiah and tied the advent to the destruction of the city of Babylon in the final age. Believers read in *the Septuagint* about the vision which Esaias son of Amos saw against Babylon in the final age.

The burden of Babylon, which Isaiah the son of Amoz did see. Lift ye up a banner upon the high mountain, exalt the voice unto them, shake the hand, that they may go into the gates of the nobles. I have commanded my sanctified ones, I have also called my mighty ones for mine anger, even them that rejoice in my highness.... Behold, the day of the LORD cometh, cruel both with wrath and fierce anger, to lay the land desolate: and he shall destroy the sinners thereof out of it. For the stars of heaven and the constellations thereof shall not give their light: the sun shall be darkened in his going forth, and the moon shall not cause her light to shine. And I will punish the world for their evil, and the wicked for their iniquity; and I will cause the arrogancy of the proud to cease, and will lay low the haughtiness of the terrible. I will make a man more precious than fine gold; even a man than the golden wedge of Ophir. Therefore I will shake the heavens, and the earth shall remove out of her place, in the wrath of the LORD of hosts, and in the day of his fierce anger. And it shall be as the chased roe, and as a sheep that no man taketh up: they shall every man turn to his own people, and flee every one into his own land. Every one that is found shall be thrust through; and every one that is joined unto them shall fall by the sword. Their children also shall be dashed to pieces before their eyes; their houses shall be spoiled, and their wives ravished. Behold, I will stir up the Medes against them, which shall not regard silver; and as for gold, they shall not delight in it. Their bows also shall dash the young men to pieces; and they shall have no pity on the fruit of the womb; their eye shall not spare children. And Babylon, the glory of kingdoms, the beauty of the Chaldees' excellency, shall be as when God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah. It shall never be inhabited, neither shall it be dwelt in from generation to generation: neither shall the Arabian pitch tent there; neither shall the shepherds make their fold there. But wild beasts of the desert shall lie there; and their houses shall be full of doleful creatures; and owls shall dwell there, and satyrs shall dance there.

And the wild beasts of the islands shall cry in their desolate houses, and dragons in their pleasant palaces: and her time is near to come, and her days shall not be prolonged.

Isaiah 13:1-3, 9-22 (emphasis added)

Whoever this ruler is, who Isaiah says, “***open the gates, ye ruler***”, he will open the gates to the Nephilim – the End-Time giants will return to the surface of the earth as agents of God’s wrath.”

7.1.2.1 A METAPHYSICAL PROBLEM

Einstein remarked that the study of *physics* inevitably leads to *metaphysics* by pointing beyond itself to some nonmaterial or spiritual source for the evidence of the material universe.

Dave Hunt provides a similar statement of the problem:¹⁵² The present revival of sorcery is evident in modern trends. The heart of *sorcery* has always been *secret techniques* for contacting spirit entities in order to gain supernatural knowledge and power. These ancient occult methodologies are presently being revived, but are dressed in modern psychological terminology and the purpose is explained as tapping into an infinite “***inner power***”. At the heart of this lies the reality that Christianity goes much nearer to Dualism than people think.

CS Lewis reveals the true problem, stating that, the difference is that Christianity thinks that, this dark, Power was created by God and was good when it was created and went wrong. Christianity agrees with Dualism that this universe is at war, but it does not think this is a war between independent powers. It thinks it is a civil war, a rebellion and that we are living in the part of the universe occupied by the rebel.¹⁵³

¹⁵² Hunt, Dave & McMahon, TA (1988) *The New Spirituality*. Eugene, Oregon: Harvest House Publishers, pp.10, 26.

¹⁵³ Lewis, CS - *Mere Christianity*.

7.1.2.1.1 'THE NEW SCIENCE OF THE MIND'

Witchcraft, under Science labels, has now become an integral part of modern society, as seen in dangerous Theosophy websites. The most powerful way that Occultists use thoughts is the **visualizing of Deities**. Occultists have long held that through visualization, thoughts can be materialized into existence on the physical plane.

Annie Besant, progeny to Theosophical Society and founder HP Blavatsky and her close adviser CW Leadbeater declared that “the creation of an object is the passing out of an image from the mind and its subsequent materialization...[Which] becomes for the tome a kind of living creature... [called]‘An element’.”¹⁵⁴

Anthropologist and New Age leader Joan Halifax notes: In a residential program which was tracing the pattern connecting *scientific and sacred traditions* was found that **shamanism** brought together biologists, physicists, psychiatrists, neuroscientists, African healers, Tibetan lamas, Sufi mystics, Zen teachers and martial art specialists.¹⁵⁵

According to Ernest Holmes, founder of “**Science of the Mind**”, the “**Supreme Secret [in shamanism]**” teaches that the mind is the originating, supreme creative “*Power of the Universe*” – a cosmic Reality Principle, which is present throughout the universe and in ‘every person’. Science of the Mind teaches that man controls the course of his life... by mental processes, which function according to a universal law... that we are all creating our own day-to-day experiences... by the form and procession of our thoughts. Man by thinking can bring into existence whatsoever he desires.¹⁵⁶

¹⁵⁴ Peale, Norman Vincent (1982) *Positive Imaging*. Fleming H. Revell, p.20.

¹⁵⁵ Halifax, Joan (1991) *Shamanic Voice: A survey of Vionary Narrative*. (http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/27975715&referer=one_hit)

¹⁵⁶ Holmes, Ernest (1983) *The Science of the Mind* (textbook). p.30.

The reputable Bible commentators, McMahon and Dave Hunt in their book, "***The Seduction of Christianity***", notes: "*Science of the Mind is the most basic idea of ancient sorcery. It is replacing faith in God with a self-serving faith in some "mysterious force" that can be used by our mind to get what we want... The power of the **imagination** is becoming confused with inspiration and the power of God's Holy Spirit... Occultists have known that the most powerful way to tap into the spirit dimension is through **visualization**...*

Remote viewing as a tool is helping counselee's to encounter past traumas – it is actually a tool of the Occultist... **Regression** techniques that will take a patient to the specific problem have in many cases revealed previous reincarnated stages. Such techniques are in fact preparing the person to accept the coming Anti-Christ... The **self-realization** of Yoga, which prepares the patient to discover his/her "**true self**", bring him in contact with evil spirits... Through this way – will the world undergo a **LUCIFERIC INITIATION INTO SATAN WORSHIP?**"¹⁵⁷

Much of the credit for bringing these **Occult methodologies** into Christianity must go to Agnes Sanford. Although she was seen as a sound church-women, she sadly explained her **doctrinal view of sin and redemption** in the following METAPHYSICAL /JUNGIAN terms, which any mind-science cultist would agree: "*I have learned to combine the sacramental with the METAPHYSICAL approach... [But] not everyone has the open mind and the visioning faculty necessary if one is to use the metaphysical methods.*"¹⁵⁸

Metaphysical methods – even mental and emotional healing practices – are ancient witchcraft or shamanistic methods Christianized by pseudo-Christian mind-science cults. Jungian occultism became the basic framework for the shamanistic system of inner healing, which Agnes Sandford picked up from the metaphysics of the mind-science cults, this is very clear.

¹⁵⁷ Hunt, Dave & McMahan, TA (1985) *The Seduction of Christianity: Spiritual Discernment in the Last Days*. Eugene, Oregon: Harvest House Publishers, p. 24, 33, 39, 43, 54, 60.

¹⁵⁸Hunt, Dave & McMahan, TA (1985) *The Seduction of Christianity: Spiritual Discernment in the Last Days*. Eugene, Oregon: Harvest House Publishers, p.125.

Sadly, Agnes Sandfords' naïve trust in psychotherapy and Jungian philosophy led Sandford to believe that through His incarnation, Christ entered into the "collective unconscious" of the race, into the deep mind of every person, there being available for healing and for help.¹⁵⁹ The primary foundation for "**inner healing**" is a malformed acceptance of Freud's discredited theory of "psychic determinism", which Psychology describe as "human behaviour deriving from intra-physic causes – indicating that humanity is controlled by impulses buried in the unconscious, below the lever of awareness'.

The FREUDIAN and JUNGIAN ideas, namely: (1) "**psychic determination**" and (2) "**the unconscious**", forms the unbiblical **foundation of inner healing**. Freud contents that the major force being all human behaviour, is the unconscious. Inner healing is simply the Christianized psycho-analysis that uses the "**power of suggestion**" to solve problems.

A Science anthropologist, Michael Harner, explains the central role that visualization takes in Shamanism.¹⁶⁰ A Shaman is a person who enters an altered state of conscious – at will – to contact and utilize an ordinarily hidden reality in order to acquire knowledge, power, and to help other persons... It is the SSC (Shamanic State of Consciousness) that one "sees" shamanically. This may be called "**visualizing**", "**imaging**", or as expressed by Australian aborigines, using the "strong eye"... Visualization is at the head of the list of now-popular psycho-spiritual technologies that he says represent a revival of shamanism, which he defines as sorcery or witchcraft.¹⁶¹

¹⁵⁹ Sanford, Agnes (1947) *The Healing Light*. Macalester: Self-published, p.125-126, 165.

¹⁶⁰ Bonnie, Horrigan. An Interview of Michael Harner by Bonnie Horrigan: *Shamanism*, Spring/ Summer 1997, Vol.10, No.1. (<http://www.shamanism.org/articles/article01.html>)

¹⁶¹ Hunt, Dave & McMahan, TA (1985) *The Seduction of Christianity: Spiritual Discernment in the Last Days*. Eugene, Oregon: Harvest House Publishers, pp. 133, 134.

According to the ancient Hermetic tradition, the Egyptian god Thoth (Hermes Trismegistus – the Trice Powerful) was the originator of Alchemy. He taught that the physical world could be transformed through mental imagery.¹⁶²

ONE DOOR THAT OPENS TO THE FORBIDDEN DOOR OF THE SPIRIT WORLD IS IMAGINATION! Imagination will confront you with a “**false Jesus**” that is in fact an demonic “**inner spirit guide**”

7.1.2.1.2 FORBIDDEN GATES AND PORTALS

It is clear that Aleister Crowley “**knew**” about the door between the spirit and the natural realm by exoteric knowledge. He intended to open that door through magical rituals and claimed to be successful.¹⁶³ Three decades later Jack Parsons tried to reopen Crowley’s portal. Both these men died the same year they did it. Some people believe that demonic portals were opened through these demonic rituals – they base their beliefs on evidence that “**aliens**” were for the first time seen afterwards in the natural world.

Early Christians, Hebrews, Assyrians and Greeks believed that such gateways do exist. **Physical doorways** and **windows** are mirrors of **unseen spiritual gateways** and serve as entry points for evil supernaturalism.¹⁶⁴

Jesus Christ reveals the connection between “**gateways and openings**” and the activity of “**binding and loosing**” pertaining to the powers of heaven and earth and reveals the true keys about it, to his disciples.

¹⁶² The Journal of Transpersonal Psychology of 1984. Volume 16, No. 1, pp. 108, 21-23.

¹⁶³ Boudillion, Daniel V. Aleister Crowley’s Lam & the Little Grey Men. (<http://www.bibliotecapleyades.net/cienciareal/cienciareal07.htm>)

¹⁶⁴ Horn, Tom and Nita (2010) Forbidden Gates. Crane, Missouri: USA, p. 34.

And I say also unto thee, That thou art Peter, and upon this rock I will build my church; and the gates of hell [Hades, the god of the underworld] shall not prevail against it. And I will give unto thee the keys of the kingdom of heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt bind on earth shall be bound in heaven: and whatsoever thou shalt loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven.

Matthew 16:18 (emphasis added)

Jesus most probably was referring to the Greek deity (Hades) and not to a specific place (Hades/hell) in the above text, revealing a key to his disciples to overcome the demonic force – giving them **a weapon** against the onslaught from underworld deities.

Mind controlling Sprits, which influence people's MIND'S, BODIES or HOMES should "**be bound**", while good angels ought to "**be loosed**" in the Name of Jesus Christ. Underworld evil deities (Nephilim spirits) have the ability to migrate between the "**underworld**" and the "**natural world**". The heavenlies with all its angelical beings will be discussed in Chapter 3.

A warning went out from Iyke Nathan Uzorma, an empowered prophet of God, that when a person is at zero-point (no perseverance "**to stand**" in the spirit because of sin, iniquity, or exhaustion), the **fifth faculty of the mind** come into existence and can be dominated by one of **five perversions**: Lust, Anger, Greed, Pride and Attachment to mundane things. This fifth faculty of the MIND can also acts as a demonic portal of destruction.¹⁶⁵

Both the Old and the New Testament made it clear that behind pagan gods – as prince Hades – exists genuine evil spiritual beings that seek to connect with the mislead mankind.

¹⁶⁵ Uzorma, Iyke Nathan Dr (2005) Occult Grandmaster now in Christ. Apapa, Lagos State: Glorious People Nig. LTD, p.14.

7.1.2.1.3 THE FIFTH DIMENSION OF THE MIND

IMAGINATION speaks of things that haven't happened. They encourage you to do things that you shouldn't do, by realizing fear and feelings of insecurity. Imaginations must be cast down.¹⁶⁶

Imaginations lead to carnal thinking as WITCHCRAFT works against you to destroy your prayer life and cause you to attack others. An imagination is a picture conceived in the spirit of one's mind that forms a mental picture of what is not. It comes from the tree of knowledge of good and evil. When you speak forth an imagination, you give life to it.

SIN is always first conceived in the imagination. Of the seven things God hates, imagination plays a major part. It creates instability in your life and binds the liberty of the Holy Spirit inside of you. There is a fifth dimension beyond that which is known to man. This is the dimension of the imagination. Early Christians as well as Hebrew, Assyrians, Greeks and other ancient cultures believed this fifth dimensional gateway existed and could be opened between the material world and the immaterial world. Physical doorways and windows are vulnerable to entry by supernaturalism.

Imaginations are prophetic. They speak of things to come. Once spoken, they become words that prophesy life or death. The freedom to imagine must first be fortified with chapter and verse, Bible truth. A captive imagination has no freedom to express itself.¹⁶⁷

The drug known as DMT (dimethyltryptamine), which is naturally produced by the pineal gland has been used for millennia by shamans to contact the spirit world and to receive information from entities there. The DMT chemical is naturally produced by the pineal gland in the brain, which is located behind the forehead.

¹⁶⁶ Clark, Jonas (1954) *Imaginations*. Hallandale, Florida: Spirit of Life, P.115.

¹⁶⁷ Clark, Jonas (1954) *Imaginations*. Hallandale, Florida: Spirit of Life, P.115.

PhD Scholar Joy Pugh deems it a scientific fact that the human body emits electrical energy.¹⁶⁸ This energy appears to be interacting with the force inside the Crop Circle, just as the body does when one enters and stands at precise locations within Megalithic Structures. Certain geometrical designs of particular Crop formations have been known to involve sickness upon all who enter within them. At other times, formations of a different design seem to have a healing effect of everyone who enters within.

Other strange phenomena that has been documented as occurring inside Circles, includes batteries going dead, strange glowing objects appearing in photos, and compasses spinning out of control.

The pineal gland is called the “**third eye**” by biologists and spiritual teachers because it has biological elements that are common with the retina of the eye, and in fact are even used as part of parietal sensory organs in other animals.

Occultists understood the pineal gland / third eye to be the physical portal to the spiritual world, which stimulates the human pineal gland in order to make contact with malevolent spirits. There are different ways to open supernatural gates existing inside the earth, the heavens and the mind. Using altered mental states induced by psychoactive drugs is but one of several “spirit gate” mechanisms. There are four cardinal doors which are defended by terrible images called “**guardians of the doors.**”

The guardians defend consciousness from disintegrating forces of the unconscious as well as their offensive missions – in order to lay hold upon the fluid and mysterious world of the unconscious concourses must carry the struggle into the enemy’s camp.

¹⁶⁸ Pugh, Joye Jeffries (2006) *Eden*. Mustang, OK: Tate Publishing & Enterprises, pp. 330-332.

7.1.2.1.3.1 THE FIFTH ABNORMAL FACULTY OF THE MIND

In the *Psychology of the Higher-Self*, the mind of man is said to present four fundamental faculties through which the human-spirit transmits consciousness (awareness of being) to the gross material body).

Where there is a dichotomy of the four fundamental faculties of the mind, the “**fifth abnormal faculty of the mind**” comes into existence, which is the medium of destruction – that evil spirits is used to manipulate a person. It is through this abnormal faculty – called “**maya (zero point/illusion) where a person is in a state of phantasmagoria (fantasy)**” – that evil spirits enters through the five main areas: “**lust, anger, greed, vanity and attachment to mundane things**”.

No one on earth can be manipulated by demons except through the fifth abnormal faculty of the mind. **SIN IS THE HIGHEST POWER THAT SUBJECTS ONE UNDER AUTHORITY OF THE ENTITY CALLED SATAN.**

He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose, the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

1 John 5:8

Thought projection is a very confidential aspect of subtle manipulation of the power of darkness against people. The only way to overcome the manipulations of thought is to set the thoughts of your heart solely on things of Christ. God gave the Christian the power in accordance to Matthew 18:18.

While binding demonic powers, the Christian must bind the demons of vanity, fear, anger, lust, forgetfulness and cast them to specific locations. When the Christian fully submit to the keeping power of the Almighty God through Christ, Satan, demons and human agents can do nothing to the believer.

THE BANNER OF THE CHRISTIANS' VICTORY IS HIS FAITH AND HIS RIGHTEOUSNESS.¹⁶⁹

7.1.2.1.3.2 FACTS OF IMAGINATION

The comment of Clark Jonas on “imagination” could be taken as representative of those holding the Christian view:¹⁷⁰ Vain Imaginations never lead you closer to God.¹⁷¹ The invention of evil things comes through imaginations, which derive from mental images and pictures. It calls up hidden agenda's. It always leads to division, releases fear and insecurity. An imagination is a picture conceived in the spirit of one's mind that forms a mental picture of what is not. Imaginations lead to carnal thinking. Witchcraft works alongside one's imagination and increases lust. It makes one self-conscious. It surely destroys prayer life plus the urge for spiritual warfare, thus causing you to attack other people.

One cannot combat thoughts with thoughts. You have to fight imaginations with the Word of God that works mighty inside of you. It keeps you dealing with things that are not true.¹⁷² The freedom to imagine must first be fortified with chapter and verse of Bible Truth. Praising God is a spiritual weapon that wills still the energy of your soul. The blood of Jesus is another powerful spiritual weapon against imagination.

A captive imagination has freedom to express itself. You cannot pull down a stronghold unless you are obedient to the Word of God. The power of God is stronger than nay devil or imagination that can come against you. Never give imaginations life by speaking them out. It comes from the tree of knowledge of good and evil. Sin is always first conceived in the imagination.

¹⁶⁹ Uzorma, Iyke Nathan Dr (2007) *Occult Grandmaster Now in Christ: Book One*. Lagos State, Nigeria: Glorious people Nig. Ltd., pp.13-14, 117.

¹⁷⁰ Clark, Jonas (1999) *Imaginations*. USA, pp. 32,54,114,115,98,92,69.

¹⁷¹ Romans 1:21, 24, 32.

¹⁷² Romans 1:18.

It always come against and undermines God's authority. You cannot live and abundant life until you conquer imaginations. It wants to bind the liberty of God inside of you so that you won't worship God the way you really want to. It will make you think on things that are not real and create instability in your life. Through imagination, the devil will have you fighting the wrong spiritual battles.

God deals with you Spirit to spirit, not Spirit to mind. It will build and fortify satanic strongholds against you life and keep you from wailing in God's plan and glory. Imaginations come to steal, kill and destroy God's purpose and plan from our lives. It will bring forth and birth sin.

The captive imagination has no freedom to express itself. You cannot pull down strongholds unless you are obedient to the Word of God.

7.1.2.1.3.3 SIN CONCEIVED FIRST IN THE IMAGINATION

Imaginations exist in the real fantasy. Do you see what is meant? Let's look at this again. You must be able to see that root of imaginations. It is birthed in the souls' realm. Your soul is your mind, will, imagination, emotions and intellect. Genesis 3:6.

When the woman saw that the tree was good for food. Eve saw that is was good. She began to think about it and look upon it. Sin is always first conceived in the imagination. Take note of this. It's one thing for you to have an imagination; it's another thing for you to entertain that imagination. Be careful to dwelling on imaginations.¹⁷³ When an imagination comes unto you saying, you need to take it captive and not step into it saying, "Isn't this nice". That is called entertaining an imagination. When you do that you are in danger of that entertained thought giving birth to sin.

¹⁷³ Clark, Jonas (1999) *Imaginations*. USA, pp. 32,54,114,115,98,92,69.

7.1.2.1.3.4 IMAGINATION AND SPIRITUAL WARFARE

Imagination will always take you backward not forward. Vain imaginations bring backslidden conditions. It creates instability. Will be tossed to and fro. Think on things – that are not real (lies, deception, false accusations, mistreat).

Fighting battles that are not real. Misplacement for spiritual battles.¹⁷⁴

Release fear at you. It will have you trying to figure out how you're going to respond and handle things that have not yet happened – thus stealing your energy and time. It will bind you and steal your spiritual liberty. Comforting somebody about something imaginary – that's not true at all. Imaginations will bind the liberty of God in your spirit man so that you won't worship God in the way you want to. It will release confusion at you. Destroy your prayer life and mentally disconnecting you from God. Make you conscious of your self instead of consciousness of God.

Satan can silence anointed praise and worship through vain imaginations (devils grandeur) by the rise up spiritual pride; when you are disobedient to your callings and when you fall short of praising the Lord (Ps 8:2; II Pet 2:18-19).

7.1.2.1.3.5 GATEWAYS INTO THE SPIRIT WORLD

The real danger lies in the possible bridging of the gap between unknown entities and humanity.¹⁷⁵

Specialized research of scientist Vic Tandy¹⁷⁶ has revealed that 19Hz standing air waves could, under some circumstances create sensory phenomena in an open environment suggestive of a ghost.¹⁷⁷

¹⁷⁴ Clark, Jonas (1999) *Imaginations*. USA, pp. 32,54,114,115,98,92,69.

¹⁷⁵ Horn, Tom and Nita (2010) *Forbidden Gates*. Crane, Missouri: USA, pp. 221-233.

¹⁷⁶ Tyrrell, G. N. M. (1943) *Apparitions*. London: Gerald Duckworth.

¹⁷⁷ Tandy, Vic. "Ghost in the Machine." Artikel: Journal of the Science for Psychical Research Article.

He actually produces a manifested entity similar to modern descriptions of “alien grays”. While the scientists interpreted the activity as a natural biological function of the brain, the question is potent if it is not possible that GRIN technological and genetic engineering are not actually discover GATEWAYS of perception *into the spirit world* that were closed by God following the fall of man?

The comment of Charles Ostman¹⁷⁸ at the thirteenth European Meeting of Cybernetics and Systems Research at the university of Vienna in Austria, could be taken as representative to those holding of human transforming scientists:¹⁷⁹ We begin to develop communications modalities which are quite “nonhuman” by nature, but are “Scio-operative” norms of the near future. Our collective development and deployment of complex meta-systems of artificial entities and synthetic life-forms and acceptance of them as in integral component of the operation “culture norm” of the near future, is in fact the precursory developmental increment [rise], as an enabling procedure, to gain effective communicative access to [the following]: **A neighbour collection of ‘Myriad ‘species’ and entity types (synthetic and real) functioning as ruined agents [fallen angels].**

7.1.2.1.3.5.1 EAR PORTALS

Past experiences with exorcism and the connection between sound resonance and contact with evil-supernaturalism has to do with people who are demonized after an attempt to open mind gateway through vibratory chanting at New Age vortices or “**mother earth**” energies.

The famed expert, Sue Bradley contends on this issue on an internet inquiry, as follows:¹⁸⁰

¹⁷⁸ Charles Ostman. (www.historianofthefuture.com)

¹⁷⁹ Ostman, Charles (09/04/1996) “*The Internet as an Organism: Emergent Human / Internet Symbiosis.*” Thirteenth European Meeting on Cybernetics and System Research at the University of Vienna, Austria.

¹⁸⁰ Bradley, Sue (2007) *Sounding the Code.* (<http://www.thecentreoflight.net>)

From the ancients to the New Age, resonance and harmonics have long been recognized as vehicles of communication and manifestations. Ancient rock out cropping, sacred temples and monuments have for millennia been used as gathering places for the so-called spiritually enlightened.

Through recent understanding of quantum entanglement and the high energy physics of sound and light, both with adaptable vibratory characteristics, these popular sites for gatherings with ritual chants and offspring's, often employing ancient spells and mathematical harmonics codes in various sets of tandem frequencies, may well have measurable and far greater esoteric effects than even recently believed.

Note what New Ager and modern shaman Zacciah Blackburn of 'Sacred Sound, Sound the Code' says he came in contact with at such sites:¹⁸¹ It is not mere coincidence many of the ancient stone temples of the world were made with crystalline embedded stone, such as granite, which are known for their properties to pass or store energy...Through Sacred Sound and awareness practices, the unknown 'wisdom keepers' and guardians of these sacred temples have communed with me, and showed me how to hold frequency of awareness in the heart and mind, and combine them into sound codes to create a 'key' which opens the 'libraries' of these temples of ancient star beings and wisdom keepers to the modern day traveller whom comes with pure intent.

Scriptures connects hearing directly to spiritual hearing of the voice of the Lord within a covenant relationship with God.¹⁸² The right ear is repeatedly described in the Levitical instructions - subsequently referring to the ear and hearing are presented as petitions to God from His servants as well as from God as counsel, forewarning and rebukes.

¹⁸¹ Blackburn, Zacciah. The center of Light Institute of Sound Healing and Shamanic Studies. (<http://www.thecenteroflight.net/>)

¹⁸² Exodus 15:26; 29:20; Leviticus 8:23; 14:14, 17, 25, 28.

According to the view of John Bunyan,¹⁸³ the Ear-Gate was the audience and through it the words of the tempter penetrates – if the temptation is to be successful. Into humanities first mother did the wily serpent whisper the closing words of his seductive wiles and through words of his seductive wiles and through the Ear-Gate, he assailed her heart and won it. To give audience to the tempter is the next stop to yielding up obedience to his will. With the advent of the cell phones, iPods, and other personal electronic devices, the ear-gate of the entire generation became dangerously compromised.

7.1.2.1.3.5.2 MIND-GATES AS SPIRITUAL GATEWAYS

Video games played before bedtime can be an example of new-horizon neuroscience and human-machines integration, which may reconfigure human brains to supernatural activities. The technological trend towards mind invasion and mind-control is a great danger – as it is manipulative dangerous concept opposite of free will. Most secular neuroscientists view free will as an outdated religious notion related to a fictional omnipotent divinity (God) who choose not to interfere with the choices of individuals, thus leaving them morally accountable for their actions and future judgment.

7.1.2.1.4 THE MYSTICAL PARLANCE

In the Mystical Parlance ***astral projection*** and ***soul travel*** are relatively the same, for both have to do with an ***Out-of-body-experience***.

¹⁸³Jarvis, A.G. *Eye Gate and Ear Gate*.
(<http://www.hayespress.org/article-dec-1956-eye-gate-and-ear-gate>)

Astral projection has to do with spiritual journey into the different Cosmic Kingdoms of Physic entities – which are the Occult Kingdoms of Satan and his fallen angels, namely journey into the water, the earth, the fire and the astral occult realms.

Soul travel' has to do with spiritual journey into the higher realms beyond the Astral Kingdom. Only a few Grand Masters and Avatars know the totality of these Kingdoms.

In Esoteric Metaphysics and Mystical Science, these cosmic Kingdoms are known never known as the **Kingdoms of Satan**, but in the Mystical Parlance, they are called **the Universes of god** or the **Cosmic Manifestations** or the **Heaven-Worlds**.

7.1.2.1.5 ASTRAL PROJECTIONS / SOUL TRAVEL

There are Seven Cosmic Kingdoms, which pertains to the **Cosmological verdict of the Order of Astral and Terrestrial Hierarchy** that projects the final basis of **esoteric thought**. All the Astro-metaphysical operations of physic entities and spirits are categorized in various **Temple Degrees** within the major **Secret Societies**. All such degrees of Astro- metaphysical operations are under what is called the **Five Cosmic Seals of Operation Starlight**.

The spirits in the seven cosmic kingdoms of the universe are called the **Cosmic Forces** in the mystical parlance.

The 400,000 different degrees of **initiations into esoteric and occult mysteries** are dividend and compressed into **Five Main Cosmic Seals or Occult levels**: (1) level 333; (2) level 666; (3) level 999 contains an Upper Liber 007 and a lower Liver 777; (4) level 1330; and (5) level 003.

A few examples of the occult level people are operating on includes well-known leaders: Adolf Hitler and Charles Darwin were operating in the Second Cosmic Seal; Madam Helena Blavatsky, Catherine Deshayes and Betty Friedan were operating in the third level – 999. People who received the fourth Cosmic Seal became **Living Grand Masters**.¹⁸⁴

7.1.3 A HUMANISTIC VIEW OF ALL SUPERNATURALISM

A great danger exists however, when people fall back to humanism and all supernatural power is placed under the loop of evil. With this in mind, it is essential to dig deep into the wells of anointed Theologians who clearly understand the difference between, the ministry of *God's Holy Spirit*, versus *Evil supernaturalism*.

It is only where God in His grace reveals the subtle *spirit of pride*, and the captive choose to repent whole-heartedly that God will deliver them from this great end-time danger. Since the Garden of Eden, man's ignorance has been a major and essential condition that has caused us to be deceived by Satan and evil spirits.

My people are destroyed for lack of knowledge.

Hosea 4:6

Only where the true is eminent, the false could be identified. It is, therefore, essential to grasp the Biblical rudiments of walking in God's Holy Spirit. Spirit Baptism is God's way of transforming people into His image by the power of His Holy Spirit to be His witnesses.¹⁸⁵

¹⁸⁴ Uzorma, Iyke Nathan Dr (2007) *Occult Grandmaster Now in Christ: Book One.* Lagos State, Nigeria: Glorious people Nig. Ltd., pp. 70-71, 43-48.

¹⁸⁵ Acts 1:4-8; 2:16-18, 33, 38-39; 4:31; 5:32; 5:38-39; 8:20-23; 9: 3-5, 11, 15, 17-18; 10:44, 11:15-17; 15:8-9, 28; 16:9-10, 25-26, 18: 9-10; 19:5-7, 13-16; 23:11.

7.1.4 THE BIBLICAL KEY FOR TRANSFORMATION

John and Paula Sanford, advocates for *the transformation of the inner man*, proclaim rightly that sin needs forgiveness and that the sin nature of man can only be dealt with by “*death on the cross*”. They argue that in such case it requires the believer’s participation.

The Sanford’s note that many pastors, who called their people to daily death, selflessly on the cross, had little awareness of the formation of these practices in early childhood. They argue that pastors do not know how to reach to the *inner child* to accomplish such death and rebirth. The axe is to be laid to the hidden roots of the problem:

Neither healers nor pastors seemed to know how to transform our carnal natures at the deep level of the cause, dealing both with sin and the sin nature. That I saw, this was the great lack in the Church, and therefore one explanation for the continuing lack of maturity through lack of true sanctification, and transformation in the body of Christ. Agnes had begun to reveal it. Many had learned to reach their inner child, ‘See to it that no one comes short of the grace of God; that no root of bitterness springing up causes trouble, none seemed yet to have comprehended the full vision of inner transformation by continual death and rebirth...

None seemed yet to know that ministry to the inner man is not merely a tool to heal a few troubled one; it is a vital key to the transformation of every heart of every normal Christian.¹⁸⁶ At this point, it is crucial to refer to the beginning of sin as the origin of evil. Iniquity / perversion developed in the heart of the King of Tyre, considered hermeneutically¹⁸⁷ as an anti-type of the devil.¹⁸⁸ The ruler of Tyre could not have been in the Garden of Eden and only Satan was in the Garden together with Adam and Eve.

¹⁸⁶ Sanford, John & Paula (1982) *The Transformation of the Inner Man*. Tulsa, OK: Victory House, p. 5.

¹⁸⁷ In the greater context, the passages of Ezekiel 28 and Isaiah 14, one has to consider a basic **hermeneutic principle** sometimes referred to as the principle of double fulfillment or double reference.

¹⁸⁸ Ryrie, Charles. Isaiah 14 and Ezekiel 28. (<http://www.goodseed.com/learning/article/isaiah-14-ezekiel-28/>)

Martin Luther notes on original sin:¹⁸⁹ ***“The proper devilishness of sin is this, that it thus modifies the first words of the Decalogue: ‘I am my Lord and my God’.”***

Prof Brand argues¹⁹⁰ that ***“the beginning of sin”*** was when iniquity was found in the prideful heart of the king of Tyre. Satan’s nature consists of ***pride,¹⁹¹ envious lust¹⁹² and self-will.¹⁹³*** We find the very same nature of rebellion against God, presently, in the New-Age Churches. The ultimate conspiracy/plan of the New Age-World-Order is ***“to take the seat-of-rule, thus lifting themselves up to be god”***. This self-assertion of pride turned Lucifer into a devil, which turned the free will God gave them against God’s will.

Scripture reveals the catastrophic results where a person would dare to fight the crocodile, the king of pride, on his own. No man can conquer pride or *the prideful human nature*, or what the Standford’s refer to as, the ***“inner man”***. Man has no part to play in conquering it except to humble himself before the living God, desperately in need of Divine deliverance.

The crux of the problem is thus not *“death of the sinful nature”* but the method used to accomplish it. The beginning of humility lies in the recognition of human limitation, helplessness, and inability which would commence an absolute dependency on the LORD only. Leviathan will not enter into a covenant, or keep it.

John Eckhard declares that, pride will also blind a person from receiving and walking in the Covenant we have through the blood of Jesus. Our God is a covenant keeping God.

¹⁸⁹ Hodder & Stoughton (1881) *Christian Dogmatic*, p.421.

¹⁹⁰ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2006) PhD: *Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence pertaining to the Structure and Strategies to destruct Christianity – Involving the Theodicy of Darkness.* Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published, p.516.

¹⁹¹ **Pride** produces a spirit of rebellion.

¹⁹² **Envious lust** encompasses the yearning to be worshiped, praised and longs for the position that belongs to God.

¹⁹³ **Self-will** includes self-ascension, self-dependency, self-exaltation, self-enthronement and self-deification.

Salvation, healing, deliverance, prosperity, the gifts of the Spirit, miracles, signs and wonders are all parts of the New Covenant. It takes humility to receive and walk in the revelation of our Covenant. It is not surprising that many believers and some churches reject parts of the New Covenant. Some reject healing. Some reject deliverance. Some reject the baptism of God's Holy Spirit and His gifts. I am convinced that Leviathan has blocked many from walking in the fullness of the Covenant we have through Jesus Christ. There are different types of pride and one of them is Religious Pride.¹⁹⁴

The topic of healing the inner person has generated much controversy. This thesis would like to illuminate the issues to some degree – so that the reader can add his thoughts to his own. (1) Is there a need for inner healing? (2) Are the methods used for inner healing Scriptural?

This thesis believes that there is a need of “**minister to the inner-man**” or more Biblically called, **the “healing of the broken hearted”**. What is *bona fide* of more significance is that the word *salvation* in Greek means “**wholeness and healing**”.

This thesis views the concept of “**healing of the broken heart**” as a constituent of Biblical sanctification. In fact, Spiritual Warfare is at heart about “**the process of sanctification**”. The issue is not whether there is a need of sanctification or not, but what method will be used in the process of healing. At the heart of this issue lies the controversy about Biblical or Psychological counselling.

The difference towards Biblical versus Psychological counselling plummet down to one point: Is the Biblical way efficient to heal people? If not, why? The problem is not with our Omnipresent, Omniscient, and Omnipotent God, but with the prideful, independent, rebellious, and stubborn, unbelieving, hardened hearts of humankind.

¹⁹⁴ Eckhardt, John (1995) *Behemoth and Leviathan*. Chicago, Illinois: Crusaders Ministries, pp. 12-13.

God demonstrated the way of Divine Healing, Divine Health and Divine Living to redeem the triplicate character of the child of God, spirit, soul, and body, through his One and Only Son, Jesus Christ of Nazareth.

The question is if the believer is willing to submit his will to the will of the true Trinitarian God and pray the Prayer of Salvation:¹⁹⁵ ***“Let thy Kingdom Come, Let thy will be done on earth (also in the personal heart and life of the believer) as it is in heaven”.***

Prof Brand contributes to Biblical counselling with the excellent exegeses,¹⁹⁶ that Psychology is inherently a secular religion of faith, it makes humanity especially vulnerable to the natural biases that people carry against God.¹⁹⁷

David Powlison notes: *“Psychology is persuasive in exactly the areas where the evangelical church is weak and has been weak for more than two centuries. As a result, segments of evangelicalism that would spot and reject deviation in justification by faith, the doctrine of Christ, millennialism of Biblical authority have embraced psychological and practices unwittingly.”*¹⁹⁸

Educator and journalist Martin L Gross points out that psychology “has altered the nature of our civilization beyond recognition by promoting a massive internal shift in man’s psyche and self-understanding.”¹⁹⁹

Psychology has moved our collective awareness from the God of the Bible to the “god of self”.

¹⁹⁵ Matthews 6:10.

¹⁹⁶ Brand, Connie MJ (2005) Master Degree: An Exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian Involvement in A Theodicy Considered from Philosophic Theological Perspective. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published, pp. 405-408.

¹⁹⁷ Romans 1:18; I Corinthians 1:23; 2:14.

¹⁹⁸ Powlison, David (1992) Integration or Inundation? In Michael Horton, ed., Power Religion: The selling out of the Evangelical Church? Chicago: Moody Press.

¹⁹⁹ Gross, Martin L (1978) The Psychological Society: A Critical Analysis of Psychiatry, Psychotherapy, Psychoanalysis and the Psychological Revolution. NY: Random House, p.3.

We must remember that the underlying assumptions of psychology will always influence its methods and therapies and therefore its advice as well. Carl Gustav Jung was one of the foremost experts on the alleged extension of the psyche,²⁰⁰ which he called the “collective unconscious” of the race.

7.1.4.1 THE DANGER OF VISUALIZATION.

Valid concerns are voiced when we come to the use of visualization and imagery under the control of a minister. This involves the active use of suggestions by the minister, who directing the counselee what to see and perceives.

According to the view of Chester and Betsy Kylstra, minister controlled and directed imagery creates a potential hazard for the person and actually set the person up for the following errors.²⁰¹

- Possible control by the counsellor / minister.
- Possible infiltration by demons (spirit guides)
- Possibility of opening up areas that neither the person nor the minister is equipped or ready to handle.

Concerning the method of use in “**inner healing**”, this thesis asserts that God do communicate with His people by visions. It is of cardinal significance to note the difference between “*visualization*” and “***a vision of God***”, which deal with a prophetic revelation by God’s Holy Spirit.

²⁰⁰ Carl Gustav Jung, *On the Nature of the Psyche*, Translated by RFC Hull, Mankind was freed from these fears by a continual process of symbols-formation that leads to culture. Reversion to nature must therefore be followed by a synthetic reconstruction of the symbol. Reduction leads down to the primitive natural man and his peculiar mentality. Freud directed his attention mainly to the ruthless desire of pleasure, Adler to the “psychology of prestige”. For the sake of completeness we would have to mention other characteristics of the primitive, such as his playful, mystical or “heroic” tendencies, but above all that outstanding quality of the primitive mind, which is its subjection to supra-personal “powers”, be they instincts, affects, superstitions, fantasies, magicians, witches, spirits, demons or gods.

²⁰¹ Kylstra, Chester and Betsy (2007) *Restoring the foundations*. Hendersonville, NC: Proclaiming His Word Publications, p. 417.

The Bible reveals vision as one of the central ways Jesus communicates with His Father. Prophets and Apostles also designates about revelation visions as a paramount way God communicates with His people. In visions of God, He always takes the action and the believer is passive – it is one of the Gifts of God’s Holy Spirit. About visualization, a guided imaginary way is most unbiblical and dangerous for the counselee as well as for the counsellor. Where such a method is practice, a counterfeit Spirit – a spirit guide called Jesus – will surely take over and mislead the whole counselling process – even with demonic power and miracles.

Helena P Blavatsky (1831 – 1891) which is the founder of Theosophy – also the mother of many occult, esoteric and New Age groups, taught about the existence of a Hierarchy of Ascended Masters in heaven – which, includes a spirit with the name Jesus (a counterfeit Jesus). They teach the law of Karma and reincarnation.

Their “***Christ – the true esoteric Saviour – is no man but the DIVINE PRINCIPLE in every human being***”.²⁰² Fantasy also lives in the realm of the imagination. There is not a true reality there.²⁰³ On one occasion God spoke to the author in an audible vision, questioning the companion in one’s mind, which was a pointer to demonic interference. This is also the danger with prophetic words, which is imaginative and not a true revelation of God.²⁰⁴

7.1.4.2 WORKINGS OF OCCULT MANIPULATION

Occult manipulation involves the process of using witchcraft, occultism, physical or esoteric power to influence, dominate, manage or control the life of another person for a detriment purpose, whether directly or indirectly. Both direct or indirect manipulations of demonic powers produce the same result of bondage in the final analysis.

²⁰² Martin, Walter Dr (2008) *The Kingdom of the Occult*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson, p.564.

²⁰³ Philippians 4:8.

²⁰⁴ II Corinthians 10:4-5.

Direct manipulations is a physic attack projected against a specific person or persons with specific evil plan, whilst “**indirect manipulations**” is like a deadly trap set against people with no particular person in mind.

8. THE HELL SINARIO WILL BE NOTHING TO GRIN ABOUT

Radio-frequency identification (RFID) technology is forecast to future GRIN technologies, especially neuroscience, brain-machine interfacing and cybernetics.

RFID chips employ tiny integrated circuits for storing and processing information using small antennas for receiving and transmitting the related data. In recent years, RFID technology is expanded as method for verifying and tracking people as well. While “Positive ID” offers testimonies of safeguards implemented to ensure privacy, however, some believe the micro-chip is humanity’s smack of the Biblical mark of the Beast. Students of eschatology find it to be the fulfilling of Revelations 13:16-17.

As newer versions of RFID-like transmitters become even more sophisticated – adding prophetic components to create living implantable machines – the possibility exists that “**the mark of the Beast**” could arrive through a version of this technology.

The danger occurs that a virus can intentionally bring about a pandemic and that those who receive the antidote could become part “**beast**”, given that the proposed cure can rewrite human genetics and the person is no longer entirely human.

Related to the rise of the Anti-Christ and his human-transforming “mark of the Beast” technology is an aspect of trans-humanism developing into an end-time Universalist religion.

9. CONCLUSION

This thesis proposed the argument that humanity is living in the End-Times with an diabolical onslaught against the image of God in man. From the beginning Satan sought for a way for his seed-line to become a reality. The question arises if genetic engineering and Transhumanism may be the method by which the Nephilim will return – the method the Anti-Christ will use to incarnate himself.

The proto-evangelium, Genesis 3:15 gave a profound prophecy of God proclaiming both the Serpent and the women were to have seed and seed-lines and the bloody war between them. From Genesis to Revelation the multi-dimensional sin war is evidence of this prophecy. Tragically, the time has come upon humanity that they not only denied that humanity is at war, but many have abandoned the Bible and its teachings, leaving our society blinded to the obvious assault on it.

Modern and Post-Modern Culture has failed to understand the consequences of its actions and humankind have been continually misled by the bombardment of lies from entities working behind the scenes that have remained all but invisible.

A diabolical plot is afoot to destroy humanity!²⁰⁵ We are facing the ultimate culmination of all that's come before regarding man fight for survival. It is one thing to see what is far off in the past or distant future but quite another thing when one realizes that momentous events are happening right now. Humanity is facing the final onslaught of last minute schemes and secret weapons, which those who are intent on destroying humanity – are employing. This attack has one purpose: To enslave and eventually destroy humanity and to wipe out those who worship the living God rather than the false gods that have been offered to us.

The battle is to prevent the thousand year-reign of the Lord Jesus Christ, replacing it with a Nazi-like Final Reich run by diabolically created supermen.

²⁰⁵ Quayle, Stephen (2003) Genetic Armageddon. Bozeman, MT: End Time Publishers, pp. 274-284.

Satan works to destroy humankind because of his hatred towards God and of his jealousy of man, which is created in the image of God. Satan's anger can be seen in the billions of deaths and sicknesses, abortions, abuse, violence, discord and emotional problems, anxiety, loneliness, grief, broken relationships, depression, resentment, addictions, guilt, emptiness, isolation, hatred, murder and much more, afflicting mankind.

Satan's ultimate goal of that anger is to totally pervert and destroy humanity, both on the spiritual level as well as on the physical level by altering genetic makeup. Since Satan's rebellion in Heaven, he has been working overtime to bring about the annihilation of the seed of Adam and to substitute his transhumanism creations brought about – first by the mating with women and presently through the manipulation of human genetic makeup – through tools and technology which mankind has developed – and as such, he uses humankind's brains and abilities to do it.

Tragically, many doubt his existence. When the question is asked – the answer will reveals the real enemy: Who would benefit from pushing society toward terra-forming our planet into a place inhospitable to human beings and the creation of super disease designed to wipe out the whole of humanity? The real enemy could only be trans-human creatures. Deep down the majority of humanity have thrown away Christianity as outdated and unneeded – headed for a full blown disaster. Fiction writers have prepared our culture to accept the unspeakable terror with imagery that is to come. Humanity is rejecting Jesus of Nazareth as well as His warnings in the book of Revelations, while technology ungoverned by morality is embraced.

The unseen hand that runs the evil enterprises is the ancient serpent – Satan himself. He is the mastermind behind all evil that is done on a global basis. Only one entity wants to change or even destroy the human race – to make war against the seed of Adam. Always remember those behind the coming genetic Armageddon are human beings who are simply acting as shells for the habitation of devils and demons.

The quantum transformation from the natural to the supernatural will absolutely upset the mental apperception of the world – confronting the natural with supernatural events. Jesus Christ promised to shorten the days for the sake of the elect – those who accepted Jesus Christ as their personal Saviour and who repent of their sins through His forgiveness. They are saved through the blood of Christ and His death on the cross when He gave His life for mankind. The ultimate quest for fallen beings is power – whether they are angels or man.

Power is the ultimate goal. Scripture reveals that only the power of God towards the redeemed in Christ can overcome the Evil One.²⁰⁶ The war is real, the players are real. By our exception or rejection of Jesus Christ, we determine by our own free will what side of the conflict we are going to be on. It is time for the human race to realize that the book of Revelations comes from Jesus Christ Himself – revealing the rise of the beast, the false prophet, the false messiah, the three and a half year reign of terror and the battle of Armageddon and finally the return of our LORD and kind – Jesus Christ.

And I saw heaven opened and behold a white horse: and he that sat upon him was called Faithful and True and in righteousness He doth judge and make war. His eyes were as a flame of fire and on his head were many crowns; and he had a name written that no man knew, but he himself. And he was clothed with a vesture dipped in blood and his name is called The Word of God. And the armies which were in heaven followed Him upon white horses, clothed in fine linen, white and clean. And out of His mouth goeth a sharp sword, that with it He should smite the nations: and He shall rule them with a rod of iron: and He treadeth the winepress of the fierceness and wrath of Almighty God. And he hath on His vesture and on his thigh a name written, KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS.

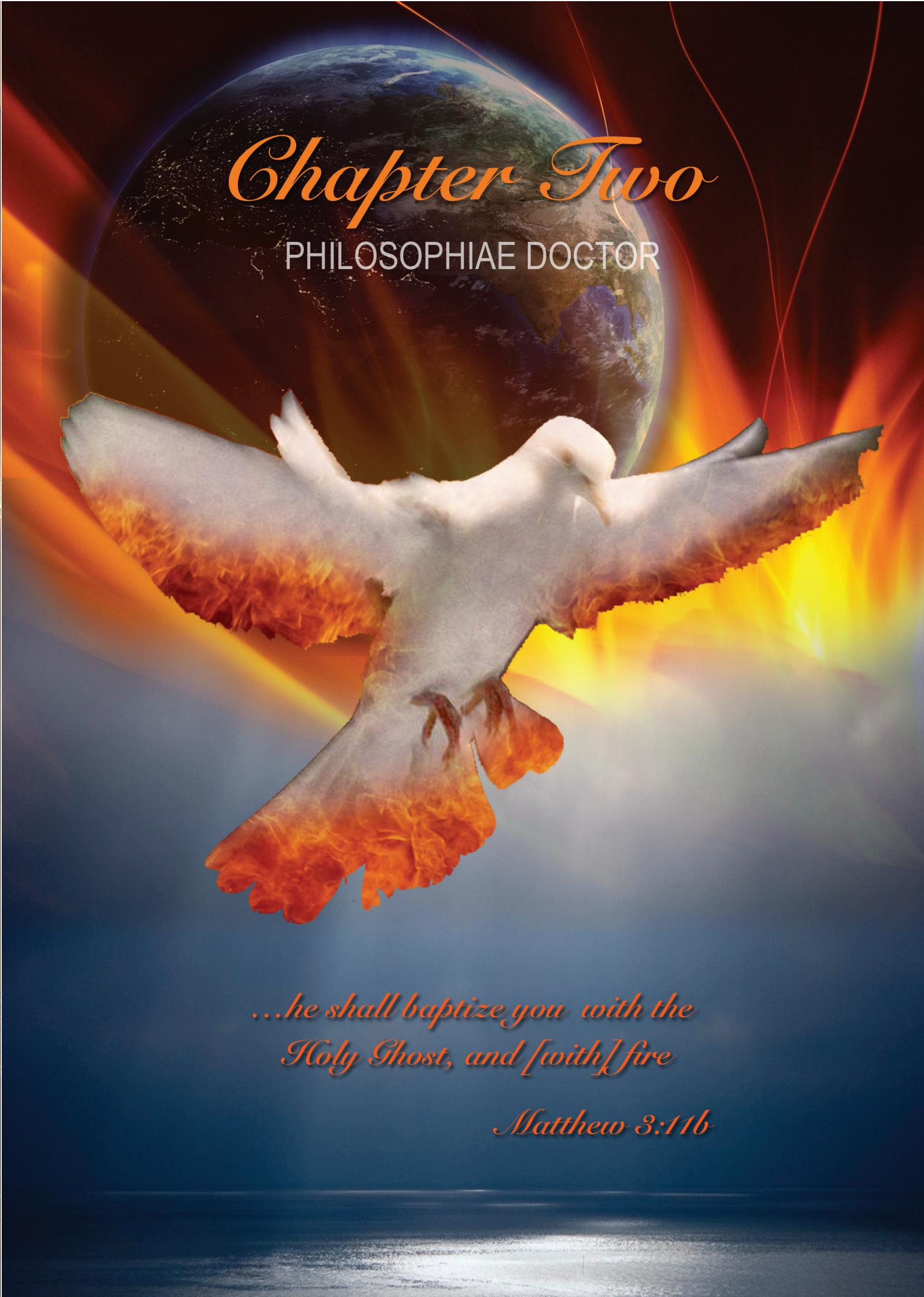
Revelations 19:1-21, 20:1-6 and 21:1-7

-----oOo-----

²⁰⁶ Luke 10:19; Luke 10:19.

And at that time shall Michael stand up, the great prince which standeth for the children of thy people: and there shall be a time of trouble

Daniel 12:1



Chapter Two

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

*...he shall baptize you with the
Holy Ghost, and [with] fire*

Matthew 3:11b

Chapter Two

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR



*...he shall baptize you with the
Holy Ghost, and [with] fire*

Matthew 3:11b

Cover Art for Chapters: Susan Langeveldt
Graphic Design: SL Studios



Chapter 2

Supreme Spiritual Warfare and Deliverance

Definitely, God is calling His faithful and chosen ones to fight the great battle of the End-Times with Him in order to deliver the nations.

Ana Mendez-Ferrell¹

1. INTRODUCTION

The war is real. It is dangerous, but it is worth fighting for the freedom of the captives. To be part of the army it's not necessary to be perfect or extremely mature in the knowledge of Spiritual Warfare. In order to fight the battle at this level, it is necessary to fight in accordance with the orders and requirements that God have given, the correct covering and strategy, the grace of God, which will supply in His followers need and His promise to perfect His elect until they became great warriors.

The soldiers of God, those from whom He can ask anything at any price, are the true bride of the Lamb. Intimate Communion with Him in worship is relevant for the believer's formation and development as the army of God.

For God hath not given us the spirit of fear; but of power, and of love, and of a sound mind.

II Timothy 1:7

¹ Mendez-Ferrell, Ana Dr (2012) High Level Warfare. Vendra, Florida: Voice Of The Light Ministries, p. 151.

God began to remove the veils of Scripture, enabling various prophets to understand how demonic powers and principalities are structured and how they operate in the heavenly realm. In addition, God is giving wisdom on how to tear down these strongholds in the Spirit realm. He opened a door that will transform homes, Churches, Cities and Nations – giving birth to a powerful army who is beginning to bring tremendous advancement to the Kingdom of God.

Most Christian and Churches do not know how to defend themselves against the assault of the devil, while millions are dragged into hell. God is preparing His army of courageous and uncompromising people, who are willing to lay down their lives for Him – even unto death. They dare to confront the powers of wickedness so that the Gospel can penetrate and save millions of lost souls.

Not all believers are called to fight in the frontline of Gods army, but all should know how to keep themselves safe from the devils attacks. Confusion, fear and ignorance is however, not of the Lord. Satan has a very well-planned strategy to win the war. Every Christian should be armed and be aware of the enemy's schemes. Nobody is exempt from the attacks emerging out of the second heaven. Satan is warring in every territory, destroying societies and nations. There is a Biblical warrant for strategic-level Spiritual Warfare, but Holiness is required for effective warfare prayer.

Bernie May, director of Wycliffe Bible Translators gives account of a veteran translator who visited his office and amongst other things testifies, *“I have two major goals while I’m home. One, I need to learn as much as I can about Spiritual Warfare. Our struggle out there is not against malaria, or the false religions. Our struggle is against the principalities, against the powers, against the world rulers of this present darkness, against the spiritual hosts of wickedness in the heavenly places of Ephesians 6:12. My other goal is to find some people who will stand with us in prayer. The only way we are going to break through the spiritual darkness in the cities and nations is by prayer. I need intercessors to stand with me.”*²

² Wagner, Peter (1992) Warfare Prayer. Ventura, California: Monarch Crowborough Publishers, pp.13-14.

God's Holy Spirit is saying, "**Prepare for warfare.**" This decade will be the most intense Spiritual Warfare of all times. Believers may see some of the greatest victories for God and His Kingdom, but also some of the most serious setbacks. The final outcome, however, is not in doubt. The power of Satan was definitely broken on the Cross and it may well be that the enemy knows the end is near that he is waging a last ditch stand, which will end at Armageddon.

The Bible itself describes the believers fight against the devil as warfare. The reason is clear. Humanity is in a life and death struggle. Spiritual Warfare is not a game. There is a finality to war unlike any other human activity. Through many tribulations, people **enter into the Kingdom of God**. Satan is referred to several times as the god of this age or the Prince of the Principalities of the Air. He has usurped God's authority and set up his Kingdom here on earth. His power is awe-inspiring. Luther insightfully said, "**On earth is not his equal**". When Jesus Christ came, he invaded Satan's Kingdom with the Kingdom of God.

And from the days of John the Baptist until now the kingdom of heaven suffereth violence, and the violent take it by force.

Matthew 11:12

For the most part of Spiritual Warfare, dealing with the demonic has been limited to possession or oppression of individuals. While this remains a vital part of the battle, a new front has emerged: territorial spirits – such as the spirits of pride and the spirit of witchcraft.³ One of the most powerful dominions ruling the earth in the last days is *the Great Prostitute*, also known as *the Queen of heaven*.

Central to the issues that will be portrayed in this Chapter are Supreme Spiritual warfare and Deliverance. The powers of darkness are on a collision course with the saints of God and we may well be witnessing the opening scenario. A scenario drenched by promiscuous influences to degrade and destroy Christian morals in our homes, Churches, societies and nations.

³ Wagner, Peter Prof (1991) *Territorial Spirits: Insight on Strategic-Level Spiritual Warfare from Nineteen Christian leaders*. Chichester, England: Sovereign World Limited, p.32.

Jesus Christ is waiting and expecting his enemies to be made His footstool by His warrior bride.

And to make all men see what is the fellowship of the mystery, which from the beginning of the world hath been hid in God, who created all things by Jesus Christ: To the intent that now unto the principalities and powers in heavenly places might be known by the church the manifold wisdom of God.

Ephesians 3:9-10

2. THE MEANING AND IMPLICATIONS OF WAR AND WARFARE

War is a part of the history of man as recorded in the Bible. Knowingly or unknowingly all human beings are involved in warfare one way or another. War in its most broad sense is the use of force to achieve specific goals and involves violence to achieve it. In *any violent war*, there are five elements, which includes the following: *objectives* (goals or targets of a military operation); *logistics* (implementation and management of complex tasks); *strategies* (high-level plan) and *tactics* (low-level plans) and the *morale (ESPRIT DE CORPS)*.⁴

And there shall be a time of trouble, such as never was since there was a nation, ... Those who are wise shall shine like the brightness of the firmament, and those who turn many to righteousness like stars forever and ever.

Daniel 12:1b, 3

These prophetic words from the angelic messenger to Daniel and to us have a message for our times. The troubles upon the nations of the world are mounting up like nothing that has ever been. There seem to be few voices that would dispute the mounting evidence of world chaotic trouble. The troubled darkness of this hour is very great.⁵

⁴ ***Etymology: Morale***, See terms and definitions.

⁵ Bubeck, Mark I (1997) *Raising Lambs among wolves, How to Protect Your children from the Influence of Evil*. Chicago Illinois; Moody Press, p.11

“*This troubled darkness,*” should be seen as both natural and supernatural (spiritual).

If we look intensely at the meaning of **war** per se, we will have to deal with the implications of **warfare**. War in the popular sense is a conflict among political groups involving hostilities of considerable duration and magnitude. In the usage of social science certain qualifications are added:⁶ “*Sociologists usually apply the term to such conflicts only if they are initiated and conducted in accordance with socially recognized forms. They treat war, whether among primitive or advanced peoples, as an institution recognized in custom or in law.*”

As seen in the Wycliffe Bible Dictionary, **war is a part of the history of man as recorded in the Bible.**⁷

The ideal described by the psalmist, “**Behold, how good and how pleasant it is for brethren to dwell together in unity**” (*Psalm 133:1*) remained as elusive for him as for modern man. War was a very significant part of the experience of the Israelites, particularly during the time of the Conquest, of the Judges, and of the Kings. It has also provided figurative language for NT⁸-writers comments about spiritual warfare.

Looking at the word WAR from an etymological point of view we see that the main Hebrew root for words of war in the OT,⁹ *l-h-m*, “to fight, do battle,” is used mostly in the *niphal* stem as a verb, נִלְחַם (*nilham*), “to wage war.” Hebrew מִלְחָמָה (*milhama*), “war,” is the regular noun. Two verbs used frequently in the NT are (1) Gr, *polhvev*, “to wage war, fight,” and its cognate noun *polhvmej*, “war, battle, strife, contention”; and (2) *strateuvomai*, “to war, wage war.”¹⁰

⁶ Encyclopedia, Britannica, Ltd Volume 23 (1963) War. England; William Benton Publisher, p.321-322.

⁷ Pfeiffer, Chares F, Vos Howard F, Rea, John Editors (1975) Wycliffe Bible Dictionary. Peabody, Massachusetts; Hendrickson Publishers, p.1783.

⁸ NT: New Testament.

⁹ OT: Old Testament.

¹⁰ Pfeiffer, Chares F, Vos Howard F, Rea, John Editors (1975) Wycliffe Bible Dictionary. Peabody, Massachusetts; Hendrickson Publishers, p.1783.

Taking a closer look at the meaning of the word 'WAR,' as seen in Strong's Concordance¹¹. Knowingly or unknowingly all human beings are involved in warfare one way or the other. For this thesis we are concerned with a full emphasis on Spiritual Warfare and what it entails in our day and age.

Spiritual Warfare is closely linked to the Power of Darkness. *"Angels and men did not know evil until they fell into a state of evil. Satan did not tell Eve this when he said that she would know good and evil. His true objective in deceiving Eve was to get her to disobey God, but his deception was. "Ye shall be as gods." Had she thought about it, she would have realized that the Deceiver's own suggestion exposed itself, for his "reasoning" amounted to: Disobey God to be more like God!"*¹²

Our first awareness as to the origin of evil is closely integrated in the concept of **disobedience** and its **consequences** (**Deuteronomy 28:15-68; 2 Corinthians 10:5; John 3:36**).

The second field of investigation concerning Spiritual Warfare for the purpose of this thesis entails the question of the role of **knowledge** and/or the lack of knowledge. In this regard Jessie Penn-Lewis in collaboration of the Welsh revivalist, Evan Roberts stated the following:

¹¹ Etymology: The New Strong's concise concordance & Vine's concise Dictionary of the Bible, Thomas Nelson Publishers., Old Testament, Noun, מִלְחָמָה (*Milchamah*) (4421), "war; battle; skirmish; combat," This word means "war," the over-all confrontation of two forces, Gen 14:2. It can refer to the engagement in hostilities considered as a whole, the "battle," Gen 14:8. מִלְחָמָה (*milchamah*) sometimes represents the art of soldiering, "combat," Exod 15:3, **Verb**, לָחַם (*Lacham*) (3898), "to engage in battle, fight, wage war," Exod 1:10. **New Testament, Verbs**, 1. **Polhvmew (Polemeo)** (4170) (Eng., "polemics"), "to fight, to make war," is used (a) literally, Rev. 12:7 (twice), RV; 13:4; 17:14; 19:11; (b) metaphorically, Rev. 2:16, RV; (C) hyperbolically, Jas. 4:2, 2. **strateuvw (strateo)** (4754), used in the middle voice, "to make war" (from **stravtoj**, "an encamped army"), is translated "to war" in 2 Cor 10:3; metaphorically, of spiritual "conflict," 1 Tim 1:18; 2 Tim 2:3, KJV; Jas 4:1; 1 Pet 2:11, 3. **a;nistrateuomai** (497), "to make war against," (**anti**), Rom 7:23, **Noun, Poilhmoc** (4171), "war" (akin to A, No.), is so translated in the RV, for KJV, "battle," 1 Cor 14:8; Rev 9:7, 9; 16:14; 20:8; for KJV, "fight," Heb 11:34; KJV and RV in Jas. 4:1, hyperbolically of private "quarrels"; elsewhere, literally, e.g., Matt 24:6; Rev 11:7.

¹² Penn-Lewis, Jessie (1996) *Secrets of Spiritual Warfare*. New Kensington, PA; Whitaker House, p.31

“Un-fallen man in his pure state was not perfect in knowledge. Eve was ignorant of “good and evil” (Genesis 3:5), and her ignorance was a condition that contributed to her deception by the Serpent, who was Satan in disguise.”¹³

Until this day Satan has used the same method and strategy to get Christians to sin against the Most High God, by his **reasoning** luring them into **disobedience** through a lack of **knowledge** and **ignorance** into deception and eventually **to fall**.

As a genesis we'll have to look at the root or original plan found in a doctrine, a “*lost doctrine*” to illustrate the essence of the warfare we're involved in. It is called the lost doctrine of original sin. A new spiritual battle is raging on planet Earth. Forces of good and evil are vying openly as never before for the minds and souls of human beings.

This spiritual battle entails to different kingdoms. These kingdoms are spiritual and there are only two of them in the universe. These kingdoms have rulers – locked in mortal combat for the souls of people. Therefore, soul winning in evangelism is getting involved in the battle between the rulers of the two spiritual kingdoms of the universe for the souls of people on planet Earth. See Chapter Three for the *Kingdom Analysis Undergirth by the Apostolic and the Prophetic*.

In agreement with Evelyn Christenson we know that Christians do have an answer. In fact they have the *only* answer. *“The reason all this evil is taking place has its roots in what happened to our first parents in the Garden of Eden. It was then that Satan, having been cast out of heaven for his sin, pitted himself against God for the allegiance of the first human beings. And when Adam and Eve fell into his grasp, the Bible tells us they took the whole human race with them into Satan’s evil kingdom.”¹⁴*

The Devil’s favorite axiom is the deterministic excuse for evil.¹⁵

¹³ Ibid., p.31

¹⁴ Christenson Evelyn (1991) *Battling the princes of Darkness*. England; Scripture Press, p. 8

¹⁵ Jeffrey B Russel Mephistopheles.

So then as through one transgression there resulted condemnation to all men...

Romans 5:18

The **doctrine of original sin** is in the official tenants of every major denomination and independent church today, it is an unsettling doctrine. Most Christian churches seem to have lost it, are not teaching it, or worse still, are openly replacing it with psychology's answer that everybody is born good. Mostly the churches have just let the "*doctrine of original sin slip away and die a natural death.*"¹⁶ Viewing people, who choose not to accept Jesus as their only Saviour, lost for all eternity, is most unsettling and disturbing. Therefore human plans and programs have largely replaced it today.

In Humanism, New Age, The Occult, Psychology and Science the key to the question on sin is easy ----- "***sin doesn't exist***". To Christians the key to the problem is very simple ----- "***Win them to Jesus!***" When someone is won to Jesus, that person is transferred from one kingdom to another. "These two kingdoms are the 'kingdom of darkness' ruled by Satan and the 'kingdom of God's Son Jesus Christ.' The Bible makes this transferring of citizenship from the Prince of Darkness' kingdom to Jesus' kingdom very clear." (Table 1)

For He [the Father] delivered us from the dominion of darkness and transferred us to the kingdom of His beloved Son.

Colossians 1:13

Therefore, just as through one man sin entered into the world, and death through sin and so death spread to all men, because all sinned.¹⁷

For on the one hand the judgment arose from one transgression resulting in condemnation...

Romans 5:16

¹⁶ Christenson Evelyn (1991) Battling the princes of Darkness. England; Scripture Press, p. 8

¹⁷ Romans 5:12.

He that believeth on Him [Jesus] is not condemned; but he that believeth not is condemned already, because he hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God.

John 3:18

Paul declared in Ephesians 2:3 that the Christians to whom he was writing formerly had been *by nature* the children of wrath. Regardless of parents, Church membership and country of birth or religion – **everybody already is a member of the kingdom of darkness**. Whatever your Church affiliation, you will find this doctrine of original sin in your church's tenets of faith. Perhaps it is not preached and taught very often – but it is there. There is hope for the world.

For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him shall not perish, but have eternal life.

John 3:16

We know that we [Christians] are of God, and the whole world lies in the power of the evil wicked one.

1 John 5:19

Christians are people who were transferred out of that kingdom of darkness into the kingdom of God's dear Son Jesus when they accepted Him as Saviour and Lord.

Box 1:Crucial Info concerning the Two Kingdoms.

Their citizenship has been transferred!

Considering the two Kingdoms it will benefit the Christian... *"To keep you balance... (Satan) is not a creator, so he could not produce a competing world... his jealousy of God could pervert what God has made good..."*¹⁸ Christians should not fear Satan's Kingdom.

¹⁸ Warner, Timothy M (1991) *Spiritual Warfare, Victory over the Powers of This Dark World*. Wheaton, Illinois; Crossway Books, p. 46.

2.1 A GENERAL OVERVIEW OF WAR ON NATURAL AND SUPERNATURAL ARENAS

Natural War in its most broad sense is the use of force to achieve specific goals and involves different types of warfare, which change over the ages as technology and logistics enhanced, as seen in the Industrial / Technological revolution. This enhancement brings the Spiritual warrior in contact with the *new face* of genetic engineering and transhumanism as seen in Chapter One.

The different **types of natural warfare** include the following:

- Logistic warfare (implementation and management of complex tasks).
- Industrial (technology) warfare.
- Strategic warfare (Gorilla, Terrorism, Biological-, Psychological-, Information-, Political-, Nuclear- and Territorial warfare, etc.).
- Tactic warfare (air-land; cold-war; proxy; attrition; guerilla; siege trench; conventional; asymmetrical and network-centre).

The commend of Prof Peter Wagner can be taken as representative of **the different types of Spiritual Warfare**:¹⁹

- **Ground-level spiritual warfare:** This is the ministry of casting out demons. Jesus gave His disciples the power over unclean spirits, to cast them out.²⁰
- **Occult-level spiritual warfare:** A kind of demonic power is evidently at work through shamans, New Age channellers, occult practitioners, witches, satanic priests, fortune-tellers, etc.
- **Strategic-level spiritual warfare:** Believers contend with an ominous concentration of demonic power: territorial spirits. Few had given thought to the possibility that events shaping human society could have a relationship to struggles among powerful supernatural beings.

¹⁹ Wagner, Peter C (Prof) Warfare Prayer. Ventura, California: Monarch Publishers, pp. 16-19.

²⁰ Matthew 10:1, Luke 10:17; Acts 8:7.

Warfare is not an end in itself, but prayer that helps bring about effective evangelism. A clear Biblical account of ancient strategic-level warfare is found in the Book of Revelation.

And there was war in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels, And prevailed not; neither was their place found any more in heaven. And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.

Revelation 12:7-9

A clear Biblical account of present strategic-level warfare is also found in the Book of Revelation.²¹ As the drama builds, a powerful demonic being appears as a harlot. She is such a fierce enemy of the Gospel, that she is drunk with the blood of the persecuted and martyred Christians. She is in all probability the most influential territorial spirit mentioned in Scripture.

And upon her forehead was a name written, MYSTERY, BABYLON THE GREAT, THE MOTHER OF HARLOTS AND ABOMINATIONS OF THE EARTH. And I saw the woman drunken with the blood of the saints, and with the blood of the martyrs of Jesus: and when I saw her, I wondered with great admiration.

Revelation 17:5-6

One author has drawn attention to the fact that evil is operating through societies and that it cannot be explained simply by analyzing human nature, depraved as it might be or by the application of sociological principles.

Walter Wink argues: The early Christians perceived that “*every nation and tribe and tongue and people was presided over by a spiritual Power.*”²²

However, engaging in Spiritual battle is nothing less than partnering with God in the triumph He has already gained through Christ. He disarmed the powers and authorities and made a public spectacle of them, triumphing over them by the Cross (Colossians 2:15).

²¹ Wagner, Peter C (Prof) *Warfare Prayer*. Ventura, California: Monarch Publishers, p.87.

²² Wink, Walter (1986) *Unmasking the Powers*. Philadelphia, PA: Fortress Press, p.89.

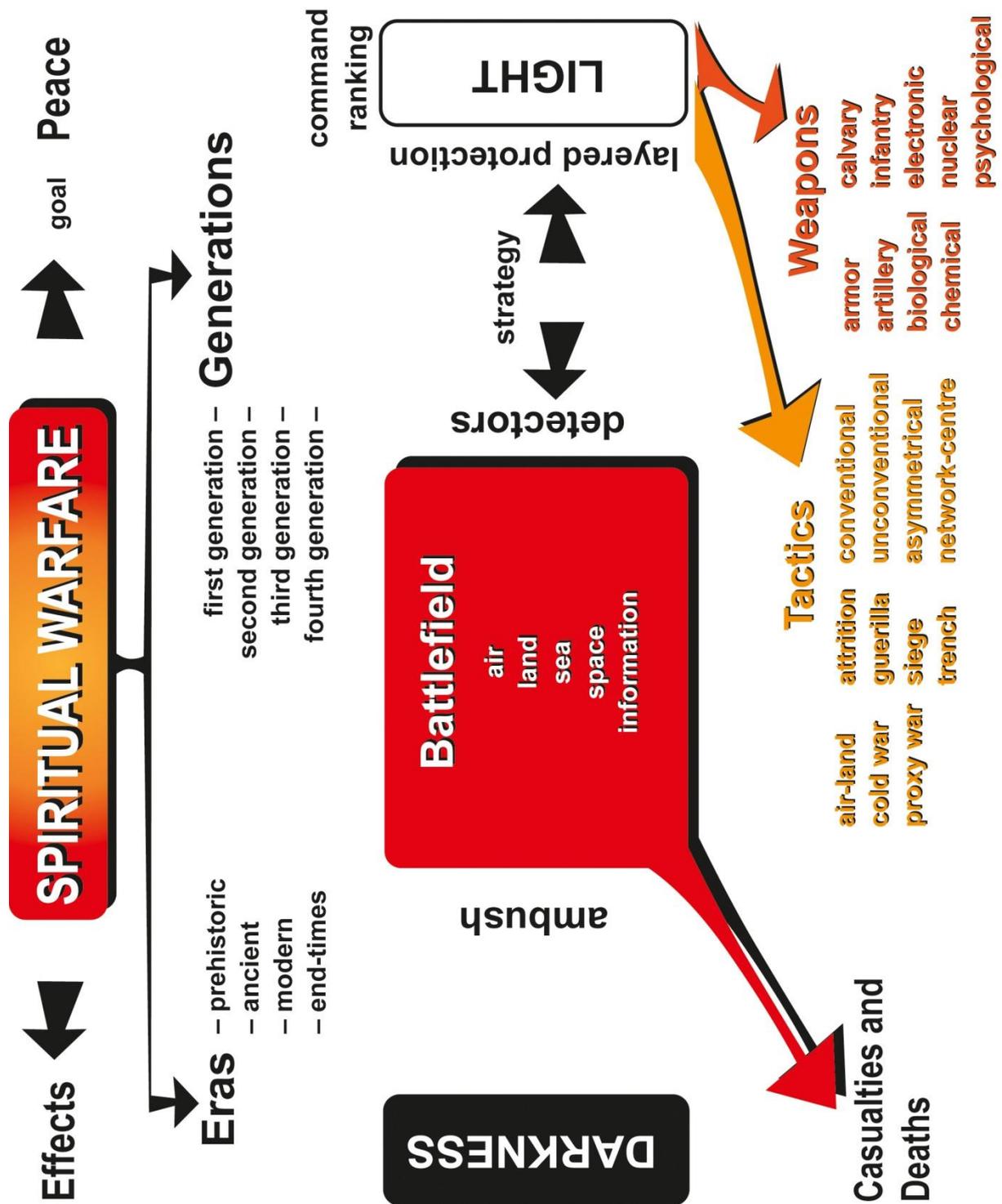


Table 1. Spiritual Warfare

Both Natural as well as Spiritual warfare types involve five elements as mentioned before, which includes the following: *objectives, logistics, strategies* and *tactics* and the *morale of the soldier*.²³

- **Objectives**²⁴ are the goals or targets of war set by the top leader/s of a military operation, which in a natural war could not be achieved peacefully and which is considered sufficiently important to justify resort to force. In the case of Spiritual Warfare, Scripture reveals a divine hierarchy order: Upper-most is God the Father,²⁵ then Jesus Christ –who is not only the Head of the Church,²⁶ but also head over all principalities. The objectives / goals of spiritual warfare set by Christ encompass the following: Salvation, sanctification, holiness, deliverance, divine healing (spirit, soul and body), compassion for the poor and oppressed, the fruit of the Spirit, living in a personal relationship with God, to glorify God and to worship and praise God. Victory in a multi-dimensional sin war cannot be obtained where *passivity* thrives, but can only be achieved by *aggressive resistance* of Satan and his workings. Satan is a thief and his main goals are to kill, to steal, to destroy people's lives. Passivity will end in oppression, possession and destruction.
- **Strategies** are the *high-level plans* formulated by the generals to achieve the objectives assigned to them. Strategies on spiritual warfare pertaining to internal evil includes not only the confession of personal sin, but one has to be cleansed by the consequences of sin, including deliverance – if the sin had led to demonization. Strategies on Spiritual Warfare pertaining to external evil systems or structures are precisely described by Walter Wink:²⁷

²³ **Etymology: Morale**, See terms and definitions.

²⁴ Wagner, Peter C (Prof) Warfare Prayer. Ventura, California: Monarch Publishers, p. 28.

²⁵ Ephesians 1:17, 22. “That the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of glory... hath put all things under His [Jesus] feet and gave Him to be the head over all things to the church, which is His body, the fullness of Him that filleth all in all.”

²⁶ Colossians 1:18. “And He is the head of the body, the church: who is the beginning, the firstborn from the dead; that in all things He might have the pre-eminence.”

I Corinthians 11:3. “But I would have you know that the head of every man is Christ and the head of the woman is the man and the head of Christ is God.”

²⁷ Wink, Walter (1986) Naming the Powers; Unmasking the Powers; Engaging the Powers Philadelphia, PA: Fortress Press.

Bigger and better reform programs have not nor will ever change evil social structures for the better, if the spiritual powers behind the social structures are not named, unmasked and engaged. Spirit directed prayer opens the way for the blessings of the Kingdom to come upon the earth. Generals in Spiritual Warfare are believers who live in close relationships with God, praying for personal or strategic strategies and receiving Prophetic inspiration/revelations from God. Spiritual Warfare Strategies encompass the following examples: personal and warfare prayer, to resist demonic influences, hearing God and obeying what He say, intercession, counselling, deliverance and evangelism. Satan's strategies includes that he can attach himself to idols and hide incredibly malignant power. Other tactics includes demonic strongholds.²⁸ Wagner points out that there is a resurgence of worship of ancient gods in cultures all across the world. This is a chief strategy in the End-Times. Missionaries need to identify the powers behind the formation of the culture.²⁹

- **Tactics** refer to *low-level plans* formulated by lower-ranking officers to implement and carry out the strategies implemented by the generals. Satan's chief tactic is deception,³⁰ lies and deceiving people by his shows of power.³¹ Since the thesis expounds Deliverance from a Spiritual Warfare perspective, tactics should be identified to use for internal evil problems, external evil systems and supernatural evil. *Different tactics / methods can be used in Spiritual Warfare to identify the presence and nature of evil spirits:*³² Discernment and Detection.

²⁸ **Etymology:** *A Stronghold* is a fortified place that Satan builds to exalt himself against the knowledge and plans of God. There are **different types of strongholds**: *Personal* strongholds (sin create 'holes in our armour'); strongholds of the *mind*; *Ideological* Strongholds (the New Age is one of the most serious threats to Christianity and are inspired by invisible forces and powers of darkness); *Occult* strongholds (are many Ideological strongholds of witchcraft, Satanism and New Age religions which invite spirit guides to operate in areas); social strongholds (poverty, racism, injustice); strongholds between City and Church (where the church see the city government as its enemy); seats of Satan (highly oppressed and demonically controlled geographic locations that reign and rule areas); sectarian strongholds (division causing strongholds between churches, such as pride, idolatry of belief systems, fear of rejection); strongholds of iniquity (sins of the fathers that cause weaknesses in generation).

²⁹ Wagner, Peter (1993) *Breaking Strongholds in Your City*. Ventura, California: Regal Books, p. 81.

³⁰ Wagner, Peter C (Prof) *Warfare Prayer*. Ventura, California: Monarch Publishers, p. 62.

³¹ Wagner, Timothy, M (1990) *Deception: Satan's Chief Tactic, Wrestling with Dark Angels*. Ventura, CA: Regal Books, pp.102-103.

³² Hammond, Frank and Ida Mae (1992) *Pigs in the Parlour*. Chichester, West Sussex: New Wine Press, pp. 43-46.

- **Logistics** refer to everything that is needed in the warfare and supplying those involved in the war with whatever they require in order operating in the spiritual warfare. Different logistics are needed to achieve the objectives proclaimed by Jesus Christ: Advancing of the Kingdom of God, equipping of the warrior, teachings on main Biblical information.
- **Morale**(*ESPIRIT DE CORPS*) involves (1) moral principles, teachings or conduct, (2) the mental and emotional condition (as of enthusiasm, confidence or loyalty) of an individual or believer with regard to the function or tasks at hand; and (3) the level of individual psychological well-being based on factors such as sense of purpose and confidence. Jesus Christ the head of His Church gave moral principles, teachings and conduct to follow in His Kingdom of Light. Objectives (goals) strongly affect the morale of the warrior. See the Principles of the Kingdom of God in a following section of this Chapter.

Both armies (Kingdoms) in a war fight likewise. As the **technology of war** progresses, the logistics grow in significance. With the rise of industrial / techno-dimensional warfare and dominance of logistics over strategy and tactics as the primary factor in war, the primary strategies of war became the attrition (the wearing down) and the interdiction.

It is a truism in military circles that amateurs debate strategy and tactics, while professionals debate logistics. Ultimately, victory in war usually results from a mixture of strategies and tactics, which leverage the warfarer's strengths and the enemies' weaknesses in all five ways.

In the natural as well as in the Spiritual, different battlefields occur. Just as the physical battlefield of war that involves different areas, (namely: land, sea, air, space and information), so does the **Spiritual Battlefield** involves **different areas**, (namely: internal personal battles against the sinful depraved nature; external battles against evil systems; and supernatural spiritual battles against the invisible evil supernatural world).

This can be categorized as follows:

A) Personal battlefield (internal struggles against evil pertaining to the depraved nature of mankind):

- the spirit.
- soul (will, emotions, the mind).
- the body.

B) Systems as battlefield (external battles against evil system and structures)

- Social systems (where evil is encompassed in family-, school-, Church-, community-, legal-, political-, cultural and economic systems, etc.).
- Spiritual systems (Evil religious systems currently functioning: Christian denominations and independent Churches as well as in false religious systems and occult systems).
- Territorial systems and structures (Territorial Spirits at work in different geographic areas).

C) The supernatural realm (spiritual battles pertaining to good and evil in the invisible world)

- The Hierarchy of God
- The Hierarchy of Satan

THIS thesis and Two Chapter per se, are concerned with a full emphasis on Spiritual Warfare and what it entails in the contexts of the Chapters title, especially during the End-Time.

God gave the Believer **spiritual weapons** for this spiritual warfare. The armour is the protective metal clothing worn in a battle by soldiers. Biblically it involves the 'Full armour of God', since believers wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, powers, rulers of the darkness and spiritual wickedness in high place as seen in Ephesians 6.

Different weaponry is used in physical as well as spiritual battles, some defensive others offensive.

(1) **Defensive weapons** in natural war include the personal armour, while (2) **offensive weapons** involve the following types: artillery, biological, chemical, infantry, electronic (radar), nuclear and psychological weapons.

- **Artillery** involves guns of large caliber, missiles and cannons. In a Biblical perspective, artillery may refer to different kinds of prayer because it involves the weapons of the foot soldier.
- **Psychological weapons** are techniques used with the aim to influence the value system, emotions, motives, reason or behaviour of people – to target the morale of the soldier. It is essential for believers to live in close relationship with God: to read the Word of God resultant in holiness of the believer, to pray frequently as well as *in the spirit* to edify himself, to keep his heart free from bitterness and unforgiveness, to stay gentle, humble and dependant on God and to live a life of praise and worship.
- **Biological weapons** are living organisms or viruses that reproduce replication within their host victims. Insect warfare is also considered a type of biological warfare and will most probably involve genetic engineering and transhumanism as portrayed in Chapter One.
- **Nuclear weapons** are weapons of mass destruction, invented in reference to aerial bombing with chemical explosives. This type of weapons are closely linked to the bio-technological weapons of the End Times.
- **Chemical weapons** involve toxic properties of chemical substances as weapons, which were previously used to induce toxic gas for mass assassination.
- **Electronic weapons** refer to any action involving the use of the electromagnetic spectrum of directed energy to control the spectrum or hinder enemy assault via the spectrum.

Researching the meaning of war, the repercussion / effects will have to be dealt with. Believers have an enemy whose expressed purpose is to steal, kill and destroy, an enemy who will stop at nothing to hinder the purposes of God, injure and bring pain to God's people and discredit God's Word.

He hates God, Jesus Christ and believers.

And you hath he quickened, who were dead in trespasses and sins; Wherein in time past ye walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience.

Ephesians 2:1-2

The Biblical Spiritual Worldview reveals a struggle against evil supernaturalism, which has been lost by years of ***materialistic interpretations*** and ***demythologizing***. This enemy, although defeated two thousand years ago, will not be destroyed until the end of the Book of Revelation. Believers are entailed in a bloody multi-dimensional sin war.

Sin is progressive, and will result in different categories of oppression and possession. Firstly, the degree of oppression and/or possession depends on whether the person is a Christian or not and secondly, it depends on the extent to which the person is exposed to corruption of evil.

For though we walk in the flesh, we do not war after the flesh: (For the weapons of our warfare are not carnal, but mighty through God to the pulling down of strong holds;) Casting down imaginations, and every high thing that exalteth itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ.

II Corinthians 10:3-5

The final battle between Satan, and Jesus is clearly described in the three Synoptic Gospels of the Bible. Scripture prophecy that this final combat will lead to Jesus' complete victory over Satan, and his kingdom.

2.2 THE CONCEPTS OF SPIRITUAL WARFARE AND DELIVERANCE

The section will define the concept of Spiritual Warfare by way of a descriptive dialogue. Believers are in the midst of a multi-dimensional sin war. The Church is Biblically revealed as God's soldiers in the Kingdom of Light.

Since Spiritual Warfare is intrinsically linked to sin; iniquity; evil, and Satan and his demonic followers. It confronts man with the bona fide fact of demonization and oppression. The word possessed by the King James Version is the Greek word '**daimonizomai**'.³³By demonization demon possession is not implied.. Possession implies ownership, while demonization mean that Satan, through his demons, exercise direct, partial control over an area or areas of the life of a Christian / Non Christian.³⁴

The Wycliffe Dictionary notes that demons desire to be embodied in living human or animal beings. In the New Testament, demons are frequently said to take possession of men and Christ therefore '**cast them out**' (Mathew 4:24; 8:16; 9:33; 15:22). At times more than one demon may possess one person, as in the case of the maniac of Gadara (Mark 5:1-17; Luke 8:30-33). The disciples were empowered and commissioned to heal all manner of diseases and to cast out demons (Matthew 10:8; Luke 9:1; 10:17-20). They have great difficulty with some demons and were told by Christ that certain demons could only be cast out after prayer and fasting.³⁵

As Wink notes³⁶ deliverance was considered common practice in the early Church. Baptism itself was an entry-deliverance, freeing the initiates from the delusional system that had previously held them in bondage. In the time of the early Church, deliverance was not, a rare and extreme intervention. It was the indispensable prerequisite for getting a "*new mind*" (*metanoia*). Jesus' teaching itself is a kind of deliverance, a cleansing of the mind of the misinformation that enslaves people to the Powers of Darkness. Scripture warns Christians not to fall into the snare of the Devil. Apostle Paul wrote to warn believers about the danger of being ignorant of Satan's schemes (II Corinthians 11).

³³ Hammond, Frank and Mae, Ida (1992) *Pigs in the Parlour: A Practical Guide to Deliverance*. West Sussex, England: New Wine Press, p. 9.

³⁴ Murrphy, Ed Dr (2001) *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson, p.xii.

³⁵ Pfeiffer, Charles F; Vos, Howard F; Rea, John (199) *Wycliffe Bible Dictionary*. Peabody, Massachusetts: Hendrickson Publishers, p. 449.

³⁶ Wink Walter (1992) *Engaging the Powers, Discernment and Resistance in a World of Domination*. Minneapolis; Fortress Press, p. 134

3. UNDERSTANDING SATAN'S ASSAULT, AS A KEY ISSUE IN SPIRITUAL WARFARE

Prof Dr Connie Brand gave a profound lecture on Satan's Assault. She notes that in Genesis 3:15 God announced a war against the seed of God and the seed of Satan.³⁷ This text is called the *proto evangelism* – it is a prophecy, a warning, a promise and the foundation for the many prophecies of the Messiah Saviour. Three lines of Assault are discussed with its impact on Supreme Spiritual Warfare.³⁸ This promise is addressed to the serpent, not to humanity and is part of a judgment passed unto the one who is the enemy of God and of man (Genesis 3:14), declaring his final doom (See Romans 16:20, II Corinthians 11:3; Revelations 12:9; Revelations 20:2).³⁹ Long and extended rebellion against God and our loved ones will lead to defeat and captivity of the enemy. Wherever there is spiritual darkness, there the devil will be.

Simon, Simon, behold Satan has demanded permission to sift you like wheat; but I have prayed for you that your faith may not fail; and you, when once you have turned again, strengthen your brothers.

Luke 22:31-32

This war involves a battle of the mind, a soul war against evil thoughts; selfish ideas; sin and demons; failures; fear; self-pity; lust; anger; immoral thoughts; and all types of abuse. The enemy, Satan, is trying to afflict the Church with spiritual **AIDS**.⁴⁰

“A” = Accusation (Romans 8:1)

“I” = Intimidation (II Timothy 2:15)

“D” = Deception (II Corinthians 10:3-5): Working thought-patterns & idea that govern people.

“S” = Self-exaltation (Proverbs 16:18)

³⁷ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2012) Lecture: Satan's Assault. Lynnwood Ridge, Gauteng.

³⁸ Frangipane, Francis (1994) The Three Battlegrounds: The mind, the Church and the Heavenly Places. West Sussex, England: New Wine Press, p. 33.

³⁹ Keathley, quoting Derek Kidner, 1967. Genesis, An Introduction and Commentary. Inter-Varsity Press, p.70.

⁴⁰ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2005) Masters Degree: An Exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian Involvement in a Theodicy Considered from Philosophic-Theological Perspective. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Printing and Unpublished, p. 80.

A carnal mind is a direct source of vain imaginations and thoughts that exalt themselves above God. The essence of who we are is presented in our thought-life. Who we are, is made of thousands of events and how we responded to those events.

As a man thinketh in his heart, so is he.

Proverbs 23:7

Believers deal with the devil by dealing with their carnal thought systems, the stronghold the enemy that protects. The pulling down of strongholds begins with repentance.

For though we walk in the flesh, we do not war according to the flesh, for the weapons of our warfare are not of the flesh, but divinely powerful for the pulling down of strongholds.

II Corinthians 10:3-5

It is essential to the believer's spiritual safety to discern the areas of his nature, which are unfortified and open to satanic assault. In the battle for the mind the believer must capture those initial, invasive thoughts. Either we pursue our enemies or our enemies will pursue us. Areas under constrain can include the following.

- The Christian's life and self-esteem.
- The Christian's loved-ones, children (bloodlines) and friends.
- The Christian's money and personal assets.
- God's plan for the believers' life, his calling and God's anointing of his life.
- The body of Christ as well as the future of the believers' ministry in the Church.
- The specific nation with its territorial ruling spirits over different countries and communities.

Frangipane states that strongholds not only constrain the individual, but are working in communities and over countries: There are satanic strongholds over countries and communities and there are strongholds that influence churches and individuals. Wherever a stronghold⁴¹ exists, it is a demonically induced pattern of thinking.

⁴¹ Strongholds of the mind is built by wrong thinking patterns / imaginations.

Specifically, it is a 'house made of thoughts',⁴² which has become a dwelling place for satanic activity.⁴³

Prayer and repentance are irreplaceable phases of deliverance, but where an unclean spirit is complicating the persons' freedom, the enemy must be faced and the spirit commanded to depart.

3.1 THE FIRST LINE ASSAULT, A SPIRIT OF HEAVINESS ENHANCING PASSIVITY AND DEFENSELESSNESS

The first assault of Satan derives from a spirit of heaviness; it sears the heart, and enhances a spirit of passivity.⁴⁴

To appoint unto them that mourn in Zion, to give unto them beauty for ashes, the oil of joy for mourning, the garment of praise for the spirit of heaviness; that they might be called trees of righteousness, the planting of the LORD, that he might be glorified.

Isaiah 61:3

3.1.1 A SPIRIT OF HEAVINESS AS SATAN'S FIRST LINE OF ASSAULT

Disappointment with loved ones will open the Christian to the spirit of heaviness. To stay free of oppression, the believer has to forgive all who sinned against him and has to release all areas of disappointment and of discouragement that came from personal failures. We have to renounce living with condemnation and fear, and put on the garment of praise.

⁴² Mental strongholds must be cast down. Every wrong thought & imagination should be refused, evicted and replaced by believing in God's Word.

⁴³ Frangipane, Francis (1994) *The Three Battlegrounds: The mind, the Church and the Heavenly Places*. West Sussex, England: New Wine Press, p. 33.

⁴⁴ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2012) *Lecture: Satan's Assault*. Lynnwood Ridge, Gauteng

The joy of the Lord, as the power and might of the Spirit of God, is a strong supportive foundation that overflows into the believer with joy, grace, favor, and courage to strengthen him.⁴⁵

The secret of the book, Isaiah, lay in the revelation of God in Isaiah's heart. The prophet Isaiah declared that the Lord has sent him to preach *Good News*, to bind up the broken hearted, to proclaim freedom for the captives, to declare release from darkness for the prisoners and to proclaim the year of the Lord's favour. Isaiah declared that God promised *oil of joy* for the mourning and *the garment of praise* for the spirit of heaviness. Motivated by a relationship with God, celebration derives not from self-centeredness, but out of the *Good News*.

Satan's first line of assaults on the heart of the Christian warrior comes directly on this area of "*Good News*".⁴⁶ The Christian must not allow fear or unbelief into their hearts and minds, for they were born to fight and win the battle. As prayer warriors the intercessor must repair morals by declaring that the "Joy of the LORD is their strength (Nehemiah 8:10)". When a person celebrates God, even when he does not feel like it, he is strengthened spiritually and will be filled with joy.

The father of a child is primarily responsible to awaken the spirit of the child and to educate him. Where little, or no, tender loving care is given, the child's spirit will be asleep. A person can be *born again* and nevertheless have a "*sleeping / slumbering spirit*" thus incapable of *hearing* the voice of God (Isaiah 52:1-2). Whenever a person has a slumbering spirit, he loses the garment of Jesus Christ and walks about in the shame of the flesh.

Behold, I come like a thief! Blessed is he who stays awake and keeps his clothes with him, so that he may not go naked and be shamefully exposed.

Revelation 16:15 (NIV)

⁴⁵ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2012) Lecture: Satan's Assault. Lynnwood Ridge, Gauteng

⁴⁶ Ibid.

Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself. Love worketh no ill to his neighbor: therefore love is the fulfilling of the law. And that, knowing the time, that now it is high time to awake out of sleep: for now is our salvation nearer than when we believed. The night is far spent, the day is at hand: let us therefore cast off the works of darkness, and let us put on the armour of light.

Romans 13:9-14

Sinful reactions to years of neglect or hurt can cause emotional callousness to develop. Inner vows⁴⁷ can develop due to emotional neglect or abuse. It is primarily from a position of self-defense; but the problem is, this self-defense causes barriers that shut a person off from fulfilling relationships.

Keep thy heart with all diligence; for out of it are the issues of life.

Proverbs 4:23

Soul wounds can also afflict a person's spirit by "*caging* him". Such believers feel isolated and may have a lot of *inner rage* masked behind a *content face*. In most cases does a, *spirit of unforgiving*, block the freedom of the wounded person. How believers react when they are wounded by satanic assault or difficult circumstances is however, the true measure of our worship.

3.1.1.1 A SPIRIT OF HEAVINESS ENHANCING PASSIVITY

The Holy Spirit anoints the Christian for battle, to stand with Christ in the midst of the three basic battlegrounds: (1) the mind, (2) the Church and the (3) heavenly places. These are the areas where most believers will face conflict. To defeat the devil, the believer must be renewed in the spirit of his mind.⁴⁸

⁴⁷ An **Inner Vow** is a self-willed thought/promise/determination, for instance "*I will never be like my mother*". It is a sin because it is a judgment passed on that person.

⁴⁸ Frangipane, Francis (1994) *The Three Battlegrounds: The mind, the Church and the Heavenly Places*. West Sussex, England: New Wine Press, p.11.

The Holy Spirit is working together with the angels of God to destroy the enemy's first line of defense. From the day of the Christian's salvation, the Lord Jesus Christ attacked, overpowered, and stripped away Satan's armour, which consists of our thoughts, attitudes, and opinions which are in agreement with evil. As the believers yield in increasing degrees of surrender to Christ, to build a house for them of righteousness by repentance, humility, and possessing a clean heart, Satan will flee from us. This process of deliverance involves a season of inner conflict and turmoil.

When the church is passive, indifferent, and carnal, the powers of hell increase their rule over the affairs of men: marriages break up, crime increases, and the world is flooded with distress of fatherlessness, abuse, violence, discord, and emotional problems. Beloved, we must break free from the stranglehold of passivity. The enemy uses all his power to lead the Christian and above all the minister, to neglect prayer. Whenever *passivity* rules in a person's life, the Christian warrior loses the following spiritual weapons:⁴⁹

- His desire for God's Word.
- The armour of God which leaves him defenseless.
- His fighting spirit or his war mode.
- His prayer life.
- His perseverance.
- His spiritual authority (Jezebel strips God's people from their authority).
- His anointing.
- His capacity to hear the voice of God.
- His discernment.
- His distinction / excellence.
- His power (the power of the Lord is our strength).
- His joy.

⁴⁹ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2012) Lecture: Satan's Assault. Lynnwood Ridge, Gauteng

The Holy Spirit calls the Church to rise in intercessory prayer and to exercise spiritual authority. The sooner a Christian switches to the “war mode,” the faster he will tap into the moral steadfastness needed to defeat personal oppression and enter into spiritual warfare. Many Christians have confused peace with passivity.

Murray declares that, any failure in the prayer life, any desire to hope, really to take the place Christ has prepared for us, brings us to the very root of the doctrine of grace as manifested in the Christian life. It is only by a full surrender to the life of abiding, by yielding to the fullness of the Spirit’s leading and quickening, that the prayer life can be restored to a truly healthy state.

The second truth that I have sought to enforce is that we have far too little conception of the place that intercession, as distinguished from prayer for ourselves, ought to have in the church and the Christian life. In Intercession, our King upon the throne finds His highest glory; in it we will find our highest glory, too. Through it, he continues His saving work and can do nothing without it; through it, alone we can do our work and nothing avails without it. In it, He receives from the Father the Holy Spirit and all spiritual blessing to impart; in it we too are called to receive in ourselves the fullness of God’s Holy Spirit, with the power to impart spiritual blessing to others.

The power of the church to truly bless rests on intercession: asking and receiving heavenly gifts to carry to men.

Because this is so, it is no wonder that we’re, owing to lack of teaching or spiritual insight, putting the trust in our own diligence and effort - to the influence of the world and the flesh – and work more than we pray, the presence and power of God are not seen in our work as we would wish.⁵⁰

The secret of the LORD is with them that fear Him; and He will shew them His covenant.

Psalms 25:13

⁵⁰ Murray, Andrew (1998) *Andrew Murray on Prayer*. New Kensington, PA: Whitaker House, pp. 466-467.

3.1.1.2 BREAKING THE BONDAGE OF PASSIVE

When a Christian honors the commitments or covenants that he has made to God throughout his life, God will honour the warrior by allowing him to minister under the anointing of warfare. God is looking for fearless warriors who will become a formidable influence in society, touching the needy, the broken hearted, the captive, the prisoner and all who mourn.

3.1.2 THE SECOND LINE OF ASSAULT, THE LYING SPIRIT

Satan's first assault – the *spirit of heaviness* opens the human spirit for a second assault – a *lying spirit*. The second assault comes from a “*lying spirit*” that brings about passivity, which results in a lack of discernment, no desire to pray and to read God's Word and the bondage of sin. Passive people do not ask God for anything, but the “*self*” rules in their lives. There is no loving obedience to God.⁵¹

The lying spirit steals the war mode in the believer's heart, his prayer life, his anointing, his calling, and ministry. They steal God's plan for his life, his spiritual authority, his perseverance in all areas of his life and they try to steal the believers loved-ones, his children and his finances. It renders you defenseless and results in a reign of sin. The third line is the line of, theft stealing your prayer life. Although the events in our lives are irreversible, our reactions to those events can still be changed, and as our reactions change, we change. We cannot alter the past, however we can put our past upon God's “*altar / viaticum*” as an ‘act of worship’ to Him. A worshipping heart truly allows God to restore his soul.

Rejoicing in hope; patient in tribulation; continuing instant in prayer.

Romans 12:12

⁵¹ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2012) Lecture: Satan's Assault. Lynnwood Ridge, Gauteng

And he taught, saying unto them, Is it not written, My house shall be called of all nations the house of prayer? but ye have made it a den of thieves.

Mark 11:17

A person's presupposition⁵² is the frame of his believe-system, his way of worship and the way he handles assault. Every human being functions out of a set of presuppositions deriving from experiences. A persons' presupposition can deviate him from his end objective (creative goal). Nevertheless, when a presupposition is confronted, behavioral change will occur. A person's life will change when the following precepts are taken into account:⁵³

- When a person is willing to take introspection of his heart and life.
- When a person confronts the roots of his present thinking patterns.
- When the person works through the above information in terms of his own functioning and being by practical homework.
- When the person realizes that when his attitude is, normal, morals, and self-perception are changed, his behaviour will changed.
- True life change can only occur when God reveals Himself to man, and the person's picture of God changes (Romans 12:1-2).

3.1.3 THE THIRD LINE ASSAULT, SIN REIGNS

The third line assault of Satan, allows sin to reign in the person's life. When man gives his glorious gift, of reigning over sin, over to Satan, a structure of oppression starts to form in the life of such a person. From this we see that there is a close relationship between man's spiritual condition and the condition of earth.⁵⁴

⁵² A **Presupposition** defined, includes: a set of conscious or subconscious ideas and thoughts; a specific underlying involuntary ideas about matters; a frame of reference; a pro-active tendency to react in certain manner.

⁵³ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2012) Lecture: Satan's Assault. Lynnwood Ridge, Gauteng

⁵⁴ Mendez-Ferrell, Ana Dr (2008) Shaking the Heavens. Ponte Vedra, Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries, pp.108.

In this connection the term “*earth*” refers not only to the structure in a human that can generate different degrees of oppression or possession, but also refers to the social structures of bigger areas, such as cities and even nations.⁵⁵ From this statement, we can assume that from the time of the fall, Satan has been apparent in the spiritual, social, and physical realms of the earth. The physical consequence of both sin and obedience are clearly expressed in the blessing or curse of God in your life.

Blessed shalt thou be in the city, and blessed shalt thou be in the field. Blessed shall be the fruit of thy body, and the fruit of thy ground, and the fruit of thy cattle, the increase of thy kine, and the flocks of thy sheep. Blessed shall be thy basket and thy store. But it shall come to pass, if thou wilt not hearken unto the voice of the LORD thy God, to observe to do all his commandments and his statutes which I command thee this day; that all these curses shall come upon thee, and overtake thee: Cursed shalt thou be in the city, and cursed shalt thou be in the field. Cursed shall be thy basket and thy store. Cursed shall be the fruit of thy body, and the fruit of thy land, the increase of thy kin, and the flocks of thy sheep.

Deuteronomy 28:3-5, 15-18

The moment sin enters into a person’s heart it destroys the loving, trusting, secure relationship between God and man. Whenever the Word of God is not elevated as a standard against evil, the person is passive and defenseless with no fight against Satan’s assault, people fall into the bondage of sin. When sin reigns, Satan *steals the prayer life* of the Christian, his anointing, his calling, God’s plan for his life, his generations, his loved ones, his finances, his authority, his destiny, and his life.

Prayer warriors can break the bondage of a passive spirit with the authority of Jesus Christ and the anointing of God’s Holy Spirit, when they don’t tolerate passivity, when they war against it, conquer it, and goes into battle for their loved ones. Where sin reigns in a person’s life and a curse exists over such a person, the problem is made worse when, the person tries to resolve them by submitting himself to Satan’s forces.

⁵⁵ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2012) Lecture: Satan’s Assault. Lynnwood Ridge, Gauteng

Destructive behaviour and violence even increase when people search for answers in magic, the Occult, witchcraft and idolatry and strengthens Satan's stronghold more and more over people's lives.⁵⁶

Satanic power finds access to inflict his havoc in peoples lives in two basic ways.⁵⁷ (1) idolatry – which includes all ties with witchcraft, rebellion and stubbornness against Gods instructions to our lives, and (2) injustice.

John Dawson writes: Injustice opens the door for demonic oppression, an oppression that people are powerless to deal with outside of the cleansing, healing grace of God.⁵⁸ Houses, cities, provinces or countries – thus territorial areas, can be under terrible curses where there is a high level of satanic activity. God can and will prophetically reveal demonic strongholds over places in the second heaven to strategic prayer warriors. It is important to define the origins of the satanic strongholds, where its foundations are and what is God's strategy to pull down such stronghold.

4. SUPREMESPIRITUAL WARFARE

According to Dr ED Murphy, **Spiritual Warfare** is about the **struggle with sin and evil**. The church is revealed in Scripture not only as the people of God and Body of Christ, but also as a part of God's warrior Kingdom in ongoing conflict with internal evil (the flesh), social evil (the world), and supernatural evil (the spirit world). "*I call this a multi-dimensional sin war*".⁵⁹

Amanda Buys notes in "*The Believer's Warfare in the Heavens*": "...to be watchman on the wall calls for vigilance, to be awake and alert and ready to move.

⁵⁶ Isaiah 30:1-2; Habakkuk 2:12.

⁵⁷ Mendez-Ferrell, Ana Dr (2008) *Shaking the Heavens*. Ponte Vedra, Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries, pp.111-112..

⁵⁸ Dawson, John, (1994) *Healing America's Wounds*. Venture, CA: Regal Books, pp.53-54.

⁵⁹ Murphy, ED Dr (2003) *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, p.vii.

Those who chose to declare the LORDSHIP of God should submit their will to God and began to walk in obedience to His Commandments and His Voice.⁶⁰

In the New Testament, Jesus Christ gave Himself as the One offering to make eternal atonement for all the sin of humanity. Now He is seated in Heavenly Places. The true conflict purports in a confrontation between Light and Darkness. The Light is permitting man to manifest Him in such a way that darkness will not prevail around us. This is the highest form of Spiritual Warfare, which cannot be defeated.

Arise, shine; for thy light is come, and the glory of the LORD is risen upon thee. For, behold, the darkness shall cover the earth, and gross darkness the people: but the LORD shall arise upon thee, and his glory shall be seen upon thee. And the Gentiles shall come to thy light, and kings to the brightness of thy rising.

Isaiah 60:1-3

The loved ones of the Lord Jesus Christ should strive to become shoulder to shoulder to Him, maturing into His very Image.⁶¹ To understand the Post Modern Cosmic war, an exposition on Satan's pattern forming evil nature, providing spiritual contamination providing "INIQUITY" as the root of all human evil.

4.1 ELEMENTS INVOLVED IN SUPREME SPIRITUAL WARFARE

God began to remove the veils from Scripture as already stated, enabling His prophets to understand how demonic powers and principalities are structured and how they operate in the heavenlies. Additionally, He gave wisdom on how to tear down these structures in the Spirit realm.⁶²

⁶⁰ Buys, Amanda (2012) *The Believer's Warfare in the Heavenlies*. Gauteng, SA: Self-Published, pp.8-9,27, 36-37, 54, 67. (www.kanaanministries.org)

⁶¹ I John 3:1-12.

⁶² Mendez-Ferrell, Ana (2012) *High Level Warfare*. Vedra, Florida: Voice of The Light Ministries, p.1.

God is calling us out of old patterns of religion into His marvelous Light. God is raising up a generation that will love Him and fear Him and will speak what I tell them to speak. They will have more fear for Him than for man.

God is coming with great power to shake everything that is shakable until only His structures, patterns and designs remain. We are standing before a great Divide. A clear difference will be seen between the people of the Kingdom and the religious ones.

God is groaning for His Church. He regrets seeing her in hell. REPENT! Come out of your dead structures of religious rigidity that subjugates my Church. Something is very wrong! We have to stop and bring radical change. We have brought the people a diluted Gospel, a Gospel without commitment, a cheap Gospel! There is NO burdens for sin anymore.

Ana Mendez-Ferrell openly declares: *“If salvation is by grace through faith, it also has a door. And that door is narrow and the entrance is to confess our sins and nail our life with Christ on the cross of Calvary.”*⁶³

Today in the vast majority of Churches and in the lives of the people in particular, the pastors of the congregations do mostly all the work while 90 % of the church is defeated by passivity. Carnal living and sinning is not an issue of importance any more. The church is in need of radical change.

God reveals to Daniel how it shall be at ‘the end of days’: **A time of great trouble** is coming; God’s arch angel Michael will rise in order to fight in the air the battle that will loosen the greatest harvest of all times. There will be an indisputable move of Spiritual Warfare under Michael, the chief of God’s army and the wise teaches of righteousness. They will make a difference in the kingdom of darkness because they will shine.

⁶³ Mendez-Ferrell (2010) Seated in Heavenly Places. Vedra, Florida: Voice Of The Light Ministries, p.191.

The enemy is launching the most violent, aggressive and destructive attack on the body of Christ worldwide. Spirits of depression, discouragement, fear, intimidation, witchcraft, sorcery, division, malice and slander are being launched on the Church.

The last days will be characterized by **Apostasy**. The increase of wickedness will enhance that the love of most will grow cold. Even the chosen, if possible, will be deceived.⁶⁴

And at that time shall Michael stand up, the great prince which standeth for the children of thy people: and there shall be a time of trouble, such as never was since there was a nation even to that same time: and at that time thy people shall be delivered, every one that shall be found written in the book. And many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt. And they that be wise shall shine as the brightness of the firmament; and they that turn many to righteousness as the stars for ever and ever.

Daniel 12:1-3

God **promised deliverance** to His people, to everyone whose name is written in the book of life. However, they are not yet saved; they need to be set free! This change first has to come in the spiritual dimension. God's truth is not discovered primarily with the human brain, but with the human heart as revealed by His Holy Spirit.

But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God.

I Corinthians 2:10

4.1.1 OBJECTIVES / GOALS OF SPIRITUAL WARFARE

The goals of Spiritual Warfare will be discussed in Chapter Six, as it is the Chapter revealing God's solution for the End-Time war.

⁶⁴ Matthew 24:22.

It will include the following goals set by Jesus Christ the head of the Church and will be discussed in the different Chapters, Especially in Chapter Six.

- Salvation.
- Sanctification.
- Holiness.
- Deliverance.
- Divine Healing, Divine Health and Divine Life.
- Compassion for the poor and the Oppressed.
- Personal Intimate Relationship with God.
- Enhancing of the Kingdom of God.
- Praise and Worship.
- Intercession.
- Warfare prayer.

4.1.2 BIBLICAL STRATEGIES OF SPIRITUAL WARFARE

We need to look at some of the prerequisites to be met in Spiritual Warfare by the believer self.

- The believers should **deal with fleshly** and **demonic strongholds** to prevent demonic influence in a person's life.
- There should also be **no over-emphasis on the emotional** side of our lives, whether it is being on an emotional high or in a mini-depression; these things will bring a mixture of thoughts and can mislead the believer. The sense of unworthiness in a believer's lives robs him/her of a powerful prayer life.
- A spiritual warrior would show boldness and pray in poor faith if he should have some **unconfessed sin** in his life. Since, all confessed sin is covered by the blood of the Lamb; the believer should build up his confidence so that he can be bold before the Lord and before his enemy.

- A **humble spirit** is an essential key to have in our relationship with the Living God. God oppose the proud. Whosoever humbles himself, submit himself to the Lord, and resist the devil have the promise of God that the devil will flee from him. Any resentment of bitterness will rob the believer of his relationship with the Lord and give the enemy an opportunity to hit back. All unforgiveness is an avenue for the devil to enter into our lives.
- We are at war and the battle is against a very real enemy. God wants to ignite **awar mode against evil** in the hearts of his children to fight against all types of evil: (1) against internal evil – the flesh or our sinful nature; (2) against external evil – sin in different social and world systems; and (3) against supernatural evil – Satan and his demonic kingdom of the hidden spirit world who are the enemy of God and man.

The LORD shall go forth as a mighty man, he shall stir up jealousy like a man of war: he shall cry, yea, roar; He shall prevail against His enemies.

Isaiah 42:13

He [The LORD] teaches my hands to war: so that a bow of steel is broken by mine arms.

II Samuel 22:35

4.1.3 TACTICS

Tactics refer to *low-level plans* formulated by lower-ranking officers to implement and carry out the strategies implemented by the generals. Satan's chief tactic is deception,⁶⁵ lies and deceiving people by his shows of power.⁶⁶ Since the thesis expounds Deliverance from a Spiritual Warfare perspective, tactics should be identified to use for internal evil problems, external evil systems and supernatural evil.

⁶⁵ Wagner, Peter C (Prof) Warfare Prayer. Ventura, California: Monarch Publishers, p. 62.

⁶⁶ Wagner, Timothy, M (1990) Deception: Satan's Chief Tactic, Wrestling with Dark Angels. Ventura, CA: Regal Books, pp.102-103.

4.1.3.1 DIFFERENT TACTICS / METHODS TO IDENTIFY THE PRESENCE OF EVIL SPIRITS

*Different tactics / methods can be used in Spiritual Warfare to identify the presence and nature of evil spirits:*⁶⁷ Discernment and Detection.

4.1.3.1.1 DISCERNMENT (GODLY INSIGHT)

Discernment is one of the nine supernatural gifts of God's Holy Spirit (I Corinthians 12:10).

To another the working of miracles; to another prophecy; to another discerning of spirits; to another divers kinds of tongues; to another the interpretation of tongues.

I Corinthians 12:10

4.1.3.1.2 DETECTION (EVALUATE BY PERSON'S BEHAVIOUR)

Detection is another method of knowing the presence and nature of an evil spirit. Detection is simply observing what evil spirit are doing to a person. An example is found in Mark 7:24-30 where a Syrophenician woman came to Jesus with an appeal that he cast an "unclean spirit" out of her daughter. The question arises how this woman know this was a demonic manifestation? She knew it by the symptoms.

4.1.3.2 COMMON SYMPTOMS OF INDWELLING DEMONS

*Some of the most common symptoms of indwelling demons are as follows:*⁶⁸

⁶⁷ Hammond, Frank and Ida Mae (1992) *Pigs in the Parlour*. Chichester, West Sussex: New Wine Press, pp. 43-46.

⁶⁸ Hammond, Frank and Ida Mae (1992) *Pigs in the Parlour*. West Sussex: New Wine press, pp. 44-45.

- Emotional problems: Disturbances in the emotions which persist or recur, such as hatred, anger, fear, rejection, self-pity, jealousy, depression, worry, inferiority.
- Mental problems: Mental torment, confusion, doubt, loss of memory.
- Speech problems: Outbursts of uncontrolled tongue.
- Sex problems: Recurring unclean thoughts and acts.
- Addiction problems: Nicotine, alcohol, drugs, medicine.
- Physical infirmities: Many diseases and physical affliction are due to spirits of infirmities (Luke 13:11).
- Religious error can open the door for demons: False Religions, Christian cults, Occult and False Doctrines.

4.1.3.3 IMPORTANT STEPS TO DELIVERANCE

Important steps to Deliverance involves the following areas:

- Honesty (Psalm 32:5; Psalm 39:23-24).
- Humility (James 5:16a).
- Repentance (Ezekiel 20:43).
- Renunciation – forsaking evil (Matthew 3:7-8).
- Forgiveness (Matthew 6:14-15).
- Prayer (Joel 2:32).
- Spiritual Warfare (II Corinthians 10:3-5; Ephesians 6:17).

4.1.3.4 STEPS FOR RETAINING DELIVERANCE

Steps for Retaining Deliverance involves the following acts:

- Put on the whole armour of God (Ephesians 6:10-18).
- Confess positively (Mark 11:23).

- Stay in the Word of God (James 1:22-25).
- Crucify the Flesh (Galatians 5:19-21,24).
- Develop a Life of Praise and prayer (I Corinthians 14:14; I Thessalonians 5:17).
- Maintain a life of fellowship and spiritual ministry (I Corinthians 12:7-14).
- Commit yourself totally to Christ (Ephesians 6:16).

4.1.3.5 DISCOVER THE DESIGNS OF DARKNESS IN A PERSON'S LIFE

When we pray for someone we have to ***discover the designs of Darkness*** that is operating in the person's, life by the Spirit of God. We have to intercede prophetically for people, declaring that God had destroyed the works of the devil in the depths of hell in people's lives – specifically the designs God showed us. We should also pray to God to manifest Jesus Christ as the Son of God in the person's life so that he can see clearly his iniquity and sin, and to bring the person to repentance.

The following ***designs of failure*** are discovered in the lives of people: Financial ruin, poverty, debt, divorce, family destruction, sickness, accidents as well as many others. People will enter new levels of freedom when we undo these designs that bind them. Too often people seek their answer in deliverance but runs to others to confront the principalities and powers.⁶⁹

For though we walk in the flesh, we do not war after the flesh: (For the weapons of our warfare are not carnal, but mighty through God to the pulling down of strong holds;) Casting down imaginations, and every high thing that exalteth itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ.

II Corinthians 10:5

⁶⁹Mendez-Ferrell, Ana Dr (2008) Shaking the Heavens. Ponte Vedra, Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries, p. 24.

Just as there is a Kingdom of God in heavenly places, there is also a kingdom of Satan with places and regions of darkness, which can be called ***infernal places***. Satan's designs originate from these infernal places.

4.1.3.6 OPEN DOORWAYS HOW DEMONS ENTER

Knowing how demons enter is a major key to their eviction. A demon can only enter a person if it has rights to do so. Removing these rights is foundational to effective and long-lasting deliverance.

Jesus introduced the concept of demonic entry points when He commented on the condition of the woman whose back was bent double through having a spirit of iniquity (Luke 13:10-17). She was a committed believer – a daughter of Abraham. Jesus made it clear that a believer in God can be oppressed. This thesis professes that a Child of God cannot be possessed since God's Holy Spirit came to live in the believer's spirit after regeneration. In general, doorways are open through a person that allow sin in his/her life.

The following list contains the six types of doorways for demonic entry:

- **Inherited Curses:** Some demons come down the family line. Examples are demons of fear, rejection, rebellion, anger, rage, shame, sexual perversion, control, abandonment, etc. Demons can only enter on legal ground into a bloodline from the sins of the fathers.
- **Sin of the Flesh:** anger, fear, greed, envy, rebellion, pride, lust, gluttony, gossip, strife, bitterness, self-righteousness, judging, unforgiveness.
- **Illness:** Physical trauma such as illness and accidents.
- **Emotional trauma:** Traumatic emotional and physical experiences, such as rape, violence, divorce, abuse, etc.
- **Passive State of Mind including trance:** Passivity of the mind, trances, yoga, drugs, heavy metal music, etc.

- Occult Involvement: lust for power through knowledge and control.

4.1.4 LOGISTICS

Logistics refer to everything that are needed in the warfare and supplying those involved in the war with whatever they require in order operating in the spiritual warfare.

4.1.4.1 REQUIREMENTS FOR SPIRITUAL WARFARE

Jesus is preparing an army that “no man could number” (Rev 7:9). His soldiers are suited up in fine “linen, clean and white” (Rev 19:8). They are clothed with the holiness of God. His soldiers have allowed that purging fire to burn in them and cleanse them. **They hate sin, love righteousness and are filled with His compassion.** God needs an army filled with zeal for His house, fired up and ready to fight.

When thou goest out to battle against Thine enemies, and seest horses, and chariots, and a people more than thou, be not afraid of them: for the Lord thy God is with thee, which brought thee up out of the land of Egypt. And it shall be, when ye are come nigh unto the battle, that the priest shall approach and speak unto the people, And shall say unto them, Hear, O Israel, ye approach this day unto battle against your enemies: let not your hearts faint, fear not, and do not tremble, neither be ye terrified because of them. For the Lord your God is he that goeth with you, to fight for you against your enemies, to save you. And the officers shall speak unto the people, saying, What man is there that hath built a new house, and hath not dedicated it? let him go and return to his house, lest he die in the battle, and another man dedicate it.

Deuteronomy 20:1-5

Prior to entering into warfare the soldier must dedicate his physical temple to the Lord because the first category of soldiers God says will have trouble fighting will be those who have built a new house and “have not dedicated it.

The second category includes those who do not cultivate the fruit of the Spirit in their lives. The enemy will certainly move into that fruitless life and devour it. Therefore the fruit of the Spirit is not only pleasant to behold, but it is essential as a weapon of war. Only faith in Jesus Christ our Lord and what He entails will allow us to overcome the world. Otherwise the warrior will fight Darkness with darkness.

The joy of the Lord is the strength of our life because it is the Power and Might of the Spirit of God that moves into the believer to overflow him with joy and grace and favor and courage, as a matter of fact the whole “under-build,” girding the structure of **Godly Joy** as a very strong support in battle – as seen in Jehosaphat.

An important requirement for the Christian soldier is to keep covenant with the Triune God because central to His heart are the commitments that the believer have made throughout his life. **God will honor a person by allowing him to minister under the anointing of warfare if they honor this priority especially.**

The fourth category of people are those who are fearful and fainthearted. God is looking for warriors, people who are not afraid to go out into the streets and market places and confront the issues that face the world and the Church.

As the Body of Christ receives more strength and fearlessness, they will become a formidable influence in society, touching the needy, the broken-hearted, the captive, the prisoner and all who mourn.

A fearful man will live on the defensive. A fearless man lives on the offensive, militantly and aggressively confronting the enemy with creative God-given tactics. Our God shall do valiantly.

It is He that shall tread down the enemy. When we abide by his requirements for warfare, the battle is the Lord's and the victory is ours. **God is calling His children to repentance.** He is calling us to fall upon our faces and **weep** between the porch and the altar.

He is calling us to rend⁷⁰ our hearts before Him, to open our hearts and allow the fire of God to purge us of the chaff and the evil in our lives. God is calling for soberness and a contrite heart. It is a time to eagerly press in and move forward in the things of God. We are being admonished to "earnestly contend for the faith." (Jude 1:3)

God has promised to manifest His power greatly to those who are pure. As repentance comes, the Lord has promised times of refreshing followed by great restoration. Repentance is changing our hearts and minds and submitting to the discipline of God. God is calling us to march to a different drum beat than that of the world's order. God is ready to open the doors and windows of Heaven and pour out upon us blessing beyond what we could ask or think. He is waiting for our repentant spirits. God has promised that He will "always cause us to triumph in Christ" (1 Corinthians 2:14).

4.1.4.2 EQUIPPING THE SPIRITUAL WARRIOR

God has called the Church to war. Warfare is not an option, since it involves our daily struggle against sin.

- Perfect intimacy with God is indeed the pulsation of the spiritual life, but is only **found in prayer**. The sin of prayerlessness is one of the deepest roots of evil.
- Our strength, authority, wisdom and discernment are dependent upon his **close walk** with God. When dealing with *Spiritual Warfare* in terms of battles it comprises our response to conflict.

⁷⁰ Etymology, **rend**: Old English *rendan*; Old Frisian *renda* to tear, Sanskrit *randra*. Tearing, splitting, torn.

- We have to take up the **full armour** of God. By doing it, the Christian warrior become equipped to use the most powerful weapon in the universe - *the Sword of the Spirit, which is the Word of God*.
- The Christian should take **sin** very seriously.
- It has **very strict rules**.
- It requires **preparation**.
- Personal **accountability** is central in deliverance when dealing with demonic oppression.
- Believers have to **focus** on the anointing of God to stand against the schemes of Satan and his demons.
- We have to integrate Jesus' divine **authority** into their prayers and Spiritual Warfare

4.1.4.3 PRINCIPLES OF SPIRITUAL WARFARE (THE KINGDOM OF GOD)

The Church consists of the **called-ones**. The called are those who **rule** and **reign** with Christ. The church is the embassy of Christ and consists of Kingdom citizens born from above – people of every nation who are “**submitted to the rule of Christ**” through His Holy Spirit. They are the ones who call Jesus, LORD. The kingdom is not earthly and geographical. The kingdom is determined where the people of the Kingdom exist – no matter where they are living.

You will learn that the rule of God over his Church brings peace. The LORD has brought us to High Place, His holy hill where we are taught **Truth and Righteousness**.

The Kingdom is the place of God's glory, salvation, healing and redemption. It is a place of liberty and freedom. You will learn that the Kingdom of God is filled with people who praise and worship Him. Zion is a place of dancing, rejoicing, shouting and music.

God's promise to Abraham is the foundation of the Kingdom and it bring blessing to all families or the earth. Through the Messiah all the families of the earth are blessed. The Kingdom of God has been forcefully advancing since the days of John the Baptist and it is still advancing today.

4.1.4.3.1 AUTHORITY AS CHIEF WEAPON IN SPIRITUAL WARFARE

There is a big difference between saying, "*I am seated with God on His throne*", and knowing that He has taken you by the hand and seated you there with Him. Before the foundations of the world, the believer is chosen for this very reason – to reign with Him, to bring forth fruit that shall remain.⁷¹

Christ gave the church power against the kingdom of darkness, however, this authority to reign with Christ is functioning only where a person live in total dependency on God and under His principles for his life.⁷²

Spiritual authority derives from confidence in God's love regardless of the battle and the difficult circumstances. The church needs against men and women clothed with the authority of God's prophetic word. The Word of faith decreed from a spirit united to Jesus does not stop on the surface of the earth, but has power to penetrate the invisible places of the second heaven.

Being born out of the 'pure seed' Jesus Christ, the exegeses shows that we are already **seated with Christ** in heaven.⁷³ Being seated with Christ the Christian soldier derives all authority over Satan and demons. No miraculous power are required. The authority is the believer's by virtue of their position in Him. All authority belongs to the Christian believer until the end of the age because of the Great Commission.

⁷¹ John 15:16.

⁷² Mendez-Ferrel, Ana Dr (2010) Seated in Heavenly Places. Ponte Vedra, Florida: BookMasters, p. 36.

⁷³ Hebrews 1:3; 2:9; 4:4-16; 9:24; Ephesians 1:20-23; John 14:20; Philippians 1:19; John 15:17.

And Jesus came and spoke unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth. Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost: Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

Matthew 28:18-20

Prof Dr Brand gave a profound meaning to the true meaning of a believer's authority:⁷⁴As Christians, we are continually reminded of the struggle between good and evil. We live in a fallen world that is unfavorable to the Gospel. Governmental structures all over the world are tainted with greed, pride and deceit. In some way is a satanic pressure and attack on the family performed by these structures.

The church is sadly neglecting to live out its soul purpose – only watching their governments reaching out to the needy, trying to provide food, shelter and clothing to the unfortunate. Jesus Christ left on record that we as church have the responsibility and the authority to feed the needy, cloth the naked, taking in the stranger, heal the sick and set the captives free. We lost our first love, we have loosened the seams of our authority and purpose in the world and strengthened the governments' borders with control. Consequently, the strong man in the governments seemingly cannot be overcome, unless we, who are spiritually discerning begin using the teachings of Christ on "*loosing and binding*".

We must first bind the works of the strongman that Satan has placed in the governmental systems, that the will of God may be loosed in the land. Then, we who love the LORD should practice what we preach and do the will of Him who sent us. We know that the weapons of our warfare are not carnal but mighty; therefore, we need to fight the good fight of faith against the forces of Satan. Instead of ruling by divine love, we became oppressed by diabolic power. The "*accuser*" turns us into accusers rather than lovers. God warned Adam and Eve and therefore ever living being, "*the day you eat of it you shall die*".

⁷⁴ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2007) *Spiritual Warfare I*. Lynwood Ridge, Pretoria: Self-Published, pp. 90-93.

The warning is repeated throughout the New Testament. We are emphatically told to “live in love and NOT judge others”. God wants our life to be one of receiving and giving unsurpassable love. This requires that we refrain from judgment. Unlike God, we are incapable of loving and judging at the same time. Therefore the “tree of knowledge of good and evil” is a loving warning. Our life with God revolves around the prohibition. I say, “Be content with being My creation”.

The Christian believer must honour the limited and wonderful domain of responsibility, love and authority that comes from God without endangering themselves by taking what is actually only God’s.

Authority is given to us that we might wage war against the evil powers. The LORD desires that we rule over our circumstances and not they rule over us. Our circumstances are in God’s hands and He knows the way out of them or the way to overcome them. The LORD will many times in the circumstances than rather deliver us from them.

4.1.4.3.2 PRAYER AS CHIEF WEAPON IN SPIRITUAL WARFARE

The next “key” is prayer. Jesus showed us that order is important for unlocking doors. Once we learn to “become the gift” in giving we can be taught a new way to pray.

A great majority of Christians is not motivated to pray, or if they do, they lack essential understanding to be effective. This key of prayer is so significant to our development that it can only be placed in the hands of those who have mastered the key of giving. Prayer does to our mind what giving has accomplished in our heart. The heart, which has been so corrupted by selfishness, must be on the altar of God before the mind can be transformed by thoughts of the Father.

Our mind must be freed from thinking we must be the center of everything we do for God. It is this “position” that the Lord can begin to show us how to pray. The prayer of which I speak is nothing like what we have learned, or worse yet, have we imagined. True prayer is entering into the mind and heart of the Father to become His wishes on earth as it is in Heaven. This understanding of prayer can only be given to the believer who has entered through the door of giving.

The Lord is quick to reward those who follow His pattern of giving and prayer. We see throughout the chapter of Matthew 6. His response to our giving in secret to meet Him.

The secret place is a special meeting area designed to be different each time to that man, as he so quick does, will not make a religious ritual or sacred method of meeting God. It is called the secret place because it is a secret each and every time we meet with Him. The way to the Father must be different each time so He can continue to reveal to us the motives of our heart.

Praying is one of the few things we can do in our Christian development that will always please the Father. Abba is our Father and like to hear from His children. God have a way of training those who at least make an effort to speak to Him. In prayer God is concerns about your motives. An exchange free of hidden agenda and self-gratification is what receives the attention of our heavenly Father.

Amazing revelations is being given to those who are taking up the challenge of combating the forces of hell until they are subdued. It is as tough a wave of divine wisdom is revealing the marvelous secrets of God that have been set aside for the last days. It has been prophesied that scientific advancement will increase during the last centuries and together with this monumental development that we are seeing in the natural world, the knowledge of God will continue to be opened up in a glorious way in the spiritual realm.

4.1.4.3.2.1 WORDS OF POWER AS ULTIMATE WEAPONS OF SPIRITUAL WARFARE

The power of words is most important as part of the weaponry of the Christian. It must be taken into account that the power of words lies at the heart of all and every warfare. All warfare is always instigated by **a word**.

The greatest secret of alchemy and magic lies in the power of words. Magic words have become a commercial and political, as well as a spiritual tool. **The power of words** is seen in the dangerous present technological development in demonic games, television shows and the media.

The Catholic Encyclopedia defined magic as, 'the art of performing an act beyond the power of man and with aid of power others than the Divine', and condemned it and any attempt at practicing it as 'a grievous sin against the virtues of religion.

4.1.4.3.3 CONFESSION OF SIN ONE TO ANOTHER

The greatest sin in the Church is that there is no fellowship with one another. Divisions, jealousy, envy and lack of love is what I see abound from even the heart of the local church.

Who is he that overcometh the world, but he that believeth that Jesus is the Son of God? This is he that came by water and blood, even Jesus Christ; not by water only, but by water and blood. And it is the Spirit that beareth witness, because the Spirit is truth. For there are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one.

I John 1:5-7

The blood of Jesus cleans us only when we walk in the light and as a consequence of walking in the light we have communion with one another. Scripture reveals that public confession of sin one to another is the genuine form of liberation and deep cleansing of our soul.

With the heart, men believeth unto righteousness and with the mouth confess unto salvation.⁷⁵ History shows us that every revival begins with men and women who understand this principle. When you strip yourself naked of the clothing of sin, exposing it to the light, if you went to the place of shame, the glory of God will come on us to cover our humiliation. Confession of sin keep us HUMBLE. We have to speak the truth to one another.

4.1.4.3.4 HEALINGS & DELIVERANCE AS MANIFESTATION OF GOD'S POWER

Prof Brand, a leading authority on Spiritual Warfare, remarks⁷⁶ that the healings and deliverance of Jesus Christ, played such a major role in His ministry and should not be seen as simply patches on a body destined for death regardless. They are **manifestations of the God's reign on earth presently** and an in-breaking of eternity into time.

This thesis professes a Spiritual Warfare World View and is aligned with the anointing of Prof Dr Brand, Ana Mendez-Ferrell as well as Dr Andrew Murray and dig deep into the wells of these spiritual leaders.

Dr Murray gives count of the power of the Spiritual Warfare worldview in the small booklet, "*Obtaining the Power of God*": Believers not only has to face various temptations, but every believer has to take their places as warriors in Christ army and fight the battle against the kingdom of darkness. In the work of the Church, the victory of the cross over the power of Satan is to be carried out in the same power through which Christ triumphed over the grave. The spiritual powers of darkness are to be met and overcome by all who have learned that they are not to live for themselves, but wholly for Him who redeemed them.

⁷⁵ Romans 10:10.

⁷⁶ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2005) Masters Degree: An Exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian Involvement in a Theodicy considered from Philosophic-Theological Perspective. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published, pp.28; 37-46.

Jesus leads them as His conquering forces to rout the spiritual host of wickedness in heavenly places.

Many Christians have never understood their calling and have never gives their lives unreservedly for the one object of securing the triumph of our Redeemer in the world. Listen to the summons that calls us to the war.⁷⁷

Prof Dr Brand records the views of a few of the earliest church Fathers who acknowledge the existence of the power of Satan and his multitude of demons:⁷⁸ Tatian argued that God gave angels and humans a sovereign will.⁷⁹

Justin Martyr declares that although God made the whole world and subjected earthly things to man, God committed the care of men and all things under heaven to angels whom He appointed over them.

Likewise, **Origen** states that every particular aspect of the earth is under “the agency and control of certain beings that we may call invisible husbandmen and guardians”.⁸⁰

Justin argues that angels are divinely appointed as spiritual agents, but that some of them transgressed there appointed administration by revolts against the authority of the Most High God.

⁷⁷ Murray, Andrew Dr (1984) Obtain the power of God. New Kensington, PA: Whitaker House Publishers, pp.12-13.

⁷⁸ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2005) Masters Degree: An Exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian Involvement in a Theodicy considered from Philosophic-Theological Perspective. Lynwood-Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published, pp. 824-845.

⁷⁹ See esp. Address to the Greeks, chapters 7-14, for Tatian’s preoccupation with demons. See Pagels Origin of Satan, pp.131-135.

⁸⁰ See *Against Celsius* 8.31 (ANF 4:650-651). On angels in charge of foundational elements, see Origen Homily on Jeremiah 10:6; Homeless on Luke 12,13.

According to Origen, every angels being was assigned a realm of authority in creation on the basis of the virtue and / or vice displayed in a pre-existent state.

He writes, “in the case [or, perhaps better translate, ‘in the position] of every creature it is a result of his own works and movements... [T] hose [angelic] powers which appear either to hold sway over others or to exercise power of dominion, have been preferred to and placed over those whom they are said to govern or exercise power over... not in consequence of a peculiar privilege inherent in their constitutions, but on account of merit” (First Principle 1.5.3 [ANF 4:258]; 2.9.2-4,6).

Athenagora's and other early earth father's grasp the outrage of demonic authorities pertaining to their nature and the government entrusted to them, as the ultimate explanation for why creation now exists in a war-torn stipulation.

Origen suggested that it is not because of the Creator God's failure to create perfectly, but because angelic beings and later humankind as well-perverted themselves by miss-used their God-given power.⁸¹ God's sovereign regulates all things; not by controlling events, but by **imposing a moral law** with consequence on them.⁸² God's providence is "**general and universal**" not meticulous. God is not responsible for the fact that SIN is done, because He gave humanity the power of freedom of choice to resist God's will or to obey.

4.1.5 WEAPONS OF SPIRITUAL WARFARE

Believers are in a **battle for souls**, for our own souls (mind, emotions and will) and to protect the souls of our love-ones and to war for every living soul in the world. This war mode is in every person and is directly connected with his love for people. God created the war mode so that people can protect their loved once. There is no room for a passive spirit in Gods army! Passivity will create a psychological prison around the believer, which actually holds them hostage to his/her other sin problems.

4.1.5.1 GOD'S WARRIOR ARMY ON THE OFFENCE

God's warrior army should be on the offense. God is looking for **fearless warriors** who will become a formidable influence in society, touching the needy, the broken hearted, the captive, the prisoner and all who mourn.

⁸¹ Origen *Against Celsius* 8.31 (ANF 4:651); 1.31 (ANF 4:409). Origen relates the power of demons in the natural world to the nourishment they gain from the "savor of burnt scarifies, blood and incense" offered to them in the context of pagan religions. See Origen Prayer: Exhortation to Martyrdom 4.45 (trans JJ O'Meara [New York: Paulist, 1954], p.188).

⁸² Origen First Principle 3.5.8 (ANF4:344) in speaking about God's governance in restoring all creatures.

They should go actively after every citizen and lost soul in the Kingdom of Satan, persuading them to the Kingdom of Light.⁸³ Believers must work to **rescue citizens** from the kingdom of Darkness and help them to see that they should repent, so that they can be transformed from the kingdom of darkness over to the Kingdom of Light.⁸⁴

But rise, and stand upon thy feet: for I have appeared unto thee for this purpose, to make thee a minister and a witness both of these things which thou hast seen, and of those things in which I will appear unto thee; Delivering thee from the people, and from the Gentiles, unto whom now I send thee, To open their eyes, and to turn them from darkness to light, and from the power of Satan unto God, that they may receive forgiveness of sins, and inheritance among them which are sanctified by faith that is in me.

Act 26:16-18

In the book of Revelations we read about the song of the redeemed who will praise the Lamb that had redeemed them to God by His **blood**. Satan was conquered by that blood and was cast out of Heaven; the blood of Jesus have the power to also conquer Satan and his demons on earth and in heaven and to deliver his prisoners.⁸⁵

And they sung a new song, saying, Thou art worthy to take the book, and to open the seals thereof: for thou wast slain, and hast redeemed us to God by thy blood out of every kindred, and tongue, and people, and nation; And hast made us unto our God kings and priests: and we shall reign on the earth.

Revelations 5:10

Anna Mendez-Ferrell proclaims: The Church is raising up watchman on the walls, prayer warriors born in the midst of divine visitations, an army sustained and dressed with God's power!⁸⁶

⁸³ Romans 13:12.

⁸⁴ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2005) Masters Degree An Exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian Involvement in a Theodicy Considered from Philosophic-Theological Perspective. Pretoria, Gauteng: Un-Published, p. 58.

⁸⁵ Murray, Andrew (1981) The Blood of the Cross. New Kensington, PA: Whitaker House, pp.82.

⁸⁶ Joel 2:1-11.

For the Kingdom of God to come on earth, the army of God shall move in the authority of Jesus Christ. Christians shall break free from the stranglehold of passivity. God needs men and women to cry out who would **stand in the gap** for the restoration of divine principles. How does such a man look like? God called David a man after His own heart. He was full of faith, he had the knowledge of God's heart, a spirit of worship, a prophetic anointing, a heartfelt cry in prayer and the anointing for spiritual warfare.⁸⁷

4.1.5.2 GOD'S WARRIOR ARMY ON THE DEFENCE

The book of Ephesians reveals that God gave the believer His **armour** for defense. The believer should put on the armour in prayer, by faith, for him-selves as well as for your loved-ones.

Put on the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places. Wherefore take unto you the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand. Stand therefore, having your loins girt about with truth, and having on the breastplate of righteousness; And your feet shod with the preparation of the gospel of peace; Above all, taking the shield of faith, wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked. And take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God: Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints.

Ephesians 6:10-18

Under the hierarchy of Satan, millions of demons went forth throughout the world inciting people to sin and to shed blood.

⁸⁷ Mendez-Ferrell, Ana Dr (2008) Shaking the Heavens. Ponte Vedra, Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries, p. 24.

Demons is entering churches who practice no opposition, sending in spirits of pride and self-sufficiency, of gossip and division, of sex and greed and of power. The church is on the edge of a revolutionary change.

According to Prof Dr Brand: Every believer has also to be on the defense fighting against Satan's personal attack on our loved ones and us, as he shoots fiery darts and prowls about as a roaring lion to see whom he can devour.⁸⁸

Dr Chaves said that if there were only one person present whom the Spirit could rouse to take the first step in defending his loved ones, his town and country, God would take the nation for Christ. Armies of thousand are not needed. What are needed are 30 brave people."⁸⁹

Intercessory prayer, fasting and declaring the written Word are the well-known weapons that make up part of the Christian's war chest. However, in these last days that are characterized by intensive spiritual battle, the LORD is revealing many other Prophetic weapons as well: The Sword (Ezekiel 21:14-17), Hooks and Bits (Isaiah 37:29), Blooms of Destruction (Isaiah 14:23), Bow and flaming Arrows (Psalm 7:12-13), Rams and Axes (Ezekiel 26:9), Weapons of Intercession such as prayer, praise, trampling underfoot, shouting (Jeremiah 51:14), clapping hands (Ezekiel 6) and laughing (Nehemiah 8:10).

4.1.6 THE DIFFERENT TYPES / LEVELS OF SPIRITUAL WARFARE

There are approximately many levels of Spiritual Warfare.

⁸⁸ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2005) Masters Degree: An Exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian Involvement in a Theodicy Considered from Philosophic-Theological Perspective. Pretoria, Gauteng: Un-Published, p. 57.

⁸⁹ Mendaz-Ferrell, Ana Dr (2008) Shaking the Heavens. Ponte Vedra, Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries, p.201.

Three generalized levels of Spiritual Warfare is identified by Christian leaders who are specialized in this area, namely: (1) ground-level Spiritual Warfare, (2) Occult-level Spiritual Warfare and (3) Strategic-level Spiritual Warfare.

Prof Peter Wagner refers to these three different levels of Spiritual Warfare in his book, ***Warfare Prayer***.⁹⁰

4.1.6.1 GROUND-LEVEL SPIRITUAL WARFARE

Ground-level Spiritual Warfare is the ministry of casting out demons. Just before Jesus Christ ascended to heaven, he re-commissioned His disciples with the following instructions:

And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature. He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned. And these signs shall follow them that believe; In my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; They shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover.

Mark 16:18

The first time Jesus send out his disciples, He gave them power over unclean spirits, to cast them out.

And when he had called unto him his twelve disciples, he gave them power against unclean spirits, to cast them out, and to heal all manner of sickness and all manner of disease.

Matthew 10:1

When the seventy, who Jesus sent out in Luke 10 returned from their mission, they proclaimed with great joy that even demons are subjected to them in the Name of Jesus Christ.

⁹⁰ Wagner, Peter C Prof (1991) *Territorial Spirits: Insight on Strategic-Level Spiritual Warfare from Nineteen Christian leaders*. Chichester, England: Sovereign World Limited, pp. 16-19.

And the seventy returned again with joy, saying, Lord, even the devils are subject unto us through thy name. And he said unto them, I beheld Satan as lightning fall from heaven. Behold, I give unto you power to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy: and nothing shall by any means hurt you. Notwithstanding in this rejoice not, that the spirits are subject unto you; but rather rejoice, because your names are written in heaven.

Luke 10:17-20

Ground-level Spiritual Warfare is the most common variety a person find in the New Testament and it is the most practiced by Christians today. Many groups and individuals are involved in deliverance ministries, especially in the Pentecostal and Charismatic Churches as well as on missionary level.

4.1.6.1.1 THE BREAKING OF STRONGHOLDS IN AN INDIVIDUAL PERSON

Strongholds are formed when evil belief systems are sustained (II Corinthians 10:3-5). A belief system is a combination of ideas, values and practices that serves a society's cultural of even a family's perceptions and way of doing. Belief systems include all religions, philosophies, ethical and moral systems of a person.

A **demonic stronghold** is a structure composed of a foundation provided from generational sin and curses, ungodly beliefs (or lies) in the person's life, soul/spirit hurts and ungodly sexual soul-ties, which developed into demonic oppression of full demonization. Examples of demonic strongholds are abandonment, pride, fear, failure, sexual sins, spirits of religion, bitterness, anger, violence, a victim spirit, unworthiness, addiction, a spirit of the occult, etc.

And the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are, and shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever.

Revelation 20:10

4.1.6.1.1.1 DIFFERENT SUPER STRONGHOLDS

Super strongholds are a combination of two or more strongholds, joined together and working together towards the destruction of their host. In most cases “deception” is a major part in the different super strongholds.

In accordance with Chester and Betsie Kylstra, this thesis professes that the “**Five Tower Strongholds Demonic Groupings**” of deception include the following:⁹¹ **(1) Control, (2) Abandonment, (3) Fears, (4) Self and (5) the Occult.**

- Deception pertaining to **Control** includes the following characteristics: the use of a *strategy not to be abandoned* by others, such as performance, manipulation, seduction, lies, etc; the *passivity of the will* (the Ahab spirit); a depraved attitude of *rebellion*; as well as the *striving for acceptance* and the pleasing of man.
- A spirit of **Abandonment** consists of deception characteristics such as: *Fear* of abandonment; the Lie of “*not protected*” by ... (God / spouse / parents / whoever) which make you vulnerable; the feeling of *betrayal*; the need of *isolation*; feelings of *rejected and loneliness*.
- A spirit of **Fear** includes the deception of the fear of *death*; the fear of *being left*; the fear of been *held down* and a *panic* attack or fright (such as stage fright).
- **Self-deception** includes the feeling of worthlessness, stupidity, ugliness, or hatred for the self. Self-deception also includes pride and arrogance, criticalness, self-righteousness, comparison, lack of self-discipline, guilt, religiousness, hopelessness and even depression and despair.
- **Occult deception** includes deception about the presence of the demonic; dreams about sly, leering things; mental torment such as blocking of the mind, mind clamps, veiling of the mind, confusion, and different kinds of fear.

Two very strong vicious and powerful deceptions are the super-strongholds:

⁹¹ Kylstra, Chester and Betsy (2001) Restoring the Foundations. Hendersonville, NC: Proclaiming His Word Publications, pp. 333-334.

- The Control-Fear-rejection Stronghold.
- The Shame-Fear-Control Stronghold.

4.1.6.1.1.1 THE CONTROL-REBELLION-REJECTION STRONG-HOLD

All dysfunctional family systems exhibit the Control-Rebellion-Rejection Stronghold.⁹² Control-Fear-rejection Strongholds involves **two basic cycles**: (1) **Control**; (2) **Rebellion** and feelings of rejection. Remember that people become controllers because they are wounded to avoid further pain.

There are two ways of Rebellion:

- Active Rebellion involves arguments, shouting, violence, etc.
- Passive Rebellion say yes but do what they want to in the first place.

There are three ways of Control:

- *Direct Controls* manifested through the giving of commands.
- *Overt Control* is not so obvious, but works a little more subtly.
- *Indirect Control* is manifested through *manipulation*. This control is more hidden than Overt Control and includes hidden control, which is an Occult method.

4.1.6.1.1.2 THE SHAME-FEAR-CONTROL STRONGHOLD

The Shame-fear-Control Stronghold derives out of a **false belief about identity** – which is an **ungodly belief!**⁹³ The core of this belief stated, “*I am uniquely and hopelessly flawed*”.

⁹² Kylstra, Chester and Betsy (2001) Restoring the Foundations. Hendersonville, NC: Proclaiming His Word Publications, pp. 344-346.

⁹³ Ibid., pp. 339-358.

Shame and Guilt derived out of the fall (Genesis 3:10). Adam and eve lost their connection with God. What this implies is that *shame and guilt and separation from God – are the same thing.*

- **Shame Stronghold:** The root of Shame is abandonment. This demonic stronghold produces isolation and people who hides.
- **Fear stronghold** derives from fear for abandonment.
- **Control stronghold.**

When the control stronghold is very strong it might be at “Jezebel” level. Helping a person to let his defensive walls down will take the *uttermost care from the counsellor*, as well as much *faith and grace from the counselee.* *Creating trust* is thus off foundational essence.

The counselee should be **prepared to expose the false shameful personality - a counterfeit identity** - at the extent that the real persons are life-long entrapped! This stronghold (along with its group of demons) masquerades as the “*real-self*” of the person.⁹⁴

4.1.6.1.2 SPECIFIC OPEN DOORS BY WHICH DEMONS CAN GAIN ENTRANCE INTO THE LIVES OF PEOPLE

Symptoms and behaviour of a person can be evident of potential demonic entry points of demons. Unless the entry point is fully dealt with, such demon is unlikely to go when commanded to do so, as it will hold on to the right that it has claimed. Specific open doorways for demonic entrance includes the follow:⁹⁵

- Inherited Curses and accompanying Demons.
- Sins of the flesh.

⁹⁴ Kylstra, Chester and Betsy (2001) Restoring the Foundations. Hendersonville, NC: Proclaiming His Word Publishers, pp. 353-358.

⁹⁵ Ibid., pp. 280-282.

- Illness and Accidents.
- Emotional Trauma.
- A passive or Trance state of mind.
- Occult involvement, which can bring a variety of demonic gifts and oppressions/possession.

4.1.6.1.3 KEYS TO DELIVERANCE

This thesis professes to the practical ministry of healing through deliverance. The healing ministry has more than one aspect to it, deliverance is a key principle. As Paul mentions in I Corinthians 12:9, there are '*gifts of healing (plural)*'. Scripture reveals three main keys to Deliverance:

- **Confession:** "If we confess our sin, God is faithful and just to forgive us our sins and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness (I John 1:7-9)".
- **Forgiveness:** It is a principle activity and heart attitude to freedom and healing. Forgiveness should take place on three levels: Asking God's forgiveness (Psalm 51:17); forgiving others (Mark 11:25-26; Matthew 6:14-15); forgiving of self (Mark 11:25; Matthew 22:39).
- **The Spirit of Truth:** Scripture that the Truth will set people free (John 8:32).

4.1.6.2 OCCULT-LEVEL SPIRITUAL WARFARE

A kind of demonic power is at work through Shamans, New Agers, Occult practitioners, witches, warlocks, Satanists, fortune-tellers and others like. This type/group of demons involved in it, is of a different kind that the elementary demons (Acts 16:16-24). These Occult-level activities have become a common part of society latterly – with progressive states of oppression and even possession as seen in the youth, particularly.

The number of witches in a place like Germany for example, exceeds the number of registered Christian clergy. One of the most rapid growing religions worldwide is the New Age movement.⁹⁶

4.1.6.2.1 REBELLION, THE SPIRIT OF THE ANTI-CHRIST SPIRIT

Rebellion is the spirit of the anti-Christ. It is the spirit of disobedience and disrespect for authority.

For rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft, and stubbornness is as iniquity and idolatry. Because thou hast rejected the word of the LORD, he hath also rejected thee from being king.

I Samuel 15:23

Hammond notes that, “God has established authority in the home, church and civil government. God Himself is our supreme authority. To assert self-will above any level of authority in God’s divine order is to entertain demons of rebellion. To keep delivered in this area necessitates complete submission to all God-constituted authority.”⁹⁷

TABLE 2: TYPES AND SYMPTOMS OF OCCULT INVOLVEMENT ⁹⁸	
POSSESSION	
Body Symptoms	
• Supernatural strength, Violence	Mark 5: 4; Acts 19:16.
• Paroxysms (convulsions)	Mark 5:5; Mark 9:18; Mark 1:26.
• Fall on the ground and roll	Mark 9:20, Luke 9:42.

⁹⁶ De Lange, Susanna FM (2010) Maters Degree: An Exposition of Biblical Spiritual Warfare pertaining to the Uninformed Christian as Satan’s Main objective. Brits, North West: Un-published, pp. 541-551.

⁹⁷ Hammond, Frank and Ida Mae (1992) Pigs in the Parlour. West Sussex, England: New Wine Press, pp. 148-149.

⁹⁸ De Lange, Susanna FM (2010) Maters Degree: An Exposition of Biblical Spiritual Warfare pertaining to the Uninformed Christian as Satan’s Main objective. Brits, North West: Un-published, pp. 542-543.

Psychological Symptoms	
• Self-destruction (cutting, suicide, extreme aggression or rage towards other people)	Mark 5:5; Mark 9:22; Acts 19:16.
• Personality Splits, a rapid changing personality	Mark 1:34; 3:11; 5:6-7; Acts 19:15.
• Hyper-anesthesia	Mark 5:7; Mark 1:24.
• Multiple voices	Mark 5:9; Acts 19:15.
• Resistance	Mark 5:7; Mark 1:24.
• Transference	Mark 5:13.
LIGHT OPPRESSION / SUBJECTION	
• Restlessness and/or Insomnia	
• Resistance to Christ & Spiritual truths.	This pertains to difficulty in conversions and spiritual growth: Luke 4:34; Luke 8; 28.
• Character problems.	Excessive immorality or blasphemy without control. Unclean spirits: Acts 5:16; Luke 4:33: Matthew 10:1; Mark 1:23; Mark 3:30.
SEVERE OPPRESSION / INDIVIDUAL PERSECUTION / HARASSMENT	
• Severe depression	Especially with no apparent reason.
• Nightmares, Voices, visitation, etc.	Acts 19:15; Mark. 3:11; Luke 4:34, 41.
• Extreme Bondage to Sin	Examples can be porn addiction, etc.
• Abnormal Sex Life	An Example is "Tantric sex", bestiality.
• Abnormal Emotions	Out of control emotions can be fear, grief, shame, anger, etc.
• Trances	

4.1.6.3 STRATEGIC-LEVEL / TERRITORIAL SPIRITUAL WARFARE

In the past, dealing directly with the demonic has been limited to possession or oppression of individuals. While it is a vital part of the battle, a new front has emerged: Territorial spirits, such as the “Spirit of Pride” and the “Spirit of Witchcraft”.

Prof C Peter Wagner calls this “**cosmic-level warfare**” and identifies different levels and demonic activity, even in the hierarchy. Specific Principalities with identifiable characteristics are assigned to specific geographical locations and geopolitical institutions. Their domain can include a household, a neighborhood, a city, a nation, a culture or a sub-culture.⁹⁹

Cities are seats of governments. The **concept of city** is one of most important concepts of the spiritual world because through the structures and designs of religious temples and financial institutions in a city, the reign of a kingdom is established. The social organizations of cities determine the history and the development of that city and therefore of that nation as a whole.

In the view of Dr Rony Chaves, territorial warfare defined states: **Territorial Warfare involves warfare in a city as a structure of government**, a hold in a developed society. It represents a place of political, religious and social influence; and it is in the cities where important decisions are made. Unlike a village, a city has within has within its limits a much greater complexity in all its organization, development and infrastructure.

The city is one of the most complete symbols for the representation of **the Kingdom of God in the Bible**. We see this in the glorious heavenly city, described by the apostle John in Revelations. This city, “**The New Jerusalem**”, speaks to us of the great Eternal reign of God with man.

⁹⁹ Wagner, Peter C Prof (1991) Territorial Spirits: Insight on Strategic-Level Spiritual Warfare from Nineteen Christian leaders. Chichester, England: Sovereign World Limited, p. 32.

Christians have to realize that each part of it –its gates, its towers, its foundation and everything that is in it – are symbols, which represent the supreme King of the universe in His majestic Kingdom. Cities represent the seat of a throne, dominion or specific government. In the Old days, they would put walls and ramparts around their cities to fortify them and keep them from their enemies.¹⁰⁰

All generals know that to conquer a city, it is necessary to enter the city, do away with the previous government and to establish a new one. In order to penetrate a city and its strongholds, the general needs a strategy to let the walls fall. Taking cities was necessary tactics for conquering the land.

A good Biblical example of Spiritual territoriality is seen with the Prince of Persia in the book of Daniel. Ezekiel 4:1-3. It is a Biblical illustration of how to make a Spiritual Map. In Ephesians 6: 10-18 the Hierarchy of Satan is revealed.

4.1.6.3.1 BIBLICAL EXAMPLE OF DIFFERENCE BETWEEN TERRITORIAL SPIRITS AND GROUND-LEVEL SPIRITUAL WARFARE

In the Book of Luke, Jesus speaks of overcoming the strongman so that his palace can be invaded and his goods spoiled.

According to Prof Peter Wagner, this incident began with ground-level Spiritual Warfare as Jesus cast a demon out of a mute (Luke 11:14) but then Jesus goes on to talk about Satan's Kingdom (Luke 11:18) and a palace (Luke 11:21) and Beëlzebub who is a High Prince of demons but ranked under Satan himself. This could be seen as an escalation of Jesus' scope of conquering or overcoming.¹⁰¹

The Churches in the Seven Cities revealed in the Book of Revelation are to conquer the forces of evil perverting the glory of God from shining in the cities.

¹⁰⁰ Chaves, Rony Dr (1994 April) Cities. Mexicans in Victory Conference.

¹⁰¹ Wagner, Peter C (Prof) Warfare Prayer. Ventura, California: Monarch Publishers, p. 60.

4.1.6.3.2 OVERCOMING THE STRATEGIC-LEVEL DEMONIC FORCE RULING TERRITORY

Overcoming the strategic level demonic forces ruling territories, demands a basic understanding of Satan's modus operandi.

According to the view of Prof Peter Wagner, Satan's central task and desire is to **prevent God from being glorified**. Whenever God is not glorified in a person's life, in a Church, in a city or in the world as a whole, Satan has to that degree accomplished his objective. The underlying motive... is that Satan himself wants the glory due to God. As Lucifer fell from heaven, he was exclaiming, 'I will be like the Most High!' His second objective is to **make human beings and human society as miserable** as possible in this present life".¹⁰²

4.1.6.3.2.1 IDENTIFY THE FOUNDATION OF STRONGHOLDS

Revelation 17:5, 18 reveals Babylon the great, the Mother of Harlots and abominations of the earth as a "*Great City*", which reigns over the kings of the earth. The stronghold refers to a structure of demonic government, symbolized by the image of a city. Since Babylon means "*confusion*", which operates through false religions, philosophies and dictators, the structures and designs of such city will separates men from God. It was this way since the times of the Tower of Babel until now. Where demonic cities are built, it is essential to retrieve the foundation which it's laid on.

The demonic realm is founded on rebellion against God, not only did Satan exceed His boundaries, a third of the angels rebelled on another occasion and dare to marry the women of Earth in terrible acts of sexual depravity.

¹⁰²Wagner, Peter C (Prof) Warfare Prayer. Ventura, California: Monarch Publishers, p.62.

From this inbreeding sprang a race of giants known as the “**Nephilim**”,¹⁰³ the descendant of Anak. This grieved God that He made man. After the cataclysm, the earth became repopulated through these survivors. The seed of this depraved nature was deep imbedded in the hearts of humanity.

Noah’s son Ham, had inherited more wickedness than the others and vexed his father because of his intentional nakedness. For this his father cursed one of his sons Canaan. From this generation a strong man called Nimrod was born – a mighty warrior as well as a mighty hunter, who was a natural symbol of evil. The basic meaning for Nimrod was rebel. Jewish tradition notes that Nimrod is the man who raised his fist in anger in challenging God. He established cities in Shinar – which became a center representing man’s pride and arrogance against God.

Ana Mendez-Ferrell draw attention to the fact that the city Babylon – is the origin of the whole idolatrous system of the devil, the cradle of false religions, idolatry, occultism and all the current philosophies that influence our civilization for evil today.¹⁰⁴

4.1.6.3.2.2 IDENTIFY THE DIFFERENT TOWERS OF EVIL / STRONGHOLD

The tower of Babel in the natural is a reflection of what Satan has build in the Spiritual realm through the abomination of men. Nimrod, full of Satan’s prideful pattern formed heart, wanted to establish the idea that man can reach heaven through his own deeds. Through Nimrod Satan established his control of cities, because there was already a stronghold in the spirit realm that the devil used to rule all the inhabited earth.

¹⁰³ Genesis 6:1-2.

¹⁰⁴Mendez-Ferrell, Ana Dr (2008) Shaking the Heavens. Ponte Vedra, Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries, pp.101-102.

The tower of Babel was therefore the visible manifestation of a demonic stronghold built by Satan.¹⁰⁵

Until today, the world is filled with such towers of evil – strongholds in the heavenlies – reflecting on earth as cities filled with corruption, principalities, powers and rulers of darkness. As a result millions are controlled like puppets.

4.1.6.3.2.3 BREAKING STRONGHOLDS OVER CITIES

Celestial cities and divine structures are first designed by God. The prophet Ezekiel was innumerable times transported in the spirit in order to see the designs and structures of the city of God.¹⁰⁶ God also revealed his structures and designs of the end time to the prophet Daniel, who prayed and begged and confessed the sin of his people. He did not stop until the structures of the government in the second heaven are shaken. His prayer activated Gabriel who mobilized the heavens. God is sending His army of angels that together with the Church, they can carry out God's designs.

Are they not all ministering spirits, sent forth to minister for them who shall be heirs of salvation?

Hebrews 1:14

A glorious move of prayer and crying out to God and a thirst to seek God has been loosening upon the whole earth. Although the devil has established strongholds that seem indestructible to the human mind, Christ came to establish the City of God on earth. This city is the most powerful government in the whole universe.

God propelled us to leave behind our fear and challenge our ideas that Satan is in control. Satan had built stronghold over all the earth – but the time has come to the government of God, to be raised up above every other government.

¹⁰⁵ Mendez-Ferrell, Ana Dr (2008) *Shaking the Heavens*. Ponte Vedra, Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries, pp.103.

¹⁰⁶ Ezekiel 40:2,4; 43:11.

The Church should take her authority and tell every other government to be cast itself in the sea (Mark 11:23). Before Him every knee shall bow and every government made low where Christ is crowned as King – in the heart of his children.

The comment of Charles H Kraft could be taken as representative of those holding the view that Jesus gave His authority to His church: As One under authority yet exercising the authority of God, Jesus did the most Amazing thing after His resurrection. He passed on the authority in which He worked to His followers. During His ministry, He sent them out to heal and cast out demons in “power and authority”.¹⁰⁷

The disciples had worked in Jesus authority while He was on earth, but He promised that when He left, he would send them His Holy Spirit, the one who had empowered Him, to enable them to do all He had done and more.¹⁰⁸ Just before Jesus left, He instructed them to wait in Jerusalem for “the gift of the Holy Spirit” He told them about.¹⁰⁹ And He commissioned them to go and make people His disciples, baptize them in the Name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and teach them to obey everything I have commanded your. Thus Jesus final command to us, as well as our commission to represent Him, is grounded in the authority He won through obedience to the Father.¹¹⁰

In this ‘End-Times’ God is raising up prophetic warriors who know that the feet of the Lord crushes maintains and crumble demonic structures and cities. The Lord promised His church that he will give us every place where they set his foot, as He promised Moses.¹¹¹ Only where the Holiness of Christ is expressed through His servant, can make the enemies of God and men, the footstool of Jesus Christ. God is using His disciples to trample the demonic structures and strongholds – when they have so completely denied themselves.

¹⁰⁷ Luke 9:1; Luke 10:9, 17.

¹⁰⁸ John 14:2.

¹⁰⁹ Acts 1:4-5.

¹¹⁰ Kraft, Charles, H (1997) *I give You Authority: Practicing the authority Jesus Gave Us*. Grand Rapids, MI: Chosen Books, pp. 38-39.

¹¹¹ Joshua 1:3

According to the view of Ana Mendez-Ferrell, the torrent of God's life and power can flow only through the feet of those who practice humility and self-denial.¹¹²

4.1.6.3.2.4 DISCERN EVIL ROOTS AND SATANIC COVENANTS IN HISTORY

The origin of satanic strongholds is the key to liberation of a place. Believers have to ask God strategy to tear the stronghold down. Whenever blood pacts of oaths is made with Satan, the curse remains on the generation until it is repented of and broken. To rid the land of such evil is of fundamental importance.

Walter Wink has been trying to convince social activists that bigger and better programs have not nor in all probability ever will change for the better if the Spiritual powers behind social structures are not named, unmasked and engaged.¹¹³

It is clear from Ana Mendez-Ferrell that individuals, as the basic units of a house, makes up the building blocks of a strongholds over specific places. Just as man is a spirit, living in a body and communicates to the outside world through his soul, just the same is the "spirit of a nation (its spirit)", established in a specific territory/area (its body) and will it express itself to the outside world through the personality of its people (its soul).

The same way that a human "soul (personality)" is affected by hurts, violence, rejection and the occult as well as idolatry and covenants, "the soul of a nation (characteristic)" is imprisoned by demonic oppression.

Some nations are hurting by their own corrupt governments, headed by people who are in covenant with the devil.

¹¹² Mendez-Ferrell, Ana Dr (2008) *Shaking the Heavens*. Ponte Vedra, Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries, p.105.

¹¹³ Walter Wink influence trilogy includes *Naming the Power*, *Unmasking the Powers*, and *Engaging the Powers*. Wagner, Peter C (Prof) *Warfare Prayer*. Ventura, California: Monarch Publishers, p. 64.

As long as sects maintain evil covenants – where witches and wizards are performing esoteric ceremonies through the shedding of blood – demonic structures will operate over those territories. Vowels, covenants and other demonic doors over nations should be confessed and be broken.¹¹⁴

The state of a nation is affected by individual as well as the sin of the nation as a whole. Some nations are so hurt by injustice, racism and war crimes that many were driven to the point of extinction. The Spirit wants to open our eyes and lead us to repentance as a nation. Radical sins that have been confessed, as well as sins of arrogance that stems from a spirit of pride, racism and superiority will continue to take root in the hearts of people.

4.1.6.3.2.5 SPIRITUAL MAPPING

Spiritual mapping involves the coming of God's Kingdom on earth. There is a cause-and-effect relationship between the faithfulness of God's people in prayer and the coming of His Kingdom.

When God's will is done on earth, we see lots of people saved, sick people healed, poor people having sufficient essentials, and wars to an end, a stop to lighting and bloodshed, oppressed people liberated, just governments, fair and equitable business practices and harmony among races, etc.

The view of Prof Peter C Wagner could be taken as representative of those holding the view of spiritual mapping: *Cities have a **geographical pattern of evil** and spiritual oppression. Corporal beings are perceived to rule over homes, villages, cities, valleys, provinces and nations and they exercise extra-ordinary power over the behaviour of local people.*

¹¹⁴ Mendez-Ferrell, Ana Dr (2008) *Shaking the Heavens*. Ponte Vedra, Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries, pp.113.

*It is necessary to say that these forces are not all evil. Spiritual mapping must put the works of the enemy into the larger context of the spirit dimension.*¹¹⁵

Spiritual Mapping defined, is the superimposing of our understanding of forces and events in the spiritual domain onto places and circumstances in the material world.¹¹⁶ Spiritual mapping is a means whereby we can see what is beneath the surface of the material world, but it is not a magic. It is subjective in that it is a skill born of our right relationship with God and a love for His world. It is objective in that it can be verified (or discredited) by history, sociological observation and God's word. Some spiritual warfare practitioners have given the discipline a narrower definition – limiting it to the discovery of demonic strongholds – but this carries the danger to become preoccupied with the location and activities of the enemy while ignoring the fact that God also operates in the spiritual dimension.

Spiritual Mapping is used to unmask satanic deception that is blocking the emergence of God's glory. It is therefore necessary to identify the stronghold and follow Biblical principles of spiritual warfare and proceeds to tear down the stronghold(s) down and serve eviction to the spiritual forces behind them.

4.1.6.3.3 A SPIRITUAL MAP OF THE CITY OF BABEL

Demons are found where there is people and their bitter mandate is to steal, to kill and to destroy. With so many people involved in the building of Babel, surely a most profound ingathering of demonic power would be attracted. If we are to understand why spiritual strongholds exist over cities, we have to solve the origin of it. An obvious starting point is the study of Babel as seen in Genesis 11. Behind cultural forms, just as behind lava rocks can lay the invisible power of the Creator or invisible demonic power.

¹¹⁵ Wagner, Peter C. Prof (1993) *Breaking Strongholds in Your City: How to use Spiritual Mapping to make your prayers more strategic, effective and targeted.* Ventura, California: Regal Books, p. 32-33.

¹¹⁶ George Otis, Jr (1991) *The Last of the Giants.* Tarrytown, NY: Chosen Books, p.85.

If we are ignorant of this, we can make ourselves unnecessarily vulnerable to devastating waves of high-level demonization. Human culture is part of God's creation and therefore is culture in itself good. It is one of the visible elements designed to glorify the Creator.

Prof Peter C Wagner argued: Cultural origins are revealed in Genesis. According to Genesis 11, there was a time when the human race was one culture. Gods original plan was that man should scatter over the whole earth and develop into diverse cultures. True their depraved nature, the people had their own plan – consolidating around the Tower of Babel. They built the tower in rebellion against God's orders as seen in Genesis 11:4 – their motive, “Lest we be scattered abroad over the face of the whole earth.”

Archaeologists tell us that the visible structure of the tower was a typical **ziggurat** – a well-known ancient structure designed for occult purposes. They wanted a tower whose top reached the heavens in order to draw on satanic power for their desired one world movement! They used the visible to glory the creature rather than the Creator.¹¹⁷

4.1.6.3.4 PULLING DOWN STRONGHOLDS, AN OFFENSIVE WARFARE WEAPON

The Stronghold is the place where the devil and his forces are entrenched. God apparently wants the believer to attack these strongholds. The ruling spirits over a nation are well organized with a hierarchy of control over different cities, towns and districts.

In additional to territorial spirits there are also ruling spirits over both countries and towns with specific job functions.

¹¹⁷ Wagner, Peter C. Prof (1993) *Breaking Strongholds in Your City: How to use Spiritual Mapping to make your prayers more strategic, effective and targeted.* Ventura, California: Regal Books, p. 32-33.

They are inciting particular forms of behaviour that are contrary to God's purpose for man – for examples, spirits that encourage sexual abuse, homosexuality, pornography, violence and greed. Within the lives of individuals there are often a well-organized structure of demonic control.

Bill Subritzky in his book *Demons Defeated*, talks about three strong men (demon powers) that he has found are often in control, namely: Jezebel, Death and Hell, and the Anti-Christ spirits. In severe demonized people, demonic structures have to be carefully unpicked and demons should be loosed from each other's control before they could be loose from the individual.¹¹⁸ Jesus states the following pertaining to deliverance.

Or else how can one enter into a strong man's house, and spoil his goods, except he first bind the strong man? and then he will spoil his house.

Matthew 12:29

CONCLUSION

Jesus gave His disciples instructions to cast out demons and those instructions are implicit within the Great Commission to the Church. While there is no particular Scripture that states unequivocally that Christians can have demons, there are many verses that clearly assume that they can.

Once it has been established that Christian can be demonized (have a demon), it is only a short step to the next conclusion that, when God's Holy Spirit exposes the presence of a demon, deliverance is required. Part of the process of healing (spirit, soul of body) could be to order demon/s to leave. Experience undoubtedly supports this viewpoint and the evidence of many Christians who have been healed through deliverance confirms the supposition.

¹¹⁸ Horrobin, Peter (2007) *Healing through Deliverance*. Lancaster, DA: Sovereign World, p.92.

Not only can born-again Christians be afflicted by the presence of demons, but there is little point in pursuing deliverance ministry with non-believers. Unless a person is born again, the demons will seek to return as soon as they can, as Jesus warned in Mathew 12:43-45.

Then goeth he, and taketh with himself seven other spirits more wicked than himself, and they enter in and dwell there: and the last state of that man is worse than the first. Even so shall it be also unto this wicked generation.

Matthew 12:45

In such a case, the person will be in worse shape than he was before the deliverance.

The different strategic levels spiritual warfare are closely interrelated and what happens on the one level will affect what happens on the other levels. Spiritual Warfare is not a means in itself. In a valid sense, Jesus Christ came to destroy the works of the Devil, which was a means toward an end – seeking and saving that which was lost.

For the Son of man is come to seek and to save that which was lost.

Luke 19:10

Jesus mainly wanted to draw human beings back into fellowship with the Father and he was willing to die on the Cross so it could be possible. God's highest priority is evangelism, calling people who will honor and glorify His Name. Evangelism should be the goal, and warfare prayer the method/tactic of every Supreme Spiritual Warrior.

One of the classic statements is that "History belongs to the intercessors". Social structures and systems are simply the visible entities, which invisible demonic forces are using for their own ends, much demonic forces will use an idol – although the idol itself is simply a piece of wood or stone. A person who is demonized is not per se a demonic person, but rather a victim of a powerful demonic force.

Likewise, social structures are not, in themselves demonic, but they can be and often are demonized by some extremely pernicious and dominating demonic personalities, which could be called territorial spirits. This view opens up the hope and possibility that social structures, like demonized people, can be delivered from demonic oppressions through warfare prayer. This is why history belongs to the intercessors.

The anointing for victory in spiritual warfare comes when a believer is submitted to God, when he resists the Devil and when he make a categorical determination of the position he want Satan to have in his live. No man will have any authority over any demon who is attacking someone else until the person has defeated the Devil in his own life.

God is mustering an Army. A call is going out anew to the remnant all over the earth – the intercessors and prayer warriors – to stand up in territorial warfare. The governments of our houses, villages and cities are not in the hands of wicked rulers, but in the Lord's Throne over the nations.

He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches.

Revelation 2:7

-----oOo-----

...He shall baptize you with the Holy Ghost, and [with] fire.

Matthew 3:16

Chapter Three

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

Ephesians 6:12

*For we wrestle not against flesh and blood,
but against principalities, against powers,
against the rulers of the darkness of this world,
against spiritual wickedness in high places.*

Chapter Three

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

Ephesians 6:12

*For we wrestle not against flesh and blood,
but against principalities, against powers,
against the rulers of the darkness of this world,
against spiritual wickedness in high places.*

Cover Art for Chapters: Susan Langeveldt
Graphic Design: SL Studios



Chapter 3

Kingdom Analysis Undergirth by the Apostolic and Prophetic

Then said he [Michael] unto me, Fear not, Daniel: for from the first day that thou didst set thine heart to understand, and to chasten thyself before thy God, thy words were heard, and I am come for thy words. But the prince of the kingdom of Persia withstood me one and twenty days: but, lo, Michael, one of the chief princes, came to help me; and I remained there with the kings of Persia.

Daniel 10:12-13

1. INTRODUCTION

The central theme of this thesis is epitomised in a core problem. A problem that basically boils down to a single question: A question of how God and evil are able to co-exist in the same Universe.

Presuppositionally the first answer: It is impossible for man to understand the issue in his humane nature. A second answer: Any God that man can define is no God at all.

In a nutshell we cleave to the main presupposition: God is. We are therefore left with the situation of; a God who is beyond the power and ability of man to define, thus we must depend on some form of self revelation in order to discover who God is.

This thesis will take that approach; we will do so within the confines of the Historic Christian Religion as it is presented to man in the Bible. With this approach several points need to be noted here.

A presupposition is that which is regarded as fact from the outset.¹ It may be regarded as an *ipso facto* truth and no “**prove**” given for its support. The fact itself is the support upon which other facts or truths are built. This thesis will pre-suppose the following:

- Every system of truth rests on some starting point that is indemonstrable. This is true of Religion and Philosophy, as well as Science. This ‘starting point’ is known by the term ‘axiom.’² In this study the Bible is taken as our starting point. We shall regard the Bible as the self-revelation of God and as the Word of God.³ As such it is the truth. Therefore every proposition will be examined and proven in the light of it.
- God necessarily exist. This is the clear proclamation of the Bible. It never argues for the existence of God but rather presents His existence as bare fact. His existence is a subject for another study but this thesis is based on the existence of God as it is proclaimed *ipso facto* by Scripture. In the beginning... God!⁴
- Evil is also very much a reality because the Bible plainly tells us so. Evil is not an illusion of the mind of man nor is it a thing of relativity. It is very real and God takes it very seriously.

¹ Stanton, Graham N, (1992) ‘Presuppositions in New Testament Criticism,’ Marshall Howard I. New Testament Interpretation. United Kingdom; Paternoter Press, p60

² Definition: A self-evident or universally recognized truth; a maxim.

³ John 1:1. In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

1 John 1:1 That which was from the beginning, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled, of the Word of life.

⁴ Genesis 1:1.

The axiom of the thesis is proved to be the Word of God therefore we will start with some repique of Jesus Christ as the Son of God, since He is the Word.

The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the broken-hearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised, to preach the acceptable year of the Lord.

Luke 4:18-19

This thesis will explain the view of God the Father as seen through the eyes of the Son and Saviour Jesus Christ, the Lord. Primarily the presupposition is that God is compassionate, good, holy and that He is Love.

Compassion is the hallmark of Jesus' God. Consequently, Jesus' healings and exorcisms, which play such a major role in his ministry, are not simply patches on a body destined for death regardless; they are manifestations of God's Reign on earth now, an in-breaking of eternity into time, a revelation of God's merciful nature, a promise of the restitution of all things in the heart of the loving Author of the Universe.

But if I with the finger of God cast out devils, no doubt the kingdom of God is come upon you.

Luke 11:20

But if I cast out devils by the Spirit of God, then the kingdom of God is come unto you.

Matt 11:28

In the form of God's Son, Jesus Christ was send by the Father to come to the earth as the Kingdom Himself. Thus the Kingdom of Light and Love and Justice came to search and seek the sinners on the earth to save them from the Kingdom of Darkness.

John Pairman Brown argues, “God’s non-violent reign is the overcoming of demonic powers through non-violent means.”⁵

As Walter Wink notes⁶ exorcism especially preoccupied the early church. Baptism itself was an entry-exorcism, freeing the initiates from the delusional system that had previously held them in bondage. Exorcism was not, then, a rare and extreme intervention. It was the indispensable prerequisite for getting a “new mind” (*metanoia*). Jesus’ teaching itself is a kind of exorcism, a cleansing of the mind of the misinformation that enslaves people to the Powers of Darkness.

And they went into Capernaum; and straightway on the Sabbath day he entered into the synagogue, and taught. And they were astonished at his doctrine: for he taught them as one that had authority, and not as the scribes. And there was in their synagogue a man with an unclean spirit; and he cried out, saying, let us alone; what have we to do with thee, thou Jesus of Nazareth? art thou come to destroy us? I know thee who thou art, the Holy One of God. And Jesus rebuked him, saying, Hold thy peace, and come out of him. And when the unclean spirit had torn him, and cried with a loud voice, he came out of him. And they were all amazed, insomuch that they questioned among themselves, saying, What thing is this? What new doctrine is this? for with authority commandeth he even the unclean spirits, and they do obey him. And immediately his fame spread abroad throughout all the region round about Galilee.

Mark 1:21-28

And the apostles gathered themselves together unto Jesus, and told him all things, both what they had done, and what they had taught.

Mark 6:30

And Jesus said unto him, Go thy way; thy faith hath made thee whole. And immediately he received his sight, and followed Jesus in the way.

Mark 10:52

⁵ Brown, John Pairman (1987) ‘The Kingdom of God’, Encyclopedia of Religion, ed. Mircea Eliade. New York; Macmillan, 8:304-12

⁶ Wink Walter (1992) Engaging the Powers, Discernment and Resistance in a World of Domination. Minneapolis; Fortress Press, p. 134

2. KINGDOM ANALYSIS

The Kingdom was a mystery that was revealed to some and hidden from others. It is important to understand the Kingdom in its first-century context. What is the historical context of the Kingdom message?

The announcement of the Kingdom does not arrive in a vacuum. There is a historical backdrop on the arrival of the Kingdom. Jesus Christ came in the fullness of time, at the end of the age or consummation of the age. The Kingdom of God is the rule of God over Israel and worldwide. The hope of Israel was the hope of an age of righteousness ushered in by the Messiah, the Son of David. They were looking for the restoration of the Davidic Kingdom and the rebuilding of the tabernacle of David. The Kingdom would be the age of the Messiah and He would be a victorious King who would defeat Israel's enemies and rule in righteousness. This was the hope of the Prophets.

The concept of the Kingdom was described by the Prophets using figurative language:

- The eyes of the blind would be opened and the ears of the deaf unstopped (Isaiah 35:5).
- The lame man would leap as a deer and the tongue of the dumb would sing. Waters would break out in the wilderness and streams in the desert (Isaiah 35:6).
- A highway would be built, called the way of holiness (Isaiah 35:8).
- The ransomed of the Lord would return and come to Zion with songs and everlasting joy (Isaiah 35:10).
- Zion would be comforted and her warfare accomplished (Isaiah 40:1-2).
- The glory of the Lord would be revealed and all flesh would see it altogether (Isaiah 40:5).
- The Lord would come with a strong hand and rule and feed His flock like a shepherd and gather the lambs with His arms (Isaiah 40:10-11).

The Servant of the Lord would bring judgment to the nations and would set judgment in the earth. He would be given as a covenant to the people and a light to the Gentiles. He would open the eyes of the blind and bring set the captive free (Isaiah 42:12, 16). The Lord would pour His Spirit upon the nation and blot out their transgressions and sins and redeems them (Isaiah 44). Glad tidings will come; salvation would be made known.

Jesus Christ came to announce the year of the Lord's favour, or the year of jubilee (Luke 4:18-19; Leviticus 25:8-25). The Kingdom of God is the announcement of the favour of the Lord. The Kingdom of God is the time of jubilee. The Kingdom is a time of salvation and deliverance and the message of the Kingdom is about the His redemptive reign, His Salvific reign.

The message of Christ was that the Kingdom was "at hand". This could only be accomplished through the blood of the Lamb of God and through faith in His blood. This salvation would be the work of Christ through His death and resurrection. It would be the rule in the hearts of His saints. The rule would be spiritual. The Kingdom is the rule of God through Christ over His new-created people, the Church. It is the rule of God Shepherd over His flock – through His Holy Spirit. It is the rule of God through the New Covenant. It is the rule of God in the heart of His saints.

2.1 A KINGDOM DEFINED

The Kingdom of God and the Kingdom of heaven are two descriptions of the same Kingdom. The Kingdom is God's rule and it is from heaven. Heaven is the origin of the Kingdom, not earth.

The Church is not an alternate plan. The Church would be the people over whom the gates of hell would not prevail. The church is the "**ekklesia**". The Church consists of the called out ones, Kingdom citizens born from above. The called are those who rule and reign with Christ.

The Church consists of people from every nation who are submitted to the rule of Christ through God's Holy Spirit. They are ones who called Jesus LORD.

Geography does not determine where the Kingdom exists. Its citizens, no matter where they live, determine the Kingdom. Christ's Kingdom cannot be limited to a geographical location. The earthly type was only a picture of the universal, spiritual Kingdom that was coming.

John Eckhard proclaims: *"In order to be instructed in the Kingdom, a person must be able to bring forth from the Old and the New Covenants. The Old was a type and symbol of the New. Earthly Jerusalem was a type of the heavenly Jerusalem. Earthly Zion was a type of the heavenly Zion. David's earthly rule was a type of the heavenly rule of Christ. The failure to understand the type and the antitype is a major reason why some fail to understand the Kingdom."*⁷

The Kingdom of God can only be established in a person's life, when there is a direct confrontation with the *Unholy-One*. One of the main strategies Satan used in the war against humanity is sin.

The Kingdom of God can only be established in a person's life, when there is a direct confrontation with the unholy one. One of the main strategies Satan used in the war against humanity is sin. In a progressive way, man can become dominated by sin.⁸

Jessie Penn-Lewis declares: *"Angels and men did not know evil until they fell into a state of evil. Satan did not tell Eve this when he said that she would know "good from evil". His true objective in deceiving Eve was to get her to disobey God, but this deception implies: 'Ye shall be as gods.'"*⁹

⁷ Eckard, John (2011) *The invisible King and His Kingdom: How to Understand, Operate in and Advance God's will for Healing, Deliverance and Miracles*. Lake Mary, Florida: Charisma House, p.10.

⁸ Brand, Connie MJ Dr (2005) *Meesters Graaad: An exposition of Biblical Warfare central to Christian involvement in a theodicy considered from Philosophical-theological perspective*. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published, p. 46.

⁹ Penn-Lewis, Jessie (1996) *Secrets of Spiritual Warfare*. New Kensington, PA: Whitaker House, p.31.

2.2 ONE KINGDOM WAS FOUNDED ORIGINALLY AND ONE KINGDOM WILL BE ESTABLISHED IN THE END

God is a Holy and a Good God. He did not create sin, decree it, or approve it. Scripture teach us that God made man very good (Genesis 1:26-31) and He made all angels holy and perfect without any flaws (Psalm 89:5, 7).¹⁰

“Scripture clearly show that the first moral beings created were the angelic hosts and that Lucifer and his angels were the first and original sinners. Sin therefore began in heaven among the angelic order. It came to earth in the being of the tempter, Satan.”¹¹

Brand notes that authority passed through the hand of Satan and since he was wise and beautiful, he could retain some of the worship for himself and that he could originate some of the authority in himself. *“Thus he filled his heart with the violence of rebellion. He had been entrusted with God’s government, priesthood and spokemanship, but he wanted to act independently of God.”¹²*

Martin Luther notes on Satan’s sin; *“The proper devilishness of sin is this, that it thus modifies the first words of the Decalogue; I am **my** Lord and **my** God.”¹³*

From the beginning of time, Satan sought to extend his evil rule and authority to the realm of the earth and was looking just for an opportunity to lure Adam and Eve into independency. The moment rebellion originates in the heart of Satan, ***evil divided Gods Kingdom into two Kingdoms.***

¹⁰ Brand, Connie MJ Dr (2006) Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity – Involving the Theodicy of Darkness, Volume III. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Printing and Bookbinding Solutions Publishers, p. 2151.

¹¹ Ibid., p. 2152.

¹² Brand, Connie MJ Dr (2006) Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structure and strategies to destruct Christianity – involving the Theodicy of Darkness. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Printing and Bookbinding Solutions, p. 516.

¹³ Hodder & Stoughton. (1881) Christian Dogmatic, p. 421.

2.3 THE ORIGIN OF EVIL

Iniquity was found in the **heart of Lucifer**.¹⁴ Here is **the beginning of sin**. So far as we know, here is the only verse in the Bible which states clearly the exact origin of sin. What is important to note here is that the locality of the origin of sin is found in the HEART – first it originates in Lucifer’s heart and when evil came earthly, it came to earth in the being of the tempter, Satan.

“Scripture clearly show that the first moral beings created were the angelic hosts and that Lucifer and his angels were the first and original sinners. Sin therefore began in heaven among the angelic order.”¹⁵

Thou was perfect in thy ways from the day that thou wast created, till iniquity was found in thee.

Ezekiel 28:15

Dr Méndez-Ferrel wrote: Just as faith is the substance of what is believed, that is, the power that activates the invisible world of heaven, this twisted thought derived by the archangel a spiritual substance, which was the origin of evil.¹⁶

The comment of CS Lewis from *Mere Christianity* could be taken as representative of the origin of the sin: *“I freely admit that real Christianity goes much nearer to Dualism than people think. The difference is that Christianity thinks this dark Power was created by God, but was good when he was created and went wrong. Christianity agrees with Dualism that this Universe is at war. But it does not think this is a war between independent powers. It is a civil war, a rebellion and that we are living in a part of the Universe occupied by the rebel.”¹⁷*

¹⁴ Ezekiel 28 and Isaiah 14 are the keystone passages about Satan.

¹⁵ Brand, Connie MJ Dr (2006) *Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity – Involving the Theodicy of Darkness, Volume III*. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Printing and Bookbinding Solutions Publishers, p. 2152.

¹⁶ Méndez-Ferrell, Ana Dr (2011) *Iniquity: The major hindrance to see God’s glory manifested in your life*. Ponte Verda, Florida: Aná Méndez-Ferrell Inc, p.10.

¹⁷ Lewis, CS. *Mere Christianity*.

As to divided allegiance versus eternal allegiance, it appears that there is an answer to the problem of the origin of evil and that it is simple and satisfying. The answer is that there is now more than one will in the Universe. When there was only one will in the Universe, back in eternity past, there was peace and joy. When there shall be but one will again, all of the problems of the world will be settled.

The difficulty in which the world finds itself today is not the problem of capital and labor, or the problem of production and distribution, or the problem of racial differences, or any of the other problems which bother the sociologists, the planners and the philosophers. Man's greatest problem today, whether he recognizes it or not, is how to push aside every other allegiance, but the eternal one. The further exposition of evil will be treated in Chapter Four.

2.3.1 THE BEGINNING OF SIN AS THE ORIGIN OF EVIL

Brand, Barnhouse as well as other Scholars notes, that the king of Tyre was an antitype of the devil.

The Theologian Charles Ryrie notes the following pertaining to the interpretation of Ezekiel 28 and Isaiah 14: *"We do not want to overstep the revelation God has given us, but when you put all the pieces of the puzzle together, Ezekiel 28 and Isaiah 14 do play an important part. If you look up Satan in a Topical Bible, Ezekiel 28 and Isaiah 14 are the keystone passages about Satan. It is not small thing to ignore or limit their content. We believe there is enough evidence in scripture to make it reasonable clear that Satan is the intended subject... There is no doubt that both passages refers to earthly kings. Isaiah refers to the 'king of Babylon'. The passage in Ezekiel refers to the 'rule of Tyre'. One could call this the greater context. However, both passages also include parenthetic statements that would seem inappropriate, even impossible, if applied to a human.*

*At this point one has to consider a basic hermeneutic principle sometimes referred to as the principle of double fulfillment of double reference.*¹⁸

The question could be asked if Ezekiel actually had the “ruler” in mind when he described him as being “perfect and blameless”. With the doctrine of “original sin” in mind, the possibility that the “king of Tyre” could be a human king is small, because the passage states that the king was “blameless from the day he was created”. Furthermore, the ruler of Tyre could not have been in the Garden of Eden, and only Satan was in the Garden together with Adam and Eve.

The passage also refers to the king of Tyre as a “guardian cherub” walking on the holy mount of God - which is a reference to God’s throne. Only Cherubs are associated with thus closeness to God because they had access to God and guarded His holiness. There can thus be no reasonable doubt that the ruler of Tyre is not the only person being referred to in these passages, but it is most likely that the king of Tyre was an antitype of the devil.

2.3.2 THE NATURE OF LUCIFER’S SIN

The essence of Lucifer’s sin nature includes “**pride**”, “**envious lust**” and “**self-will**”.

According to Brand, the five “I-will’s” not only describe the nature of Satan’s aspiration and intentions, it also reveals the nature of his program. *The sin nature of man originates from the “pattern-forming evil nature” of Satan. The fact that Satan’s sin is pattern-forming has become his actual conspiracy/plan.*

Lucifer exalted himself to the place of proclaiming to be God. *This self-assertion or pride turned Lucifer into a devil* – which turned the free-will God gave him against God’s will.

¹⁸Ryrie, Charles. Isaiah 14 and Ezekiel 28. (<http://www.goodseed.com/learning/article/isaiah-14-ezekiel-28/>)

The five “*I-wills*” of Satan with its pattern-forming ability, involves the different stages of rebellion: The phrase – “**A DEED (meaning an action)**” – can be used as reference to identify a rebellious pattern-forming action or character – when a habit is rooted.

- “*I will ascend (climb) into heaven*” implying Satan’s “**self-Ascension**”. Hampton explains Satan’s self-ascension referring to Satan who wants *the seat of God’s authority*.
- “*I will ascend above the heights of the clouds*” implying to Satan’s “**self-Dependence**”, trusting in his own power and understanding. The reference to clouds is associated with the glory and the presence of God in the Bible and therefore implies that *Satan wants to take the glory of God for himself*.
- “*I will exalt my throne above the stars of God*” pertaining to Satan’s “**self-Exaltation**”. This most likely refers to Satan’s *desire to rule over the angelic Kingdom of God*.
- “*I will sit alone upon the mount of the congregation in the sides of the north*” referring to Satan’s “**self-Enthronement**” concerning his desire of adoration. Satan desires *the right to rule over the affairs of the entire universe*. Mountains refer to the right to rule over kingdoms.
- “*I will be like the Most High God*” involving Satan “**self-Deification**” to be God.

*The sin nature of man originates from the “pattern-forming evil nature” of Satan. The fact that Satan’s sin is pattern-forming has become his actual conspiracy/plan. The essence of Lucifer’s sin nature includes his “**pride**”, his “**envious lust**”, and his “**self-will**”.*

Pride goes before destruction and a haughty spirit before a fall.

Proverbs 16:8

THE NATURE OF LUCIFER'S SIN

pride comes before a fall

Luke 10:18

PES

This Afrikaans word – “PES” – involves a contagious disease, but can easily enough refer to the contagious effect of original sin on humanity.

SATAN'S NATURE

P = Pride

Produce rebellion

E = Envious Lust/Greed

Yearning the worship, praise and position that belongs to God.

S = Self will

A = self-Ascension

D = self-Dependency

E = self-Exaltation

E = self-Enthronement

D = self-Deification

BOX 2: THE NATURE OF LUCIFER'S SIN

2.4 THE FALL

Man was given authority to rule and to reign on earth, not independently but through fellowship with God and by exercising their god-given image.

In Genesis 3, we have the temptation by **reasoning** where Satan did two things: (1) first he offered Eve the possibility of “*to be like God*”, knowing good from evil (Genesis 3:5) and thereby attempt to transfer his rebellious pattern-forming conspiracy/plan – to be independent of God – into the whole human race. (2) Secondly he also sought “*to denunciate the character of God.*”¹⁹

The moment that Man made the wrong choice – to be independent of God and seeks to draw on his own understanding – evil came earthly. Satan deceived Adam and Eve because he wanted the authority God assigned to them. He realized that authority is a legally based reality, so he went to Adam and Eve and tempted them to sign over their authority to him.²⁰ Through sin and **disobedience** to God, the first human beings transferred their authority to Satan. Satan can thus influence and rule the world, but can only do it to the degree that man chooses to sin.

The **lack of knowledge** pertaining to the revelation of who God is can be seen in the outcome of the combat in the Garden of Eden between Eve and the Serpent. Jessie Penn-Lewis emphasizes the danger of the lack of knowledge: “*Unfilled man in his pure state was not perfect in knowledge. Eve was ignorant of ‘good and evil’ (Genesis 3:5), and her ignorance was a condition that contributed to her deception by the Serpent, who was Satan in disguise.*”²¹

My people are destroyed for lack of knowledge: because thou hast rejected knowledge, I will also reject thee, that thou shalt be no priest to me: seeing thou hast forgotten the law of thy God, I will also forget thy children.

Hosea 4:6

¹⁹ Keathley, J Hampton (1998) Satanology, Our Invisible Adversary, the Devil. (<http://www.hamptonk3@bible.org>)

²⁰ Sherman, Dean (1995) Spiritual Warfare for every Christian, How to live in victory and retake the land. Seattle WA: YWAM Publishing, p. 119.

²¹ Penn-Lewis, Jessie (1996) Secrets of Spiritual Warfare. New Kensington, PA: Whitaker House, p.31.

STAGES OF REBELLION: A DEED

Shortest definition of sin = **“I-will”**

Isaiah 14:12-14

“A DEED”

**Self-will
is a deed (action)
of
self-centeredness
and involves being
“Ego-Theistic”,
meaning
“to lift the self up”
as
“God”.**

A = self-Ascension

“I will ascend (climb) into heaven”

(Satan wants to be lift up from a lower realm to the higher realm; he wants God’s seat of authority and glory)

D = self-Dependency

“I will ascend (climb) into heaven”

(Satan sought to be independent of God, to imitate – pretend to be – and counterfeit God. Independency is sin! Dependency upon God involves faith.)

E = self-Exaltation

“I will exalt my throne above the stars of God”

(Satan desire to be worshipped by the other angels.)

E = self-Enthronement

“I will sit alone upon the mount of the congregation in the sides of the north”

(Satan wants to rule over God’s universe.)

D = self-Deification

“I will be like the Most High God”

(I want to be God – Selfishness personified – It is Ego-Theistic.)

BOX 3: STAGES OF REBELLION: A DEED

2.5 THE DOCTRINE OF ORIGINAL SIN

The Doctrine of Original Sin in short comprises the definition of sin, the origin of sin, its definition, its expression and its end. The Doctrine of Sin is called Harmartiology, which comes from two Greek words: “**Harmartia**”, meaning “*sin*” and “**Logos**”, meaning “*word or discourse*”. Harmartiology is the Biblical teaching concerning *sin, its origin, definition, expression and final end*.

The *Doctrine of Original Sin* is not found in any the other religions. Dim or indistinct views of **original sin** – are the origin of not only doctrinal errors, heresies and false doctrines of the present day, but penetrated deep into the methods of healing, health and divine living. In Theology, the concept of “*original sin*” is known as “*total depravity*”.²² Scriptural evidence provides the basis for what has been commonly know as the *DOCTRINE OF TOTAL DEPRAVITY*. The English word *DEPRIVITY* means *perverted or crooked*. It is not used in the translation of the King James Version, but some modern translations do use it, to translate “**adokimos**” in Romans 1:28.

2.5.1 THE LOST DOCTRINE OF ORIGINAL SIN

One of the mains onslaughts in “*the End-Times*” is by the different *Gnostic Religions*, such as the *New Age Religions*.

²² **Define:** *Total depravity* or total inability implies the unmeritedness of man in the sight of God. The term depravity refers to the result of Adam’s fall. **The doctrine of Total Depravity** is a Theological doctrine that derives from the Augustine concept of *Original Sin*. It is the teaching that, as a consequence of *the Fall* of Man, every person born into the world is enslaved to the service of *sin* and apart from the efficacious or preeminent grace of God, is utterly unable to choose to follow God or choose to accept salvation as it is freely offered (Genesis 6:5; Job 15:14). This doctrine is advocated to various degrees by the Protestant confessions of faith and catechisms, including those of Lutheranism, Methodism, Armenians and Calvinism.

Calvinists hold that Adam’s sin was immediately imputed to the whole race, with the result that not only is the entire human family depraved, but it is also guilty of Adam’s sin by participation (Rom 5:12).

The **Armenian** view declares that the primary effect of Adam’s sin on the race was to give man a proneness to sin without implying guilt. The **Pelargian** view attributes inherent goodness to man, which opens to man the possibility of living in a state free from sin if he so wills. However, the Bible teaches the fact and universality of sin (1Kgs 8:46; Prov 20:9; Eccl 7:20; Rom 3:23; 5:12,19; Eph 2:1 – 3; Jas 3:2; 1 Jn 1:8,10).

One of their main strategies behind these cunning developed religions is to **reject the existence of sin**. They declared that man is not born with a *depraved nature*, but with a good nature, suggesting that nobody is in need of redemption and make room for the rejection of God's Redemption Gift, Jesus Christ our Messiah.

Christenson Evelyn notes: Although the Doctrine of Original Sin is in the official tenants of every major denomination and independent church today, it is an unsettling document... Most of the churches just let the "doctrine of original sin" slip away and die a natural death. I call it, "*the lost doctrine of sin*".²³

Christian should be warned about "*the End-Time*" forerunners, which prepares the way for the anti-Christ to come. Their strategic plan is to eliminate all Biblical standards of sin, to cover the true Evil depraved sinful nature of humanity and to provide an deceitful counterfeit method to help those in need – who actually is in need of salvation and sanctification on three levels: healing, health and Divine living. Whenever, the depraved nature of humankind is not acknowledged and understood, Satan can use ignorance and deception on Anthropology level, as part of his End-Time plan of deception.

Adam and Eve were made by God to know Him with their minds, love him with their hearts and choose God with their wills. Man was given authority to rule and to reign, not independently but through fellowship with God and by exercising their god-given image.

From the beginning of time, Satan sought to extend his rule and authority to the realm of the earth and was looking just for an opportunity to lure Adam and Eve into independency. The moment that Man made the wrong choice – to be independent of God and seeks to draw on his own understanding – evil came earthly.

²³ Christenson, Evelyn (1990) *Battling the prince of Darkness*. England: Scripture Press, p.8.

THE **LOST** DOCTRINE OF ORIGINAL **SIN**

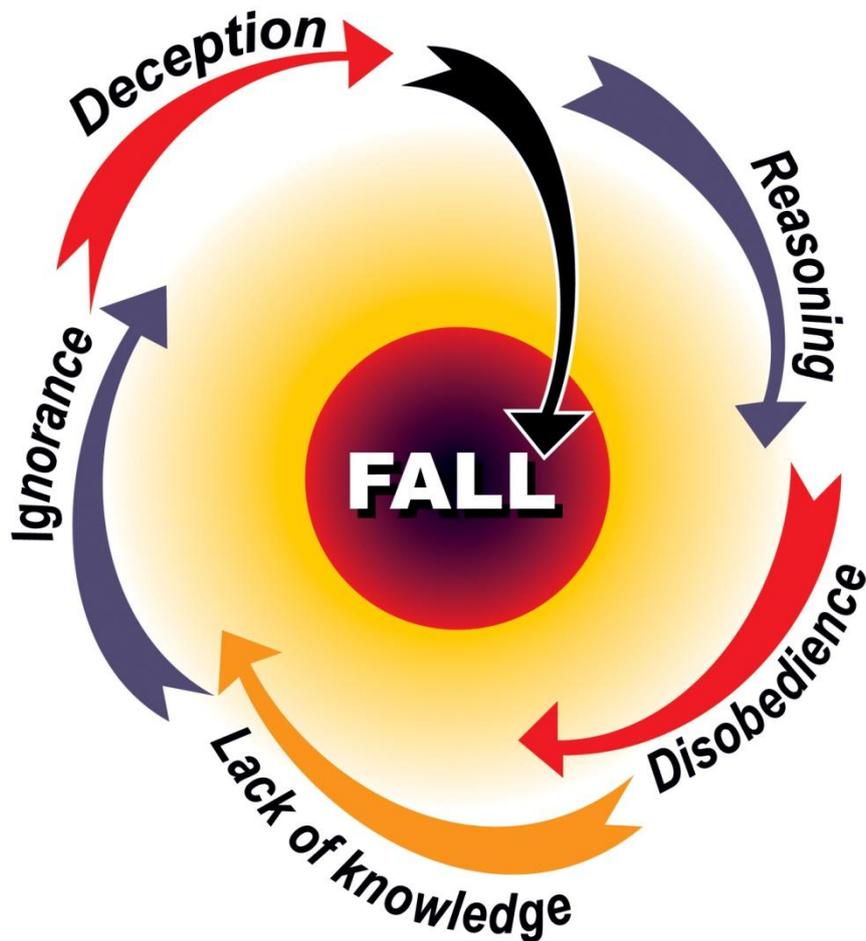


FIGURE 2: THE LOST DOCTRINE OF ORIGINAL SIN

The fall of man, refers to the change of the first humans nature from a state of innocent obedience to God, to a state of guilty rebellious disobedience to God.²⁴ “The fall” is not mentioned in the Bible as such, but different narrative story of disobedience and exile is declared.

²⁴ The Fall of Man – Wikipedia. (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fall_of_Man)

Therefore, just as sin entered the world through one man and death through sin, and in this way death came to all men, because all sinned – for before the law was given, sin was in the world. However sin is not taken into account when there is no law... For just as through the disobedience of the one man the many will be made sinners, so also through the obedience of the one man the many will be made righteous.

Romans 5:12, 13, 19

Since death came through a man, the resurrection of the dead comes also through a man. For as in Adam all die, so in Christ all will be made alive.

I Corinthians 15:21-22

3. THE TWO KINGDOMS²⁵

This battle entails two different **kingdoms**: (1) The Kingdom of Light and (2) the kingdom of darkness. The two SPIRITUAL kingdoms are locked in moral combat for the souls of people.

The God of heaven will set up a kingdom that will never be destroyed.... It will crush all those kingdoms and bring them to an end, but it will itself endure forever.

Daniel 2:44

The Biblical world view dimension can be expressed in one statement: present reality exists in a state of cosmic-earthly conflict or Spiritual Warfare. The Kingdom of God and the Kingdom of evil supernaturalism are engaged in fierce conflict one against the other. Absolute dualism affirms that ultimate reality is eternally dualistic, that evil and good have existed and always evil exist.

²⁵ Selected Bibliography: Berkhof, Lious (1951) *The Kingdom of God*. Grand Rapids; Eerdmans, Bright, John (1953) *The Kingdom of God*. Nashville; Abingdon, Bushwell J.O, Jr., (1963) *A Systematic Theology of the Christian Religion*, Grand Rapids; Eerdmans, II, 346-361, Chafer, L.S (1947) *Systematic Theology*, Dallas; Dallas Seminary Press, Ladd George E (1952) *Crucial Questions About the Kingdom of God*, Grand Rapids; Eerdmans, *The Gospel of the Kingdom*, Grand Rapids; Eerdmans, 1959; *Jesus and the Kingdom*, New York: Harper and Row, 1964. McClain Alva J(1968) *The Greatness of the Kingdom*. Chicago; Moody, Peters George (1952) *The Theocratic Kingdom*, 3 vols., Grand Rapids; Kregel,. Walvoord John F (1959) *The Millennial Kingdom*, Findlay; Dunham.

Biblical dualism declares a modified dualism: present reality exists in a state of dualism, but such was not so in the beginning nor will it be so in the future. Dualism is presently a reality.

3.1 CONFLICT BETWEEN LIGHT AND DARKNESS

Since the fall, man have a depraved nature. The English word for “*total depravity*” is “*perverted or crooked*” and means, “*not standing the test of pleasing God*” (Romans 1:28). This corruption is born into every human being and implies that there is nothing good in any person on which basis we can earn our own righteous before God. When man fell, the whole person was depraved – body, soul and spirit. Because of this, man is born as a sinner and within the Kingdom of Satan.

Through sin and disobedience to God, the first human beings transferred their authority to Satan. Satan can thus influence and rule the world, but can only do it to the degree that man chooses to sin. Jesus restored the Christian’s authority on the Cross and man has the authority and the responsibility to choose his destination.

The spiritual world affects, transforms, modifies, rules and structures the natural world. What occurs in the spiritual world is going to determine the history of the natural world.

“In him was life; and the life was the light of men. And the light shineth in darkness; and the darkness comprehended it not.”

John 1:4-5

The moment a person is regenerated by the seed of the incorruptible Word of God, God converts the person from the Kingdom of Darkness to the Kingdom of Light.

“Being born again, not of corruptible seed, but of incorruptible, by the word of God, which liveth and abideth for ever.”

I Peter 1:23

This process encompasses two stages although God originally ordained it to be one action, but somehow do many believers experience it as two indistinct experiences: (1) the renewal of a person's heart; and (2) the filling of the renewed heart with God's Holy Spirit.

“A new heart also will I give you, and a new spirit will I put within you: and I will take away the stony heart out of your flesh, and I will give you an heart of flesh. And I will put my spirit within you, and cause you to walk in my statutes, and ye shall keep my judgments, and do them.”

Ezekiel 26:36

The question arises: Jesus is the light in us, then why doesn't the darkness (the structures of sin, iniquity / evil) around a believer not disappear immediately?

This happens because ***the light of Jesus Christ can be veiled*** in a believer heart and mind in some cases, such as:

- Where veils were built into the mind (mental structures) or the heart (emotional bondage) of a person by the wrongdoings of the iniquity/evil of other people.
- Where mental structures was formed through wrong habits or upbringing.

In such cases, a solid shell could surround the light and the soul of a person should be transformed by a growth process called sanctification. Deception can play a very great part in backsliding, a carnal lifestyle and even the falling away of such a person.

My people are destroyed for lack of knowledge: because thou hast rejected knowledge, I will also reject thee, that thou shalt be no priest to me: seeing thou hast forgotten the law of thy God, I will also forget thy children.

Hosea 4:6

The following obstacles apprehend the ***unveiling of the structures*** of darkness: (1) The breaking down of the inner man is necessary; and (2) Understanding the principles that produce the manifestation of the light and of the Kingdom of God are needed.

The breaking down of all such obstacles will be removed when we encounter the true light of His face. ***In His Light, we will be changed*** and no darkness can prevail. THIS is the highest form of Spiritual Warfare. The believer should become illuminated in the knowledge of God's GLORY. Christ with all His authority and glory lives within the believer. There is a level of light related to God's Glory that the believer can manifest that the world will desire.

“Arise, shine; for thy light is come, and the glory of the LORD is risen upon thee. For, behold, the darkness shall cover the earth, and gross darkness the people: but the LORD shall arise upon thee, and his glory shall be seen upon thee. And the Gentiles shall come to thy light, and kings to the brightness of thy rising.”

Isaiah 6:1-3

Believers are transformed in Christ, according to the measure that they look at Him and according to the measure, that Christ reveals Himself to the person. The revelation of Christ in the believer is directly linked to the level of light in which he/she move. There are different levels of revelations of God in the hearts of His people.

But if our GOSPEL be hide, it is hide to them that are lost: In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

II Corinthians 4:3-4

Just as Jesus – as the King of the Kingdom – came to unite His heavenly Kingdom with the earth and establish His Kingdom of righteousness, in the hearts of His people, just so does Satan. The imitator and leader of the ***kingdom of darkness***, trying to unite his kingdom with the earth, and establishing his kingdom, being rebellious of iniquity and evil in the hearts of men and women.

Anna Mendez-Ferrell wrote: *“Both Kingdoms function by designs established in the spiritual world and manifested in our lives. God's designs originate in heavenly places and Satan's designs come from infernal place. Understanding these designs is crucial to comprehend why certain things happens on earth.*

The Bible refers to those who are **imprisoned by sin** and who should be **snatched from the fire of hell**.²⁶ The devil has made plans in the kingdom of darkness against each believer and his servants of the underworld are establishing it through curses and witchcraft. A sorcerer needs something that represents the person or projects to be harmed. Whatever the witch does on earth, the devil reproduces in hell and vice versa. From hell, the demons keep the design alive so that it manifests in the life of the person.²⁷

Jesus came to preach a glorious Gospel, a Gospel that can transform and change lives, and a Gospel that is the news of His Great Power and of His Kingdom coming amongst us. The religious Babylonian system aborts the glory of the Gospel and changes it into a system that befits mankind. The Sermon on the Mount is the manifestation of the Kingdom. According to the Merriam-Webster Dictionary online, a **manifesto** is a written statement declaring publically the intentions, motive or vies of its issuer.²⁸ The Sermon on the Mount was a message for those who were waiting and expecting the Kingdom of God. Jesus talked about the righteousness of the Kingdom in the Sermon on the Mount (Matthew 5-7).

BOX 4: THE CONTRAST BETWEEN THE TWO KINGDOMS	
THE KINGDOM OF SATAN	THE KINGDOM OF GOD
A Kingdom of Darkness	A Kingdom of Light
A Kingdom of Sin and unrighteousness	A Kingdom of Holiness and Righteousness
A Kingdom of Sickness and Disease	A kingdom of Healing and Heath
A Kingdom of Deception	A kingdom of Truth
A Kingdom of Sorrow and Death	A kingdom of Joy and Life

²⁶ Jude 1:23a.

²⁷ Méndez-Ferrell (2010) Regions of Captivity. Shippensburg, PA: Destiny Image Publishers, p.19.

²⁸ Merriam-Webster Online Dictionary: “manifesto”.
(<http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/ambassador>)

4. SECTION A: THE KINGDOM OF SATAN

Specialized research by Prof Dr Brand has revealed the hierarchy of Satan. The hierarchy is under the headship of Satan and it is to be revealed at the time of the reign of the Anti-Christ.

For our struggle is... against the rulers, against the authorities, against the powers of this dark world and against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavenly realms.

Ephesians 2:2; 6:12

Satan as a person needs no introduction, since the Bible exposes him explicitly for what he is, namely the enemy of God and man. His malignant hatred and antagonism is primary directed against the Triune God and secondly directed against the true seed of Jesus Christ, which in union with Him will bruise the Serpents head. Satan's aim is to delay the birth and growth of the holy seed. To this end, he will encourage any widespread superficial work for God, knowing it will not really touch his Kingdom nor hasten the full birth into the throne-life of the conquering seed of Christ.

4.1 THE HIERARCHY OF SATAN

The book of Ephesians reveals that the kingdom of darkness exists using the following structures, with different levels of demonic power in the heavenly regions: (1) Principalities, (2) Powers (3) Rulers of darkness, (4) hosts of wickedness in high places; (5) Thrones; (6) Dominions; and (7) Demons.

For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.

Ephesians 6:12

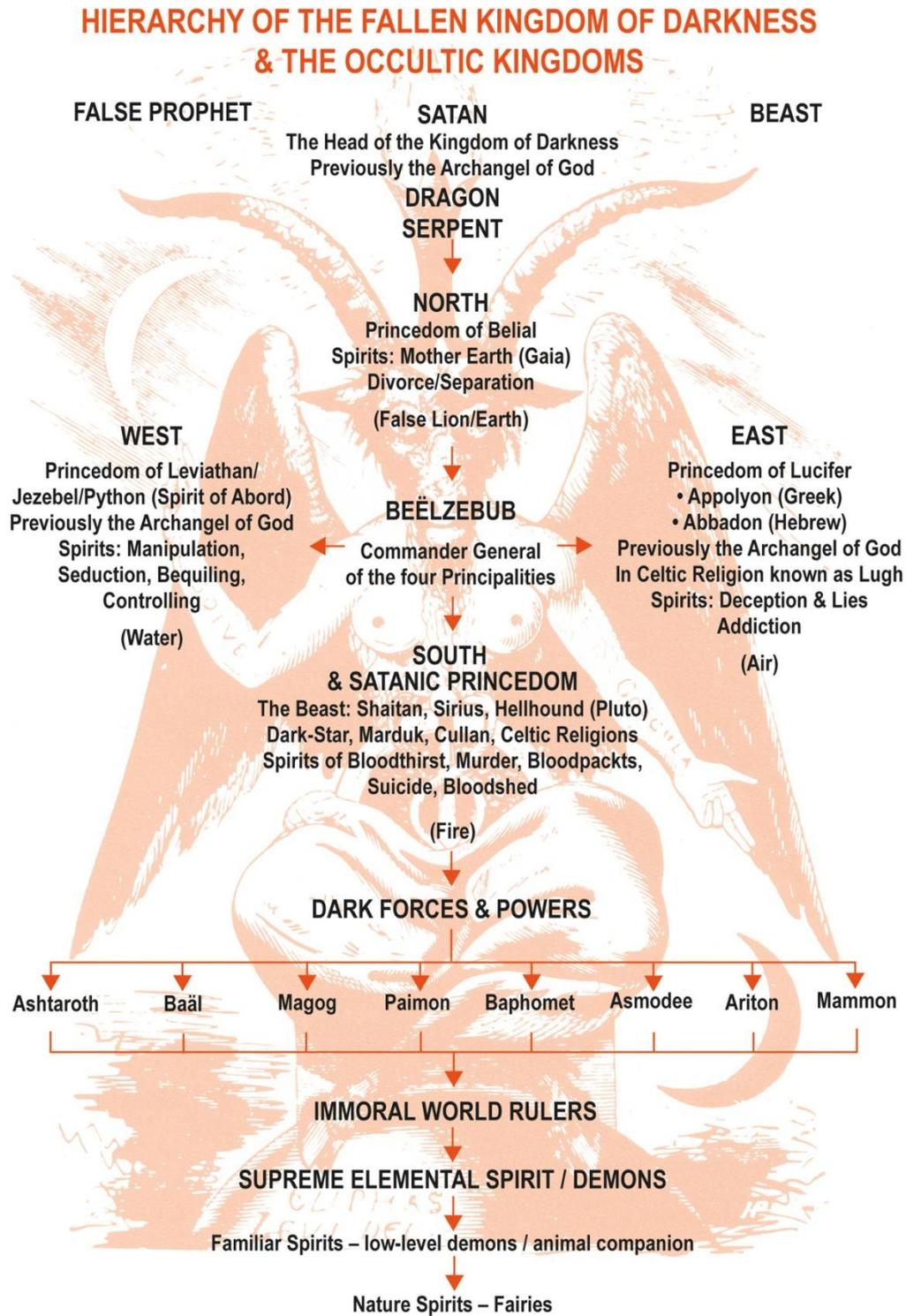


TABLE 3. HIERARCHY OF THE FALLEN KINGDOM OF DARKNESS AND THE OCCULT

4.2 SATAN IN CONTEXT

Satan is not omniscient, omnipotent or infinite in any way. Satan as the ‘prince of the power of the air’ and as chief of the demon forces, does command a vast host of demons who are so numerous as to make Satan’s power and presence seem to be ever-present and everywhere. Due to his limitations, the person of Satan cannot personally tempt each believer.

4.1.1 THE “UNHOLY / SATANIC TRINITY”

Satan is the “**god of this World**” and he aims to “*ape*” the true Triune God. The *mystery of Godliness* is God manifested in the flesh and the *mystery of iniquity* is Satan manifested in the flesh. Satan will see to it that the Anti-Christ has all that Christ has. Christ has a Church – the “*Ecclesia*”, the Anti-Christ will have a church, the Synagogue of Satan (Revelation 2:9; 3:9). Christ will have a Bride – the Church (Ephesians 5:25-27) and the Anti-Christ will have a bride, the “*Mystery Harlot Church*” (Revelations 17:1-16). The Godhead is a Trinity, Father, Son and Holy Spirit and Satan proposes as the “*god of this age*” – to manifest himself as a “*Trinity*” and as such it will be an “**unholy or Satanic Trinity**”.

Specialized research of Larkin has revealed Satan’s counterfeit Trinity.²⁹ The members of it include the following: the Dragon – the “*Anti-God*”, the Beast – the “*Anti-Christ*” and the False Prophet – “*the Anti-Spirit*”. Jesus Christ differentiate between false Christ’s and false Prophets (Matthew 24:24). The First Beast (the Anti-Christ) and the Second Beast (the false Prophet) are cast alive into the “*Lake of Fire*”. The fact that all three will be cast into the “*Lake of Fire*” as seen in Revelation 20:10 is proof that they together form the “*Satanic Trinity*”.

²⁹ Larkin, Clarence (1918) *Dispensational Truth*. Glenside, Pa: Rev. Clarence Larkin Est., pp.111, 115, 123-125.

- ***The Dragon / Serpent / Satan – “the Anti-God”*** is revealed in Revelation 20: 1-3 as a person. He has many other names: Devil, Beelzebub, Adversary, etc. He is revealed as the Prince of the Powers of the Air as seen in Ephesians 2:2 or the “god of this world in Corinthians 4:4. See Chapter Three.
- ***The Beast (out of the earth) / Lucifer / the King of Babylon / Lucifer / the man of Perdition - the “Anti-Christ”*** as seen in Revelation . The Anti-Christ will be the King over the Kingdom of Darkness. The Apostolic Church believed that the Anti-Christ would be a person who will exalt himself and claim to be God (II Thessalonians 2:7; I John 4:3). Judaism denied that Jesus Christ is the son of God, but the Roman Catholic Church always confesses a “Triune God”. Larkin’s notes that it Anti-Christ is not the “Papal system / Romans Catholic Church” but that this system will be the seat of the Anti-Christ. The Beast has a dual meaning – the revived Roman Empire coming from the sea, while the Anti-Christ will come up from the earth (Revelation 13). Isaiah 14:4-17 gives a description of the King of Babylon, the Anti-Christ called Lucifer with its evil pattern forming prideful character. Man has the strange weakness to have some visible God to worship. The image of the Beast is the Anti-Christ.
- ***The False Prophet / the Second Beast / the Beast coming out of the Sea – the “Anti-Spirit”***. The false Prophet (the Anti-Spirit) do not exalts himself, but exalts the first Beast (the Anti-Christ). He cause the earth and its dwellers to worship the first Beast (the Anti-Christ). The False Prophet has power *to give live* and in this he imitates the Holy Spirit. As Christ’s followers are sealed by the Holy Spirit until the day of Redemption, the followers of the Anti-Christ is sealed by the False Prophet until the day of Perdition (Revelation 13:17). The False prophet will be a “*miracle worker*” and will bring *fire* down from heaven. The False Prophet will have the people make an “*image of the Beast*” for the purpose of worship and he will have the power to give life to this image – the image will thus be a living, speaking automaton. The False Prophet will cause all – great and small, rich and poor, free and bond – to receive “a mark” in their right hand or in their forehead – and no one will buy or sell unless they has it.

Those who will not bow before the image of the Beast will be threaten to be killed. This mark will be the brand of hell! God will however, as in Daniel 3:1-30 interpose for those who refuse to bow down and worship the “*image of the Beast*”.

Amanda Buys give relevant information on the Babylonian system:³⁰ “In the Mysteries of Babylon, **Nimrod** established the worship of Satan and his demons. The people worshipped Nimrod as Marduck – the Bull Calf of the Sun – the god of magic and incantations, god of the agricultural people. Nimrod was also known as the Bull-Horned One and his wife Semiramis was known as the queen of Heaven, the mother of the gods, or the earth goddess. Together with Tammuz, they formed the “**unholy trinity**” in the Babylonian mysteries with Tammuz as the reincarnation of Nimrod.

A deceptive legend derives stating that Tammuz was the promised “**seed of the woman**” who would deliver humankind. He was traditional worshipped by pagans through the legend that the winter solstice is the sun dying which is being reborn on the 25 December during Christmas celebrations.

The symbol of the snake or dragon is associated with Nimrod – and the caduceus or rod of Asclepius (Greek god of medicine and healing), or the winged staff with two snakes wrapped around it is associated with the Greek god Hermes, as the symbol of medicine based upon the astrological principle of using planets and stars to heal the sick.

The **Mesopotamians** as well as the **Freemason** worship are founded on the Mysteries of the Egyptian Isis, the goddess-mother, wife of Osiris. In the end, God gave the people into the hands of the Babylonians as instruments of justice against their specific sins that Judah committed – in particular the sin of **idolatry**. Jeremiah detailed this sin and revealed the great distress and pain in God’s heart at the suffering of His people when this judgment came upon them.

³⁰ Buys, Amanda (2012) *Overcoming Jezebel, Athaliah & Belial in the heavenlies: Renunciation for Babylon* – Sarah Victor. Gauteng, SA: Self-Published, pp.139-165. (www.kanaanministires.org)

God has the same distress and agony about the times to come. Jeremiah is calling believers to the passion and intimacy of our first love for HIM.

4.1.2 THE ENEMY OF GOD AND MEN EXPOSED FROM A BIBLICAL PERSPECTIVE

The Lord gave his disciples the instruction to live a holy life. Satan and his followers resist our efforts to comply. They seek to thwart the will of God on earth.

And they worshipped the DRAGON which gave power unto the beast: and they worshipped the beast, saying, Who is like unto the beast? who is able to make war with him? And all that dwell upon the earth shall worship him, whose names are not written in the book of life of the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world.

Revelations 13:4, 8

An excellence exposition of Prof Dr Brand reveals the Dragon as follows: Consider the above-mentioned Scripture from the Christian Bible, several concepts become known.

Firstly, the Being of God in the person of the Lamb – that is Jesus Christ, the Son of God, is mentioned as well as the being of the dragon, which is SATAN, in relevance to warfare, worship and all dwellers upon the earth, which presents the whole of humankind. Like God the Father who gave power to the Son, the **Dragon (SATAN)** gives power to the Beast. The Deceiver (false god) is always counterfeiting, stealing and perverting from the One and Only God and His Kingdom.

The **main strategy of SATAN** is to lure people into false gods, idolatry and self-worship – a new religion called the One-World-Religion. The New Age religions are the most prominent of them. Due to his sin of rebellion, Satan lost his rulership over the planets he resided over and lost his place in heaven as a high-ranking Cherub.

Secret Societies and Occult groups are all established to worship Satan. Making oaths to Satan allows the demonic to possess those in them and when they are physically dead, Satan will possess their souls forever in Hell.

In the meantime, on earth, they can be replaced (possessed) by “**demons**” to take over their bodies.³¹ Demons play a prevalent role, not only controlling and influencing the lives of individuals and small groups, but are also diligently at work in institutions and the governments as well.

The thief cometh not, but for to steal, and to kill, and to destroy: I am come that they might have life, and that they might have it more abundantly.

John 10:10

During the dawning of the New Age conference in 1987, Arguelles stated: We are almost at the completion stage of bringing all the thousands of New Age Groups, organization and churches together.³²

With Christ's supreme act on the cross, the Principalities and Power's of Satan were dismantled.³³ He confronted the prince of darkness; demolished Satan's power over death and victors over Satan's throne.³⁴ When God's all-powerful Holy Spirit began to shake hell and entered Jesus Christ's dead body, the wonder of life in that tomb shook the foundations of the Principalities and Powers of hell. Hell could not hold Him, Death could not hold Him, Jesus Christ rose having won our victory! The heaven saw it, the Father saw it and the Devil saw it, heard it, felt it and experienced it at the very core of his being.

For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

I John 3:8

³¹ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2005) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence pertaining to the Structures and Strategies to Destruct Christianity-Involving the Theodicy of Darkness. Waterkloof, Pretoria: Un-Published, pp.456-457.

³² Jose Arguelles, interviewed by John-Alexis Viereck, Meditation, Summer 1987, VOL II, No 3.3, pp.6-19. Also see Antero Alli, “A Post-Conference Interview with Jose Arguelles,” Magical Blend, Issue 18, 1988, pp.17-20.

³³ Luke 10:18.

³⁴ I John 1:8.

The Devil has not the authority – Jesus has the authority – over everything on earth. Jesus has the power over sickness, over adultery that is breaking your homes, over every problem that exists. Satan’s objective is to make us discouraged. Jesus gave His Church the power to undo the works of the Devil.

He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned. And these signs shall follow them that believe; In my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues. They shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover.

Mark 16:16-18

Tozer justly argues about the born-again Christian: He will recognize the danger in which he lives and will know what to do about it, but he will practice the presence of God and never will allow himself to become devil-conscious.³⁵ The existence of Satan as a person, Satanology, and Demonology as well as his hierarchy and the functioning of the kingdom of darkness is covered in a previous study and therefore this thesis shall not cover this area, but focus only on relevant expositions.³⁶

Genesis 3:1-19 shows how the ***Old Serpent / Satan / the Dragon*** took center stage in the familiar story of *the fall* of man, which occurred sometime after Satan’s own downfall. As chief of all created beings, he was set in the government of God as ruler over the entire creation of God. God has placed him in this rulership position and here he still rules as prince – this Office has not yet been taken from him – although it became extremely perverted. It will only happen at the final triumph of Christ and His Church at the scene of Satan’s final defeat.

The Church has always interpreted the two names, Satan and Lucifer, as belonging to the same person and entity.

³⁵ Tozer, A.W. *Born After Midnight*. Harrisburg: Christian Publishers, p.43.

³⁶ De Lange, Susanna Francina Maria (2010) *An Exposition of Biblical Spiritual Warfare Pertaining to Deception of the Uninformed Christian as Satan’s Main Objective*, Chapter Two. Brits, Gauteng: Un-Published, pp.129-217.

The Bible seems to indicate, especially in Isaiah, that these two names belong to two different incarnations of the same person – satanic and fallen.³⁷

Chapter 14 of Isaiah identifies that Lucifer is the king of Babylon – also known as the Anti-Christ. They deem to be the same person. Lucifer the son of the morning is portrayed as a man. As such – it is most probably that the Anti-Christ probably will be a Nephilim.

An excellent exegeses of Brand reveals that Satan is the force behind the anti-Christ, the Beast and Lucifer the King of Babyon.

How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! how art thou cut down to the ground, which didst weaken the nations! For thou hast said in thine heart, I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God: I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north: I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the most High. Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit... Is this the man that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms.

Isaiah 14:12-16

Guenther argues that, the Biblical name of the Anti-Christ is Lucifer, King of Babylon and The Beast. When one puts all the pieces together, one begins to see that much of what is called *the (great now conspiracy)* and its true secret, was foretold in the Bible by the prophets of old.³⁸ The church has always interpreted the two names, Satan and Lucifer, as belonging to the same person and entity. The Bible seems to indicate, especially in Isaiah, that these two names belong to two different incarnations of the same person – satanic and fallen.

And there was war in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels. And there was war in heaven:

³⁷ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2006) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence pertaining to the Structures and Strategies to destruct Christianity: Involving the Theodicy of Darkness (Three volumes), Waterkloof, Pretoria: Un-Published, p. 1723.

³⁸ Guenther, p.62. (<http://www25.brinkster.com/lowerstroom/watchers/fallen.html>)

Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels, And prevailed not; neither was their place found any more in heaven. And the great dragon was cast out, that OLD SERPENT, called the DEVIL, and SATAN, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.

Revelations 12:6-9 (emphasis added)

Chapter 14 of Isaiah identifies that **Lucifer is the king of Babylon** – also known as the **Anti-Christ / The Beast**. They are the same person. Lucifer the son of the morning is portrayed as a man. As such – it is most probably that **the Anti-Christ will be a NEPHILIM**.³⁹

How art thou fallen from heaven, O LUCIFER, son of the morning! how art thou cut down to the ground, which didst weaken the nations! For thou hast said in thine heart, I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God: I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north: I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the most High. Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit. They that see thee shall narrowly look upon thee, and consider thee, saying, Is this the man that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms.

Isaiah 14:12-16

About the text in Ezekiel 28 many hold that this passage refers to two persons, the first the King of Babylon and the second Satan – the invisible force behind the human king.

Ryrie evaluates these views and concludes: Likely the truth includes that the fall of the King of Babylon is an antitype of the previous fall of Satan and a type of the future fall of the Anti-Christ.⁴⁰

Delitzsch says it concisely: A retrospective glance is now cast at the self-deification of the King of Babylon, in which he was the antitype of the devil and the type of the Anti-Christ.⁴¹

³⁹ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2005) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence pertaining to the Structures and Strategies to destruct Christianity: Involving the Theodicy of Darkness (Three volumes). Pretoria, Gauteng: Un-Published, p. 1723.

⁴⁰ Ryrie, CC (1999) Basic Theology, A Popular Systematic Guide to Understanding Biblical Truth, p.144.

According to John Fok, Isaiah 14:4-11 is referring to a future King of Babylon, or the coming of the Anti-Christ is associated with Babylon, however, there seems also to be an inclusion of Satan in this passage to retrace Satan's sin as analogous with the Anti-Christ's character and actions in the future.⁴²

Brand continues to concur that the passage transcends anything that can be said of an earthly king and has been understood from earliest times to **also** refer to Satan's fall as described in the Scripture of Luke 10:18.⁴³

Guenther argues that, the Biblical name of the Anti-Christ is Lucifer, King of Babylon and The Beast. When one puts all the pieces together, it is clear to see that much of what is called *the great now conspiracy* and its true secret, was foretold in the Bible by the prophets of old.⁴⁴

4.2.3 THE FIERY SERPENT, THE NACHASH

The word **SERPENT** as used in Genesis 3:1 is from the Hebrew word **nachach** (#5175),⁴⁵ meaning to "**shine or a shining one**". The Strong Concordance refers to the word (**nachas**), meaning "**the name of two persons apparently non-Israelite**". It also means according to (#5175) "**a snake**" (*from its hiss*); "**serpent**". From the (#5172) it means to "**hiss, i.e. whisper a (magic) spell; and generally to predict,**⁴⁶ **- enchanter, learn by experience, and diligently observe**".

⁴¹ Delitzsch, Franz (1875) *Biblical Commentary on the Prophecies of Isaiah*. Edinburgh: T & T Clark, 1:312.

⁴² Fok, John *SATAN: Our Adversary*. Online SATANology...

⁴³ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2005) PhD: *Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence pertaining to the Structures and Strategies to destruct Christianity: Involving the Theodicy of Darkness* (Three volumes). Pretoria, Gauteng: Un-Published, p. 519.

⁴⁴ Guenther, p.62. (<http://www25.brinkster.com/lowerstroom/watchers/fallen.html>)

⁴⁵ Strong, James (1890) *Strong's Exhaustive Concordance of the Bible*, Hendrickson Publishers. Online edition. (www.corsswalk.com)

⁴⁶ The word **prognosticates** means the following: 1. To foretell or predict, esp. from signs or indications. 2. To indicate beforehand. (Second College Edition, *New World Dictionary of the American Language*, p. 1135). The word "**nachach**" is linked to foretell things. Or its linked to witchcraft (whisper a magic spell) and humanism. It is linked to anything other than the Word of God.

From the different meanings, it is clear that the word **serpent**, does not only involve a physical snake, but it could either mean **evil** or **violent men**.⁴⁷ It appears that this allegory also implies the enemies of Israel – which involves nations.⁴⁸ Isaiah 14:29 and 30:6 however, refer to *fiery flying serpents*.

Now the SERPENT was more subtle than any beast of the field which the LORD God had made. And he said unto the woman...

Genesis 3:1-7 (emphasis added)

The word serpent used in Genesis 3:1 is from the Hebrew word [**nachash**] meaning *to shine* or a *shining one*. In Appendix 9 of the Companion Bible we find the following explanation: In the same way Seraph, in Isaiah 6:2, means a burning one and because the serpents mentioned in Numbers 21 were burning, in the poison in their bite, they were called Seraphim, or Seraphs. The Lord said unto Moses, “**Make thee a fiery serpent** (Numeric 21:8)”, He said, “**Make thee a Seraph**”, and in obeying this command, we read in Numbers 21:9, Moses made a Nachash of brasses. Nachash is thus used as being interchangeable with Seraphs.

The construal of Prof Dr Connie Brand is representative of the view of this thesis: If the word “**Seraph**” is used for a “**serpent**”, because its bite was burning, and the word is also used for a **celestial or spiritual being** (a burning one), why should the word “**Nachash**” not be used for a “**serpent**”, because its appearance was shining and also be used for a celestial or spirit-being (a shining one)?⁴⁹

No sooner had God created Adam and Eve that the fiery serpent, the “**Nachash**”, began to twist God’s words with subtle language until he had enlisted Adam and Eve into naïve involvement with his evil plan. Eve was not talking to a snake. She was speaking to a bright shining upright being who was Serpentine in appearance and who was trying to bewitch her with lies (a being called else-where a Fallen Watcher).

⁴⁷ Psalms 140:1-3; Isaiah 27:1, Jeremiah 8:17.

⁴⁸ Amos 9:3; Isaiah 14:29.

⁴⁹ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2005) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence pertaining to the Structures and Strategies to destruct Christianity: Involving the Theodicy of Darkness (Three volumes). Pretoria, Gauteng: Self-Published, p.621.

The comment by Clifton A. Emahiser that could be taken as imperative to every Bible student is that the Serpent in Genesis 3:15 was Satan, however, not every scholar acknowledges that he had appeared to Eve as a real “**angel of light**”. The serpent had carried on dialogue, had quoted and misquoted Scripture and employed all the characteristics of a very intelligent being.⁵⁰

4.2.4 SATAN AND THE FIRST REBELLION

Most people are familiar with the rebellion of Satan wanting to be God and to be worshiped as God. The rebellion of Satan, who leads one-third of the angels to try to usurp God’s authority and the rebellion of the Watchers, is two separated events.⁵¹ This thesis asserts that Satan’s sin was dualistic in nature: **iniquity**⁵² originated in the heart of this once perfect arc angel, gave birth to **sexual lust**.⁵³

Satan’s “**pride**” leads to “**greed/envious lust**” and the greed leads to “**self-will**”.⁵⁴ Genesis 3:15 is the foundation of all Messianic promises that follow. The promise of this text is addressed to the Serpent as a part of judgment passed on to the enemy of God and man.

A crucial point to note is that Genesis 3:15 mentions that both the serpent and the women were to have “**seed**” and a “**seed line**”.⁵⁵ Modern Theology teaches that the “**seed of the woman**” was **the promised Messiah** –Jesus Christ – but fails to admit that the serpent also had a literal progeny.

⁵⁰ Emahiser, Clifton A. The Two Seeds of Genesis 3:15.

(http://www.childrenofyahweh.com/Other%20Reading/two_seeds.htm)

⁵¹ Shriner, Sherry (2005) Bible Codes Revealed, The Coming UFO Invasion. USA: Universe, p.35.

⁵² **Definition: Iniquity** means perversity, evil, to make crooked, to pervert and faulty. See Romans 1.

⁵³ Romans 1:25-32.

⁵⁴ Luke 10:18; Isaiah 47:8; revelations 12:9.

⁵⁵ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2006) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence pertaining to the Structures and Strategies to destruct Christianity: Involving the Theodicy of Darkness (Three volumes). Pretoria, Gauteng: Un-Published, p.629.

Bible Scholars admit that the “**seed of the woman**” include the “**seed-line**” through which Jesus Christ was incarnated into a flesh body, but they still deny that Satan or the serpent could have a literal “**seed-line**”. This influential interpretation made by many Church Fathers is one reason why the book of Enoch was cast out of *the canon*.⁵⁶

Denominational churches and most Biblical Scholars have spiritualized the literal truth of this text, divorcing themselves from the reality taught therein. Not until the Church is ready to examine this fact, acknowledging the place enmity plays between the opposing seed-lines, can the believer ever come to the knowledge of the truth.

- The **Seed of the Serpent** constitutes a literal, flesh and blood people who are to claim the dominion of this earth to the glory of Satan and the enshrinement of everything that is anti-Christian in thought, word and deed.
- Opposing to the seed of the serpent is the **Seed of the Women** – out of which originates Jesus Christ (Yehshua).

Today this conflict between the two opposing factions of Genesis 3:15 is reaching the grand finale of “**the End-Time**”.⁵⁷

Stephen Quale a researcher on ancient supernatural hybrids notes that because the Bible is the most accurate record of the past, has condensed the *pre-Adamic* period into one short verse, at first glance it would appear hopeless to anticipate what the earth was like before Adam. However, this is not entirely true. There are clues scattered throughout the Bible and by piecing theses together and then employed Archeology, Paleontology and the seeds of truth in Mythology, a picture of the past can be built.⁵⁸

⁵⁶ Link, Luther (1996) *The Devil*. New York: Harry N. Abrams, Inc., Publishers, pp. 28-29.

⁵⁷ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2006) PhD: *Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence pertaining to the Structures and Strategies to destruct Christianity: Involving the Theodicy of Darkness* (Three volumes). Pretoria, Gauteng: Un-Published, p.612.

⁵⁸ Quayle, Stephen (2008) *Giants: Master Builders of Prehistoric and Ancient Civilizations*. Bozeman, MT: End Time Thunder Publishers, p. 25.

PRINCIPALITIES / PRINCES

as seen in Occultism & Egyptian Mythology

PRINCIPALITY	DIRECTION	AREA	GOD'S or GODDESSES	EGYPTIAN MYTHOLOGY
BELIAL	(False) LION PRINCE of the NORTH	ON THE EARTH	MOON, EARTH MOTHER GODS (Buto, Shu, Mehueret, Isis)	Mesthap/Hap/ Hapi – with an Ape head
APPOLLYON ABBADDON	LUCIFERIC PRINCE of the EAST	IN THE AIR (In Celtic known as Lugh)	SUN-GOD (Bast, Min, Osiris, Ra)	Taumutef/ Duamutef – with a Jackal head
THE BEAST HELLHOUND	SATANIC PRINCE of the SOUTH	UNDER THE EARTH (The Fire Kingdom)	TERROR, WAR, BATTLE GODS (Nekhebet. Sekhmet)	Akeset/Amset/ Imsety with a Human Head
LEVIATHAN	SERPENT or DRAGON PRINCE of the WEST	IN THE WATER	BLOODLUST, UNDERWORLD, DESTRUCTION GODS (Ament, Hathor, Neith, Anubis, Temu, Sebek Nephthys)	Qebhsennuf/ Qebhsmuf – with a Hawk Head

TABLE 4: PRINCIPALITIES / PRINCES

4.3 FOUR PRINCIPALITIES FUNCTIONING UNDER SATAN'S GENERAL, BEËLSEBUB

Satan's hierarchy work in segments in the world and is better than the best human military army. Principalities have broader area of influence in Satan's Kingdom, than other Spirits. Satan has specific battle plans for each geographic area and for each group of people. He knows his enemy (the church), the battleground, while he is well prepared for this battle. The Principalities are second-in-charge to Satan and hand their instructions over to the Power and Rulers of Darkness (Spiritual and Physical Entities). The rulers hand it over to the Spiritual-wickedness-in-high-places, from where it is taken send to the Familiar and Servant Spirits, also known as evil spirits.⁵⁹

Some Scholars belief that there is an intermediary – a so-called General over the Four Princes of Darkness — called Beëlzebub (Matthews 10:25; Matthews 12:24; Matthew 12:27; Mark 3:22; Luke 11:15). Beëlzebub is functioning between the *Principalities* and Satan. Other Scholars question the existence of a second-in-charge, and reckon that Satan gives his own commands to the Principalities.

A Student is not above his teacher, nor is a servant above his master. It is enough for the student to be like his teacher, and the servant like his master. It the head of the house has been called Beëlzebub, how much more the members of the household!

Matthews 10:25

Prof Dr Brand notes that Beëlzebub as the General over the princes is relevant in "*Bloodline-Deliverance*". The victim should be cut loose from the Top of the Hierarchy, down to the lowest level, where generational involvement in the Occult was indicated (either in Secret Societies or in Satanism).

⁵⁹ Brand, Connie MJ Dr (2006) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published, pp. 1505-1507.

The Principalities under Beëlzebub could be seen as Four Satanic Prince whom have the vision to steal, kill and destroy (John 10:10).⁶⁰ These mighty Principalities, who are actually power demons, control the whole world for Satan in four separate areas. The princes give instructions to millions of evil beings (spiritual and human followers of Satan) through “evil gangs” (lesser demons).⁶¹

Beëlzebub is the head of everything that flies in the spiritual world and control them – including Witches and Wizards (who flies by night). He is a specialist in killing and destruction – the general of the blood-sacrifices to Satan.

Beëlzebub uses his ‘agents’ to cause all types of accidents (from car-accidents to disasters), after which the blood is taken to the Spiritual Witch Coven and finally to Satan as a blood-sacrifice. Everyone who is in the higher hierarchy lives from blood only.

The projection Image of Beëlzebub is the so-called **winged horse**. Sometimes Beelzebub is seen projecting the image of the dragon, sending “powers” toward Christians, which confuses them. Beelzebub is roaring his “war-cry” of anger (Satanic Tongues).⁶²

A Student is not above his teacher, nor is a servant above his master. It is enough for the student to be like his teacher, and the servant like his master. It the head of the house has been called Beëlzebub, how much more the members of the household!

Matthews 10:25

But the Pharisees said: ‘It is by the prince of demons that he drives our demons.’

Matthews 9:34

⁶⁰ Brand, Connie MJ Dr (2006) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published, pp. 1505-1507.

⁶¹ Ibid, p. 1508.

⁶² Ibid, p. 1533.

4.3.1 PRINCE OF THE NORTH: BELIAL – THE FALSE LION

The geographic spiritual area where the Northern Kingdom of Satan's headquarters is situated in Moscow: Soviet Russia:⁶³

- “The Main Goal Of Belial Is To Make Everyone And Everything Worthless”: He Destroys Christian Religion, Christian Faith, Spiritual Maturity, Marriages, Relationships And Finances. This Principality Works With Continuous Cold War.⁶⁴
- Belial Creates False Belief Systems As Strongholds Of The Mind And Emotions (causing rage and other emotional strongholds), from where he and other demonic powers can rule the person's life.
- Belial Binds The Minds Of People. He Is Mixing The Truth And The Lie – light and darkness, right and wrong, good and bad. He is also mixing righteousness and sin, creating grey areas with no absolutes.⁶⁵ He is trying to kill the reality of the truth of Jesus Christ for the person. His ultimate goal with the victim is to complete destruction of the intellect, using an ancient power.⁶⁶
- This entity works in the minds and sub-consciousness of people – invading their thoughts and dreams – through **Ctuluh**, the dream master. Turners-and-twisters are used to disrupt logical thought patterns. Such a victim should be led to repentance and truth by the Holy Spirit. When a Christian experience resistance, the devil should be resisted (James 4:7). *“In the process the victim becomes confused between illusionary visions and reality, struggling against un-controlling thoughts, megalomania, fantasy spells and the impulse of the victim to retreat into this unreal world, thus losing touch with the real world – existing in a grey nothingness.”*⁶⁷

⁶³ Brand, Connie MJ Dr (2006) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published, pp. 1526-1429.

⁶⁴ Ibid, pp. 1526-1427.

⁶⁵ Ibid, p. 1527.

⁶⁶ Ibid, p.1427.

⁶⁷ Ibid, p. 1528.

When a person falls into this trap of Satan, it is the first step of killing the truth for such a person. Note that the Lord Jesus Christ is the truth!

- Belial Is The Spirit Behind The Occult And All Mystical And Secret Societies: He is therefore behind magical arts, behind Meta- Physics and behind astral projections.⁶⁸ The Egyptian Pharaohs got their powers to do miracles from this dark prince. Belial worked behind the screens of Egyptian mythology – he was the prince behind the Pharaoh’s and the magicians promoting the worshipping of other gods in Egypt. He guides occultists into secret organizations, because they can astral to any place in the world within minutes, and he encourages people to practice all types of magic including Yoga. As soon as a person participates in it, the mind of the person is immediately veiled and it gets impossible to maintain your faith in the Triune God. Belial is responsible for the establishment of all lodges of Mystical nature, e.g. Freemasonry, Rosicrucian’s.
- BELIAL works closely with Paimon, Ariton, Marine And Leviathan – Bringing Intellectualism Into Religious Activities, Undermining Faith By Promoting Reason. The end-time’ goal is to create false prophetic churches and bringing deception into the body of Christ. They are making use of humanity’s inherent need of the supernatural, to accomplish their deception.

According to Olukoya, the answer to the question “What Is The Spirit Of Belial”, as seen from a Biblical perspective, is underlay in understanding two concepts in Scripture pertaining to God’s warnings about demonic interaction:⁶⁹

- What Is Entailed By “The Worship Of Other Gods?”
- What Is Biblically Implied By “The Word Stronghold?”

The weapons we fight with are not the weapons of the world. On the contrary, they have divine power to demolish strongholds.

⁶⁸Brand, Connie MJ Dr (2006) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published, p. 1526.

⁶⁹ Olukoya, DK Dr (2001) Dealing with Witchcraft barbers. Nigeria: The Battle Cry Ministries Publishers, pp. 152-170.

We demolish arguments and every pretension that set itself up against the knowledge of God, and we take captive every thought to make it obedient to Christ.

II Corinthians 10:4-5

The word stronghold refers to a group of spirits, with a *super-tending demon* that take charge of the affairs of a group of spirits in the satanic kingdom.

If you hear it said about one of the towns the Lord your God is giving you to live in, that wicked men have arisen among you, and have led the people of their town astray, saying: 'Let us go and worship other gods (gods you have not known - Belial)', then you must inquire, probe and investigate it thoroughly. And if it is true and it has been proved that this detestable thing has been done among you, you must certainly put to the sword all that live in that town. Destroy it completely, both its people and its livestock. Gather all the plunder of the town into the middle of the public square and completely burn the town and all its plunder as a whole burnt offering to the Lord of God. It is to remain a ruin forever, never to be rebuilt.

Deuteronomy 13:12-16

This is how it will be with anyone who stores up things for himself, but is not rich towards God. Then Jesus said to his disciples: 'Therefore I tell you, do not worry about your life, what you will eat; or about your body, what you will wear. Life is more than food, and the body more than clothes. Consider the ravens...

Luke 12:21-2

The Strong's Exhaustive Concordance of the Bible states that the etymology of the word "be-le-al" / **βήλιάλ** (Belial) in Greek, is the chief word used in Deuteronomy 13:13 for the word "gods" used in the verse: "let us go and worship other gods".

Judges 19:22 refers to the sons of Belial as "Wicked men of the city". I Samuel 2:12 communicate the same idea when the sons of Eli were called sons of Belial. I Samuel 30:22 convey an extra meaning of the word Belial pertain to troublemakers, while II Chronicles 13:7 refer to Belial as meaning Worthless scoundrels / bad characters.

The etymology of the word Belial (in Greek) means worthlessness, without profit, destruction, wickedness, evil, ungodly (men).⁷⁰ When there is referred to people as “the children or sons or daughters of Belial”, it implicates that such a person belonging to a group with the trademark of worthlessness and wickedness.

Olukoya notes that the Spirit of Belial is the power that leads men and women astray into Idolatry and draws people away from worshipping the true God. This spirit led Israel into terrible things like fornication, adultery and idolatry, doctrinal error and apostasy. This spirit is very subtle and if it seduces you, you may serve the devil of many years, thinking that you are serving the Lord.

The men of Belial were hired to bear false witness against Naboth and as such this spirit deadens people’s conscience and makes people insensitive to the voice of the Holy Spirit. As seen in this Scripture the sons of Belial raped a man’s concubine to death.

Another characteristic of this spirit is alcoholism and drunkenness, as seen in I Samuel 1:12-16. Finally, it is seen in the New Testament that the spirit of Belial is an Anti-Christ Spirit, standing for darkness while Christ stands for light.⁷¹

Do not be yoked together with unbelievers. For what do righteousness and wickedness have in common? Or what fellowship can light have with darkness? What harmony is there between Christ and Belial? What does a believer have in common with an unbeliever? What agreement is there between the temple of God and idols? For we are the temple of the living God. As God said: “I will live with them and walk among them and they will be my people. Therefore come out of them and be separate, touch not unclean thing, and I will receive you. I will be a Father to you, and you will be my sons and daughters, says the Lord Almighty.

II Corinthians 6:14-26

⁷⁰ Strong, James (1901) Strong’s Exhaustive Concordance of the Bible. Peabody, MA: Hendrickson Publishers, pp. 121, 21.

⁷¹ Olukoya, DK Dr (2001) Dealing with Witchcraft Barbers. Nigeria: The battle Cry Christian Ministries, pp. 152-163.

4.3.1.1 THE CHARACTERISTICS OF THE SPIRIT OF BELIAL:⁷²

- A spirit of Worthlessness
- A spirit of Wickedness
- A Anti-Christ spirit (promoting the worshipping of other gods)
- A spirit of Rebellion
- A spirit of Disobedience
- A spirit of Irreverence / disrespect
- A spirit of Immorality
- A spirit of Uncleaness
- A spirit of Adultery
- A spirit of Rape
- A spirit of Prostitution
- A spirit of Alcoholism and Addiction
- A spirit of Incest & Sodomy
- A spirit of Fornication
- A spirit of Backsliding

4.3.2 LUCIFERIAN PRINCE OF THE EAST: APPOLYON / ABADDON

The main function of Apollyon / Abaddon is to perverts and resists the worshipping of God and to influence humanity negatively, not to serve the Triune God.⁷³

They had as king over them the angel of the Abyss, whose name in Hebrew is Abaddon, and in Greek, Apollyon.

Revelation 9:11

⁷² Olukoya, DK Dr (2001) Dealing with Witchcraft Barbers. Nigeria: The battle Cry Christian Ministries, pp. 164-171.

⁷³ Brand, Connie MJ Dr (2006) Phd: Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published, pp. 1511-1523.

When the Bible talks about Abaddon (Appolyon) in Proverbs 15:11, Proverbs 27:20, as well as in Psalm 88:11 it is always in the context of Death and Sheol, which refers to Satan as a Destructor, the messenger of death and the destroyer of the lost. Scripture particularly notes that in the latter times people will follow deceiving spirits. Satan's chief goal is to destruct the innocence of people and gets them into hell.⁷⁴

The Spirit clearly says that in later times some will abandon the faith and follow deceiving spirits and things taught by demons. Such teachings come through hypocritical liars, whose consciences have been seared as with hot iron.

1 Timothy 4:1-2

4.3.2.1 THE FUNCTION OF APPOLYON

According to Brand Appolyon / Abaddon have the following aims in mind:⁷⁵

- The main purpose of Appolyon is to influence humanity not to worship God. Appolyon is a ***Destructor*** and aims to destroy every Christian's relationship with the Father, Son and Holy Spirit. He tries to demolish physical life, marriages, commitment, relationships, family life, as well as ministries and Christian vision, prayer life. He also destroys financial support and promises coming true since he works together with Mammon. He tries to get humanity into hell.
- Appolyon's main goal is ***Idolatry***. He prevents and resists true worship of the Triune Godhead. He is very active implementing False Religions and False Worship and is accordingly directly responsible for false doctrines, doctrines of demons and Church-splitting. His aim is to destroy Christian vision.

⁷⁴ Brand, Connie MJ Dr (2006) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published, pp. 1511-1512.

⁷⁵Ibid., pp. 1514-1523.

- The main enemy for the Christian Church is to war against is Appolyon, because he carries the ***spirit of disunity***, as well as the spirit of Dualism. The methods he use is flattering tongues, back-biters, back-stabbers, slanderers, gossipers, hindering spirits and twisters-and-turners to stir-up financial withdrawal of the tithing.
- In Greek times Appolyon was a Greek god/prince. He was considered the most prominent god in Greek Mythology and was clothed in iron with a ***fear-inspiring*** presence. He was in control of the Muses, the Arts, Drama, Literature, Music, Mimic, Healing as well as being a good speaker.
- Appolyon as is seen in the Occult: According to Helena P Blavatsky, Appolyon was modern perfect in nature than the Biblical Jesus and he who embraced the whole Hermetic philosophy. His dogmas include the *secrets of nature*, was able to raise people from the dead and she states he was equal to Jesus Christ, as well as equal to the power of Christ to command Terrestrial and elementary spirits. Appolyon used *mesmeric power to heal* and he was superior in the ability to do *astral projections*.
- Appolyon as seen by the New Agers: The attributes of Appolyon involves the struggle between the intellect and the passion or mind and body. It sends out flashes of lightening, which symbolizes oracle *powers of divination*. He is identified as the Storm-god, which apparently show him as instigate of strife and arrogance. As the one who prompts the animal drive for suffering, he is represented by the Werewolf who is used by the Satanic Hierarchy as the Destroyers, Murderers and Disciplinarians. Cult members of the cult would be involved with snake rituals. Appolyon is at work in the modern-day Psychology – integrating the Id- and Super-Ego forces.
- He is seen in the Phoenix Eagle: As symbol of the sun, he represented new life that rises out of the ashes of fire. He is however also identified with the dawn of the sun. As such he declares the life and death in the spiritual realms. His origin is the fire of the Egyptian Mythology. In New Age religion he is seen as the reincarnation.

In the deliverance of a Christian from the power of astral projection, the person has to be cut loose from all astral planes and powers from the spirit of Appolyon.

4.3.2.1.1 THE CHARACTERISTICS OF APPOLYON⁷⁶

- He is known as The False Angel of Light – Light Bearer.
- A Lying Spirit.
- He is the Twister and Turner (turns darkness to light).
- He causes sin.
- He blots out the guilt conscience.
- Leads mankind into heathen religions and eastern mysticism.
- Leads mankind into idolatry.
- Causes fear.
- Causes Occult illnesses.
- He perceives per excellence.
- He is the father of all falsehood.
- He is the false healer.
- He got status in the Medical World (Medical Oath of Hippocrates taken under the name of Appolyon)

4.3.2.2 THE FUNCTION OF ABADDON (EAST)⁷⁷

Abaddon's main goal is to **defile humanity** and works through the lust of the flesh.

⁷⁶ Brand, Connie MJ Dr (2006) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published, p. 1511.

⁷⁷ Ibid., p. 1511.

His prime goal is to get people into Addiction as Alcoholism, Drugs, Sex, pleasure, work-holism, perversion, blood-lust, gluttony and opens victims up to power and control. He is working closely with Bacchus. Abaddon is black and during deliverance has an extremely foul smelling (especially in homosexuals).

In II Thessalonians, Paul discusses the activities of “*the man of sin*” and mentioned the release of Abaddon from the Abyss. The Abyss is often associated with the ocean depths. Paul is talking about the return of the Christ, but first the events of the “*falling away*” from the truth, will come.

- Abaddon is the power behind the clubs and the discotheques’ immorality and he is responsible for the discovery of disco-lights.
He is also the instigator of drug abuse in places such as rock concerts with the goal that it could serve as “altars” for Satan.
- He aims to bring Christians into an unholy life and produce foul thoughts, bad habits, adultery, fornication, incest, homosexuality, lesbianism, bestiality, pornography and pedophilia.
- Abaddon is very persistent and its power should be broken by pray and to flee temptation. He also works against repentance, promoting blame-shifting.
- Abaddon’s goal is to Spread doubts, mislead people, shatter thought life, turn minds into chaos, to divide, to heat-up strife and arguments, breaking-up families, to bring about divorce, lead people towards involvement in the occult, and lead people into drugs, alcoholism, illicit sex and seeking of power.
- Abaddon corresponds with Leviathan, the dragon, the prince of the West.

According to Price, Abaddon is the power behind sexual immorality. He is also the Prince RESPONSIBLE FOR INITIATING DRUGS through air systems during such parties. One of his prime aims is to get people into Alcoholism and eventually to loose control of their minds. He works closely together with BACCHUS. Abaddon works primary with Asmodee (Sex) and Mammon. They control the world through the financial market, sex and greed. By trespassing, the Christian will loose the opportunity to hear the voice of God by spending money recklessly.

Another main aim of Abaddon is to get people hooked to Gluttony – which works through the stomach and sex organs.

4.3.2.2.1 THE CHARACTERISTICS OF ABADDON:⁷⁸

- The False Angel of Light
- A Lying Spirit
- He is the Twister and Turner (turns darkness to light)
- Leads mankind into heathen religions and eastern mysticism
- Leads mankind into idolatry
- He causes sin
- He blots out the guilt conscience
- Causes fear
- Causes illnesses linked to Occultism
- Leads people follow Deceiving spirits and things taught by demons to such an extent that the person abandons his faith.
- He is the father of all falsehood
- He is the false healer
- He got status in the Medical World (Medical Oath of Hippocrates taken under the name of Appolyon) and works closely together with Leviathan – the Dragon / Prince of the West.

The Eastern prince is connected to the symbol of “the air”. The Encyclopedia Wikipedia refers to “the Air” as one of the four classical elements, which is worshipped in its own right.

⁷⁸ Brand, Connie MJ Dr (2006) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published, p. 1511.

In many religions “the air” is seen as a universal power. In Modern Magic, Air is associated with the Eastern kingdom of Satan.⁷⁹

Since, then, you have been raised with Christ, set your heart on things which are above, where Christ is seated on the right hand of God. Set your mind on things above, not on things on the earth. For you died and your life is now hidden with Christ in God. Put to death, therefore, whatever belongs to your earthly nature: sexual immorality, impurity, lust, evil, desires, and greed, which is idolatry. Because of these things, the wrath of God is coming. You used to walk in these ways, in the life you one lived. But now you must rid yourselves of all such things as these...

Colossians 3:1-7

4.3.3 SATANIC PRINCE OF THE SOUTH, THE BEAST: (SATURN / SIRUS / SHAITAN / HELLHOUND (PLUTO) / DAG-STAR / MARDUCK / CELTIC RELIGIONS / CULLAN / PLUTO)

Brand gave a profound record about the Prince of the South. Humanity will be led into slaughter, bloodshed, false religions and destruction in “*the End-Times*” by ***the Beast*** seen in Revelations. Satan always instigates massive Blood-Shedding, but the Principality of the South keeps its workings secret. This principality is to the uttermost concern with bloodlines and “*blood-rights*” he got as a result of the shedding of blood: blood-thirstiness, incest (blood-guilt), abortion (Innocent blood shedding), blood-pacts and blood-oaths. This Satanic Kingdom of shedding of blood by murder, warfare, suicide (even attempts), keeps records.

Families, which is involved in blood-shedding is remembered as partaking of “Iniquities of the Fathers onto the Children.” Such shedding of blood gives rights for destruction of the specific bloodline because of the iniquities.⁸⁰

⁷⁹ Air (classical element) – Wikipedia. ([http://www.en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Air_\(classical_element\)](http://www.en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Air_(classical_element)))

- Familiar and Ancestral spirits play important roles together with the prince of the South. Entities that are involved in leading such functions are the following. (1) Warfare: God and Magog, Tubal-Cain, Valhalla, Marduk and Mars. (2) Murder and hatred: Jezebel. (3) Suicide: Judas / Dies / Hades. (4) Abortion: Lilith. (5) Blood-pacts: Lesbos. (6) Blood-oaths: Thor. (7) Incest: Amon.
- Presently the Prince of the South is preparing the system of the Prophetic and One-World-Religious System into place. Many people who see the signs and wonders and who is not previously exposed to the counterfeit of this deception, will be caught up in it.
- Satanic agents who came to faith in Jesus Christ reveal that they saw, 'The Beast' when astral projected to the Spiritual Plane. He was described as a huge, fat, reddish 'Man' sitting on his throne with a presence like a gorilla. His occult symbol is one of a leopard.

System planes which are prepared for the End-Times are the following: An 'Ecclesiastical System (The One-World-Order) with its relevant Satanic worship; as well as a One-World-Secret-government or Political System'.

The book of Revelations gives clear evidence of false Religions, destruction and bloodshed in "the End-Times", which will be instigated by "the Beast / Satan" and his demonic followers. The principality of the South keeps *the End-Time* workings secret through multiple Pseudonyms: Shaitan, Sirius, Dog-Star, Hell-Hound, The Beast etcetera.

Prod Dr Brand notes that the Occult symbol of the Prince of the South is a "leopard".⁸¹

⁸⁰ Brand, Connie MJ Dr (2006) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published, pp. 1529-1531.

⁸¹ Ibid, p. 1531.

The following Systems are prepared for the End-Times are:

- The One-World-Religions from where Satanic-worship will flow.
- The operation of New Age Religions / systems under different names, which is already in process as stated by Bible Prophecy.
- A One-World-Secret-Government or political system.
- World Monetary power systems will be instigated.

In the End-Time, Demonic warfare against the Children of God will involve the following:⁸²

- The prevention of prayer.
- Stops Bible Study.
- Hinders good deeds to be done to others.
- Prevents zeal and cause passivity.
- Causes depression / Psychic illnesses.
- Causes suicide.
- Gets people into Freemasonry.

4.3.4 SATANIC PRINCE OF THE WEST: LEVIATHAN

The Lord will punish with his sword his fierce, great and powerful sword, Leviathan the gliding serpent, Leviathan the coiling serpent; he will slay the monster [dragon] of the sea.

Isaiah 27:1

Brand notes that Leviathan's primary aim and goal is to manipulate, control, beguile and seduce, to abort and to intimidate mankind. The method of Leviathan is to sear the conscience and to cause cold blood with no repentance. The highest goal of Leviathan is to abort the Church, marriages, the mind of men, as well as all relationships. He upsets people without reason.

⁸² Brand, Connie MJ Dr (2006) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published, p. 1532.

Ancestral rights in the bloodline gave Leviathan access to the fetus, already in the womb. He bound up the emotions so that love could not be communicated to the person.⁸³

Aims of Leviathan are the following:

- Leviathan Works in the Womb: This principality can be evident already with conception in the womb of the unsaved, or the sinful saved. Dr Brand can witness of several cases of deliverance where the person was oppressed already from birth and a spiritual Entity spook out of the victim by deliverance, admitting it. In such cases, when the Entity was asked to reveal its name, Leviathan was the name given.
- Leviathan is the Strongman in Occultism and all Secret Societies. He is a fearless entity and work in cold blood.
- Leviathan leads people into confusion of the mind and he using smoke screens to veil clear thought patterns. He leads people into doubt so that they can be misled. Leviathan stirs up arguments and striving.

Entity's that is working with Leviathan is the following:⁸⁴

- Python (the spirit of Abort) is working together with Leviathan.
- Jezebel the spirit of Intimidation, control and Murder
- Many Water spirits (Sexual spirits: Isis, Marine, Asmodee, Poseidon, Succubus, Incubus, Sirene, Etc.)
- Dragon – Instigating the fire of turmoil, strive and anger
- Spirits of Pride / Mind boggling spirits – causing fantasy
- Mermaids and Merrows,
- Waterleaper
- Gwyllion

⁸³Brand, Connie MJ Dr (2006) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published, pp. 1523-1525.

⁸⁴ Ibid., p. 1525.

- Bean-nighe
- O'Donoghue
- Faerie Ways who bewitch the victim.
- Evil spirits who defile people, etc. Old Hag and Black Annis.

Leviathan is the King of the Sea. The word Dragon is the common Hebrew word for any large serpent, sea monster, or dragon. According to Isaiah 27:1, the Lord will slay Leviathan on the Day of Judgment. With His mighty sword God will punish Leviathan the Mysterious Serpent Leviathan the Twisting Serpent, and the dragon of the sea.

Brand notes that, *“The dragon is considered to be the power of the sorcerer, deception, brutality and cruelty. Other symbolic terms for the dragon are Rahab, Egypt (Ezekiel 29:3), and Babylon (Jeremiah 51:34). The ancient Pharaohs believed their power from the dragon. They adored themselves with serpentine ceremonial objects and were also symbolically revered as dragon-kings or offspring’s thereof. Occult, spiritual, and supernatural knowledge are believed to be obtained, possessed and dispensed by the dragon, no doubt reminiscent of the serpent that beguiled Eve and overthrew Adam’s world dominion.”*

4.4 FOUR OCCULT KINGDOMS

In ancient Egypt the tomb pictures clearly showed that the four sons of Horus were actually the four Principalities/Princes of Occultism. In the Old Egyptian Kingdom, the four sons of Horus were described as friends of the king, as they assist the king in his ascension to heaven in the eastern sky by means of ladders. Their association with Horus specially goes back to the Old Kingdom when they were said not only to be his children, but also his souls.⁸⁵

⁸⁵ The four sons of Horus – Wikipedia. (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/four_sons_of_horus).



TABLE 5. THE FOUR PRINCIPALITIES

4.4.1 OCCULT KINGDOM OF 'EARTH REALM' UNDER THE NORTHERN PRINCE, BELIAL

The Occult or physic Kingdom on earth is called the Devic Kingdom of the esoteric parlance.

The entire **Kingdom of Darkness on earth** is ruled by a **female Arch-spirit called Seraphim Visel**. In the Hindu Occult she is invoked as Bomy. She is also called **Mother Earth**. She is seen manifested as a 25 year old Queen or sometimes as “**a cow**” – but she does manifest also in other forms. Within the Occult Kingdom on earth there are ten major zones of Physic operations of the forces of darkness. Through these ten zones, the secret power of Visel are projected to operate on earth. Each of these Devic Kingdoms is ruled by a **Guardian angel [a fallen angel]**. Within these zones there are 127 Occult regions and each region is ruled by an entity in the rank of “Earth Master”.

These **Earth Masters** projects almost all the invisible forces, which sustains the daily operations of secret societies, churches and religious movements. It is only the true believers in Jesus Christ that are absolute beyond the projections and operations of these forces.

There are 30,000,000 occult centers for the operations of witchcrafts', esoteric and other related physical and occult forces on earth, and operate under entities called Gome (elementary spirits). These occult centers are operating via the esoteric “Vibration of the same physic AUM frequency. Elemental Spirits are powerful entities in Occult operations – but have no initiative, rather function through **mystical command or the 'Mantra' sound vibration**.⁸⁶

⁸⁶ Uzorma, Iyke Nathan Dr (2007) Occult Grandmaster Now in Christ: Book One. Lagos State, Nigeria: Glorious people Nig. Ltd., pp.52-53.

4.4.2 OCCULT KINGDOM OF 'WATER REALM' UNDER THE WESTERN PRINCE: LEVIATHAN

The physic Kingdom of the water realm is called the Banwar Kingdom. The ***Kingdom of the water realm*** is ruled by an ***Arch-Spirit called Lord Kaliya*** who mostly manifests as a mighty snake with sixteen heads and crowns of light on each head. This entity is seen only by few of the highest Masters of the Occult. Kaliya lives in an underwater-city located in the area called the Bermuda-Triangle which is considered a zone of death. Those who traveled to this Kingdom never returned.⁸⁷

4.4.3 OCCULT KINGDOM OF 'FIRE REALM' UNDER THE SOUTHERN SATANIC PRINCE: THE BEAST

The realm of fire is a subterranean occult realm. The ***Kingdom of fire*** is a vast occult realm and its ruler is called ***Naga*** and claimed to be the ***lord of death and of punishment*** and is known in the Hindu esoteric thought. This realm is divided into two major planes:

A plane of courts and the plane of punishment – which is a place where souls go, following their death on earth. It is however true that psychic entities can disguise themselves and appear in this kingdom as those who came out from the realm of fire. There is specific manipulations designed by the Prince of Darkness to deceive the esoteric master. The esoteric is the secret and the most confidential aspects of the occult teachings directly received in the spirit realms, while the Exoteric is the open or the public occult teachings given to people and seekers of occult knowledge of earth.⁸⁸

⁸⁷ Uzorma, Iyke Nathan Dr (2007) *Occult Grandmaster Now in Christ: Book One*. Lagos State, Nigeria: Glorious people Nig. Ltd., pp.54-55.

⁸⁸ *Ibid.*, pp.55-58.

4.4.4 OCCULT KINGDOM OF 'AIR REALM' UNDER THE EASTERN PRINCE: LUCIFER

The occult Kingdom of the Air is called the “*astral Kingdom*”. The “*Kingdom of the Air*” involves Four physic Kingdoms:

The “*First Kingdom of the Air*” is ruled by an Arch-spirit, called Sagna or Brahma (of the Hindu religions). He proclaims himself as the “Most-high god”. He is the head of all the other realms. The second entity in charge is called Elam and is located on the planet Venus. In the Third Cosmic Seal 999, Elam is the chief entity and manifest as “Sat An (Satan)”. It is NOT that he is the entity Satan – but he is the one that appears whenever Satan is invokes. This is a higher occult secret.

The *Second Kingdom of the Air* is the Terrestrial Kingdom. On this plane, deceptive being as Saint Peter, Abraham, Daniel etc are met.

The *Third Kingdom of the Air* is the place where all the mystical art, wisdom and crafts is born and then projected to the other five Kingdoms.

The *Fourth Kingdom of the Air* obtains the ultimate perfection of mysticism and esoteric powers which is proclaimed to be the state of “god consciousness”. This Kingdom is ruled by Chitanam the one who is fact the Fallen Archangel Lucifer who is known in the Holy Bible as Satan.⁸⁹

4.5 EIGHT POWERS AND DARK FORCES⁹⁰

Beelzebub is sending out the “powers” to the different “principalities” to take Satan’s plans and messages to them.

⁸⁹ Uzorma, Iyke Nathan Dr (2007) Occult Grandmaster Now in Christ: Book One. Lagos State, Nigeria: Glorious people Nig. Ltd., pp. 58-63.

⁹⁰ Brand, Connie MJ Dr (2006) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric evidence pertaining to the structures and strategies to destruct Christianity involving the theodicy of Darkness. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published, pp. 1534-1552.

A “power” manifest as is “strongholds”, which refers to certain kinds of evil and demons assigned to certain sins. Satan is active in human lives to the degree that people are sinning and living selfishly and his activity is determined by the nature of sinning, etc. powers of greed, homosexuality, depression, fear, witchcraft and many others.

4.5.1 ASHTORETH (JEZEBEL)

Ashtoreth Jezebel is known as the Queen Of Heaven (Jeremiah 7:18; Jeremiah 44:17, 19, 25). She is also known as the “Mother of the sun-god”, which gave birth to the sun-god on the 25th of December (Persian sun-worship). Ashtoreth is worshipped as a Goddess, but many years ago the Bible speaks of this power manifested in a human being named Jezebel.

We will burn incense to the Queen of Heaven and will pour out drink offerings to her just as we and our fathers, our Kings, and our officials did in the towns of Judah and in the streets of Jerusalem. At that time we have plenty of food and were well off and suffered no harm. But, ever since we stopped burning incense to the Queen of heaven and pouring out drink offerings to her, we have nothing and have been perishing by sword and famine... Then Jeremiah said... When the Lord could no longer endure things you did, your land became an object of cursing and a desolate waste without inhabitants, as it is today.

Jeremiah 44:17-22

Ashtoreth is the head of ancestral Worship in Africa and Asia. She works with Baal, as well as with Prince Appolyon to Create False Religions in the world. She is the Earth Goddess, and is also the Head Of Paganism and all nature religions. Satan gave her the secret of plants and herbs, and is therefore known by the witchdoctors of Africa. Asherah is responsible for the Babylonian cult religion, namely the Roman Catholicism. She will work together with The Beast in the end-times, to do “false miracles and divine healings”.

She is the Mother of the Occult: Astrology, Divination and pagan natural religions. Ashtoreth is always busy to counterfeit god.

Ashtoreth's main aim is to lead people into deception to serve her as the "all powerful" god. She wants to be worshiped, but she also wants to provoke God anger by the sin of people during the rituals.

Miscarriages are sacrifices unto her; and she likes to use a covenant when dealing with people. Ashtoreth is represented by the moon (Islam); therefore many demonic activities (rituals, blood-sacrifices and witchcraft) are seen at full moon. When a person is possessed by Ashtoreth's, the transference of the "Spirit of Witchcraft", is possible during the laying on of hand – which brings a direct counterfeit of "the laying on of hands" in Scripture. Witchcraft spirits can also be transferred to the fetus in the womb. After the rebirth of such a person he/she has to go through deliverance ministry.

4.5.2 BAAL

Baal is the god of fertility; he is also known as the Son-God, Ra. He is working hand-in-hand with Ashtoreth and Apollyon to cause False Religions. Baal possessed Akhenaton, the husband of Nefertiti – the founder of the Rosicrucian's and Freemasons.

Baal also possessed Nimrod – the founder of the Occult. He is the "third eye" of the eastern religions as well as the "thousand eyes" of the Freemasons – which Makes it possible for people to see into the spiritual realms at all times. His symbol is the son, or a star and he is the star of secret organizations e.g. Satanism.

Another symbol of the **Sun-god Ra** is the Obelisk (phallic symbol) and his worship is imitated in association with the Egyptian doctrine of immorality.

All kinds of prostitution, religion-prostitution and shrine-prostitution, as well as alcoholism (addiction) originates from Baal.

Baal uses Addictions and Sexual-Immorality, which goes hand-in-hand, to control the minds of people (mind control) in an attempt to control the whole world (Exodus 32). He works together with Abaddon in nightclubs to bring about an atmosphere of sexual-immorality and addiction (alcoholism). As the god of light, he was instrumental in the development of disco lights.

Baal is also the power behind “Mental Illnesses” and is therefore the strongman of all mental-institutions. With the increase of sexual-immorality, mental-illnesses will also increase – Baal’s final aim is destruction and suicide. Baal demands the sacrifice of the first-borns children.

4.5.3 MAGOG

Magog is a War Force; and he is sometimes referred to as the demon of Iron. He teaches nations and people to war and is working closely with the white witches in the design of war-technology and war-devices. Magog is invoked when black witches create a charm to establish weapons of war, or when a request is made for invisibility and invincibility (to be unbeatable).

Black-, white-, and red witches, as well as all mind occult practices (Witchcraft) are working interactive with Magog. Magog is instrumental, where people are controlled and manipulated by demons to cause anger and haltered in them.

Magog uses wicked spirits – spirits of witchcraft – to starts the fight/war; and he usually works together with (the prince of the north) Belial to possess people by the “triplet-spirit” of Anger, Fear and Hatred. This threefold-spirit is working together with 13 other spirits – including the spirit of un-forgiveness.

It has great power and control over the possessed, and produces a demonic attitude to murder. Magog is also working together with the Guardian Spirit of Germany, Gog.

Magog and Gog are working together to provoke maximum violence and blood shedding. They are working together, trying to provoke a third world war. Only when God's people is in covenant with Him and He fight on their behalf, can this force be stopped (Psalm 124:1-8; Joshua 7:2-13; and Revelation 19:11-13).

4.5.4 ARITON

This force is in charge of all demons and agents which are involved with MAGICAL POWER. When these powers are required, Ariton is the one to approach for help.

It is said that he provides magic mirrors – with the intention to “see” into the past of the future of a person and to harm the person; he also has the authority to release magic for magic charms.

4.5.5 PAIMON (CRYSTAL DEMON)

Paimon has control over the celestial demons (stars & planets). He works closely with Baal, Belial the prince of the North, who reigns over the stars and planes. He communicates with people through mirrors, crystal balls and water. Paimon is *the Supposed Voice Of God* and deceives many people and he gave many false prophecies in mainly “White garment Churches of West Africa”. He gives information to the pastor of a church as if it is from God, but a counterfeit. As such he is the ruler of fortunetelling and soothsayers and often portends to be Michael – the arch-angel.

4.5.6 BAPHOMET

He is the great Luciferian Goat God. As such he is worshipped by the Knights Templar, by Gnostics and Satanists and by many other involved in the Illuminati-Network and is a symbol, yet graphic representation of the Adversary, Satan himself. Pictures and androgynous (combination Male And Female), we found his right hand pointing upwards, toward the light and his left hand pointing downwards, toward the dark regions. The SATANIC STAR is on his forehead.

4.5.7 ASMODEE / ASMODEUS

This power is called the “stinker”. He appears as a fat smelling demonic tall “man” with web-like wings. He is responsible for the spirit of Jezebel and work closely with Baal. He joins people in *spiritual marriages* in covenants with Satan and the power of darkness. He is involved with *sexual immorality* and works closely with the Prince of the East (Abaddon). Some of Asmodee’s work areas involve the following:

- Prostitution.
- Sexual perversion (Homosexuals, Lesbianism, Incest, Masturbation, Bestiality).
- Bareness of the womb.
- Dissatisfaction in marriage.
- Repeated divorces (Lesbos causes confusion in sexual identity of the bloodline).
- Miscarriages and the death of children (Astarte – death of children in uterus; Molech – death of the first born, and Dagon – sacrifice of the placenta as a burnt offer to Satan; Leviathan – abortion of children in the womb and in real life).

- Asmodee causes dreams involving the sexual demons: incubus and succubus. People who are sexually involved with them should renounce their wedding vows to these devils. Dr Holliday reveals in her book *Marriage and Sex* that the ruling spirits over the destroying of marriage are Asmodeus and Osmodeus. These marriage breaking spirits (responsible for divorce), also cause rejection of sexual genders which ends in lesbianism and homosexuality.

Marine is the head of all the water spirits. Leviathan is also a ruler of the water spirits. Other characteristics of these water or Marine spirits are overpowering tendencies such as rage, lust, impetuosity, impurity and psychic activities. Asmodeus and Osmodeus, he is sometimes referred to as “the genius of matrimonial discord and jealousy.” Sexual demons are prevalent in our world, because of constant exposure through entertainment, movies, television, magazines, books, etc.

4.5.8 MAMMON

Mammon is associated with money. Theologically spoken, we can say that such a person makes money his god. He is usually seen as the golden demon. Mammon divides the riches of Darkness amongst the people on earth that serve Satan. He works closely with the Beast in the end-times. He instated people to make debts.

4.6 RULERS

Scripture reveals that there are rulers of the darkness in this world. They are next in line just after the Powers. They however can work directly with Satan or a Prince. See Table 6: Rules Of Darkness/ Joshua 12.

31 Rulers of Darkness - Josua 12

The bracketed Rulers work together against you. Also, the degree of bondage increases as the list progresses.

NORTH-EAST

- Jericho
- AI
- Jerusalem
- Hebron
- Jarmuth

Fragrance, riches.
 Ruin, despair, depression.
 Peace is in their possession.
 Alliance, the New Age movement, humanism, wisdom of men.
 Height, strength, reputation, pride.

NORTH-WEST to SOUTH-EAST

- Lachish
- Eglon

City of sin, sets up a line from **NW** to **SE** in your city. Works with Eglon to establish a movement of Rulers of Darkness.
 Heifer-like, breeder spirit, throws thoughts against you. Works with spirit of fear.
 To encircle, to breed in the mind.

NORTH-WEST

- Gezer
- Debir
- Geder
- Hormah
- Arad

Portion, greed, the slice of life. Works in gangland territories. Makes people want to be somebody, to get their slice of life.
 Oracle (of self), self-righteousness.
 To put up a wall, to close up, to protect self, to circumvallate due to fear.
 Devoted to destruction. Devout to religion to the forfeit of life. Burnout serving God, because you're doing it for yourself.
 The fugitive, condemnation, running from problems.

WEST

- Libnah
- Adullam
- Makkedah
- Bethel
- Tappuah
- Hepher

Whitey, transparent in a false way.
 Refuge, cows in a slaughterhouse, the beginning of all addictions.
 Herding by puncturing or branding, tries to herd others into addictions.
 The false house of God, the prison house. May even be your church.
 Apple, fruit of the tree, the rejection of morality, child pornography.
 The pit, the shame. Searns the conscience with shame.
 Works in gangs where life is cheap.

SOUTH

- Aphek
- Las-Sharon
- Madon
- Hazor

Sense of strength and fortress, your own empire.
 To Sharon (plains), type of prosperity.
 Contention, stature, frame.
 Enclosure, village hamlet, self-made.

CENTER

- Shimron-Meron
- Achshaph
- Taanach
- Megiddo
- Kedesh

Guard of lashing, brutality, most violent of all spirits, suicide spirit.
 Dedicated, witchcraft, controlling spirit, to enchant, cast a spell by prayer.
 Sandy, to cheat, deceive, misuse. To think the experience is real.
 (The real presence of God changes you), self-exalting.
 Place of troops, the rendezvous, place where they gash and cut self, use of scripture to cut each other.
 A sanctum, to consecrate, 7 levels of Satanism, high priest lives in **NE** point of pentagram. Consecrated to a vision of self.

EAST

- Jokneam
- Dor
- Gilgal
- Tirzah

The people will be lamented. Unusual grief, manic depression, migraine headaches.
 Dwelling of time or age. Generation of curses, generational bondage.
 Rolling, wheel, circle, whirlwind, the cycle of life which can't be stopped.
 Delight, to satisfy a debt, to reconcile self by death, the Death spirit.

Rulers can be either spiritual or human beings, but are **primarily spirit possessed humans** or **hybrids**.⁹¹ When a person is promoted to a Ruler of Darkness, he is more of a spiritual being than a human being i.e. they can live in the spiritual realm for long periods. When a person became a **witch** or a **wizard** their **astral bodies** travel to their spiritual covens during the night. White and black witches can travel with their physical bodies to their covens.

People who became rulers, are extremely evil and have probably killed thousands of people. With each initiation and covenant an oath of secrecy is taken. Such human beings can be converted and delivered, but to be set free the bondage of Satan these people have to confess all involvement with darkness and repent extensively to God. Hybrids cannot be converted.

4.7 SUPREME ELEMENTAL SPIRITS – WICKED DEMONS⁹²

When speaking of the Elementals, one does not mean the physical, chemical elements. The Elementals are sometimes called nature spirits and include Earth, Fire, Air and Water deities. All Magick is primarily based on these four elements for spell-working. The four elements are actually four types of forces, energies and substances that make up the Universe and everything in it. Elements are vital to Alchemists. The name for Elementals comes primarily from Greek and means “Knowledge or the Knowing ones”:

- Earth spirits are called Gnomes, Dwarfs and Trolls.
- Air spirits are called Sylphs, Zephyrs and Fairies.
- Fire spirits are called Salamanders and Fire Drakes.
- Water spirits are called undines and nymphs.

⁹¹ Brand, MJ Connie Prof Dr (2006) PhD: Esoteric and Esoteric Evidence Pertaining to the Structures and strategies to destruct Christianity – Involving the Theodicy of Darkness, Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published, pp. 1552-1557.

⁹² Ibid., pp. 1552-1582.

These elemental spirits are working along with “*the Occult*”. People who practiced witchcraft and sorcery are using “*Familiar Spirits*” to do so. The familiar spirit is involved in mental diseases.

Individuals or their bloodlines who were previously involved in Secret societies, or esoteric mysteries or the Occult often need deliverance from demonic forces and the bondage of Satan. Such persons should be cut loose from the four principalities and the four elements by the Sword of the Spirit. The final process in cutting the occult victims loose includes cutting the cords of the five pointer star in the spirit realm: Water, fire, wood, metal and earth. Remove the triangle of secrecy from the base of the brainstem. Let the victim renounce the Hail Satan Code: Shemhamforesh.

The Prince of the North – Belial: Earth (Earth as medium between light and darkness). The prince of the East – Appolyon / Abaddon: Air (alchemical symbol for Air). The prince of the South – Satan-Shaitan / the Beast: Fire (alchemical symbol for Fire). The prince of the West – Leviathan: Water (elemental Mermaid). Azoth is the five element of witchcraft.

4.8 A BRIEF OVERVIEW OF DEMONOLOGY

Angels may or may not physically appear to human eyes. They can also be seen in their real form. Fallen Angels are able to disguise themselves as “**Angels of light**” to deceive. No human being must depend on any angel neither should any prayers be directed to them. The Catholic Encyclopedia⁹³ gives the following explanation of the term **Demonology**:

⁹³ **Doctrine: Etymology:** Middle English, from Middle French & Latin; Middle French, from Latin *doctrine*, from *doctor*. **1. Archiac: TEACHING, INSTRUCTION.** **2 a:** something that is taught **b:** a principle or position or the body of principles in a branch of knowledge or system of belief: DOGMA.

As the name sufficiently indicates, **Demonology is the “Science or doctrine concerning demons”**.

In numerous times our Lord Jesus Christ has cast out **demons** from various people and also gave His disciples authority to cast out demons. The Twentieth Century has **witnessed** an almost complete turn-around in attitude towards the reality of **demons**. In the first part of the century, their reality was **commonly denied**; in the latter part, it is much **more readily universally affirmed**.

In every nation today, there is a tremendous increase in activity in demonology since the occult is universally available via the media. In the twenty first century, movies, books on the Extra-terrestrial and the highly developed computer explosion have created a favorable climate for the acceptance of demons.

4.8.1 A BIBLICAL-THEOLOGICAL PERSPECTIVE ON DEMONOLOGY FROM THE OLD TESTAMENT

The Biblical-Theological perspective on demonology argues that when Satan fell, a vast company of angels fell with him too. These are spoken of in Scripture as **Fallen Angels**.⁹⁴

Phillpott gives the following exegesis on the existence of demons as Biblically portrayed:⁹⁵ A belief in demons goes back to the earliest time know to mankind. The ancients did not always think alike about demons, but most believed in powers, beings, spirits or demons that could influence the lives of men. The ancient literature of the people living around the Eastern shore of the Mediterranean testifies to their belief in demons, gods, and spirits. Neither the Old nor the New Testament precisely indicates the origin of demons.

⁹⁴ Conner, Kevin J (1980) The foundations of Christian Doctrine. U.S.A.: Bible Temple Publishing, p.108.

⁹⁵ Phillpott Kent (1973) A Manual of Demonology and the Occult. Grand Rapids, MI: Zondervan.

4.8.2 A BIBLICAL-THEOLOGICAL PERSPECTIVE ON DEMONOLOGY FROM THE NEW TESTAMENT

New Testament believers **accepted the existence of demons**. **Two principles behind demonic** incidents that became apparent in the New Testament include: (1) *the desire for knowledge* not available through any ordinary physical means, and (2) *the desire to control supernatural power*. It seems clear that the interpretation of

Gregory Boyd does justice to the meaning of our hidden enemy in his words: “*God’s good creation has in fact been seized by hostile, evil, cosmic forces that are seeking to destroy God’s beneficent plan for the cosmos... The general assumption of both the Old and the New Testament is that the earth is virtually engulfed by cosmic forces of destruction and that evil and suffering are ultimately due to this diabolic siege.*”⁹⁶

Demonology began with the *first rebellion* in heaven where Lucifer exalts himself above God. If we could see into the unseen, we would find a world alive with good against evil, a place where the ultimate prize is the souls of men and woman and where legions war for the control of cities and its people.

Dark strategies motivate the destructive outcome – yet, few people understand this internal assault on humanity as **fundamentally supernatural**. It is the responsibility of the believer to understand the need to put on the whole armour of God.

Put on the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.

Ephesians 6:12

⁹⁶ Boyd, George A (1997) *God at War: The Bible and Spiritual Conflict*. Downer’s Grove, IL: Inter Varsity, pp.19,55.

4.9 THE DIFFERENCE BETWEEN DEVILS (FALLEN ANGELS / WATCHERS) AND DEMONS

Demonology is intrinsically linked to Satan, sin and evil as bound into the larger realm of Spiritual Warfare. Scripture teaches the existence of Satan who is the originator of sin and the king over the kingdom of darkness and its host of fallen angels and demon spirits – who carry out his work. The thorough prolonged research of Klein and Spears deem relevant to this hypothesis:⁹⁷

A **DEVIL** defined, is a “**fallen angel**”, which is often referred to in Scripture as an “**EVIL SPIRIT**”. As far as we know, all fallen angels were part of the original sin of rebellion against God led by Lucifer / Satan.

A **NEPHILIM** defined, is the offspring from the mating of “**a teraphim**” with earthly women as detailed in Genesis 6:1-2. Genesis 6:4 called the divine beings (teraphim), the “**sons of God**”. All such inbred beings, grow to unusual sizes. The Bible reveals that such beings also appeared on the earth even after the flood – which explains why God commanded the Israelites to obliterate them utterly as in the flood.

A **DEMON** defined, is the disembodied soul of a dead NEPHILIM. Demons are often referred to as “unclean spirits”. This explains why demons utterly want to possess human bodies. Of the three types, devils are by the most powerful. According to the book of Enoch, the fallen angels – DEVILS – which produced the NEPHILIM race also taught man forbidden things such as sorcery, the perverted uses of medicinal herbs, sexual deviance and violent warfare. The NEPHILIM had a penchant for bloodshed, as seen in Genesis 6: 11-13.

The earth also was corrupt before God, and the earth was filled with violence. And God looked upon the earth, and, behold, it was corrupt; for all flesh had corrupted his way upon the earth.

⁹⁷ Klein, John and Spears, Adam (2005) Devils and Demons and the Return of the Nephilim. Bend, OR: Xulon Press Publishers, pp. 77-78.

And God said unto Noah, The end of all flesh is come before me; for the earth is filled with violence through them; and, behold, I will destroy them with the earth.

Genesis 6:11-13

5. SECTION B: THE KINGDOM OF GOD

The Kingdom of heaven is established around the great throne of God. The Book of Revelations unveils how the Kingdoms of this world finally become the Kingdom of our God and of His Christ.

And in the days of these kings shall the God of heaven set up a kingdom, which shall never be destroyed: and the kingdom shall not be left to other people, but it shall break in pieces and consume all these kingdoms, and it shall stand for ever.

Daniel 2:44

The literal “***Kingdom of God***” is positioned in the third Heaven. In this Kingdom all truth is perfect, absolute and immovable. Jesus Christ is establishing this truth upon earth. The governing of Jesus in the hearts of His people is manifesting presently to prepare for His coming. When the kingdom of God comes into the heart of a person, it implies that such a person is functioning under the reign, or authority, of The Kingdom of God.⁹⁸ The goal of our Lord is to unite the Kingdom of heaven and earth in establishing the Kingdom of God in the hearts of His people under the headship of His Son, Jesus Christ.

God’s Kingdom functions by designs/principles established in the spiritual world, which should be manifested in the lives of people. God’s designs originate in heavenly places and the understanding of these designs is crucial to comprehend why certain things happens on earth.⁹⁹

⁹⁸ Pfeiffer, Charles F, Voss Howard F, Rea, John Editors (1975) Wycliffe Bible Dictionary. Peabody, Massachusetts; Hendrickson Publishers, pp.991.

⁹⁹ Méndez-Ferrell (2010) Regions of Captivity. Shippensburg, PA: Destiny Image Publishers, p.19.

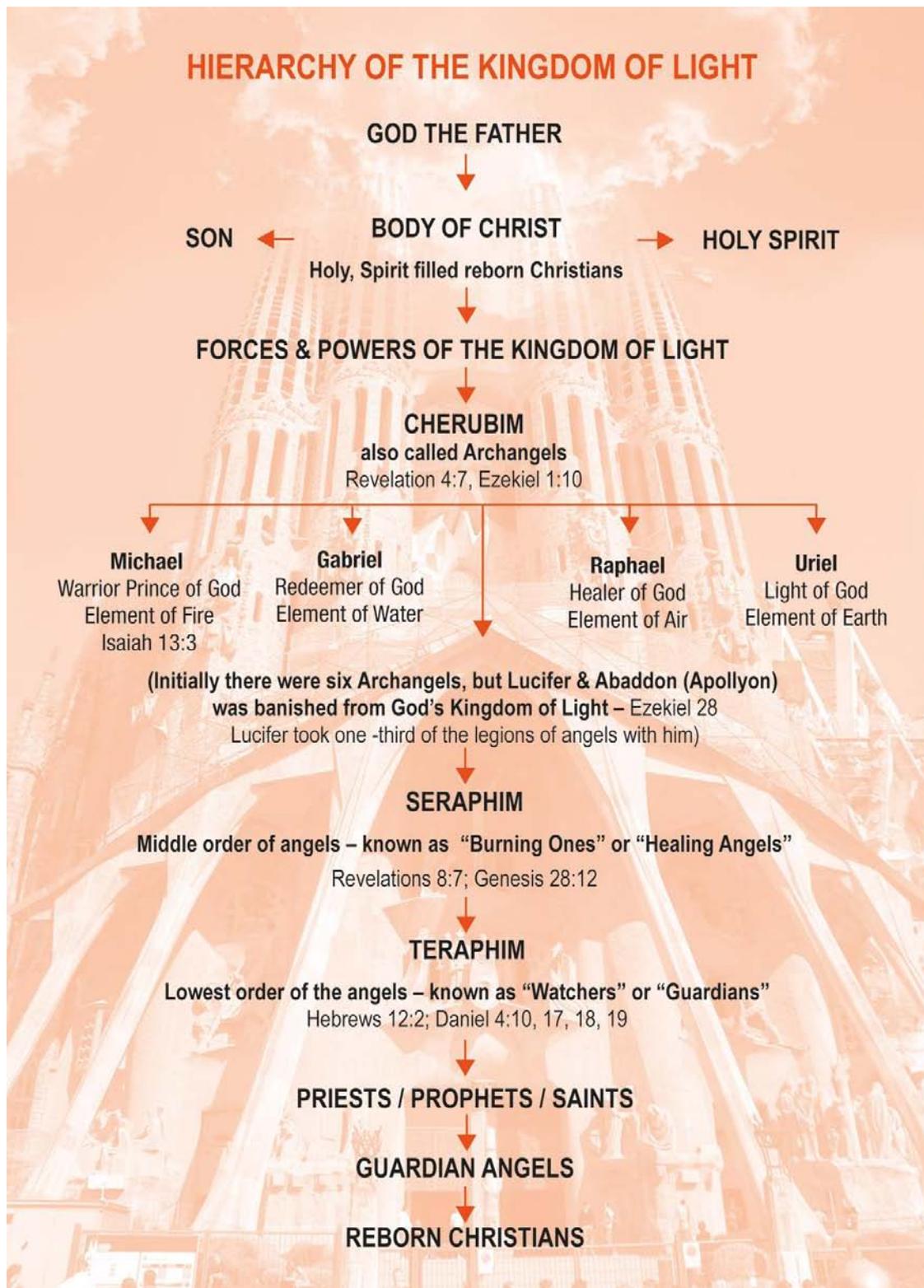


TABLE 7: HIERARCHY OF THE KINGDOM OF LIGHT

5.1 THE HIERARCHY OF GOD

5.1.1 THE TRIUNE GOD

The Bible reveals God not only as the Creator God, who creates the heaven and the earth and continually sustains it by His power, but also as a person – who can speak, create and possesses a mind and a will (Genesis 1:1, 26; Jeremiah 29:11; Ezekiel 18:30).

Brand notes that *“unless God takes the initiative and reveals Himself to man, man will stumble on in the darkness of his insufficient reason (Ephesians 4:17-18; Matthew 11:27). Man’s wisdom is foolishness when it comes to knowing God (1 Corinthians 1:19-21). However, the Christian believes that God has revealed Himself in the Scripture. Man must accept this self-revelation or else he will not be able to know God. We must rely on the Bible’s description of God.”*¹⁰⁰

Already in the book of Genesis, God revealed Himself to Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden as a personal God. The self-revelation proceeds throughout the history of Israel where God revealed Himself as a covenant God, which is seen in the mother promise of Genesis 3:15 – a pointer to the Messiah, Jesus Christ whom should come from the seed of the woman.¹⁰¹ The term trinity is not found in the Bible, but many texts refer to the Trinitarian Unity of God (I Tim. 2:5).¹⁰² This concept includes two confessions:

- One God existing in three persons. The Trinity is *“the central dogma of Christian theology”*. Historically the doctrine of the Trinity has been particularly important, because of the conflict with Arianism and other competing theological concepts during the fourth century became the first major doctrinal confrontation in Church history.

¹⁰⁰ Brand, Connie MJ Dr (2005) *Spiritual Warfare One: Biblical outline pertaining to Spiritual Authority*. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Self Published, p.22.

¹⁰¹ Möller, FP Dr (1991) *Woorde and Lig en Lewe (Deel 1)*. Westdene, Westhove: Evangelie Uitgewers, pp. 118-119.

¹⁰² Trinity – Wikipedia. (<http://www.en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Trinity>)

- The second confession, the “*doctrine of the Trinity*” teaches the unity of the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit, as three persons in one Godhead. The doctrine states that God is the Triune God, existing as three persons, but one being. Each of the persons is understood to having the one identical essence or nature, not merely similar natures.¹⁰³

According to Christian tradition the Trinitarian concept was introduced by the Gospels (John 1:1, 3, 14), Jesus Christ Himself (Matthew 28:19-20), as well as in other Biblical texts (Colossians 2:9; 1 John 4:3; Ephesians 1:21).

5.1.1.1 GOD THE FATHER

The Bible refers in many places to “God the Father” (II Timothy 1:2; II Corinthians 11:31; Thess. 1:1). *The Fatherhood of God exists firstly in that He is called the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ* (Matthews 11:25-27; John 15:8; 17:1; 17:21-26).¹⁰⁴

Jesus also teaches His disciples to talk about our Heavenly Father (Matthew 6:8-9, 18). Through Jesus the Messiah we can also become children of God; and by the Spirit of God do we have the privilege to call God, “Abba Father” (Romans 8:15). The Gospels refers to Jesus Christ – the God the Son – *in the first place, as the “Son of God”*.

5.1.1.1.1 THE CHARACTERISTICS OF GOD THE FATHER

The main characteristic of God is that He exists. As argued previously in this thesis, the Bible does not attempt to prove the existence of God, it simply declares it.

¹⁰³ Trinity – Wikipedia. (<http://www.en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Trinity>)

¹⁰⁴ Möller, F.P. Dr (1991) *Woorde and Lig en Lewe* (Deel 1). Westdene, Westhove: Evangelie Uitgewers, pp. 133-135.

Believe in the existence of God is absolutely foundational not only to an understanding of the Bible but also to life itself.

But without faith it is impossible to please him: for he that cometh to God must believe that he is, and that he is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him.

Heb 11:6

Belief in the existence of God is a prerequisite to having faith in Him personally. If a person rejects the fact of the existence of God he has no reference point for correctly understanding himself or the world around him. Nothing can be received or known of God unless one believes in His existence. Faith is the only connecting link between the Creator and the creature, God and man. God as a Spirit Being is invisible to the human eye, but it is through faith in Him that His existence is substantiated to us.

As Conner notes, God has given visible proves of His existence, there is no excuse for not believing in His existence.¹⁰⁵

5.1.1.2 JESUS CHRIST, THE SON OF GOD

Brand asserts that *“the wholeness and vibrancy of our relationship with God depends on letting God define himself for us in Christ; we should not try to define God outside of or along-side of Jesus Christ. Christ is our centre and everything in life must be viewed in relation to Him. Our reading of Scripture must be carried out without looking even for a moment to the right or left of Jesus Christ. ‘The Word’ incarnated is the fulfilment and complete expression of God’s revelation in Scripture. Our actual picture of God, not our theoretical knowledge about God, most influences how we feel about Him.*

¹⁰⁵ Conner, Kevin, (1980) *The Foundations of Christian Doctrine*, Portland Oregon, Bible Temple Publishing, p 43.

It is impossible to enjoy a genuine passionate and loving relationship with God when our mental picture of Him doesn't inspire passionate love."¹⁰⁶

The Doctrine of the Incarnation of Christ encompasses that the second person in the Christian Godhead, the Son of God or the Word, became flesh when he was miraculously conceived in the womb of the Virgin Mary. In the Incarnation, the divine nature of the Son was united with human nature in one divine Person Jesus Christ, who was both truly God and truly man.¹⁰⁷

The Doctrine of the Son is imbedded in the question: "Who do you say the Son of Man is?" The early church struggled with the issue until they finally formulated the creed and condemned Arianism. At the heart of the Nicene Creed are these words: "And (we believe) in one Lord Jesus Christ, the only begotten son of God, begotten of His Father before all worlds, God of God, Light of Light, very God of very God, begotten, not made, being of one substance with the Father"¹⁰⁸

The doctrine of the Virgin birth of Jesus was included in the two most widely used Christian creeds – the Nicene Creed, as well as the Apostles Creed.¹⁰⁹

The Cross is the central way Christ images God. Christ was not an innocent third party who was punished against His will to appease the Father's wrath. Christ is Himself God and He voluntarily took our sin and punished upon Himself.

5.1.1.3 GOD'S HOLY SPIRIT AS PART OF THE TRINITY

The Doctrine of the Holy Spirit is one of the most important doctrines in the Word of God and is one of the foremost truths of redemption.

¹⁰⁶ Brand, Connie MJ Dr (2005) Masters Degree: An exposition of Biblical Warfare central to Christian involvement in a theodicy considered from Philosophical-theological perspective. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published, p. 75.

¹⁰⁷ Incarnation – Wikipedia. (http://www.en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Incarnation_%28Christianity%29)

¹⁰⁸ The Doctrine of the Son. (http://www.bible.org/page.php?page_id=166)

¹⁰⁹ Virgin birth of Jesus – Wikipedia. (http://www.en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Virgin_birth_of_Jesus)

It is a doctrine of illumination, the meaning of the verb *פָּהַר* (*phōtizo*) is used of a general enlightening that Christ brings to all people, especially through the Gospel (John 1:9; 2 Tim 1:10); of the enlightening experience of conversion (Hebrew 6:4); of the understanding of Christian truth (Ephesians 1:18; 3:9); and of the searching character of future judgment (1 Corinthians 4:5).¹¹⁰ Therefore the believer should seek to know all he can of the person, ministry and work of the Holy Spirit as revealed in Scripture. From Genesis to Revelation, relative to both creation and redemption, the Holy

Spirit is seen in operation. Between Genesis 1:2 and Revelation 22:17, the beginning and consummation of the Spirit's work, we have a vast amount of Biblical revelation of the Holy Spirit's ministry. The Old Testament foretold the coming of "the last days" when the Holy Spirit would be poured out upon all flesh, in contrast to Old Testament times when the Spirit was only available to a select few in Israel. In God's plan, this present age has been given over to the ministry of the Holy Spirit.

This emphasize the importance of the believer coming to know, understand, appreciate and experience the person, work and ministry of the Spirit in his life. It is the Spirit who brings to the heart the revelation of the Father and the Son (John 14:15-26). Fear, formalism and ignorance rob the Church from the studying the doctrine of the Holy Spirit and thus making room for His blessed ministrations. The aim of this study is to show the place and role of the Holy Spirit in the Godhead by using the Scriptures that testify to the fact that the Holy Spirit is God, co-equal with the Father and the Son, yet a distinct person in the eternal Godhead.

5.1.2 THE BODY OF CHRIST (CHURCH)

The whole world is waiting for the sons of God to be made known.

¹¹⁰ Ryrie, Charles Caldwell (1999) *Basic Theology, A Popular Systematic Guide to Understanding Biblical Truth*. Chicago; Moody Press, pp.131-132.

The whole world is waiting for the Sons of God to proclaim the victory of Jesus over the works of Satan – and thereby destroy the works of the devil, not only on the face of the earth, but also in the invisible prisons where the spirit, soul and body is in captivity.

5.1.3 ANGELS AS PART OF GODS KINGDOM

The names and classifications of angels enrich our understanding of their nature and ministry. By reflection upon these, we gain insight into the wonders of God's person, power, and program. Nothing compares to the wonder of Gods glory as He reveals the wonders of His Kingdom. Among these riches are the angels of heaven. Angels are invisible spiritual beings created by Jesus Christ in order to serve Him.¹¹¹

They are powerful and created as ministering spirits to serve humanity, but their task includes the guiding of nations, assistance to the body of Christ and the protection of individuals.¹¹²

All angels are created in a state of holiness and are called “**sons of God**”. Although they are given very definite boundary, not to multiply – it does not say they cannot. Each type is important to the believer’s involvement in the revival of targeted spiritual warfare.¹¹³

5.1.3.1 NAMES, CLASSIFICATION AND ABODE

The names and classifications of angels enrich our understanding of their nature and ministry.¹¹⁴

¹¹¹ Hebrew 1:14; Colossians 1:16.

¹¹² II Thessalonians 1:6-7.

¹¹³ Mendez-Ferrell, Ana (2008) Shaking the Heavens. Ponte Vedra: Voice Of The Light Ministries, pp.56-63.

¹¹⁴ Dickason, Fred, C (1995) Angels, Elect and Evil. Chicago: Moody Press, p. 62.

By reflection upon these, we gain insight into the wonders of God's person, power, and program.

5.1.3.1.1 GENERAL NAMES OF ANGELS REVEALING ANGELS' MINISTRIES

The New Testament word for angel "**angelos**", like the Old Testament word "**malak**", means "**messenger**". Depending on the context, these words may be used of a human messenger (I Samuel 6:21; Isaiah 44:26; Matthew 11: 10; Luke 7:24; James 2:25) or of a supernatural, spiritual, heavenly being who attends upon God and is employed as His messenger to make known His purposes (Luke 1: 11) or to execute them (Psalm 104:4; Matthew 4:6; Revelation 16:1). This latter sense is by far the more frequent use in Scripture. This is certainly the sense in Hebrews 1:7, which states that angels are spirit beings created to serve God with the speed of wind and the fervency of fire.

The word "**minister**" is a related concept referring to angels. The Greek word is "**leitourgos**", a servant or minister, especially in connection with religious duties, as a priest (Romans 13:6; 15:16; Philippians 2:25; Hebrews 8:2).

The related Hebrew word is "**mishrathim**" (pl.), which is used in much the same way as the Greek word (Exodus 24: 13; 1 Kings 8:11; 2 Kings 4:43; 1 Chronicles 27:1). It is used of angels in Psalm 104:4. With such a name, angels are viewed as those who minister for, and in the presence of, God in spiritual service.

Another word related to Angels are the word, "**Host**" - which pictures God's heavenly angels as His army, and is the translation of the Hebrew "**sava**". In Psalm 103:20-21, angels are called upon to bless the Lord. In these verses, angels termed "**malakim**" and "**mishrathim**" are also termed "**sava**" (v. 21; d. Psalm 148:2). This term encompasses the whole array of God's heavenly army and sees them employed as a military force to accomplish His will and to do His battles. As such, they are an extension of His power and providence.

The name for God, Jehovah of Hosts, pictures God as the sovereign commander of a great heavenly army, who works all His pleasure in heaven and in earth (d. 1 Samuel 17:45; Psalm 89:6,8). In Luke 2:13, at the birth of Christ there appears a “*multitude of the heavenly host*” (***stratias ouraniou***).

Chariots apply to angels in the sense that they are part of God's host or army that accomplish His purpose. Psalm 68: 17 refer to angelic intervention that enabled victory over kings and armies that opposed Israel (d. Psalm 68: 12, 14). This term is used also in II Kings 6:16-17, where Elisha and his servant were protected by an angelic task force of horses and chariots. Zechariah's visions included four chariots, which carried out God's military judgments on the nations surrounding Israel. These are further described as “*four spirits of heaven, going forth after standing before the Lord of all the earth*” (Zechariah 6:5).

Watchers (Daniel 4: 13, 17) denotes angels as supervisors and agents under God employed by Him in the control of world government. They may be involved in decision-making and execution of decrees that affect world affairs.

Angels qualify as personalities because they have aspects of intelligence, emotions and a will. This is true of good and bad angels.¹¹⁵ The angel's functions directly under the will of God and the church cannot give them direct orders. A person may ask God to send his angels on a specific commission to assist us on earth, but we are only to Trust God for deliverance, not relying on angels; humankind should not summon angels for assistance.

Angel's fall under three categories in Scripture: the Teraphim (watchers or guardian angels), the Seraphim (burning or healing angels) and the Cherubim (archangels). The Apostle John reports about God's angels in Heaven in the book of Revelations:

¹¹⁵ Matthew 8:29; II Corinthians 11:3; I Peter 1:12).

“And I beheld, and I heard the voice of many angels round about the throne and the beasts and the elders: and the number of them was ten thousand times ten thousand, and thousands of thousands.”

Revelations 5:11

The names of angels are significant, giving insight into their nature and ministries. The special classes of Cherubim and Sephardim involve creatures of complex constitutions and important ministries associated with God’s presence and holiness. The living creatures are also angelic-type beings associated with God’s presence.¹¹⁶

Michael and Gabriel are the only angels, beside Satan, identified by personal names. Michael is the only designated Archangel. He is particular assigned to defend the nation of Israel. Gabriel is God’s special messenger to reveal truth about Messiah and His Kingdom. God’s angels will always promote the message found in the Holy Bible – as well as to serve and worship God alone.

5.1.3.1.2 NAMES REVEALING ANGELS’ NATURE

The Hebrew expression is descriptive of the great strength of angels (d. Psalm 103:20). Often the expression “**son(s) of**” is descriptive of a class of persons. The prophets were “**nebi'im**” or “**sons of nebi'im**”, indicating their classification. Some reckless or lawless persons were termed “**sons of Belial**”, which simply means a worthless person (1 Samuel 2:12; 25:17, 25). This is probably the classifying connotation in Jesus’ surnaming James and John “**Sons of Thunder**” (Mark 3:17). “**Elim**” speaks of strength so that “**bene elim**” refers to angels as a class of mighty ones.

“**Sons of God (bene Elohim)**” by the Hebrew idiom refers to angels as belonging to a class of “**mights or powers**”. In contrast with man, angels belong to the class of “**Elohim**”.

¹¹⁶ Dickason, Fred C (1995) Angels, Elect and Evil. Chicago: Moody press, p.79.

This term is used of angels in Job 1:6; 2:1; 38:7, and includes Satan. This term does not reflect the holy nature of angels because Satan, the evil one, is classed among them - but it does speak of their might. In Job, the “*bene Elohim*” are pictured as assembling before God, ministering to Him and answering to Him. Payne, with others, says that this term is used also of the elect of mankind; however, close inspection of the passages usually listed (Deuteronomy 14: 1; Hosea 1: 1 0; 11: 1) will disclose that they do not use the exact term, which seems to be a technical term to classify angels. This is probably the sense in which “*the sons of God*” in Genesis 6 is used.

“*Elohim*” by itself is sometimes applied to angels. The name “*Elohim*” is used both for God and for angels. The angels are “*Elohim*”; and as a family or class they are “*sons of Elohim*”. This is the understanding, evidently, of the writer to the Hebrews (as well as the translators of the Septuagint) when he takes “a little lower than “*Elohim*” as a little lower than angels (Hebrews 2:7; d. Psalm 8:5). This term pictures angels along with God as a supernatural class of beings of great strength and higher than weak and mortal man. “Moses ... described Jacob’s experience at Bethel by saying that “*Elohim* were revealed [plural verb] unto Him” (Genesis 35:7). He thus indicated that God and His angels, when envisioned together, might be called *Elohim*, supernatural beings. As the created servants of God, angels are reflective of God’s great power and immortality.

The “*Holy-ones*” in Psalms 89:6-7, refers to God’s angels. It is a translation of “*kadoshim*”, which means separated ones, those set apart to God, and “*The ‘assembly of the saints [holy ones]*” ... is best understood as referring to angels. The same expression is used in Job 5: 1; 15: 15; Daniel 8: 13; and Zechariah 14:5; and in each case it probably refers to angels. This term reflects their holy character and activities as those devoted to God.

The word “*Stars*” is used symbolically for angels, denoting their heavenly nature and abode.

God speaks to Job about the wonders of creation and the time when “*the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of God [bene elohim] shouted for joy (38:7)*”. It is rather natural that stars and angels be compared as heavenly creations that reflect the power and wisdom of God. They are often mentioned in the same context (Psalm 148:1-5).

Both angels and stars are called “*the host of heaven*” (Deuteronomy 4: 19; 17:3; 1 Kings 22: 19; Nehemiah 9:6; Psalm 33:6). In fact, astrology is connected to demon worship through this term (Jeremiah 19: 13; Acts 7:42; particularly 2 Kings 23:5, 10,24). Divination and worship of the stars is condemned by the Scripture (Deuteronomy 18: 1 0-14) as connected with demonological elements.

It is not strange, then, to note that Satan is described in his rebellion and warfare against God as a “*wonder in heaven ... a great red dragon ... and his tail drew the third part of the stars of heaven, and did cast them to the earth*” (Revelation 12:3-4 KJV). This force of spirit beings is later called “Satan ... and his angels” (Revelation 12:9). Stars, then, speak symbolically of heavenly spirits created by God.

5.1.3.2 TYPES OF ANGELS

God works through angels behind the scenes. Scripture reveals that there are various types of angels having different functions. God sends angels to execute judgment on people, cities and nations,¹¹⁷ but they also rescue people from chains and imprisonment and danger.¹¹⁸ God assigned some angels to accompany his people to heaven.¹¹⁹

¹¹⁷ Revelations 15:1; Ezekiel 9:5.

¹¹⁸ Acts 12:7.

¹¹⁹ Luke 16:22.

John Klein and Adam Spears reveal information about the three types of angels. God assigned angels, stipulated responsibilities “**arche, (dominion)**” in a set place “**oiketerion**”.¹²⁰

5.1.3.2.1 CHERUBIM (ARCH-ANGELS)

Cherubim (Heb. pl. of **cherub**) seem to be angelic beings of the highest order or class, created with indescribable powers and beauty. As is the case with many heavenly realities, their character and appearance are so far beyond human imagination and present comprehension that they must be described in earthly terms obviously designed to convey something surpassingly supernatural (Ezekiel 1 :5-14; 28: 12-13, 17).

The archangels guard God’s throne, His glory and the “**Tree of Life**” – which was in the Garden of Eden. After the fall, humanity was driven from the Garden and God gave his Cherubim angels the order to guard the way into the Garden with their flaming swords.

5.1.3.2.1.1 DESCRIPTION OF CHERUBIM

God made the visible appearances of the cherubim to differ, as each occasion might best be served, however, certain basic descriptions might be traced through the Bible. The first biblical reference to angels is to the cherubim of Genesis 3:24 who were placed at the gate of the Garden of Eden after man was expelled. They were stationed with flaming swords to protect the way to the tree of life, lest sinful man should intrude into God's presence or presume to take of the tree of life. They teach us that sin and paradise are incompatible.

¹²⁰ Klein, John & Spears, Adam (2007) *Lost in Translation*. Bend, OR: Selah Publishing Group, pp. 81-86.

Cherubim appear next in connection with the designated dwelling place of God in the tabernacle. They appear in the form of golden images upon the mercy seat, the lid on the Ark of the Covenant in the Old Testament worship tent (Exodus 25: 17-22) and in Solomon's temple (II Chronicles 3: 10-13). The ark and mercy seat with its symbolic cherubim were kept in the innermost sanctuary of the tabernacle where God's Shekinah glory was manifest. In this connection they are designated "*the cherubim of glory*" (Hebrews 9:5), probably as associated with the glory of God. The *cherubim* are one of the most important symbols of the Mosaic worship.

The cherubim on the mercy seat seem to be represented as having one face and two wings each. They sat on opposite ends of the mercy seat facing each other and stretching out their wings so as to cover the mercy seat. They seem to be looking down at the lid of the ark rather than at one another.

During Ezekiel's captivity in Babylon, he received a vision of the glory of God, which involved the presence of "*four living creatures*" (Ezekiel 1:1-28). Later references to this vision identify these creatures as cherubim (10:4, 18-22). They were, along with "*the glory of God,*" associated with the golden images in the mercy seat, "*the seat of the idol of jealousy*" (8:3).

The cherubim of Ezekiel's vision were complex creatures. Each one has four faces and four wings, and the overall appearance could be likened to a man (1:5-6), "not that of the mythological winged sphinx of Assyrian-type lion, as is claimed by liberal historicism". They had hands of a man under their wings (v. 8). The four faces of each of them are compared with the faces of a man, a lion, a bull, and an eagle (v. 10). They had the appearance of polished bronze and bright coals of fire, and their movements flashed as lightning (vv. 7, 13-14).

5.1.3.2.1.2 DESIGNS AND DUTIES OF THE CHERUBIM

What purpose do cherubim serve and in what activities are they engaged? Though it seems obvious that they are an angelic class, they are never termed “angels”. Perhaps this is because they are not *messengers (malakim)* in their duties. They seem never to carry revelation or instruction from God to men.

Their main purpose and activity might be summarized in this way: They are *proclaimers* and *protectors of God's glorious presence, His sovereignty, and His holiness*. This characterization may be substantiated by reference to their various appearances and connections in Scripture.

Since they are nowhere sent from God's presence but are “*confined to the seat of the divine habitation and the manifestation of the Divine Being,*” they designate the place of abode of the presence of God as in the Garden of Eden, the inner room of the tabernacle, and later of the temple. Psalm 80: 1 and Psalm 99: 1 refer to the Shekinah glory as representing God who is “*enthroned above the cherubim.*”

In one sense they *proclaim to men the transcendent and unapproachable God*, since they forbid entrance to Paradise and protect and shade the ark. But in another sense, they *speak of the revelation of God's glory to man*, since they are associated with the visible form of the glory of God and present themselves in the form of earthly living creatures and men.

From the vision in Ezekiel 1, the cherubim *indicate the intervention of a sovereign God in the affairs of men*. In this vision they were positioned under the four corners of a platform on which was seated the glory of God in the appearance of a man upon His throne (1:22-23, 26). Under each of the cherubim were four peculiar wheels composed of two wheels each, probably at right angles to each other and of the same size and centered upon the same vertical diameter.

The impression is that these wheels could run in any direction immediately, without taking any space or time to turn around as single wheels would. The platform with its throne was propelled by the powerful wings of the cherubim with a great rushing noise (perhaps as jet engines 1:9,24). The whole vision speaks of the glory of God moving swiftly and sovereignty upon the earth and in heaven to accomplish His holy purposes and judgments. From a survey of the book of Ezekiel, we may see the glory of God, associated with the cherubim, judging the sin of Israel and the sin of the nations, and intervening on behalf of Israel to bring about the accomplishments of God's promised ultimate blessing upon His chosen nation in the millennial kingdom.

A final interesting point might be noted concerning the cherubim. It seems clear that they emphasize God's presence and holiness in their symbolic form upon the mercy seat, the lid of the Ark of the Covenant. These things were kept in the innermost sanctuary of the tabernacle where God's Shekinah glory was pleased to dwell with His people. Their God met sinful man on the basis of blood sacrifice and through a God-given priesthood.

In the ark were kept a golden pot of manna, Aaron's rod that budded, and the tables of the law (Hebrews 9:4). These contents were reminders of God's gracious provisions scorned and rejected by man.

When the high priest entered once a year to sprinkle the blood of the atonement for sin on the mercy seat, the blood granted entrance to God and atoned for sins (Leviticus 17: 11). Thus, the cherubim, proclaimers of God's holiness, would symbolically look down and see the sprinkled blood on the mercy seat covering the sins of the people as symbolized by the three items under the lid of the ark. All this God-designed imagery pointed forward to Christ, who would shed His blood not just to cover sins but also to put them away by the sacrifice of Himself (Hebrews 9:6-14, 25-26).

In witnessing the sprinkling of the divinely provided blood, “the cherubim of glory” (Hebrews 9:5) were not only partakers of God's glory but **proclaimers of the grace of God** that provides salvation and access for man, both in the Old Testament symbolism and in the New Testament reality in Christ.

5.1.3.2.1.3 THE FOUR PRINCIPAL CHERUBIM / ARCHANGELS

Michael, the warrior Angel of God, is in charge of part of God's army of angels and while fighting on behalf of God's children – he is identified as “**our prince**”.¹²¹ Satan himself was one of the archangels before the fall. He was the most beautiful angel and was in charge of the praises in heaven.¹²²

The English prefix “**arch**” derives from the Greek word “**arche**”, meaning “**principal or chief**”. The Cherubim angels are of the highest and the most powerful order.

The Bible reveals that there were four cherubim angels: (1) **Michael** – the warrior prince of God; (2) **Gabriel** – the redeemer of God; (3) **Raphael** – the healer of God; (4) **Uriel** – light of God. Two of the archangels who fell from their position in heaven, was: (1) **Lucifer** – the accuser of the brethren, previously the covering archangel and (2) **Abaddon** – now the angel of death previously the archangel of Life.

The Bible does not give reference to Uriel and Raphael, but their names are revealed in other Apocryphal Books, such as the Talmud and the Mishnah.

Charles Ryrie notes that the Cherubim's are referred to as covering angels – which is directly linked to the “**chuppah**”, the literal covering, central to the ancient Hebrew wedding ceremonies. They literally surround the throne of God.

¹²¹ Daniel 10:21.

¹²² Mendez-Ferrell, Ana (2008) Shaking the Heavens. Ponte Vedra: Voice Of The Light Ministries, pp.56-59.

Cherubim's have six wings, four faces and are quite large and include: a man's face, a lion's face, a bull's face and an eagle's face. They are also covered with eyes.¹²³

5.1.3.2.2 SERAPHIM (BURNING ONES / HEALING ANGELS)

Another special class of angels are the seraphim. They also, as the cherubim, are closely associated with the glory of God and are probably related closely in class to them. The seraphim are of the middle order of angels, called the "**burning ones or healing angels**".¹²⁴ According to Scripture, the seraphim's burn with fire and are also covered with eyes. They are God's messenger angels rushing from heaven to earth to do God's will on earth.¹²⁵ Seraphim can draw near to people and minister to them directly, carrying out God's orders and speaking to them.

In the year that king Uzziah died I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple. Above it stood the seraphim's: each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly.

Isaiah 6:6-7

5.1.3.2.2.1 DESCRIPTION OF THE SERAPHIM

The Hebrew term (*seraphim*) means "*burning ones*." This probably speaks of their consuming devotion to God rather than of their outward ministry. Oehler says that "*they are evidently represented in human form; for faces, hands, and feet are spoken of*". They each have six wings.

Oehler writes: The ***symbolism of their appearance*** is very simple.

¹²³ Revelations 4:7; Ezekiel 1:10.

¹²⁴ Klein, John & Spears, Adam (2007) Lost in Translation. Bend, OR: Selah Publishing Group, pp. 81-86.

¹²⁵ Isaiah 6:1-2; Revelations 8:7; Genesis 28:12.

With two wings they cover their faces – to indicate that even the most exalted spirits cannot bear the full vision of the Divine glory; with two they cover their feet,-to symbolize their reverence [speaking of hesitancy to tread uninvited upon holy ground];-with two they fly – to express the swiftness with which they execute the Divine commands.ⁱ

It seems that the seraphim were hovering above on both sides of Jehovah on His throne. They were crying to each other, as antiphonal choirs, “*Holy, Holy, Holy*”, *is the Lord of hosts; the whole earth is full of His glory*” (Isaiah 6:3). Whether there were only two seraphim or two rows of several seraphim, it is difficult to determine. The force of their voices was such that the supports of the throne room shook (v.4). The altar mentioned probably corresponds to the golden altar of incense in the tabernacle. It stood before the veil closing off the holiest place and was used when the high priest would enter into the symbolic presence of God. Incense placed upon coals taken from the altar would fill the holiest place with smoke, signifying that sinful man could not look directly upon the holiness of God. Note that in Isaiah’s vision “*the temple was filling with smoke*” (v.4).

5.1.3.2.2 DESIGNS AND DUTIES OF THE SERAPHIM

Seraphim are angelic-type beings that perform a ***priestly-type service*** for God. Succinctly put, their purpose is to show forth Jehovah’s holiness and ethical transcendence. This may be substantiated by their name and activities.

The very name “***seraphim***” speaks of their consuming devotion to God. They are afire with adoration of the holy God. Their great cry is in praise of the perfect holiness of God.

To ascribe the term “**holy**” to God three times means, according to Hebrew idiom, to recognize God as extremely, perfectly holy. Therefore, they *praise and proclaim the perfect holiness of God*.

The seraphim also express the holiness of God in that they *proclaim that man must be cleansed* of sin's moral defilement before he can stand before God and serve Him. One of them, upon Isaiah's confession of sinfulness and uncleanness (reminiscent of the leper's cry, Leviticus 13:45), flew with a live coal from the altar near Jehovah and touched Isaiah's lips to purge his sin (Isaiah 6:6-7). The action was symbolic of cleansing, but the cleansing was real. This priestly-type service for God speaks of God's holy standard and the demand that the believer be cleansed before service. Isaiah's lips, once unclean, are now cleansed and ready to speak God's message to men (vv. 8-9).

5.1.3.2.3 TERAPHIM (WATCHERS / GUARDIAN ANGELS)

The teraphim are the lowest order of angels and are the ones that can take on human form and maintain it for extended periods.¹²⁶ The seraphim's are also denoted as “**Watchers / guardian angels**” with the duty to watch over humanity and serve as protectors of men's souls.¹²⁷ Angels are engaged in ministering spiritual and material goods, fighting battles and arranging circumstances.

Fallen teraphim are called “**idols / images (sayir)**”.¹²⁸ They are functioning as powers behind human idols / images. Some of the “**Watchers**” who did not keep the boundary God gave them pertaining to sexual intercourse with earthly woman, are already kept in darkness for the judgment of the *great day*.¹²⁹

¹²⁶ Hebrew 13:2.

¹²⁷ Daniel 4:10, 17-18; Matthew 18:10.

¹²⁸ Genesis 31:34 NASB translation.

¹²⁹ Jude 6; II Peter 2:4.

Greek mythology refers to fallen angels (*the satyrs*) as half-man, half-beasts – the offspring of “**watchers**” and earthly women.¹³⁰

5.2 THE THEOLOGY OF THE KINGDOM

Experts from the Master Degree of Prof Dr Connie Brand on Kingdom Theology declare:¹³¹

The Bible records a **bloody battleground**. It pulls back the curtain on the cosmic drama of two kingdoms played out on the stage of human history. The story of the Bible opens with the serpent’s primeval challenge of God’s newly created order and it culminates with the ultimate triumph of Jesus. Genesis describes how the struggle begins. Revelation reveals how the kingdoms of this world finally become the Kingdom of our God and of His Christ. The rest of the Scripture – its history, its story of redemption, its prophecy – is concerned with the struggle to establish that Kingdom. Until that final event unfolds, when Jesus Christ will reign forever and ever, the saints of God have a **commission: to proclaim the Kingdom of God**.

From the world’s point of view, the Church or the saints are the key players in this drama. God was incarnate in the Man Christ Jesus, and now the Lord Jesus is present in the saints, through the Holy Spirit. The Church is Christ present in the world.

[God’s] intent was that now, through the church, the manifold wisdom of God should be made known to the rulers and authorities in the heavenly realms.

Ephesians 3:10

¹³⁰ Klein, John & Spears, Adam (2007) *Lost in Translation*. Bend, OR: Selah Publishing Group, pp. 81-86.

¹³¹ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2005) *Masters Degree: An Exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian Involvement in a Theodicy Considered from Philosophic-Theological Perspective*. Lynnwood-Ridge, Gauteng: Unpublished, pp.39-41.

Jesus send the Church into the world to be the light of the world and to establish His Kingdom on earth.

As you sent me into the world, I have sent them into the world.

John 17:18

Satan's singular focus is to resist God's purpose by making war on the saints. The term ***Great Commission*** is found nowhere in the New Testament, but it has been used to identify the command Jesus gave His disciples to go into the entire world and preach the Gospel. Actually, the Great Commission is more than a call to missions in the traditional sense. **It is a re-commissioning to represent the authority of the King in every aspect of life.** The Commission was first given in Genesis 1.

Let us make man in our image, in our likeness, and let them rule.

Genesis 1:26

God ordained humanity to be His representatives on earth. Man was originally created to rule, to have dominion, to be representatives of His Kingdom order in the earth. The terms ***kingdom and dominion*** are virtually interchangeable, because ***kingdom*** is derived from ***king*** and ***dominion***. A kingdom is the dominion of a king. Jesus is King where Jesus is Lord.

This Great Commission to have dominion is detailed in Genesis 1:28: ***“God blessed them and said to them, ‘Be fruitful and increase in number; fill the earth and subdue it. Rule over ... every living creature that moves on the ground.’”***¹³²

The Commission is repeated in Psalm 8. The questions arise as to, “Why is man created? What purpose do we have in the vastness of the cosmos? The answer follows:

¹³² Etymologically speaking the word used in the Hebrew for Genesis 1:28 is (“Râdâh”), meaning to rule over... to take dominion to subdue..., to take the honey out of the hive..., to take out of the fire..., to tread upon..., to take control...

You have made him to have dominion over the works of Your hands.

Psalm 8:6

Genesis 3 reveals that there is a fallen creature whose singular purpose is to prevent God from establishing His Kingdom order in the earth, and he does this by challenging man's right to represent the Creator. In the great conflict of Genesis 3, man failed to take dominion over the creeping serpent, and Satan successfully undermined the Kingdom.¹³³

When man sinned, he not only lost his relationship with God, he lost his spiritual dominion as well. **Instead of having dominion, man became dominated – by sin, by himself and by Satan.** Instead of remaining representatives of God's Kingdom, human persons became subjects of the kingdom of darkness.

5.2.1 JESUS AND THE KINGDOM COMMISSION

Experts from the Master Degree of Prof Dr Connie Brand on Kingdom Theology declare:¹³⁴

Jesus, of course, was that fulfillment of the need for a Saviour – someone who could restore our broken relationship with the Father. And along with that we needed someone who could crush the head of the serpent, who could restore man's dominion over God's ageless adversary, Satan. He came not only as Saviour, but to rule as Lord, One who has dominion.

¹³³ **Kingdom: Definition:** a. Davidic or messianic, The millennial kingdom on earth ruled by Messiah (70). B. Kingdom, mystery form, Christendom during the time between the first and second comings of Christ (70). Quoted from *Basic Theology, A Popular Systematic Guide to Understanding Biblical Truth*, Charles Caldwell Ryrie, Moody Press, p. 624.

¹³⁴ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2005) Masters Degree: An Exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian Involvement in a Theodicy Considered from Philosophic-Theological Perspective. Lynnwood-Ridge, Gauteng: Un-Published, pp.41-44.

Jesus came to resurrect the Kingdom Commission: “**Have dominion ... upon the earth**” (Genesis 1:28). According to the New Testament, Jesus of Nazareth fulfilled the prophecies of the Old Testament. He came to sit on the throne of David and establish God’s Kingdom in the earth, albeit a different kind of kingdom than the popular Jewish notion of a political empire.

Jesus declared that His Kingdom is not of this world and yet, paradoxically, we witness a very real and present manifestation of it. Jesus taught His disciples to pray like this: “**Your kingdom come, your will be done on earth as it is in heaven**” (Matthew 6:10). Regardless of how much we may spiritualize the Kingdom, both the Church and her adversaries in the world – from early Romans to the present-day Communists – have recognized that the coming spiritual Kingdom has a dramatic influence on the here and now.

Christ’s claim to a spiritual Kingdom did not assuage His adversaries. He was not a real political threat, and yet He was more of a menace to both Jews and Romans of His day than any aspiring politician or military leader could ever have hoped to be.

The Kingdom of heaven is God’s rule and order entering a chaotic world. The work of the Son of God, according to John 1:1-5, is prefigured in the creation account: Jesus is light in the darkness, order in the chaos (Genesis 1:1-5).

For the New Testament writers Matthew and Luke, this Kingdom of God in Christ meant two things: a new way of living and an outpouring of divine power to validate that lifestyle and to overcome the powers that resist it. Everything that Jesus ‘began to do and to teach’ (Acts 1:1) ¹ is somehow related to the Kingdom.

He taught the principles of the Kingdom with Kingdom authority, and He did the works of the Kingdom with Kingdom power. “**From that time on [from the time of His baptism in water and in the Spirit] Jesus began to preach, ‘Repent, for the kingdom of heaven is near’**” (Matthew 4:17).

This little summary of the ministry of Christ sets the stage for the Sermon on the Mount in Matthew 5-7, which represents the greatest single collection of the teachings of Christ. Its theme? **Principles of the Kingdom!** Strikingly, the Beatitudes which introduce the Sermon, open and close with references to Kingdom lifestyle.

Jesus taught with authority (Matthew 7:29), not like the scribes and the Pharisees whose authority was based on intellect and tradition, but with the real power of God demonstrated by His works:

“Jesus went throughout Galilee, teaching ... [and] preaching the good news of the kingdom and healing every disease and sickness among the people ” (Matthew 4:23). So with a new twist, the New Testament claims that Jesus is King, fulfilling the messianic promises of the Old Testament. He is the One who has bruised the head of the serpent.

As John wrote, **“The reason the Son of God appeared was to destroy the devil’s work”** (1 John 3:8). Since the beginning of time, there has been a conflict of the kingdoms and Christ is the Victor, the Conqueror – the King! God’s Kingdom has come and will come. It has prevailed and will prevail. God’s Kingdom will not be fully restored until Jesus comes again, but in the meantime, **the saints have a commission to fulfill and a battle to win.**

5.2.2 THE GREAT RE-COMMISSION

Experts from the Master Degree of Prof Dr Connie Brand on Kingdom Theology declare:¹³⁵

¹³⁵ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2005) Masters Degree: An Exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian Involvement in a Theodicy Considered from Philosophic-Theological Perspective. Lynnwood-Ridge, Gauteng: Un-Published, pp.44-46.

The Old Testament, then, is the story of the Kingdom – commission, abortion and prophetic expectation. The New Testament is the story of the Kingdom at hand. Jesus the Messiah came to fulfill the Old Testament prophetic hope and initiate the restoration of the Kingdom. He preached and demonstrated the Kingdom of God in His earthly ministry and He crushed the head of the serpent in His death and resurrection.

In so doing He destroyed the power base of the kingdom of darkness and made it possible once again for God's people to fulfill the Genesis commission to have dominion. This is clear in the final chapter of Matthew:

All authority in heaven and on earth [absolute dominion] has been given to me.

Matthew 28:18

Why do we bypass this verse? Why are we so ignorant of the conflict of the kingdoms underlying this declaration? This is the hinge of Bible history. What God has done in Christ is being transferred to God's people in a Great Re-commission. What the saints in the Old Testament had only dreamed of is about to occur.

Therefore [because of the reestablishment of God's authority in the earth through Christ] go and make disciples of all nation.

Matthew 28:18-19

We must realize that the Great Commission is directly related to spiritual warfare. And that the fulfillment of the Great Commission requires an understanding of the clash of the kingdoms and the **dynamics of spiritual conflict**. Unfortunately, Satan understands the purposes of God far better than the saints understand the plans of hell.

Jesus promised that the gates, or counsels, of hell will not prevail against the Church, but this assumes that we are not ignorant of those counsels. The Bible is a battle manual and one of its basic premises is that we wrestle not against flesh and blood. Our spiritual enemies are very real.

The Kingdom of God cannot be established in anyone's life, let alone in the world, **without a direct confrontation with the unholy one**

5.3 THE SIGNS OF THE KINGDOM OF GOD

The kingdom of God refers to the spiritual rule of Christ within the heart of those who are saved (LS Chafer, Arno C Gaebelein and William Kelly).¹³⁶

On the Day of Pentecost, the presence of God could be experienced for the first time. The kingdom of God is opened up and men are given the opportunity to enter into it and live in it.¹³⁷

“For the kingdom of God is not meat and drink: but righteousness and peace and joy in the Holy Ghost.”

Romans 14:17

5.3.1 THE FIRST SIGN OF THE KINGDOM: THE PRESENCE OF THE KING

The FIRST SIGN of a kingdom is the presence of the King.¹³⁸ The heart is meant to be the very dwelling place of God. Perfect, direct fellowship with God – is the crowning blessing of the New Covenant. Only God's Spirit can bring the Kingdom of God from heaven into the hearts of His people. Jesus Christ's ultimate secret is not open to the natural eye. It lies not in His Divine miracles or signs and wonders; it is even not in His power or His mind-boggling teachings. **Little by little the close followers of Jesus detect His true secret – there was someone living inside Him!**

¹³⁶ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2005) Masters Degree: An Exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian Involvement in a Theodicy considered from Philosophic-Theological Perspective. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published p.38.

¹³⁷ Murray, Andrew Dr (1982) Andrew Murray on the Holy Spirit. New Kensington, PA: Whitaker House, pp.14-15.

¹³⁸ Matthews 16:28.

Gene Edwards, who holds an M.Div from South-Western Baptist Theology Seminary, interpreted the Divine Life, which the disciples of Jesus Christ see within Him, as follows: At last it dawned to Jesus' disciples just how different He really was. He was biologically different, that is, He had aspects of a nature they did not have... It seems as if John was aware of how Jesus Christ lived the Christian life – more than any other person ever did. Jesus' intimate relationship with the Father captivated him. Jesus Christ drew His whole way of living from the Father. 'The father abides in me and I in Him' (John 15).¹³⁹ If there is feebleness in the Church of God, it is because His people do not know Him.

Man is in need of knowing God – not through teachings, the mind, or the imagination, but in the living evidence, which God gives in a man's heart. Subsequently, man will know the wonder of the Divine presence God will bring. The presence of God is attainable, within reach of every believer. Believers must wait upon God, to reveal Himself. Wherever there is the desire: ***"I want more of God"***, He will take possession.

My soul thirsted for God, for the living God.

Psalms 42:4

5.3.2 THE SECOND SIGN: THE RULE / REIGN OF THE KING

The SECOND SIGN of a kingdom is its rulership.¹⁴⁰ Obedience is the one thing which is essential in man's life. From the book of Genesis, to the last book of the Bible, the message stays the same: Blessed is the man who does God's commands for they will have a right to the tree of life.¹⁴¹

¹³⁹ Edwards, Gene (1992) *The Secret of the Christian Life: Fellowship with the Living Lord*. Wheaton, Illinois: Tyndale House Publishers, p. 48.

¹⁴⁰ Psalms 103:19.

¹⁴¹ Revelation 22:14.

God's law is unchangeable. The whole redemption of Christ consists in the restoration of obedience to its place. God entrusted His *Word* to men and woman who obey Him – and crown obedience with His favor and His presence. This is the keynote of the Christian life.¹⁴²

If you obey my voice indeed... ye shall be a peculiar treasure unto me above all people.

Exodus 19:5

Obedience is better than (any) sacrifice.

I Samuel 15:22-23

Jesus Christ declared that He came to do the will of His Father. In His whole ministry on earth, obedience was the very essence of salvation. **Obedience is the certificate of Christian character and the secret of a good conscience.** It is, as obedience becomes the fervor of our lives that God's Holy Spirit will open our ears to hear His teaching. Only the joy of hearing the Father's voice will provide the joy and strength for true obedience. The great lesson to learn is that through waiting – moment by moment – the believer will see and hear what the Father had to say.¹⁴³

In commenting on obedience, Roberts Liardon argues that a church of joyful obedience is desperately needed in the last days. God can only use the believer to the extent that he gives total surrender to live the Divine life.¹⁴⁴

The disciples are commissioned to proclaim the Kingdom of God. The commission is repeated in Psalm 8:6. Jesus Christ came to establish the Kingdom of God on earth.¹⁴⁵ His kingdom is not of this world.

The spiritual kingdom of God has a dramatic influence – it is God's rule of righteousness entering a chaotic world.¹⁴⁶ Righteousness is the scepter of the kingdom. The King established His rule through righteousness and judgment.

¹⁴² Murray, Andrew Dr (1984) *The Blessing of Obedience*. New Kensington, PA: Whitaker House, pp.7-18.

¹⁴³ I John 2:4.

¹⁴⁴ Liardon, Roberts (1993) *Final Approach*. Lake Mary, FL: Creation House Publishers, p. 150.

¹⁴⁵ Matthews 28:18-19; I John 3:8; Matthews 4:23.

The Kingdom was at hand and repentance was necessary.¹⁴⁷ Jesus commanded His disciples to go into the world and to proclaim the Gospel.

The great commission is a re-commissioning to represent the authority of the Kingdom on earth in every aspect of life. God gave the first commission in Genesis where He declared: “**Let us make man in our image, in our likeness and let them rule**”.¹⁴⁸

Stubbornness will cause a man to reject the word of the Lord. Stubbornness is a manifestation of Pride. Stubbornness and rebellion goes hand-in-hand. Pride is self-exaltation. Those who exalt themselves are victims of Leviathan’s control. They are in rebellion and are trying to usurp the position of God. Israel was often referred to as a *stiff-neck* people.¹⁴⁹

But they obeyed not, neither inclined their ear, but made their neck stiff that they might nor hear, not receive instruction.

Jeremiah 17:23

Jesus Christ came to crush the head of the Serpent and restored man’s dominion over the adversary. Scripture reveals that this battle will go on until God will bring everything under the rule and power of Jesus Christ the Messiah. Revelations reveals how the kingdoms of this world will finally bow their knee before the Kingdom of God and of Jesus Christ the Messiah.

5.3.3 THE THIRD SIGN: THE POWER OF THE KINGDOM

The THIRD SIGN of a Kingdom is that a kingdom is not in word but in power.¹⁵⁰

¹⁴⁶ Genesis 1:105.

¹⁴⁷ Eckhardt, John (2011) *The Invisible King and His Kingdom*. Lake Mary, Florida: Charisma House Book Group, pp. 190-191.

¹⁴⁸ Genesis 1:26-28.

¹⁴⁹ Exodus 33:3; Deuteronomy 31:7.

¹⁵⁰ I Corinthians 4:20.

5.3.3.1 PENTECOST THE SIGN OF THE POWER OF GOD'S HOLY SPIRIT

Pentecost was the sign that the kingdom was arriving. Israel was waiting for this outpouring. This was the fulfillment of Joel's prophecy.¹⁵¹

Those who accepted the salvation were being baptized with God's Holy Spirit. Kingdom living pertains to Divine Spirit-filled living.

According to the standard of the New Covenant, the greatest sin is DISBELIEF in the power of Jesus Christ to keep us from sinning and that will enable the believer to walk, pleasing, to God. Although God's Standard is impossible for men, it is not impossible for God – who works in the believer to will and to do by His mighty Holy Spirit. DIVINE LIVING enters the Church when the grace of God is preached along side the doctrine of HOLINESS.

Although there was a revival during the **Reformation** of the 1600's where the doctrine of justification by faith was preached, it still lacked Pentecostal power. Church history shows us that it took half a century before some of the great doctrines of our faith was fully understood and formulated. It was NOT given to one generation to develop more than one truth at a time. In studying the true standard of spiritual devotion to God, our only safety is in careful study guided by God's Holy Spirit hand-in-hand with teachings of Scripture. They developed a religion in which **the grace of God** was connected with **the confession of sins**, but there was a great **lack of faith in the ministry of God's Holy Spirit**. God is gentle and will never force Himself on anybody.

R.A. Torrey revealed more insight on the baptism with God's Holy Spirit:¹⁵² God's Holy Spirit is given in answer to definite prayer – the believer however has to ask.¹⁵³

¹⁵¹ Joel 3:15-18

¹⁵² Torrey, RA (1996) The Person and the Work of God's Holy Spirit. Springdale, PA: Whitaker House Publishers, p. 247.

¹⁵³ Luke 11:13.

In the New Covenant, the Kingdom of God means two things: (1) A new way of living; and (2) An outpouring of divine power to make this new way of living possible.¹⁵⁴ Many tell us that we should not pray for the baptism with God's Spirit, but they argue that God's Holy Spirit was once given to the Church at Pentecost; they do not see any need to pray for it.

On this Dr. A.J. Gordon replied that Jesus Christ was given as an abiding gift to the world on Calvary, however, each individual has to be born separately. Just so it was with God's Spirit on the day of Pentecost. God's way of bestowing is by prayer.

When a believer come to God in prayer and believed he pray in accordance to God's will, such a man shall receive. When a believer asks for the baptism with God's Holy Spirit the believer can claim the baptism resting on the naked Word of God. The question is not if God will baptize the person, the question is if the believer's life "**is laid down**". He has to ask God in a prayer, to empty him of his **self-will** and to bring his will into conformity with the will of God. After the person's will is lay down, he may go on asking for the baptism of God's Holy Spirit by faith.¹⁵⁵ The believer needs to claim God's promise and let God take care of the manner of manifestation. Even after the baptism with God's Holy Spirit, the believer needs repeated refilling with God's Spirit,¹⁵⁶ to increase the power of God in his life.

5.3.3.2 THE CHURCH ALMOST LOST THE CONCEPT OF INDWELLING

Christ challenged his disciples with the statement: "**Believe in Me and out of your belly shall flow rivers of living water**". The great hindrance to the power of **God's Word, is a belief that God's standards are impossible to maintain**. What is impossible with man is however possible with God.

¹⁵⁴ John 7:37-39.

¹⁵⁵ I John 5:13-15; Acts 2:38-39.

¹⁵⁶ Ephesians 5:18-19

Everything depends on the true relationship being maintained between God and man. God works in all, and man receives all from God – trusting God to work it out, to obey, and to live out a life like Christ. **Obedience must precede baptism** of God's Spirit. Personal attachment to Jesus, the personal acceptance of Him as Lord and Master to love and obey, was the disciple's preparation for the baptism of His Spirit.¹⁵⁷ What Christians do not understand is that the obedience to love is the first step to the fullness of the Spirit. Obedience precedes the baptism of the Spirit.

Once again the Church stands before a dividing line. The Church has not given this word, *Obedience*, the prominence Christ gave it. Wrong views of the danger of Self-righteousness, of the way in which free Grace is to be exalted, of the power of sin and the repercussions of sinning, with the natural reluctance of the flesh to accept a high standard of holiness, have been the causes.

John had preached Jesus as the true Baptist – **baptizing with the HOLY SPIRIT and with FIRE**. Jesus took His disciples as candidates for this Baptism into a three course training initiative: (1) He attached them to Himself personally, (2) he taught them to forsake all and follow Him and (3) to do whatever He asked.

While the freedom of grace and the simplicity of faith have been preached, the absolute necessity of **obedience** and **holiness** has not been equally insisted on.

It has been thought that only those who had the fullness of the Spirit could be obedient. It was not seen that obedience was the lower platform. The baptism of God's Spirit, the full revelation of the glorified Lord as the Indwelling-One, taking power to work within us and through us delivering His mighty works, was something higher. This is the presence that the obedient should inherit. It was not seen that simple and full allegiance to every dictate of conscience and every precept of the Word, that the 'walk worthy of the Lord to all well-pleasing', was to be the passport to that full life in the Spirit in which He would witness to the abiding Presence of the Lord in the heart.

¹⁵⁷ Acts 5:32; John 14:15-16.

As the natural consequence with the neglect of this truth, the companion truth was also forgotten:¹⁵⁸ The obedient must, and may, look for the fullness of God's Spirit.

The church almost, **lost the concept of the indwelling of Christ as a continual experience.** The church needs a new outlook to turn to the day of Pentecost and understand the command: "be filled with God's Holy Spirit". The revelation of the King establishing His kingdom is powerful, inspirational and life-transforming.

In a unique way the popular Biblical author and speaker, Barbara Joiner gives a count on how the unction of God's Holy Spirit changes God's disciples after their Spirit Baptism to testify that God is alive.¹⁵⁹ Within weeks, those "orphans"¹⁶⁰ challenge governments, power, and even death.

6. CONCLUSION

In the kingdom principle of the Bible as axiom to a warfare Theodicy, this thesis concludes that the answer to God's kingdom is found in the person of Jesus Christ and Him as the Crucified and the Resurrected LORD.

As in apocalyptic thought, the assumption that undergirds Jesus' entire ministry is the view that Satan has illegitimately seized the world and thus now exercises a controlling influence over it. Thus, when Satan claimed that he could give all the "authority and glory of all the kingdoms of the world" to whomever he wanted – for they all belong to him- Jesus did not dispute him.

And the devil, taking him up into an high mountain, shewed unto him all the kingdoms of the world in a moment of time. And the devil said unto him, All this power will I give thee, and the glory of them: for that is delivered unto me; and to whomsoever I will I give it.

Luke 4:5-6

¹⁵⁸ Murray, Andrew Dr (1963) The Spirit of Christ. London, Edinburgh: Oliphants Publishers, p. 51.

¹⁵⁹ Joiner, Barbara (1999) Yours for the Giving: Spiritual Gifts. Birmingham, AL: New Hope Publishers, p.3.

¹⁶⁰ Orphans in this joint, refers to the disciples after the ascension of Jesus Christ to heaven.

That much Jesus assumed to be true. Jesus tied up the strong man so that He could later (and His church) could pillage the strongman's kingdom. In fact that is what Jesus teaches is about the Kingdom of God is all about. In the context of Jesus ministry is a warfare concept.

-----oOo-----

For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.

Ephesians 6:12

Chapter Four

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

*And the beast which I saw
was like unto a leopard,
and his feet were as [the feet] of a bear,
and his mouth as the mouth of a lion:
and the dragon gave him his power,
and his seat,
and great authority.*

Revelation 13:2



Chapter Four

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

*And the beast which I saw
was like unto a leopard,
and his feet were as [the feet] of a bear,
and his mouth as the mouth of a lion:
and the dragon gave him his power,
and his seat,
and great authority.*

Revelation 13:2

Cover Art for Chapters: Susan Langeveldt
Graphic Design: SL Studios





Chapter 4

Iniquity, the Root of All Evil, The Seat of the Great Prostitute

Evil is the diabolic seed from which all wickedness originates. It is then transmitted to man in birth, impregnating his heart with thoughts and intentions opposed to righteousness, truth, love and everything God is. Iniquity is the sum of all twisted thoughts or the total of all that is evil in mankind.

Ana Méndez-Ferrell¹

1. INTRODUCTION

The problem of good and evil stated in the above mentioned excerpt pertaining to the root of iniquity will form the basis of the research. This thesis suggests that we have no compelling philosophical or biblical reason to locate the primary course of evil to any other source than the enemy of God.

Hath not the potter power over the clay, of the same lump to make one vessel unto honour, and another unto dishonour? What if God, willing to show his wrath, and to make his power known, endured with much longsuffering the vessels of wrath fitted to destruction:

Romans 9:21-22

¹ Méndez-Ferrell, Ana Dr (2011) *Iniquity: The major hindrance to see God's glory manifested in your life*. Ponte Verda, Florida: Aná Méndez Ferrell Inc, p.12.

As stated by Reed Merino: "A few bacteria can enter through a tiny wound and then, taking advantage of the body's inability to cope with their presence, spread throughout the entire body, gradually overpowering it and producing first disease, then death. Just so did evil enter and spread throughout the creation: the name of the bacteria was Satan; the name of the disease, sin."²

This position has to be clarified and defended against objections. In simple language the problem of evil can be boiled down to the question: How can the existence of God be harmonized with the existence of evil? By "God", it is meant God as He is described in the Bible as both benevolent and omnipotent. A fuller statement can be given of the question considering these two attributes; if God is good and wants to eliminate evil but cannot, then He is not omnipotent; but if God is omnipotent and can eliminate evil but does not, then He is not good.

Since evil exists and continues to do so, how can God be both good and omnipotent? This problem is not unique to the Christian religion for any religious discipline must deal with it regardless of what the nature of their god might be.

How was it possible for sin to arise in a Kingdom of complete sinlessness? Freedom of choice must have played a significant role. Lucifer and all angelic beings were unambiguously challenged with the **test of obedience**. Although the story of that test was not recorded in the Bible, it is implied throughout. Those who withstood the deception of Lucifer (possibly his name) were unshakably rooted in holiness, those who were deceived and followed their rebellious master, were perpetually entrenched in their iniquity.

The moment he allowed the contaminated evil thought, opposite to Divine Righteousness, it produced a substance which was *the origin of evil*, the power that activates the invisible contaminated genetic corruption at spiritual level of all humanity.

² Merino, Reed K (1998) The Origin and Spread of Evil. (http://home1.gte.net/rmerino/03_Fall.htm)

Thou wast perfect in thy ways from the day that thou wast created, till iniquity was found in thee... Thou hast defiled thy sanctuaries by the multitude of thine iniquities, by the iniquity of thy traffic; therefore will I bring forth a fire from the midst of thee, it shall devour thee, and I will bring thee to ashes upon the earth in the sight of all them that behold thee.

Ezekiel 28:15, 18

Freedom of choice untested is only theory, not reality. Where true freedom is granted, there could be no guarantee of choosing rightly, therefore, both angels and humanity had to face the choice between obedience to God and disobedience. In Genesis three a historical-pictorial account is given of the former exclusive rebellion that begat the earth.

Iniquity impregnates *the spirit* of every human being and operates as a, “*spiritual umbilical cord*”, to produce an axiom of all *personal sin* as well as all *generational sin*.³ The Apostle Paul gave reference of this spiritual depraved inheritance.

But the scripture hath concluded all under sin.

Galatians 3:22

Iniquity has formed part of “*the spiritual body of sin*” within man’s *spirit*,⁴ which is affecting behavior.⁵ It invades the soul of every human being on earth, and from *the seat of his spirit* is affecting and corrupting the soul of the person, instigating desires to do wrong.⁶

The heart is deceitful above all things, and desperately wicked: who can know it? I the LORD search the heart, I try the reins, even to give every man according to his ways, and according to the fruit of his doings.

Jeremiah 17:9

³ Exodus 20:5.

⁴ Jeremiah 17:1.

⁵ Méndez-Ferrell, Ana Dr (2011) Iniquity: The major hindrance to see God’s glory manifested in your life. Ponte Verda, Florida: Aná Méndez-Ferrell Inc, p.13,15.

⁶ Galatians 6:8-10; Galatians 5:16-25.

This thesis will review how the Trinitarian warfare perspective on “*natural evil*” has been articulated by theologians by the early church and in contemporary times. Afterwards an attempt to respond to the various objections that have been raised against it will be offered.

Theodicy came to be synonymous with natural theology (*theologia naturalis*) that is, the department of metaphysics which presents the positive proofs for the existence and attributes of God and solves the opposing difficulties. Theodicy, therefore, may be defined as an attempt to explain the nature of God through the exercise of reason alone. This is in juxtaposition to theology, which attempts to explain the nature of God using Supernatural revelation and faith.

Some have argued that the predetermined goal of theodicy (that of justifying the existence of God with the existence of evil) tarnishes any aspirations it might have to be a serious philosophical discipline, because an intellectual pursuit having a predefined goal and preassumed conclusions cannot be deemed in any reasonable way to be methodical, scientific, or rational. Should we respect an inquiry whose goal is not to find out the truth, but to prove *by any means possible* that a particular thing *reasonably doubted* (Bayle and all who follow him) is true? Proceeding from the proposition to be shown to find a proof of that proposition invites confirmation bias on the part of the theorist.

2. THE PROBLEM OF EVIL CLARIFIED

Firstly, it is important to point out that there are two broad types of evil: moral evil and natural evil. Secondly, just as there are two kinds of evil, there are also two aspects to the problem of evil: the philosophical/apologetic problem, and the religious/personal problem of evil. The philosophical/apologetic problem stems from the challenges of the skeptic who questions the possibility or probability of an existing God who would allow such suffering.

In meeting these apologetic challenges the tools of reason and evidence have to be used. The religious/personal problem, on the other hand, stems from the test of faith which the believer experiences who is suffering. In meeting this challenge the Christian must appeal to the truth revealed by God in Scripture.

Thirdly, it is also important to note that there are two aspects of the philosophical/apologetic problem of evil: the logical problem and the evidential problem.

2.1 THE PROBLEM OF EVIL DEFINED

The radical and all-encompassing presence of evil cannot be ignored or explained away. The problem of evil remains the most important and most enduring challenge to Christian belief. Whether evil occurs in natural catastrophes, such as evident in recent hurricanes and earthquakes, or in manmade horrors, such as the Holocaust, it meets humankind at every turn and forces each of them to ponder the meaning of their existence. It is not surprising then that, the perennial problem of evil haunts those areas of inquiry, which deal primarily with the nature and destiny of man: philosophy, theology, literature, art, and history. Neither is it surprising that every major World-view, whether religious, ethical, or political, proposes to offer some insight into this vexing problem.

In practical life, the resistance to evil surfaces in efforts to minimize and to combat the negative aspects of existence. However, the feebleness and failure of efforts to shut evil out, to master it, to understand it, simply exacerbate the problem. The problem is indeed an inveterate one and is no less serious today than it was centuries ago.”

Peterson⁷ explains that from Jean Jacques Rousseau (romantic optimism) to Buckminster Fuller (technological optimism) there have always been those who do not share the view that there is a capacity for evil in both nature and man.

2.2 RESPONSES TO THE PROBLEM OF EVIL

The fifth century theologian Augustine of Hippo mounted what has become one of the most popular defences of the existence of God against the Epicurean paradox. He maintained that evil was only *privatio boni*⁸, or a privation of good. An evil thing can only be referred to as a negative form of a good thing, such as discord, injustice, and loss of life or liberty. If a being is not totally pure, evil will fill in any gaps in that being's purity. This is commonly called the Contrast Theodicy — that evil only exists as a "contrast" with good. However, the Contrast Theodicy relies on a metaphysical view of morality, which few people, even theologians, agree with (that good and evil are not moral judgments).

In "*On Free Choice of the Will*", Augustine also argued that Epicurus had ignored the potential benefits of suffering in the world. An omnipotent God could give the world any benefits derived from suffering without those in the world having to suffer.

Recently, another answer to this paradox comes in the logic that by saying that if one says evil exists in the world, that person is inferring a moral law against which to define good and evil. This moral code must be given by God, and therefore the argument destructs in on itself. By claiming something to be immoral, one proves the existence of a moral code which requires a moral code giver. Theists assert that this is God.⁹

⁷ Peterson, M (1982) *Evil and the Christian God*. Grand Rapids, MI; Baker Book House, p. 5.

⁸ *Privatio Boni* is a theological doctrine that good and evil are, in some circumstances at least, asymmetrical. Strictly speaking, it holds that evil is insubstantial, so that thinking of it as an entity is misleading: it would be more constructive to speak only of relative amounts of good. (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Privatio_boni)

⁹ *Problem of Evil*. Wikipedia Encyclopedia. (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Problem_of_evil)

2.3 THEODICY DEFINED

Doug Erlandson gives the following explanation of the term theodicy:

“Although the anti-theist¹⁰ has no grounds for his objection to the Biblical view of God, it is still important for the theist to try to determine why a totally good God would permit evil to occur. Attempts to do this are called theodicies.”¹¹

That is to say, a theodicy aims to vindicate the justice or goodness of God in the face of the evil found in the world, and this it attempts to do by offering a reasonable explanation as to why God allows evil to abound in his creation. A theodicy may be thought of as a story told by the theist explaining why God permits evil. Such a story, however, must be *plausible* or *reasonable* in the sense that it conforms to all of the following:

- a. Commonsensical views about the world (e.g., that much evil exists);
- b. Widely accepted scientific and historical views (e.g., evolutionary theory), and
- c. Intuitively plausible moral principles (e.g., generally, punishment should not be significantly disproportional to the offence committed).¹²

Theodicy is a branch of theology, which studies how the existence of a good or benevolent God is reconciled with the existence of evil. An attempt to reconcile the co-existence of evil and God is sometimes called "a theodicy".¹³

Theodicy came to be synonymous with natural theology (*theologia naturalis*) that is, the department of metaphysics, which presents the positive, proofs for the existence and attributes of God and solves the opposing difficulties.

¹⁰ Anti-theist refers to anyone who is averse to theism and/or actively opposes both theism and theists, disavowing the view of God as presented in the Bible.

¹¹ Erlandson, Doug (1991) A New Perspective on the Problem of Evil. (<http://cspar181.uah.edu/RbS/JOB/de.html>).

¹² Trakakis, Nick (2005) The Evidential Problem of Evil. (<http://www.iep.utm.edu/e/evil-evi.htm>)

¹³ Theodicy. Wikipedia. (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Theodicy>)

Theodicy, therefore, may be defined as an attempt to explain the nature of God through the exercise of reason alone. This is in juxtaposition to theology, which attempts to explain the nature of God using Supernatural revelation and faith.

"Theodicy" is a term first coined by Leibniz comes from the Greek **θεός** (*theós*, "god") and **δίκη** (*dikē*, "justice"), meaning literally "the justice of God". A theodicy therefore is an attempt to justify or defend God in the face of evil by answering the following problem, which in its most basic form involves these assumptions:

- a. God is all good and all powerful (and, therefore, all knowing).
- b. The universe/creation was made by God and/or exists in a contingent relationship to God.
- c. Evil exists in the world. Why?

However, if God is both good and powerful, then why does evil exist?

As argued by Stephen Diamond: Hostility, hatred, and violence are the greatest evils we have to contend with today. Evil is now - ever has been, and ever will be--an existential reality, an inescapable fact with which we mortals must reckon.¹⁴

Definitions of evil could be proposed and debated indefinitely. This thesis concludes that evil in a large sense may be described as the sum of the opposition, in this case named Satan.

Some have argued that the predetermined goal of theodicy (that of justifying the existence of God with the existence of evil) tarnishes any aspirations it might have to be a serious philosophical discipline, because an intellectual pursuit having a predefined goal and reassumed conclusions cannot be deemed in any reasonable way to be methodical, scientific, or rational.

¹⁴ Diamond, S A (1996) *Anger, madness, and the daimonic*. Albany, NY; State University of New York Press, p. 1.

Should we respect an inquiry whose goal is not to find out the truth, but to prove *by any means possible* that a particular thing *reasonably doubted* (Bayle and all who follow him) is true? Proceeding from the proposition to be shown to find a proof of that proposition invites confirmation bias on the part of the theorist. The Bible teaches that God is perfect love (1 John 4:18) and “*does not willingly afflict, or grieve anyone*” (Lamentations 3:3). It tells us “*all [God’s] ways are just*” and there is no deceit in Him (Deuteronomy 32:4). It reveals, “*God is light and in Him there is no darkness*” (1 John 1:5), and His “*eyes are too pure to behold evil*” (Habakkuk 1:13). There is one thing we can be assured, God does not in any sense do evil.

According to Brand, God can in no sense be associated with evil; not even in the creation of evil.¹⁵ Ezekiel 28 clearly explains that evil/sin was found in the heart of Lucifer. The Gospel of John gives Jesus’ own words where He declares that Satan is the father of all lies and there is no truth in him.

3. AN OVERVIEW PERTAINING TO INIQUITY

Iniquity is intrinsically tied to the kingdom of darkness and out of this spiritual basis, the devil binds us with curses from our ancestors and from where Satan’s legal right is granted to rob, to destroy, brings sickness and even tries to kill us.¹⁶ Most Christians confess to their sin, but very few understand and acknowledge the deeper-rooted evil – ‘*the body of sin*’ – which has to be blotted out in order to sustain the *Divine life* of the child of God. There is a distinct difference between: to be regenerated and un-regenerated. When un-regenerated, the spirit of a man is still under the power of evil as seen in Ephesians 2:1-3.

The sin of Judah is written with a pen of iron, and with the point of a diamond: it is graven upon the table of their heart, and upon the horns of your altars.

Jeremiah 17:1

¹⁵ Personal interview: Prof Dr Connie MJ Brand. Radah Academy. Pretoria, South Africa.

¹⁶ John 10:10

For out of the heart proceed evil thoughts, murders, adulteries, fornications, thefts, false witness, and blasphemies.

Matthews 15:19

The Bible differentiates very precisely between the two terms: “**sin**”¹⁷ and “**iniquity/Evil**”¹⁸. Sin, although it is a misdemeanor of God’s Law, is only the fruit of the real root from which all EVIL¹⁹ originates.

Nobody can destroy the “**body of sin / the Old depraved Sinful Nature of man**”, but the Spirit of God.²⁰ Jesus Christ died on the cross for the liberation²¹ of all iniquity and sin, offering a complete fulfillment for every human being that comes to Him.²²

The cross presents this complete work not only for salvation, but also for the sanctification of the entire human being. This implies that salvation involves an ongoing liberation process of God, starting with the choice of man to repent as answer on God’s call in his heart, resulting in a process of sanctification of the whole man: spirit, soul and body.

And the very God of peace sanctify you wholly; and I pray God your whole spirit and soul and body be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ. Faithful is he that calleth you, who also will do it.

I Thessalonians 5:23

Irrespective of the fact that the Cross offers an inclusive provision for every need, a great part of “**the body of Christ**” lived their lives overwhelmed with emotional, spiritual and physical distress.

Many spirits and souls are **trapped in spiritual prisons** and suffer the continuous burdens of depression, isolation, anxiety, addictions, discord, family violence, abuse, sexuality problems, and even sexual perversion.

¹⁷ The Bible reveals numerous texts on **Sin**: Genesis 4:7; Luke 5:24; I John 1:8.

¹⁸ Scriptures in the Bible on **Iniquity**: Exodus 20:5; II Thessalonians 2:7.

¹⁹ The Bible reveals numerous Scriptures on **Evil**: Genesis 2:9; 3:22; Matthews 6:13; Matthews 12:35; Matthew 15:19; Romans 7:21; Hebrews 5:14.

²⁰ Zachariah 4:6

²¹ **Liberation** in this context implies the release and the emancipation / freedom (deliverance) of a human being.

²² Isaiah 53: 4-5, 10-11.

...when we were children, we were in BONDAGE under the elements of the world: But when the fullness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law, to redeem them that were under the law, that we might receive the adoption of sons. And because ye are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father. Wherefore thou art no more a servant, but a son; and if a son, then an heir of God through Christ. Howbeit then, when ye knew not God, ye did service unto them which by nature are no gods. But now, after that ye have known God, or rather are known of God, how turn ye again to the weak and beggarly elements, whereunto ye desire again to be in BONDAGE?

Galatians 4:1-3 (emphasis added)

God is presently revealing through Apostolic and Prophetic revelations, **places of bondage**, these exist not only in the soul of man, but also in the spirit of man – where the person is not regenerated.

Dr Méndez-Ferrell asserts the natural and the spiritual body of man are made of a complexity of organs and systems connecting one another, and allowing one another to function in its own dimension. The physical body in the material world and the spiritual body in the spiritual world, even though they are linked together.²³

No human methods can **liberate** the spirit of man. To work in the area of the soul will bring only partial recovery. If there is a contamination of a person's spirit, it surely will affect his soul and his behaviour. This is why God demands to be sanctified wholly onto Him: Spirit, Soul and Body. Scripture reveals that it will be of NO help to pick off the fruit of a tree, to change its nature. The fruit are only manifesting the nature of the tree.

Having therefore these promises, dearly beloved, let us cleanse ourselves from all filthiness of the flesh and spirit, perfecting holiness in the fear of God.

II Corinthians 7:1

²³ Mendez-Ferrell, Ana Dr (2011) Iniquity: The major hindrance to see God's glory manifested in your life. Ponte Verda, Florida: Aná Méndez Ferrell Inc, p.22.

Every Christian is set aside for God; they are a holy priesthood and a holy nation.²⁴ Holiness is not to love Jesus and to do what **you** want. Holiness is to love Jesus and to do what **He** wants. The Bible declares that God chose believers to manifest **his image** on earth and to be His representatives.

Ye have not chosen me, but I have chosen you, and ordained you, that ye should go and bring forth fruit, and that your fruit should remain: that whatsoever ye shall ask of the Father in my name, he may give it you.

John 15:16

Opposing and contrary to this Biblical view, people are taught to throw out all standards. Some even openly declare that humanity has a **good nature** and that it is unbending to believe in the existence of **the doctrine of sin**. With this as axiom, this thesis can build on the aspect of **sanctification**. Counselling in the fullest sense is simply an application of the means of sanctification. The prerequisite for sanctification is the Holy Spirit's presence in the life of the regenerated person. Sanctification involves personal change, a process of growth toward maturity and holiness. This thesis holds that **sin, iniquity, evil** and **Satan** are intrinsically linked to one another and should be *rigidly opposed*. This Chapter on iniquity concerns **Truth**, as well as the question to which **method** should be used to set captive free: Is there any other method of validity, except the Biblical method of the **Cross**?

4. EVIL DEFINED

Prof Dr Connie Brand defined Evil in the following words:²⁵ Satan as a person needs no introduction since the Bible exposes him explicitly for what he is, namely the enemy of God. Satan malignant hatred and ceaseless antagonism is primarily directed against the Triune God and secondly directed against the true seed of Jesus Christ, however, in union with Him will bruise the Serpent's head.

²⁴ I Peter 2:5, 9.

²⁵ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2005) An Exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian Involvement in a Theodicy Central to Christian Involvement in a Theodicy considered from Philosophical-Theological Perspective. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Printing & Bookbinding Solutions, p.221.

The Catholic Encyclopedia defines evil as: Evil may be described as the sum of opposition, which experience shows us to exist in the universe, to the desires and needs of individuals; whence arises among human beings at least, the suffering in which life abounds. Thus, evil from the point of view of human welfare, is what ought not to exist.

Nevertheless, there is no department of human life in which its presence if not felt; and the discrepancy between what is and what ought to be has always called for explanation in the account which humankind has sought to give of itself and its surroundings.²⁶

Today many seem uncomfortable with this antiquated concept because many find the religious and theological implications of evil, based on value, ethics and morals too judgmental, dogmatic and archaic. Far from it, humanity has been subtly conditioned, to be prepared for radical changes – without knowing anything about it at all. Satan’s imminent and Final Assault on the creation of God is rising.

Noah Hutchings traced advances in technology from the time of another Noah to the present time: Builders of the New Babel is a reality. The highest government and social think tanks in the world are focused on the frame time of “2012 and beyond”. Man is entering the “Human Enhancement Revolution (HER)”. This thesis states that behind HER, a demonic spirit in the form of a “technocratic goddess” is manipulating and controlling humanity with Satan’s End-Time plan.

In the times we live, we will need radical measures to victor over the technological advances that have brought us to the doorstep of life-altering realities, of which the average person is struggling to make sense of.²⁷

²⁶ Frey-Robin, L (1967) Evil, Studies in Jungian Thought Series. Evanston III; Northwestern University Press, p. 153.

²⁷ Horn, Thomas DD (2011) Pandemonium’s Engine. Crane, Missouri: Defender Publishers.

4.1 THE MYSTERY OF INIQUITY

The Scripture show that there are **two major mysteries at work in the universe** and all other mysteries referred to in the Word of God, find their place under them. These two mysteries are called **The Mystery of Godliness** and **The Mystery of Iniquity**.²⁸ Good and evil, light and darkness, life and death, godliness and iniquity are at work in the universe. Both should be expound to bring about the necessary weapons of warfare in place for the times we are living in.

Brand wrote that all created beings, angelic or human, will make their choice and take their place under one mystery or the other and their choice will settle their eternal destiny. It was in the once good and perfect created **ARCHANGEL** that "**THE MYSTERY OF INIQUITY**" began.²⁹ Ezekiel 28:15 speaks about the Prince of Tyre, which was perfect in all his ways from the day he was created until iniquity was found in him.³⁰

Ramirez pronounced with horror: "**Lucifer dwells in us all.**" It seems closer to the truth as we thought; actually, it is where it all began – with Lucifer and his pattern forming evil nature.

How art thou fallen from heaven, o Lucifer, son of the morning! ... For thou hast said in thine heart. I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God, I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation... I will be like the most High. Yet, thou shall be brought down to hell, to the side of the pit.

Isaiah 14:12-15

²⁸ 1 Tim 3:16; 2 Thessalonians 2:7.

²⁹ 2 Thessalonians 2:7.

³⁰ Brand, Connie Prof Dr (2006) PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence pertaining to the Structures and Strategies to destruct Christianity: Involving the Theodicy of Darkness (Three Volumes), Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published, p.2103.

An evil ambition transformed one of God's highest archangels, "the anointed Cherub",³¹ into the old serpent – the Devil or Satan.³² His five "I will's" was the epitome of self-assertion – now seen as one of the secrets to success in our modern world. Scripture reveals Lucifer as the god of this world who blinds the minds of them, which believe not.³³

Lucifer's rebellion does not originate from a deprived childhood, negative influences or some traumatic experience of childhood buried in his unconscious; he was not been abused, his parent has not been to stricken or is religion forced down his throat. None of these philosophical theories of sociologists and psychologists could account for Lucifer's rebellious break with divine order than his ruthless obsession with power.

No amount of psychotherapy could take care of this problem by helping Lucifer to understand himself and to get in touch with his feelings! Lucifer's downfall was not due to a bad self-image, which probably gives fruit to all addictions and homosexuality. It is NOT that Lucifer was thinking to little of himself, far from it! His PRIDE AND SELF-indulgence were the very root of this rebellion, the cosmic anarchy in which the entire human race has joined!

Today's misleading theories of human behaviour, which have impacted the church as well as secular society, fail to provide real cures because they do not and cannot deal with the evil that has enslaved the human mind and emotions. ***It is a battle of TRUTH against the LIE.***

4.2 THE BIBLICAL DIFFERENTIATION BETWEEN SIN AND INIQUITY

Scripture gave a detailed verification on *the corruption of human nature in the Old Testament* and how God demanded the nation to *confess all their iniquities*.

³¹ Ezekiel 28:14.

³² Revelations 12:9.

³³ II Corinthians 4:4.

The making of Atonement ensured temporarily redemption, through the ceremony of Expiation³⁴ ones a year, however, Christ became the offer of atonement in the New Testament. God's manner to deal with iniquity has NOT changed; CONFESSION is still needed. Only the blood of Jesus Christ can deliver us from EVIL.

And Aaron shall lay both his hands upon the head of the live goat, and CONFESS over him all the INIQUITIES of the children of Israel, and all their TRANSGRESSIONS and all their SINS, putting them upon the head of the goat, and shall send him away by the hand of a fit man into the wilderness.

Leviticus 16:21 (emphasis added)

The Word of God particularly differentiates between the terms: ***iniquity***, sin, and ***transgressions***.³⁵ It is necessary to expound the terms, to uncover the real meaning of *the ceremony of expiation* and what weapons God put in place to enhance liberation.

SIN: The word for sin in Hebrew is "***chattath*** (#2403)", which means: "*an offence, sometimes habitual sinfulness and its penalty, occasion, sacrifice, or explanation*". It also means, "*To miss the mark, to sin, by inference to forfeit, to lack.*"³⁶

Sin in short is the deliberate transgression of the Law.³⁷ It means literally to step beyond as when crossing a line or boundary.

In the New Testament, it refers to a direct action of violating God's law. Out of "the fall" of humanity derives a doctrine called "the Doctrine of Original sin" referring to the human condition after the fall.

³⁴ **The Ceremony of Expiation, defined:** In the Old Testament we find that God's people confessed their sin as a nation, where after the High Priest went into the Most Holy Place to make atonement for them. This ceremony took place once a year on that Day of Atonement. Two goats were used in the ceremony: one goat was slaughtered for the forgiveness of sin and another goat was sent into the desert, after all sin was symbolically placed on him – a token that God was removing the curse and guilt of sin. Sacrifices were made and blood was shed so that the people's sin could be covered, until Christ's sacrifice on the cross would give people the opportunity to have their sin removed by faith forever.

³⁵ Leviticus 16:21.

³⁶ Leviticus 4:2-3, 25-35; Psalm 32:1,5; 51:2-5; Isaiah 53:10-12.

³⁷ Definition defined by Dr Willem Harding, verbatim, University of Pretoria South Africa.

TRANSGRESSION: The Hebrew word for transgression is “**pawsah** (#6588)” meaning “to break away from just authority; trespass, apostasies, quarrel, a revolt (national, moral or religious)” It is translated by the words “offend, rebel, revolt, transgression”.³⁸

Transgression implies to assert another will (self-will), than the will of God.

INIQUITY:³⁹ The Hebrew word for iniquity is called “**avon or avown** (#5771)”.

It means “perversity, evil” translated “do amiss, bow down, make crooked, commit iniquity, pervert, and fault”,⁴⁰ from “**aw-val** (#5765)”, meaning to distort (corrupt/alter/deform); from “**eh-vel** (#5766)”, meaning “perverseness, unrighteousness, wicked”.

EVIL, as defined from the above three etymologies, involves lawlessness deriving from an opposite will as the will of God, originating from a corrupted, crooked EVIL NATURE (iniquity).

Dr Méndez-Ferrell refers to the metaphor of a “fruit tree”.

And he shall be like a tree planted by the rivers of water, that bringeth forth his fruit in his season; his leaf also shall not wither; and whatsoever he doeth shall prosper.

Psalm 1:3

Scripture refers to the symbol of fruit, not less than 289 times. A Biblical exposé is specifically given on the fruit of good and evil trees in Galatians 5: the fruit of the Spirit versus the fruit of the flesh.

We can thus say, that **all human evil derives form our sinful nature** – although our sinful nature originally derives from the pattern forming evil nature of the Satan himself – **just as fruit derives form the type of trees it grows on.**

³⁸ Exodus 34:7; Numbers 14:18; Psalm 19:13; 32:1; Isaiah 53:8; Daniel 9:24.

³⁹ II Corinthians 4:4; Ephesians 4:18; Romans 1:21, 24, 26; and Romans 7:20.

⁴⁰ Psalm 52:3; Leviticus 16:21,22; Psalm 103:3,10; Isaiah 53:5,11; Daniel 9:24.

This allegory implies that the ROOT OF EVIL – as far as it concerns humans – will be our SINFUL NATURE and should be dealt with before change in attitude and behavior will occur. Scripture reveals that change can only be possible when the *evil heart* is of a person is changed by God – which He promised in the constitution of the New Covenant.

And they shall be my people, and I will be their God: And I will give them one HEART, and one way, that they may fear me for ever, for the good of them, and of their children after them: And I will make an everlasting covenant with them, that I will not turn away from them, to do them good; but I will put my fear in their HEART, that they shall not depart from me.

Jeremiah 32:38-40 (emphasis added)

For if that first covenant had been faultless, then should no place have been sought for the second. For finding fault with them, he saith, Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, when I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel and with the house of Judah: Not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day when I took them by the hand to lead them out of the land of Egypt; because they continued not in my covenant, and I regarded them not, saith the Lord. For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, saith the Lord; I will put my laws into their MIND, and write them in their HEART: and I will be to them a God, and they shall be to me a people.

Hebrews 8:7-10 (emphasis added)

Life still reveals the existents of evil problems in the lives of people. Somewhere we are missing the point. God gave Biblical keys as to how to do with EVIL, which will still deliver us from evil – even the “End-Time” evil of trans-humanism and genetic engineering we are exposed to presently.

Scripture declares that Christ-men and women will bear fruit, which will remain. By their fruit they shall be recognized. The ***heavenly law*** is above all about *our love for our God and secondly to love our neighbor as ourselves*” which is just the opposite as the evil forming corrupt patterns Satan tries to enhance.

On this issue, Watchmen Nee argues: A person who is re-generated and in whom God's Holy Spirit abide can still be fleshly for his spirit may yet be under the oppression of his soul or body. Some definite actions are required, if he is to become spiritual.⁴¹

With the astounding End-Time warfare, the church needs to look deeper into God's treasures of Wisdom. We are entering into an Apostolic and Prophetic era that is revealing new dimensions of Jesus' light, uncovering spiritual prisons people are still captured in. God is raising a spiritual structure made of people who understand the spiritual arena and operate in the fullness of His Holy Spirit. The level of revelation depends on the level of **love and commitment** believers have to witness God's work manifested on earth. God surely suffer much pain in His heart, to watch the world being dragged to hell. God desires to reveal the deep things of His Kingdom to His children.

For I would that ye knew what great conflict I have for you...That their hearts might be comforted, being KNOT TOGETHER IN LOVE, and unto all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgement of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ; In whom are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge. In whom are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.

Colossians 2:2-3 (emphasis added)

The warrior church of God, need to comprehend God's righteousness in a deeper way. The only force that will destroy the power of the devil is the righteousness manifested on the Cross of Calvary, which is much greater than the simple justification by grace preached in most churches.

God wants us to understand Iniquity as the greatest obstacle to processing the riches of His glory.

⁴¹ Nee, Watchman (1977) *The Spiritual Man. Part III.* Richmond, Virginia: Christian Fellowship Publishers, INC: pp.18-19.

The believers ignorance about iniquity binds him to curses and spiritual prisons from which the church does not acknowledge at all. If we are open-minded enough – let us again look into the relevant question of captivity at soul and spirit level of the regenerated child of God: Can it be possible that our soul and spirits is not redeemed fully, that parts of us are imprisoned which results in passivity of God's army.

Scripture reveals in the first few verses of Genesis, God's pattern to all seeds: Trees will yield after its kind.

And God said, Let the earth bring forth grass, the herb yielding seed, and the fruit tree yielding fruit after his kind, whose seed is in itself, upon the earth: and it was so.

Genesis 1:11

Astonishing that God precisely warns Adam and Eve against "*forbidden fruit*" of a specific tree in the Garden of Eden, namely "*the Tree of good and evil*". It is even more astounding that God, on more than one occasion, refers to *living beings* as "*trees*". An excellent example is the allegory of Matthews, which conveys the TRUTH of the "*Mystery of Tree's*".

Even so every good tree bringeth forth good fruit; but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit. A good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit, neither can a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit... Wherefore by their fruits ye shall know them.

Matthew 7:17-20

A *tree*, as allegory of a living being, reflects its nature by "*bearing fruit after its kind*": A corrupted tree (person) by nature, produce evil fruit and an upright tree (person) by nature, produces good fruit. Secondly, God warns against "*the Tree of good and evil*" – an apparent "*word of warning against an Evil living being, called Serpent*".

God warned his beloved against commune with the Evil-One, a depraved, perverted, CORRUPTED archangel – *the enemy of God and man* – with a pattern forming nature of pride and self-life – who wants to corrupt humanity at spiritual and genetic / DNA level.

The Greek meaning⁴² of the word **CORRUPT**, “**sa-ros'** (#34550) means “rotten, worthless, bad, corrupt” as well as **pon-ay-ros'** (#4190) meaning **EVIL** (*prop. In effect or influence, and thus differing from #2256, which refers rather to essential character.* The Greek meaning of the word “corrupt” as seen from #4550, which indicates degeneracy from original virtue); calamitous; also ill, i.e. diseased; but espec (mor.) culpable, i.e. derelict, vicious, neut. (sing.) mischief, malice, guilt, masc. (sing) the devil, or (plural) sinners: - bad, evil, grievous, harm, lewd, malicious, wicked”. Since the Hebrew word for Iniquity also means “perversity, distort / corruption and evil” it is applicable to asserts that, iniquity is implying to the sinful fleshly nature of humankind deriving from the pattern forming Evil primal originated in the heart of Lucifer – the Devil.

4.3 THE NATURE OF MAN DEFINED AS BACKGROUND FOR THE PLACE OF INIQUITY IN BODY, SPIRIT AND SOUL

The nature of man is studied under the term “**anthropology**”, which comes from two Greek word “**anthropos**”, meaning “man” and the word “**logos**”, meaning “word, matter or thing”. The word Anthropology refers to “the study of man”. Biblical Anthropology is “the study of man as understood primarily from Scripture” and involves discussions on the creation of man; the creation of man in “the image of God”; the constitutional nature of man; and man after the fall.⁴³

The Etymology of the Hebrew word “**soul**” in the Old Testament, is “**neh'-fesh** (#5315)”, meaning “a breathing creature, appetite body, breath, creature, desire, soul, self, life, person, mind, living being, desire, emotion, passion, contended, ghost, greedy, heart, lust, man, morality, one, own, pleasure, will”.

⁴² Strong's, James. Strong's Exhaustive Concordance of the Bible. Hendrickson Publishers.

⁴³ Anthropology and Harmartiology: Man and Sin. (<http://bible.org/series/anthrology-harmatology-man-and-sin>)

The Etymology for the Greek word “**soul**” in the New Testament, is “**psoo-khay** (#5590), meaning “*breath, life, mind and soul*”.⁴⁴

The Etymology of the Hebrew word “**spirit**” in the Old Testament, is “**roo'-akh** (#7307)”, meaning “wind, breath, life, mind, spirit”.

The Etymology for the Greek word “**spirit**” in the New Testament, is “**pnwoo'-mah** (#4151), meaning, “*A movement of air, breath, spirit, the rational soul*”.⁴⁵

Chester and Betsy Kylstra argues that a direct link exists between the characteristics of *the soul* and that of *the spirit* of man, which reveals that both natures encompass different parts, such as a memory,⁴⁶ a will,⁴⁷ emotions,⁴⁸ have spiritual eyes and have different functions. Further research shows that the word *soul and mind* is Biblically used interchangeable; as is the words *spirit and heart*.⁴⁹

Scripture reveals the *conflict between the spirit and the soul*. Jesus Himself referred to the dividing line between the “flesh” and to the “spirit” of man.

Watch and pray, that ye enter not into temptation: the spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak.

Matthews 26:41

Genesis 2:7 states that man is formed from earthly matter (body) and heavenly breath (body), where after he became a living soul. The spirit as “immaterial heavenly matter” became part of the “earthly matter” to form a “living soul” called man.⁵⁰

Many Scriptures reveals a dualistic nature of man. Jesus Himself gives reference of it, in the book of Matthew.

⁴⁴ Strong's, James. Strong's Exhaustive Concordance of the Bible. Hendrickson Publishers.

⁴⁵ Ibid.

⁴⁶ Deuteronomy 11:18.

⁴⁷ Deuteronomy 30:2, 6.

⁴⁸ Jude 10:16; Genesis 6:6.

⁴⁹ Kylstra, Chester and Betsy (2001) Restoring the Foundations. Hendersonville, NC: Proclaiming His Word, p.413.

⁵⁰ Genesis 2:7

Watch and pray, that ye enter not into temptation: the spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak.

Matthews 26:44

Theologians notify that the terms soul and spirit are used interchangeably in Scripture. The problem that originates from this viewpoint includes the rejection of the spirit of a person, the overall existence of the depraved nature of humanity, the existence of sin and man's need for a Savior.

The Apostle Paul on the other hand emphasizes the difference between a natural and a spiritual body.

It is sown a natural body; it is raised a spiritual body. There is a natural body, and there is a spiritual body.

I Corinthians 15:44

Biblical references reveal the tripartite parts of the believer, needed for sanctification. This verse diverse the non-corporal elements of the body, into two parts: the soul and the spirit. The corporal part is mentioned here as including the joints and marrow – organs of motion and sensation. Since these parts are divided, it seems to differ in nature.

But we are bound to give thanks always to God for you, brethren beloved of the Lord, because God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth.

II Thessalonians 2:13

The question derives of how a person is sanctified wholly? This text reveals that the spirit, soul and body of man be kept / set aside. In the book of Hebrews, the word of God proclaims the necessity of the dividing between soul and spirit.⁵¹ Out of this diverse information, three viewpoints derived pertaining to *the nature of man*.

⁵¹ Hebrews 4:12.

4.3.1 THE NATURE OF MAN DEFINED

4.3.1.1 THE MONIST VIEW ON THE NATURE OF MAN

Statement: This view argues that *man is monistic*, which means that he is *purely physical with no soul or immaterial substance* to his being.⁵²

Critique: There are good Scriptural reasons for rejecting this view. Scripture reveals God as a person, although He does not have a body, but is a Spirit. We can argue that possessing a body does not verifying a being as a person, but personhood exist apart from embodiment. The Old Testament specifically refers to a soul/person which has departed his body after death (*pephesh*), as to the immaterial aspects of a person that still may return to the body if God so wills.⁵³ The Old Testament refers to the material (natural) as well as to the immaterial (spirit) substance of man.⁵⁴ Scripture allude to the disembodied human state after death as living spirits.⁵⁵ Finally, Jesus made a clear distinction between the soul and the body in Matthew 10:28.

4.3.1.2 THE DICHOTOMOUS VIEW ON THE NATURE OF MAN

Statement: The original Biblical concept of the constitution of *human beings is dualistic, which encompass a soul and a body*.⁵⁶

According to this concept, *the soul is the invisible inner spiritual part, while the body is the visible outer part of the human being*. This view rejects the difference between the terms soul and spirit and used it interchangeably.⁵⁷

⁵² Herrick, Greg. Anthropology & Hamartiology: Man & Sin. Bible.org. (<http://bible.seriespage/anthropology-hamartiology-man-and-sin>)

⁵³ Genesis 35:18; I Kings 17:21-22).

⁵⁴ Genesis 2:7; Ezekiel 37:6, 8-10, 14).

⁵⁵ Revelations 6:9-11; Hebrews 12:23.

⁵⁶ Herrick, Greg. Anthropology & Hamartiology: Man & Sin. Bible.org. (<http://bible.seriespage/anthropology-hamartiology-man-and-sin>)

Critique: Critiques of this viewpoint argues that it is rightly defined that the body is man's outward sheath, however, profess the idea that "the soul" and "the spirit" of man denotes the same concept.

The Bible declares that the term soul and spirit surely differ much in nature. The one nature refers to the material / natural world, while the other refers to the immaterial / spirit world. Where these two divergent natures are merged into one, it results in great repercussion for humankind, especially regarding deception, deliverance and sanctification. One of the greatest tragedies of psychology pertaining to the teaching of *Jungian Psychology* is that it "eliminates the spirit of man" and inserts in its place "the dualistic compartments of the soul", namely the "conscious" and the "collective conscious".

On this issue, Henry Wright is of opinion that that what psychology is calling the collective unconscious is in fact the "spirit of man": Psychology says in the collective unconscious are the archetypes and dark shadows of our ancestral heritage.

I say in the collective unconscious – which is the spirit of man – is where the collective garbage of the 'crispy critters' of our ancestral heritage resides.⁵⁸

4.3.1.3 THE TRICHOTOMOUS VIEW ON THE NATURE OF MAN

Statement: This view argues that the *nature of human beings is tripartite and involves three different parts, the soul, the spirit and the body – where each term refers to separate substances.*⁵⁹ This view states that since the soul and the spirit can be divided Biblically, there is a difference in nature.

⁵⁷ Scriptures which are used to refer to the soul and spirit of man interchangeably includes: Luke 1:46-47; John 12:27; 13:21.

⁵⁸ Wright, Hendry (2005) *A More Excellent Way: Be in Health. Spiritual Roots of Disease Pathways to Wholeness.* Thomaston, GA: Pleasant Valley Church INC, p.

⁵⁹ Herrick, Greg. *Anthropology & Hamartiology: Man & Sin.* Bible.org. (<http://bible.seriespage/anthropology-hamartiology-man-and-sin>)

“For the Word of God is living and active, sharper than any two-edge sword, piercing to the division of soul and spirit, of joints and marrow and discerning the thoughts and intentions of the heart.”

Hebrews 4:12

Critique: The major problem with this view and the reason that it is not well received any longer, is the universal recognition that the Bible uses the terms “soul” and “spirit” interchangeably. They even argue that Mark 12:30 lists more than four aspects or parts of man. The Critiques also argue that I Thessalonians 5:23 and Hebrews 4:12 is written with the emphasis on sanctification.

The Question arises if we are to regard to the “*body, soul and spirit*” as three aspects of humanity comprising a different substance, or not? Some Theologians prefers the concept of humans as “*triune beings*”, which derives from a Biblical base and is explaining how a Christian can be attacked or oppressed by demons in his body.

These Theologians note that bodily sickness can be a sign of demonic oppression in the physical body of man; and they affirm that the soul of a person can be accessed and oppressed by demons. This view refuses to belief that God’s Holy Spirit can possess by demons and at the same time dwell in the regenerated spirit of man, which represents the Holy of Holies of the tabernacle of God. They asserts that the regenerated child of God is *sealed in his spirit* by God’s Holy Spirit and therefore *spirit of man is absolutely pure* and proclaims that all *problems with oppression* are on the level of the *soul or body*.

Watchman Nee wrote that man’s soul represents himself and expresses his individuality. It is the organ of man’s free will, the organ in which spirit and body are completely merged. If mans’ soul wills to obey God, it will allow the spirit to rule over the man. The soul, if it chooses, can suppress the spirit of the person.⁶⁰

Many reputable Bible commentators assert that man is in epitome a spiritual being, who lives in a body, containing a soul.

⁶⁰ Nee, Watchmen (1968) The Spiritual Man. Richmond: Virginia: Christian Fellowship Publishers, p.25.

The soul of man comprises a mind, a will and emotions.⁶¹ The living soul expresses a person's individuality. The physical body is connected to the material world and the spiritual body to the spiritual world. Man must be understood as a whole, combining the three parts that comprise him.

Dr Méndez-Ferrell argues that although she shares the TRICHOTOMOUS view, she asserts that there is a deeper complexity in the spirit of man, which even includes places of imprisonment and in need of liberation.

The spiritual insight on "**what a human being really is**", is the door to the most extraordinary knowledge of the love and power of God. In this small, but powerful key – is hidden the difference between a victorious life and a life of failure and of limited power.

Man is a spirit that lives in a body and communicates and perceives the exterior world through his soul.⁶²

This thesis asserts the tripartite nature of mankind: body, spirit and soul.

A human being comprise of a complex material body as well as a complex immaterial body. The immaterial body exists of the spirit and the soul, of between Scripture reveals a bloody battle. This battle reveals the struggle between the Kingdom of Light and the kingdom of darkness.

A multiple sin war is battled in the three parts of the soul –in the area of the mind, the emotions and of the free will. The enemy's goal is to fragment and imprison the human soul and spirit. Spiritual Warfare involves the process of *sanctification* – *on the three areas of the whole person: spirit, soul and body.*

⁶¹ Numerous texts in the Bible refer to different spiritual parts of man (Genesis 2:7; James 2:26; Galatians 4:29): spiritual mind (Ephesian 4:23; Ephesians 1:17); spiritual emotions (Philippians 3:3) and a spiritual will (Galatians 5:18; 3:2).

⁶² Méndez-Ferrell, Ana Dr (2011) Iniquity: The major hindrance to see God's glory manifested in your life. Ponte Verda, Florida: Aná Méndez Ferrell Inc, p.22.

For the understanding of the process of deliverance in Christian lives, it is important to know the difference between soul, body and spirit, e.g., **deliverance in this respect entails to be set free from wrong beliefs, attitudes, binds, etc.** The same understanding is essential also in the case of exorcism – that is the expelling of demonic entities, out of a Christian – that is the expelling of **evil spirits**. A third aspect, which this thesis will explore, is the possibility that the spirit of man also needs sanctification – even after regeneration. The book of Ephesians may give a possible confirmation to it in I Corinthians 7.

4.3.2 THE DIFFERENT PARTS OF MAN'S SPIRIT

The spirit of man is united with God Spirit when a person is born again. Before regeneration, the unsaved spirit is dead in relation to God and the natural and the spiritual realms become one as the spirit of man becoming one with God in Christ Jesus. The spirit is an invisible substance and beyond comprehension. What we know about the spirit, is via its manifestations.⁶³ In the realm of the spirit, the prophetic gifts are functioning, and God's power is available to work mighty miracles on behalf on His children.

And you hath he QUICKENED, who were DEAD in trespasses and SIN; Wherein in time past ye walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worked in the children of disobedience: [But God] hath quickened us together with Christ, And hath raised us up together, and MADE US SIT TOGETHER IN HEAVENLY PLACES IN CHRIST JESUS... For by GRACE ARE YE SAVED THROUGH FAITH; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God: Not of works, lest any man should boast... For he is our peace, who hath made both ONE, and hath broken down the middle wall of partition between us; Having ABOLISHED IN HIS FLESH THE ENMITY... For through Him we both have ACCESS by one Spirit UNTO THE FATHER...

Ephesians 2:1-21 (emphasis added)

⁶³ Nee, Watchmen (1968) The Spiritual Man. Richmond, Virginia: Christian Fellowship Publishers, Inc., p. 68.

The spirit man is complex with different parts, of which the *three MAIN PARTS* includes: **commune, intuition and conscience**. The different spiritual body parts of the spirit have different functions, just as those of the physical body parts.

4.3.2.1 COMMUNE (THE SPIRITUAL HEART FOR RELATIONSHIP)

When the believers' "*most inner part of his spirit*" is united with God's spirit, he enters into an intimate loving relationship with God.⁶⁴ The whole provision of the New Covenant is to fit us for abiding continually.⁶⁵ Such glory will transform the believer into the image of God, and results in the Government of God in the believers' life: God will rule and reign in his life. All communication with God occurs in man's spirit. When a believer lives in commune with God, it will result in "*Apostolic and Prophetic revelations of Christ*":⁶⁶ hearing the voice of God, seeing visions; receiving revelations and experiencing God's presence.

4.3.2.2 INTUITION (SPIRITUAL INTELLIGENCE FOR DISCERNMENT)

Intuition is the spiritual antennae connecting the natural and the spiritual worlds.

God reveals Himself and His will through the Law. God makes Himself and His will known through the believer's intuition to walk in accordance to it.⁶⁷ Intuition will also reveal demonic presence. As the soul has its senses, so too has the spirit.

The spirit *knows* while the mind *understands*, thus, the things of God can be known by the intuition of His spirit. To know things in the spirit / by intuition is Biblical called revelations.

⁶⁴ I Corinthians 2:9 – 3:2; Luke 1:47; John 4:23; Romans 7:6; Romans 8:15; I Corinthians 6:17.

⁶⁵ Murray, Andrew Dr (1996) *The Holiest of All*. New Kensington, PA: Whitaker House, p. 269.

⁶⁶ Ephesians 2:1-2.

⁶⁷ Nee, Watchmen (1968) *The Spiritual Man*. Richmond, Virginia: Christian Fellowship Publishers, Inc, p. 69.

God does not explain Himself through mans reasoning: Never will man come to know God through rationalism.⁶⁸ Since the “Anointing of God’s Holy Spirit” teaches the believers everything, Christians do not require other men to instruct them concerning false teachings. The wisdom of God therefore will assist His people to know good and evil.⁶⁹

4.3.2.3 CONSCIENCE (THE SPIRITUAL DISCERNING ORGAN)

Conscience (Spiritual Discerning organ to Witness):⁷⁰ The believers’ conscience bear witness of God; can discern between right and wrong and can judge the secret things of men. The Conscience is closely tied to the heart of men and therefore the fear of the Lord resides in it. When man sin, his heart hardens and the fear of the Lord departs from him. Just as the “Ark of Testimony” kept the Ten Commandments and the two tablets of law silently accused / excused the doings of Israel, just the same with the believers conscience – on which God has written the law of God – bearing witness⁷¹ for or against the believer.⁷²

4.3.2.4 THE MIND OF THE SPIRIT

The mind of the spirit (Spiritual Knowledge and Wisdom to Understand): The mind consists of various parts: spiritual understanding, intelligence, the wisdom and the knowledge of God. The mind of the spirit illuminates specific things for the believer to understand. In it the great mysteries of science is revealed.

⁶⁸ Mark 10:15.

⁶⁹ I John 2:20; 3:27.

⁷⁰ Deuteronomy 2:30; Romans 8:16; I Corinthians 5:3.

⁷¹ Romans 9:1.

⁷² Nee, Watchmen (1968) *The Spiritual Man*. Richmond, Virginia: Christian Fellowship Publishers, Inc, p. 69.

Paul refers to it, when he prays for the eyes of the spiritual understanding God's people to be opened.⁷³ To receive the mind of Christ is part of the believer's spiritual inheritance – which is the location of our spiritual genetics.

When a believer experience utter silence for a while, it appears as if his spirit is asleep. Such believer should support his spirit by his mind by praying with the mind until the spirit is rising up in your inner most being, supporting the prayer by faith. The mind and the spirit are closely related.

Occasionally the spirit of man may be oppressed by Satan that we cannot discern it. If a person's spirit is asleep, he put on the flesh and walks in the flesh.⁷⁴ Christian who seemed to live with no conscience, or neglect their prayer life, or who is nurtured poorly in childhood, is usually slumbering in their spirits.⁷⁵

4.3.2.5 SPIRITUAL SENSES (SPIRITUAL FAITH ORGAN)

Spiritual Senses (Spiritual Faith organ to Experience God): Spiritual discernment is for those who are spiritually matured – for those who have exercised to discern good from evil.⁷⁶ Every human spirit has spiritual senses: eyes, ears, taste, touch and smell. Although a believer may have experienced deliverance from sin, he may be powerless to overcome his natural man with all its emotions.⁷⁷ Wherever a person is controlled by his emotions and not by God's Holy Spirit, the believer is in need of the deep work of the cross. Only God can remove “*the body of sin*”.⁷⁸

⁷³ Ephesians 1:17-20.

⁷⁴ Ephesians 5:13-15.

⁷⁵ Sanford, John Loren and Paula (2008) *Awakening the Slumbering Spirit*. Lake Mary, Florida: Charisma House, p.19.

⁷⁶ Hebrews 5:14.

⁷⁷ Nee, Watchmen (1968) *The Spiritual Man*. Volume II. Richmond, Virginia: Christian Fellowship Publishers, Inc., p. 189.

⁷⁸ Romans 6:6. “Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with Him that the “**BODY OF SIN**” might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin.”

Emotions may be dominated the most formidable enemy of the life of a spiritual Christian. The silence of emotion is an indispensable condition to walk by God's Spirit. The spiritual man will use his feelings to express the divine life in him.

4.3.2.6 THE WILL, THE SPIRITUAL SEAT OF POWER

The seat of power (Spiritual Authority organ / Free Will to Govern with Christ in Righteousness and Judgment): The book of acts reveals that the believer can be filled with the Spirit of God and receive power to witness about this 'new way' of Divine Living.⁷⁹ Through this part of the spirit, the gifts of miracles, healing and wonders of God are manifested. Some believers have developed this gift and move great in the prophetic but can struggle in another area in their life.

4.3.2.7 SPIRITUAL DNA

Spiritual DNA (Spiritual genetics - Inheritance): Just as the material body stores genetic information in the Chromosomes of the cell, called the DNA, the same is found in the spiritual body where all the information of Iniquity is stored on spiritual genetic / DNA level.

Watchmen Nee warns that when a child of God becomes spiritual he is subjected to the influences of the supernatural world. Deception occur when man does not know the difference between spiritual and the phenomena of the supernatural. Spiritual experiences originate in the believers spirit while supernatural experiences are those, which originates from the physical senses of from the soulical sphere.⁸⁰ Satan too can perform supernatural deeds. Every child of God should not belief every supernatural phenomenon, but tests the spirit (I John 4:1).

⁷⁹ Hebrews 10:19-10.

⁸⁰ Nee, Watchmen (1968) The Spiritual Man. Volume II. Richmond, Virginia: Christian Fellowship Publishers, Inc.,pp. 57-58.

On the different parts of the spirit of man, Dr Méndez-Ferrell concludes that one cannot **BE** of the Spirit and **Be** of the flesh, at the same time. You are either one or the other – you can only walk in the spirit or walk in the flesh. For some reason, a theory exists that the believer can live in the flesh and in the spirit simultaneously. This is a big mistake, which created consequently a Church filled with sin, sickness, religion, spiritual death and people living in spiritual prisons.⁸¹

4.3.3 THE DIFFERENT PARTS OF MAN'S SOUL

The soul of a person is called his “**self-conscious**”, which is the seat of their personality. The *Three Main Faculties* that constitute man's SOUL are, his: **(1) will, (2) mind and (3) emotions.**⁸² Other elements which forms part of a person's personality are, his intellect, thoughts, ideals, love, emotions, discernment, choice, decisions, etc. According to the view of Watchman Nee, *free will* reveals the *power to choose and* express man's authority on earth. The *mind* is the instrument of thoughts and manifests his intellectual power. *Emotions* is the instrument revealing mans' likes and dislikes.⁸³

4.3.4 THE DWELLINGS OF INIQUITY

God made man good, but during an encounter with the *serpent* in the Garden of Eden, Eve was beguiled to use her *tool of free will* against God's will and enter into Satan's domain of “*knowledge of good and evil*”.

⁸¹ Méndez-Ferrell, Ana Dr (2011) *Iniquity: The major hindrance to God's glory manifested in your life*. Ponte Vedra, Florida: Ana Mendez-Ferrell Inc, p. 46.

⁸² I Thessalonians 5:23

⁸³ Nee, Watchmen (1968) *The Spiritual Man. Volume II*. Richmond, Virginia: Christian Fellowship Publishers, Inc.,p. 36.

Through disobedience, the delegated authority of humanity is transferred to Satan. With the fall, people were separated from God and not only lost their spiritual dwelling place with Him but also the faculty to connect with Him – they became spiritually dead. They also lost the ability to live forever, however not due to punishment but out of love God made provision for Salvation out of eternal depravation. Tragically the human nature was corrupted and evil became part of their inner being.

Dr Méndez-Ferrell testifies to **three different types of iniquity**: (1) **Voluntary iniquity** is the practice of evil. (2) **Conscious iniquity** implies conscious evil in action, producing an inner struggle. (3) **Unconscious iniquity** involves sin that comes from our past generations, which latent in our spiritual and genetic inheritance. Such iniquities will eventually be activated through personal sin and is seen in problems in the soul as well as in the body of a person. Unconscious iniquities (bloodline curses/ generational sin) can be the cause of many problems, illnesses or disasters in a person's life.⁸⁴

After “*the fall*”, the soul of man remained immersed in darkness and confusion. The only voice, which he could hear, was the devils. This spiritual habitation becomes the basis of all information of the soul. Satan and his followers' aim are to establish EVIL structures in the soul of people that would imprison them. The Bible calls such dwellings, “structures of wickedness”⁸⁵ or “dwellings of iniquity”.⁸⁶ Some of the main methods that Satan is using comprise: (1) control, (2) dominance and (3) influence.

It is of crucial importance to unveil the places and designs of iniquity / evil in the person's “soul, spirit and body”. Only when a doctor diagnoses an illness, treatment can be given. Sanctification is the goal and the patients' behaviour the roadmap to the problem. Man's behaviour is reflecting his spiritual dwelling places.

⁸⁴ Mendez, Ana Méndez Dr (2011) *Iniquity: The major hindrance to see God's glory manifested in your life*. Ponte Verda, Florida: Aná Méndez Ferrell Inc, pp.20-21.

⁸⁵ Psalm 84:10.

⁸⁶ Daniel 4:25.

A wise man scaeth the city of the mighty, and casteth down the strength [stronghold] of the confidence thereof.

Proverbs 5:9

4.3.4.1 INIQUITY, AS PART OF MAN'S SPIRIT

Iniquity is part of man's spirit. Such a statement implies that the spirit of the believer is not pure – even after his regeneration,⁸⁷ even though God already dwells in the spirit of Man. Scripture reveals a raging battle between the flesh and the spirit, even after regeneration. This is not possible.

4.3.4.1.1 'THE OLD MAN (UN-REGENERATED)' AS ROOT OF EVIL DWELLINGS OF INIQUITY

Dr Ed Murphy argues: ***The Flesh*** with which believers daily battle is NOT the same as the "***old self/man***" which once controlled our life but is now permanently crucified with Christ.

Before coming to Christ, life was dominated by the depraved sinful nature. In such state the person was separated from God and spiritually dead. THIS was the old man and the old self.⁸⁸ Scripture reveals that before coming to Christ the believers life was dominated by his sinful nature inherited from Adam.

For ye are dead, and your life is hid with Christ in God.

Colossians 3:3

Scripture declares that after regeneration, however, the old self is dead and the believer has a ***new self***-resulting from Christ living in us.⁸⁹

⁸⁷ II Corinthians 7:1.

⁸⁸ Murphy, ED Dr (2003) The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson, p.107.

⁸⁹ Romans 6:5-8; 8:8; II Corinthians 4:7-11; Galatians 2:20; Colossians 1:27; 3:1-4.

I John 3:4-19 explain that the believer is born of God and no longer practice sin. *TO BE* of God and *TO BE BORN* of God means that the believer's **new nature** comes from God. THIS means that the person is transferred from the kingdom of darkness into the marvelous Kingdom of Light. Therefore, the believer receives the first fruit of the Spirit of God.

Ezekiel speaks of the two dimensions with the different workings of God's Holy Spirit as follows.

A new heart also will I give you, and a new spirit will I put within you: and I will take away the stony heart out of your flesh, and I will give you an heart of flesh. And I will put my spirit within you, and cause you to walk in my statutes, and ye shall keep my judgments, and do them. And ye shall dwell in the land that I gave to your fathers; and ye shall be my people, and I will be your God. I will also save you from all your uncleanness.

Ezekiel 36:26-29a

The **indwelling Spirit** has been given to every child of God – although many don't experience little beyond the first part of the promise in Ezekiel 36:26-27 – **the new spirit given to the believer** in regeneration.

Through faith in God's promise of salvation in Jesus Christ the Messiah believers became partakers of this new self, ending the corruption that is in the world by lust; and by faith in Gods promise of sanctification and indwelling believers became partakers of the indwelling of God's Holy Spirit.

Lloyd-Jones commented that my old self, that self that was in Adam, was an utter slave to sin, that self has gone, I have a new self, I am a new man... I am not doing this or that; it is this sin that remains in my members that does so.

Sin is no longer in me [in my new self in Christ]; it is in my members only. This is the most liberating thing you have ever heard.⁹⁰

⁹⁰ Lloyd-Jones, D Martyn (1987) Exposition of Ephesians. Grand Rapids, MI: Baker, p.1:74.

According as his divine power hath given unto us all things that pertain unto life and godliness, through the knowledge of him that hath called us to glory and virtue: Whereby are given unto us exceeding great and precious promises: that by these ye might be PARTAKERS OF THE DIVINE NATURE having escaped the CORRUPTION that is in the world through lust.

II Peter 1:3-5 (emphasis added)

4.3.4.1.2 REGENERATION AND THE ROOT OF EVIL DWELLINGS OF INIQUITY

The problem commence when the believer do not understand the process of Biblical sanctification, and the doctrine of sin and total depravity is not explained properly to the new believer. God warns that his people go astray because of a lack of knowledge. The church is failing the new born. THIS is the precise reason why the following question arises: How is it then possible that the flesh has such a strong pull on the believer's life?⁹¹ And THIS is precisely where the problem occurs: THIS truth has been lost from the Church of Jesus Christ. Scripture states that the whole earth is waiting earnestly for the manifestations of the sons of God.

For the earnest expectation of the creature waited for the manifestation of the sons of God... Because the creature itself also shall be DELIVERED from THE BONDAGE OF CORRUPTION into the glorious liberty of the children of God. For we know that the whole creation groaneth and travaileth in pain together until now. And not only they, but OURSELVES also, which have the first fruits of the Spirit, even we ourselves groan within ourselves, WAITING FOR THE ADOPTION, to wit, the redemption of our body. For we are saved by hope: but hope that is seen is not hope: for what a man seeth, why doth he yet hope for? But if we hope for that we see not, then do we with patience wait for it."

Romans 8:18-25

Scripture reveals the sanctification process will be not finished until the body is redeemed and the person got a new heavenly resurrected body. Only then will the

⁹¹ Romans 6:1

last root of the depraved nature of the flesh be broken and the believer be fully transformed into the image of Jesus Christ our older brother.

The sin problem continues while we are on earth, BUT **God made provision through the way of the Cross** – to be able to put to death the deeds of the flesh. Believers have to learn how, by God's Holy Spirit, to put to death the sinful deeds of the body.

For if ye live after the flesh, ye shall die: but if ye through the Spirit do mortify the deeds of the body, ye shall live.

Romans 8:13

Believers problem with sin and iniquity continues after regeneration – but, the Apostle informs the believer to present himself to God as those alive from the dead, and our members as instruments of righteousness to God.⁹² He will refine the Christian with His refinery fire unto righteousness. If we desire His righteousness more than anything on earth, He will come and fulfill the redemptive work in our hearts.

That the righteousness of the law might be fulfilled in us, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit... We are debtors, not to live after the flesh. For if we live after the flesh, ye shall die: but if ye through the Spirit do mortify the deeds of the body, ye shall live. For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the Sons of God.

Romans 8:4, 13-14 (emphasis added)

Ray Stedman **defines the flesh** as the urge to self-centeredness within us that distorted human nature, which makes us want to be our own god. It is the proud the un-crucified self which is the seat of willful *impudence* and *rebellion* against authority.⁹³

According to C Fred Dickason, the flesh is that part of a human person that is in **rebellion towards God**.

⁹² Romans 6:12-13; Romans 7:24 – Romans 8:4.

⁹³ Stedman (1975) *Spiritual Warfare*. Portland, Ore.: Multnomah, p.48.

Ever since Adam sinned, all men are born in a state of sin⁹⁴ and by nature children of wrath.⁹⁵ This is related to depravity. It means that man is totally affected by sin⁹⁶ in his intellect, emotions and will.⁹⁷ Central to all sin is the **failure to love God fully** and **to submit ourselves to His divine will and guidance** for our lives.⁹⁸

Martin Lloyd-Jones notes: The term flesh in the New Testament and especially in the epistles of Apostle Paul refers to the **Old Sinful Nature** – NOT the **old man** (as seen in 2.5.1.1), **but the old nature** – the sinful depraved nature which still residing within humanity. Where God is to dwell, He must have a habitation. Israel first has to build and prepared a tabernacle, before God would come down and take possession. Just so with the new regenerated person, he has to prepare a dwelling place for God in his new regenerated heart – he has to clean his **triplicate being** as a permanent dwelling place for the Lord of Lords.

As soon as God placed His Holy Spirit within man's inwards parts, the Kingdom of God came within the believer. Within us, in the believers innermost parts – in the heavenly sanctuary where the "**ark of the Covenant** (the believers new heart)" is – there, the Father and the Son came to dwell. In the new heart – sprinkled with the Blood of Christ is written by the "finger of God, His Holy Spirit) the Law."⁹⁹

4.3.5 THE DWELLINGS OF INIQUITY / EVIL DERIVING FROM THE FLESH

The earth is full of people who spend much time in "**places of wickedness / places of iniquity (evil)**". **Man's behaviour is a reflection of his spiritual dwelling place – if it is with God it will produce holy heavenly patterns; if his dwelling is with evil, it will produce patterns of wickedness and iniquity.**

⁹⁴ Psalm 51:5.

⁹⁵ Ephesians 2:3.

⁹⁶ Romans 3:10-18; Ephesians 4:17-19.

⁹⁷ Dickason, Fred C (1990) Demon Possession and the Christian. Westchester, Illinois; Crossway Books, p.59.

⁹⁸ Bufford, Rodger K (1988) Counseling and the Demonic. Dallas, Texas: Word Publishers, p.143.

⁹⁹ Lloyd-Jones, D Martyn (1986) The Christian Warfare: An Exposition of Ephesians 6:10-13. Grand Rapids, MI: Baker Books, p. 441.

Sin is progressive and will strengthen pattern-forming evil designs. People will operate *unconsciously* from these “*designs / patterns*”, which will create **strongholds** over them, influencing man to make decision not coming from God. Such structures are **invisible prisons** deriving from *combined thoughts* and as such, it is shaping the sinner’s soul and determining the fruit that he bears.

Designs / structures of the soul (will, emotions and thoughts) are the *core-beliefs* from where *insecurity or security* derives.¹⁰⁰ **Evil patterns originate form ungodly evil beliefs** and will develop into spiritual, emotional and mental strongholds over time.

Let the wicked forsake his way, and the unrighteous man his thoughts: and let him return unto the LORD, and he will have mercy upon him; and to our God, for he will abundantly pardon.

Isaiah 55:7

And be not conformed to this world: but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind, that ye may prove what is that good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God.

Romans 12:2

Chester and Betsy justly define **ungodly beliefs** developed as dwellings of iniquity (evil): Everybody to some extent lives his life out of wrong beliefs. We call these “**lies**” about ourselves, about others and about God. Why are they so dangerous? They surely affect our perceptions, our decisions and our actions.¹⁰¹

Ungodly beliefs includes all beliefs, decision, attitudes, agreements, judgments, expectations, vows and oaths that do not agree with God’s (His Word, His nature and His character). **Godly beliefs** agree with God (His Word, His nature and His character), is rooted in the believers’ heart and reflected in his actions. Godly beliefs will enhance the transformation of the believer into the image of God.

¹⁰⁰Méndez-Ferrell, Ana Dr (2011) Iniquity: The major hindrance to God’s glory manifested in your life. Ponte Vedra, Florida: Ana Méndez-Ferrell Inc, p.49-51.

¹⁰¹ Kylstra, Chester and Betsy (2007) Restoring the Foundations: An integrated approach to Healing Ministry. Hendersonville, NC: Proclaiming by His Word, p.155.

Ungodly beliefs are integrally related to the *sins of the fathers* and its resulting *Curses* affecting a person's life, causing deception, clouded minds, rationalization and unbelief in the same sin areas. Sadly, such ungodly beliefs are direct related to *soul/spirit hurts* and young *broken hearts*.¹⁰²

Hurts and wrong beliefs are like two hands that are placed together with the fingers intertwined and locked – the hurt must be healed and the mind renewed. If the hurts is not released – the hurt will override the healing process of the *renewing of the mind*. Sins of the fathers, soul/spirit hurts and ungodly beliefs form a *three-fold negative cord* that is only broken by: (1) our understanding, (2) our faith and (3) the appropriation of our freedom. Ungodly beliefs will provide legal grounds for demons wherever a covenant is made with the enemy. Sin gives Satan a legal right to oppress or to possess a person.

Regarding ungodly beliefs, Thom Gardener writes: Although there are sources of programming during our early years, *home and family are the primary seedbed* that determines what kind of fruit a child will produce the rest of his lives.¹⁰³

As long as the soul continue in evil ungodly structures of thoughts, God's power to overcome will be eliminated because of the *tradition / way of living*. Religious structures keep people in oppressed, powerless and sin issues. Such prison does not allow the person to see himself in a different way. Before dwellings of iniquity / stronghold can be broken, it must be recognized, admit, repent of and cancelled. The counselor must find out what influences and controls the person's life.

All evil structures/designs develop energy fields, which attract to them what they display. The church main job is to undo evil dwellings places in the soul and spirit of believers and establish a dwelling place for God in the believer.

¹⁰² Kylstra, Chester and Betsy (2007) *Restoring the Foundations: An integrated approach to Healing Ministry*. Hendersonville, NC: Proclaiming by His Word.

¹⁰³ Gardner, Thom (2005) *Healing the wounded Heart*. Shippensburg, PA: Destiny Image Publishers, p.19.

Many people relapse back into sin, because they did not deal with the “**origin / dwelling place of iniquity**” in that area and thereafter should be filled by God’s Holy Spirit – as part of the transformation process of sanctification. People must show with their lives that they are sincere.

Ungodly evil patterns *have to be undone* by God’s power – through our *determination to unseat them* and through our *faith* in order to replace the lie with God’s truth about them. This become visible when the person begins to believe in a different way regarding themselves – seeing them in the fullness of the greatness and power as God sees him and starts to act coherently.

Knocking down evil dwellings – structures of wickedness / iniquity – depends on the subjecting of your ‘will to god’. Our free will is the most powerful tool to enter the Kingdom of God, therefore, the key to freedom starts by acknowledging that nothing can possess a person’s free will! The moment that the person in bondage acknowledge THIS powerful key, God will joins His power to knock down all the dwellings of wickedness that have ruled can controlled the person for years.

For though we walk in the flesh, we do not war after the flesh: (For the WEAPONS OF OUR WARFARE are not carnal, but MIGHTY through God TO THE PULLING DOWN OF STRONGHOLD); Casting down imaginations, and every high thing that exalteth itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ.

II Corinthians 10:3-5 (emphasis added)

Regarding strongholds, Drs Jerry and Carol Robeson denote: Some Christians mistakenly attribute works of the flesh to demon possession.

Our flesh has some strong ideas of how it wants to live. It we do not use ***the power of God’s Holy Spirit to keep it subdued***, it will raise havoc.¹⁰⁴

¹⁰⁴ Robeson, Jerry & Carol Dr (1984) Strongman’s, His name: An Biblical Approach to Spiritual Warfare. New Kensington, PA: Whitaker House, p.16.

When Adam left God's dwelling, he found himself naked and his alternate dwelling was to hide and to cover himself with vine leaves. En NOW, where people dwell in darkness, they want to cover their sin and hide away from God's light.

Amanda Buys justly defined in the area of demonic structures / strongholds deriving from patterns and structures of **lies** coming from **insecurity**, we argue favorably to the following areas:¹⁰⁵

- Dwellings of fear.
- Dwellings of affliction.
- Dwellings of illness.
- Dwellings of scarcity and poverty.
- Religious and Babylonian dwellings.
- Cultural dwellings.
- Dwellings of stress.
- Dwellings of unbelief.
- Dwellings of pride and egocentrism.
- Dwellings of neglect.
- Dwellings of addiction.
- Dwellings of rejection.
- Dwellings of destructive habits.
- Dwellings of lust.
- Dwellings of complacency.

4.3.5.1 THE VEIL OF INIQUITY AND SCIENCE

INIQUITY established a veil between man and God.

¹⁰⁵ Buys, Amanda. Soul Care School (Course I, II, III). Panorama, Cape Town: Self-Published. (www.kanaanministries.org)

Ignoring one of “*the triplicate parts of a human being*” is the reason why science does not understand the simplistic nature of the human being: ¹⁰⁶ the natural man and the spiritual man. Such ignorance occurs not only in physiological circles but penetrated several Christian churches and brought a veil to understand this essential truth. This is the main reason the Church is divided in opinion on how to deal with hurting people.

To define the human soul and study human behaviour, was thought of as a “**spiritual discipline**” and associated with “**Religion**”, until Sigmund Freud – the father of modern Psychology devised Psychology as a substitute for Religion.

Freud divorced *Anthropology*¹⁰⁷ from the spiritual realm and made a way for atheistic, humanistic and rationalistic theories about human behaviour.¹⁰⁸

Famed Biblical Counselor, Jay E. Adams gave the reason why: It is difficult for some to acknowledge “*personal sin*” as the root cause of most of the day-to-day counseling problems that arise. This is particularly true in an age deeply steeped in Freudianism.¹⁰⁹

John and Paula Standford emphasis **the crux of the problem**: Psychology, insofar as it follows its founders’ teachings, believes that life writes on us who we are, that we are conditioned by what we happens to us.

¹⁰⁶ Méndez-Ferrell, Ana Dr (2011) Iniquity: The major hindrance to see God’s glory manifested in your life. Ponte Verda, Florida: Aná Méndez-Ferrell Inc, p.21.

¹⁰⁷ **Define: Anthropology** is the study of human beings. The Greek word for **man** is **arthropods**. Man is the master piece of God’s creative acts. He was made in the image of God to be the crowning glory of creation (Genesis 1:1-28; Psalm 94:9). He is far superior to all the animal creation combined. The finest looking ape cannot compare with man in his total being. Intelligent man is one of the greatest arguments for the existence of an intelligent God. Evolutionary theories are simply man’s attempt to escape from creatorship accountability and responsibility.

¹⁰⁸ MacArthur, John Dr (2005) The John MacArthur Pastor’s Library: Counseling, How to Counsel Biblically. Nashville, Tennessee: John Mac Arthur, p. 7.

¹⁰⁹ Adams, Jay E. (1973) The Christian Counselor’s Manual: The Practice of Nouthetic Counseling. Grand Rapids, MI: Ministry Resources Library, p.136.

It tends “**to overlook sin**” and talk about “**conditioning**” and thereby “**minimizing guilt**”.¹¹⁰

Traditionally, people sought counseling from all problems of life by living in relationship with the Creator of the universe – a relationship with the Father, through the costly price of the cross of Jesus Christ by the indwelling presence of God’s Holy Spirit. As one of the early Church Fathers so aptly said, “**There is a God-shaped vacuum in the human heart that only the Lord can fill!**” A living relationship with God can only be possible through the spirit of man who is in union with the Spirit of God.

Martin and Deidre Bobgan testify to the Biblical way to deal with problems: The early Church faced and ministered to mental-emotional behavioral problems that were as complex as the ones that exist in our days. The conditions were more difficult than those we face today. The early church suffered persecution, poverty and various afflictions, which are foreign to most of twentieth-century Christians. The catacombs of Rome are a testimony to the extent of the problems faced by the early Church.¹¹¹

William Law wrote a statement two centuries ago that is even more relevant today: Man needs to be saved from his own wisdom as much as from his own righteousness, for they produce the same corruption.¹¹²

Martin Gross warns that Christians are in danger of declaring the religious approach unscientific and therefore illegitimate: Never before has a general philosophical system revered self-indulgence... The lure is irresistible. To egocentric modern man, the prospect of “*Self*” instead of God who is seated at the centre of a world philosophical system, is exquisitely attractive.

¹¹⁰ Sandford, John and Paula (1982) The most comprehensive book on inner healing today. Tulsa, OK: Tulsa House INC, p.7.

¹¹¹ Bobgan, Martin & Deidre. The spoiling of Christianity By Psychology.
(<http://www.logosresourcespages.org/counseling/spoiling.htm>)

¹¹² Law, William (1971) The Power of the Spirit. Fort, Washington: Christian Literature Crusade, p. 74.

See to it that no one take you captive through philosophy and empty deception, according to the tradition of men, according to the elementary principles of the world, rather than according to Christ... These are matters which have, to be sure, the appearance of wisdom in self-made religions... but are of no value against fleshly indulgence.

Colossians 2:8, 23

4.4 DWELLINGS AFFECT THE BELIEVERS' GOVERNANCE

In the beginning God created man to live in a Physical plane – called “earth”, as well as in a Spiritual plane – called “heavenly places” – possibly the third heaven, the dwelling place of God and his angels. God created man in this manner, to live in two realms at the same time: (1) in “*the natural realm*”, as well as, (2) in “*the spiritual realm*”, however the believer has to choose if he is going to walk after his flesh or if he is going to walk by the Spirit.

The book of Ephesians mentions several regions that exist in the “**heavenly places**” also called the Kingdom of Light and just so, there are places or regions of darkness which we can call “**infernal places**” in the kingdom of darkness. Both kingdoms’ are functioning by designs established in the spiritual world; however, it manifests its fruit on earth. Satan steals the principles of God and perverted them

The Goal of our Lord Jesus Christ was to unite the Heaven and the earth again, establishing everything that belongs to the heavenly Kingdom in the natural world.

Having made known unto us the mystery of his will, according to his good pleasure which he hath purposed in himself: That in the dispensation of the fullness of times he might gather together in one all things in Christ, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth; even in him:

Ephesians 1:9-10

Jesus Christ came to manifest God’s structures and designs on earth – the pattern for His heavenly Kingdom and even sends angels to help us, trying to unite men to God the Father.

Jesus proclaimed that man is seated with Him in heavenly places – which imply that we can live our lives on earth and in His presence in “heavenly place”, at the same time. The mission and goal of Satan is doing precisely the opposite – to unite the earth and hell at the same time and to take prisoners.¹¹³

The Bible reveals that there are natural prisons on earth, but also **spiritual prisons** in the heaven realm. The book of Jude prompts those who are working with God, “**to snatch others from the fire and save them**”.¹¹⁴

Jude does NOT refer to people that are dead and condemned, but is speaking of people who are in spiritual prisons bound by sin.

I the LORD have called thee in righteousness, and will hold thine hand, and will keep thee, and give thee for a covenant of the people, for a light of the Gentiles; To open the blind eyes, to bring out the prisoners from the prison, and them that sit in darkness out of the prison house.

Isaiah 42:6-7

The church, as the army of the Lord, should come to understanding of the circumstances that give demons the legal right to torment people. Satan is using weapons of **pain, fear** and **control** to trap people. Satan can only bind people legally. We should NOT think the Word of God refers here ONLY to drug addicts, prostitutes and alcoholics; the TRUTH is that “**anyone can be captive**” – CHRISTIANS included.

Bring my soul out of prison, that I may praise thy name: the righteous shall compass me about; for thou shalt deal bountifully with me.

Psalms 142:7

David, the King of Israel was never in a physical prison, though, he reveals his understanding of the spirit realm. The prophet Jeremiah reveals how pride can imprison the people of God.¹¹⁵

¹¹³ Mendez-Ferrell, Anna (2010) Regions of Captivity. Shippensburg, PA: Destiny Image Publishers, p.17.

¹¹⁴ Jude 1:23

¹¹⁵ Jeremiah 13:15-17.

Man is created to rule in the natural world as well as in the spiritual world. *The jealousy and envious Evil nature of Satan, yearns to rule and to reign on earth.*

In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth. And the earth was without form, and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep.

Genesis 1:1

Man – who fully functioned as spiritual beings – was by design spiritually equipped to function full in accordance with ***the dwellings of God***: (1) the Knowledge of God, (2) the Wisdom of God, (3) the Intelligence (mind and understanding) of the God, (4) the Counsel of God, (4) the Fear of the Lord, (5) the power of God, (6) the Holiness of God and (7) the Righteousness of God.

God not only gave humanity the order and authority to subdue the earth and to rule, to reign and to subdue over it, God delegate some of His authority to man.

And God blessed them, and God said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth, and subdue it: and have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over every living thing that moved upon the earth.

Genesis 1:28

God gave humanity the “***the tool of free will***” to exercise this governance on earth, as it is in heaven. God gave man the domain and the power to rule on earth and not God nor Satan has the right to overrule man’s will. This dwelling place was an untouchable fortress – impassable by any EVIL.

4.5 INIQUITY, THE ROOT OF ALL EVIL

The moment a person submits his life to God and he is conceived by the divine seed of God and an internal conflict is set on between his flesh and “***unregenerate spirit***” and the divine Seed he received. The *flesh* will be nourished by *iniquity* while the *life of Christ* will fight with *God’s Spirit*.

And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

Genesis 3:15

Iniquity involves the corrupted evil seed born into the spirit of man, the moment he is conceived. From birth, iniquity began to *influence* and *corrupt* the heart through: reasoning, corrupt what the person believes about himself, corrupt the way he develop himself and even corrupt his trust in people and God. Iniquity springs from man's spirit and shapes his flesh, which on itself is intimately tied to iniquity and serves the law of sin and death, which is opposed to the life of the Spirit. The nature of the flesh – *as evil pattern forming designs of Satan* - is working is believers, pulling them away of God's designs of divine righteousness.

King David recognized the fleshly nature as basis from which all sin grows. He acknowledges the *three designs of sin* that Satan is using to corrupt: *Transgressions* (self-will/rebellion), *Iniquity* (flesh nature) and *sin*.

Have mercy upon me, O God, according to thy loving-kindness: according unto the multitude of thy tender mercies blot out my TRANSGRESSIONS. Wash me thoroughly from mine INIQUITY, and cleanse me from my SIN. For I acknowledge my TRANSGRESSION: and my SIN is ever before me. Against thee, thee only, have I sinned, and done this evil in thy sight: that thou mightiest be justified when thou speakest, and be clear when thou judges. Behold, I was shape in INIQUITY; and in SIN did my mother conceive me. Behold, thou desires truth in the inward parts: and in the hidden part thou shalt make me to know wisdom.

Psalm 51:1-6

The force of iniquity pulls the believer to live according to his *emotions* and his *own understanding*, prevent spiritual growth. It is essential for the believer to come to the knowledge that – *he cannot change himself* – only God can destroy the sinful nature – and uproot the self-live from the human heart. Only the Seed of God can destroy the seed of Satan in our lives. The danger of the flesh is – that it disguises itself – attracting horrible spirits of religiosity toward him.

Religion controls the flesh, but cannot deal with the sinful nature of our being. It operates through means of rules and legalism. That which is of the Spirit has nothing in common with doing, but with being! As long as iniquity (the sinful fleshly depraved nature of man) is not eradicated from the believers' life, he will continue to be imprisoned in the flesh.¹¹⁶

*The objective of iniquity is to keep the believer focused on "the self" and the world. Iniquity (the sinful nature of man) is the enemy of the Cross.*¹¹⁷

It is only by The Lord's Spirit, when the believer adapts his spirit to God's Spirit, that victory comes. Only what is born day after day from heaven and brought to us by God's Holy Spirit will victor, but that which is born of the flesh will end in nothing.

4.5.1 THE OPERATION OF INIQUITY

Chester and Betsy Kylstra notes: Iniquity is a heart condition. God created humankind for love, compassion and fellowship. He desires a love relationship with us – however, on His terms and conditions. True love is only exposed when it has a choice to love or not. God gave us the tool of free will so that we can freely choose.

The heart is deceitful above all things, and desperately wicked: who can know it? I the LORD search the heart, I try the reins, even to give every man according to his ways, and according to the fruit of his doings.

Jeremiah 17:9-10

Sin is rooted in the condition of the iniquity / rebellion and is revealed as the outworking of the tendency of the heart. God challenge us to be serious to work with Him to remove the iniquity from our hearts.

¹¹⁶ Méndez-Ferrell, Ana Dr (2011) Iniquity: The major hindrance to see God's glory manifested in your life. Ponte Verda, Florida: Aná Méndez-Ferrell Inc, p.44.

¹¹⁷ Philippians 3:17-19.

4.5.2 INIQUITY PRODUCING SPIRITUAL PRISONS

Iniquity always spread from the depraved spirit of a person and affect his soul.¹¹⁸ The main function of Iniquity is to produce spiritual prison:

4.5.2.1 THE CAPTIVITY OF THE BODY

“Binding/captivity the body (addictions)”: Iniquity originates from the spirit of man which is passes onto the soul of man (spirit hurts deriving into soul hurts), building evil structures of behaviour (addictions / substance prisons).

There is a hidden world of trauma and many suffer from un-forgiveness. The soul is the bridge between the spirit and the body – God gave humanity the tool of “free will”. Addiction derives from witchcraft (**Pharmakeia** / drug). Addictions will finally bring sickness and death within the body. Destructive habits are easily passed on from generation to generation. God presents a way – when the soul came into a state of purity and is subjected to the leading of God’s Holy Spirit, spiritual healing and deliverance will derives from it.¹¹⁹ The basilisk is the king of serpents/healing. “Hermes” is the evil-spirit in charge, taking the souls of the dead to Hades (hell).

4.5.2.2 THE CAPTIVITY OF THE SOUL

Captivity of the soul: Iniquity derives from the spirit of human beings influencing the areas of the soul – emotions, mind or will – form overwhelming muddy *prisons of*: (1) influence, (2) control and (3) dominance over the person.¹²⁰

¹¹⁸ Méndez-Ferrell, Ana Dr (2011) Iniquity: The major hindrance to see God’s glory manifested in your life. Ponte Verda, Florida: Aná Méndez-Ferrell Inc, p.

¹¹⁹ Isaiah 53:4.

¹²⁰ Psalms 69:1-4; Psalm 88:3, 6-8b; Psalms 55:3-5.

Sometimes the soul can be even fragmented. The harder a person aim to be in control of his own life and struggle to manipulate his environment and people around him, the less will he be. The root of this problem lies in self-dependency and godship. Only God is almighty, all ells are totally dependant on Him. The sooner spiritual pride is acknowledged, confessed and repent of, the sooner the person will be on his way to divine health.

4.5.2.3 TORMENTS OF PERVERSITY

Bring about torments of Perversity: where mud prisons of debts, slander or a trapped corrupt environment exist, but for those who turn to the LORD and fear Him – the Lord shall lift up a standard.¹²¹

4.5.3 DEVASTATIONS OF CITIES

Iniquities make up the foundation for curses and the destruction of cities – as Biblical seen at the City of Sodom and Gomorra.¹²²

4.5.4 INIQUITIES AND CURSES

All Iniquities should be confessed, after which the curses going alongside it, should also be uprooted.¹²³ Blessed is the man whom God not imputed iniquity and whose spirit there is not guile.¹²⁴

¹²¹ Isaiah 59:1-5.

¹²² Leviticus 26:40-42.

¹²³ **Define:** A curse is the penalty given by God to a person and to his descendants as the result of their iniquity.

¹²⁴ Psalms 32:2-5.

4.5.5 INIQUITY PRODUCES THE FOLLOWING MANIFESTATIONS

The main manifestation of evil designs / structure of iniquity / wickedness include the following areas:¹²⁵

4.5.5.1 INIQUITY MANIFESTED THROUGH PRIDE AND STUBBORNNESS

Rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft and iniquity as idolatry. Stubbornness and pride goes hand in hand. Where the Word of God is rejected, the self is an idol. This is the case of the Pharisees and all religious man.

4.5.5.2 INIQUITY MANIFESTED THROUGH SPIRITUAL DEADNESS

Many people are unable to hear the voice of God due to the layers of iniquity in their life or in their bloodline.¹²⁶ God ordained man to hear His voice and to walk after His ways.¹²⁷ The only reason to keep us from hearing God's voice is our iniquities.¹²⁸ Since sanctification is a design of God's Kingdom, believers must ask God to reveal all our iniquities, confess it to the Lord and ask Him to help us to eliminate it from our lives. God will surely work with us and send his refinery fire to clean us unto righteousness. Wherever believers' struggle with sexual dreams and sexual aberrations, they have to confess and repent of each and every iniquity including fantasies. No general confessions will do. Every sin grows from a specific iniquity, and as such should be dealt with.

¹²⁵ Méndez-Ferrell, Ana Dr (2011) *Iniquity: The major hindrance to see God's glory manifested in your life.* Ponte Verda, Florida: Aná Méndez-Ferrell Inc, p.

¹²⁶ Psalms 58:3-5.

¹²⁷ John 10:27.

¹²⁸ Isaiah 59:1-2.

4.5.5.3 INIQUITY MANIFESTED THROUGH SPIRITUAL BLINDNESS

God provide spiritual eyes that can see into the spirit world. In the book of Ephesians, Apostle Paul prays to God to open the eyes of the understanding of the church as a whole so that they can know what the hope of their calling is and what the riches of glory of His inheritance includes.¹²⁹

There are two main reasons why the spiritual sight of believers is blocked: (1) veils of iniquity are not removed from the believers understanding,¹³⁰ or (2) not developed their spiritual senses because they are skepticism, guilt or unbelief.¹³¹ Such attitude is still corrupted and in need to be surrendered to the Lordship of Christ. Only the presence of God's Holy Spirit can change our hearts. He is the only one who can liberate captivity of the mind and of the heart. Only His glory will change us into the image of Christ.¹³²

4.5.5.4 INIQUITY MANIFESTED THROUGH SICKNESS AND PAIN

Iniquity causes sickness. Although it has its origin in the spirit of man, it travels through the soul and manifest in the body. Largely is derives from our bodies response to feelings. Since iniquity is genetically transferred, it can manifest in a generation line. Divine Health is the result from a spirit filled with the presence of God along with a pure heart, cleansed and free from iniquity.¹³³ Iniquity forms a toxic fluid, affects the bones and the bone marrow that is producing the blood.¹³⁴

¹²⁹ Ephesians 1:18.

¹³⁰ The devil's focus is to keep believers minds veiled (II Corinthians 3:14-16).

¹³¹ John 5:19-20.

¹³² II Corinthians 3, especially verse 16-18.

¹³³ Psalms 51:9-15.

¹³⁴ Psalms 31:9-10.

4.5.5.5 INIQUITY MANIFESTED THROUGH SPIRITUAL FORNICATION

God hates it when his people are bowing before other gods. Where people is fornication spiritually by seeking experiences with God's Holy Spirit, the desire derives the warmth of a relationship of God, but not the commitment of a covenant relationship with God. Such spiritual idolatry brings about sexual dreams and vile and obscene thoughts – which leave the person desperate without knowledge about the origin of it. Take note of every pact made with images or spirits and where promises are made. Ask God to forgive you and your ancestors and command it to be uprooted from your life. All sexual intercourses should also be identified and confessed and the soul ties cut.

4.5.5.6 INIQUITY MANIFESTED THROUGH AFFRONT

The tongue determines many of the curses or blessing believers receives.¹³⁵ An affront is when an injustice is done to someone that dishonors and grieves the person deeply and destroys parts of his heart. Such people have daggers in their mouths and have a heart full of rage and bitterness although it also originates from multiple offenses against themselves. Rejected people attract more rejection as well as curses. This will continue until iniquity is removed from the heart.

4.6 RIGHTEOUSNESS AND INIQUITY TWO OPPOSING SPIRITUAL FORCES

Iniquity is the root of all-evil. Job asked: *Who can uproot this devious malignant evil?* No man can tame it! Praise God, *Jesus of Nazareth – The Righteous-One did!* And He sent His Spirit – *The Holy Spirit of Christ Jesus* – with its tremendous matchless *force of righteousness, to uproot the depraved evil force of iniquity, lock stock and barrel!* God made a way where there was no way at all.

¹³⁵ Proverbs 18:21.

Not only did the seed bruise the head of the Serpent, but God provides a tremendous tool – the matchless force of righteousness to uproot the seed of Satan – iniquity – from the hearts of his beloved! Hallelujah! Because of *this*, can the Spirit and the Bride say, “*come!*” And let him who hears say, “*come!*” *Whoever is thirsty, let him come; and whoever wishes, let him take the free gift of the water of life.*¹³⁶

The Word of God reveals righteousness as a spiritual force that will continually judge iniquity and uproot it. Righteous is a tremendous force that attracts everything to itself and aligns it with the Kingdom of God. On the other hand, righteousness attracts everything of the Kingdom of God from the heavenly onto the believer, including all its blessings and glorious gifts. However, God has a precise method to do so: Righteousness.

But seek ye first the kingdom of God, and His righteousness; and all these things shall be added unto you.

Matthew 6:33

Righteousness is intrinsically linked with the Glory of God. The glory of God will manifest where the power of righteousness has started the transformation process of sanctification in a person's life. The goal of the righteousness of God is to remove all iniquity from His children. The glory of God is a consuming fire, which will burn and destroy all iniquity that brings separation between the believer and God.¹³⁷

Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me: and the LORD, whom ye seek, shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant, whom ye delight in: behold, he shall come, saith the LORD of hosts. But who may abide the day of his coming? and who shall stand when he appeared? for he is like a refiner's fire, and like fullers' soap: And he shall sit as a refiner and purifier of silver: and he shall purify the sons of Levi, and purge them as gold and silver, that they may offer unto the LORD an offering in righteousness.

¹³⁶ Revelations 22:17.

¹³⁷ Méndez-Ferrel, Ana Dr (2011) *Iniquity: The major hindrance to see God's glory manifested in your life.* Ponte Verda, Florida: Aná Méndez Ferrell Inc, p.120.

Then shall the offering of Judah and Jerusalem be pleasant unto the LORD, as in the days of old, and as in former years... But unto you that fear my name shall the Sun of righteousness arise with healing in his wings; and ye shall go forth, and grow up as calves of the stall. And ye shall tread down the wicked; for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet in the day that I shall do this, saith the LORD of hosts. Remember ye the law of Moses my servant, which I commanded unto him in Horeb for all Israel, with the statutes and judgments. Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the LORD: And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the earth with a curse.

Malachi 3:1-4, 4:2-6

4.6.1 THE TRANSFORMING DANGEROUS POWER OF THE FORCE OF INIQUITY

Iniquity is the transforming power of Satan! This power is intrinsically tied to the throne of Satan and those who worship EVIL will surely attract this force into their lives!

The Hindu's, the Taoist, the Buddhists and the New Agers know about this power – the force. The problem is – they think it is a basic flow of energy sustaining all life! all new age religions is deceived by Satan's tremendous power force of iniquity! However, those who know will tell you that this evil force is directly linked to sexual intercourse with the evil-one.

It is a dangerous changing evil sexual power that enslaves! It not only opens the natural chakra's in the human body – which God not intends to be opened – but it fills the heart with evil demonic fire from above and change the nature of the person. In order to achieve our sanctification, iniquity must be identified and eliminated. This is a fundamental part of the cross. Righteousness judges iniquity. Where iniquity is found we will continuously find god's judgment manifested.

God establishes his righteousness with mercy for those who seek him. There is a huge difference between declared “righteous” by grace through the sacrifice of *JESUS and being established in righteousness. Who can uproot this devious malignant evil? No man can tame it! But, Praise God, Jesus of Nazareth – the righteous-one did.*

For I know that in me (that is, in my flesh,) dwelleth no good thing: for to will is present with me; but how to perform that which is good I find not. For the good that I would I do not: but the evil, which I would not, that I do.... O wretched man that I am! who shall deliver me from the body of this death? I thank God through Jesus Christ our Lord. So then with the mind I myself serve the law of God; but with the flesh the law of sin.

Romans 7:18-25

There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who WALK NOT AFTER THE FLESH, BUT AFTER THE SPIRIT. For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death. For what the law could not do, in that it was weak through the flesh, God sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh, and for sin, condemned sin in the flesh: That the RIGHTEOUSNESS of the law might be fulfilled in us, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.

Romans 8:1-4 (emphasis added)

4.6.2 THE REIGN OF GOD THROUGH RIGHTEOUSNESS VERSUS THE REIGN OF SATAN THROUGH INIQUITY

In an extra-ordinary way, reveals John Klein and Adam Spears the covenantal processes with its meanings from the Bible. God established seven PATRIARCHAL Covenants with His people, which can be divided into Four Covenant Types.

The original Covenant with God was made in the heavenlies between God and all men – to serve Him on earth, to bear His likeness and to be His representative on earth as it is in heaven.¹³⁸

The covenant types represent the levels of relationship with God. After a person answer God's call, the covenantal process take on which will ends in the last covenant – the marriage covenant, representing an everlasting living with Jesus Christ in his Kingdom as His Bride (companion). The decision to determine for themselves what was right and wrong brought a fundamental change in the basic nature of humanity. Rather a choice to interrelate with the supreme Good God of the covenant relationships, Adam and Eve choose to cut a covenant with Satan and evil.

Satan is an imitator duplicates everything of God as a counterfeit for his demonic kingdom, including covenants and covenant types. Sin is progressive and could be seen as covenantal processes with the EVIL-One. Through man's choice, to listen to the deceiver – rebelling against God – humanity actually handed God a divorce and cut a covenant with Satan, receiving his first down-payment of covenant-ship with Satan as a sinful depraved nature out of which all transgression and sin derives. The everlasting covenant with Satan will be revealed as to be with him in his kingdom of darkness as his bride (companion).

In the Reign of God the covenant process is functioning through God's reign of righteousness (holiness), while in the reign of Satan it function through his reign of iniquity (evil).¹³⁹

4.6.3 THE COUNTERFEIT COVENANT OF DECEPTION

Sin is progressive and could be seen as different covenants made with evil.

¹³⁸ Klein, Adam and Spears, John (2007) Lost in Translation Volume I and Volume II. Bend, OR: Covenant Research institute.

¹³⁹ Klein, Adam and Spears, John (2007) Lost in Translation Volume I Bend, OR: Covenant Research institute, pp. 143-149.

Adam and Eve's sin brought enslavement to the law of death for themselves and for their descendents. At the Day of Judgment, all who choose to covenant with Satan will be divided from those who covenanted with God. Those who chose EVIL will take position on the left side of the Lamp-stand, while God's elect will occupy the right side.

Revelations 12:1-10 explains how one-third of the angels rebelled and was cast out of heaven. Lucifer and Abaddon were the two archangels taking part in the sin against God. Lucifer was in fact the instigator, of this rebellion since sin originated from his heart the moment iniquity was found in him.

Lucifer was the covering angel who stood above the throne of God in the beginning, shining forth his light as seen in Ezekiel 28:11-19 and became the angel of darkness. Abaddon mentioned in I Corinthians 15:55 was not only a place, but it was also the name of the ones "good arch-angel of life", which became "the angel of death".¹⁴⁰

And they had a king over them, which is the angel of the bottomless pit, whose name in the Hebrew tongue is Abaddon, but in the Greek tongue hath his name Apollyon.

Revelation 9:11

When the two powerful angels fell from God's grace – their areas of responsibilities and influence were immediately altered. No longer was Lucifer enlightening the pathway of covenant that led to full relationship with God, illuminating and revealing what is true, he instantly became the fallen angel of darkness.

John Klein and Adam Spears conclude on this: Instantly Lucifer became the fallen angel of darkness, blinding and deceiving, leading people away from God and into unholy relationships with himself. Abaddon as angel of Death, was intimately involved in counter covenants with Satan. Scripture reveals Satan as the Dragon; while Abaddon as Satan's partner was revealed as the Beast coming out of the earth.¹⁴¹

¹⁴⁰Revelations 6:8a, I Corinthians 15:55;.

¹⁴¹ Klein, Adam and Spears, John (2007) Lost in Translation Volume I Bend, OR: Covenant Research institute, p.145-149.

And they worshipped the dragon [Satan] which gave power unto the beast [Abaddon]: and they worshipped the beast, saying, Who is like unto the beast? Who is able to make war with him? And it was given unto him to make war with the saints, and to overcome them: and power was given him over all kindred's, and tongues, and nations. And all that dwell upon the earth shall worship him, whose names are not written in the book of life of the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world. If any man have an ear, let him hear.

Revelations 13:4-9 (emphasis mine)

4.6.3.1 THE FIRST COUNTERFEIT COVENANT TYPE: SERVANTS OF SATAN

The first covenant with Satan involved deception in the Garden of Eden where man chooses to believe the deceiver above believing that God is Good, Holy and Loving. As iniquity was born into the heart of all humanity, the struggle with sin commences. The Bible reveals that Cain was struggling with rage and jealousy for his sibling.

In the end, God told him that sin was crouching at his door, but that he must reign over it. Cain however, gave in to sin, and murdered his brother – and by doing so – Cain entered his own blood covenant with death, via the death of his own brother. Through this act, Cain became a servant of sin and evil. John Klein refers to this as a covenant of servant-hood with sin.¹⁴²

4.6.3.2 THE SECOND COUNTERFEIT COVENANT TYPE: FRIENDS OF SATAN

The second level of covenant relationship is friendship, which is typical of the salt covenant of God. Entering into a friendship covenant with Satan includes a deliberate covenant with iniquity and EVIL.

¹⁴²Klein, Adam and Spears, John (2007) Lost in Translation Volume I Bend, OR: Covenant Research institute, p.150-151.

We read of such a covenant in Genesis 10:8-9 between Nimrod, the King of Babylon and EVIL. Scripture reveals him as a “mighty hunter before the LORD (***gibor tzayid l’peni***)”. According to John Klein, the Hebrew word ***gibor*** is mistranslated as “mighty warrior”, but the word actually means “***mighty, proud, powerful tyrant***”. The word “***Tzayid***” in Hebrew implies a “hunter, prey, taken in hunting, to decimate, to leave barren and is sometimes used to refer to *a devil*)”. The Hebrew word “***l’peni***” means “a powerful tyrant devil, in the face of God”.

This proud predator was famous for constructing a temple of habitation for pagan deities – the Tower of Babel in the land of Shinar. This scripture implies that Nimrod entered a covenant of friendship with evil entities and the mythology of the Babylonian empire sustains these conclusions.

Research by John Klein, reveals that Nimrod was a contemporary of Abraham. Like Abraham, he had a name change and became known as king of Amraphel of Shinar (another name for Babylon). Nimrod was filled with spiritual power and authority through his relationship with devils. As Abraham was befriended with God, Nimrod was a friend of Satan.¹⁴³

4.6.3.3 THE THIRD COUNTERFEIT COVENANT TYPE: COVENANT OF INHERITANCE FROM SATAN

Moses received the promise of the sandal covenant of God – the covenant of inheritance. In Exodus 3:5, God told Moses to remove his sandals because he is standing on Holy ground. To remove your “sandals” symbolize removing the “old inheritance” and allowing the LORD to cover you with His new inheritance. At the last Passover meal Jesus asked his disciples to remove their sandals for him to wash their feet. Peter was arguing NOT to have His feet washed.

¹⁴³ Klein, Adam and Spears, John (2007) *Lost in Translation Volume I* Bend, OR: Covenant Research institute, p.152.

Peter saith unto him, Thou shalt never wash my feet. Jesus answered him, If I wash thee not, thou hast no part with me. Jesus saith to him, He that is washed needeth not save to wash his feet, but is clean every whit: and ye are clean, but not all.

John 13:8-10

Jesus was teaching His disciples that they would have no place in His Kingdom, if they refuse to be served by Him (spiritually washed by His blood of all sin).¹⁴⁴

The covenant type with its twofold meaning: regeneration and repentance goes hand-in-hand. The twofold meaning of Satan's counterfeit covenant was profound revealed by John Klein.¹⁴⁵ Those who are in the sandal covenant with Satan, boldly resist God calling and grace and cut a covenant of blood with Satan. Such covenant will give the angel of death – Abaddon the legal right over such a person for eternity. A tree will reveal who and what it is, by its fruit. An example of this covenant is seen in the sandal relationship that David has with God. Despite his sin his life was spared; sincere repentance enabled God to bring Yeshua – the LORD Jesus Christ – forth from his lineage.

David's counterpart was Goliath – a nephal from the tribe of Anak. Goliath epitomized a counter-covenant with Satan. Goliath opposed the armies of God and blasphemies against God. After David killed Goliath, he beheaded him – which symbolize that David took authority over the enemy. The sandal Covenant with God, promise that if we trust and believe in God, Satan will be defeated.

4.6.3.4 THE FOURTH COUNTERFEIT COVENANT TYPE: BETROTHAL COVENANT WITH SATAN (HYROS GAMOS)

The deepest level of covenant is the bridal relationship.

¹⁴⁴ John 13:8.

¹⁴⁵ Klein, Adam and Spears, John (2007) *Lost in Translation Volume I* Bend, OR: Covenant Research institute, p.156.

As the false messiah, Satan literally attempts to assume the position that belongs to God only. Satan also attempts to install his false bride – the harlot at his side. The false messiah becomes a treacherous groom – pouring out the blood of his wretched bride – expecting her to pay the price for him.

And I saw the woman drunken with the blood of the saints, and with the blood of the martyrs of Jesus: and when I saw her, I wondered with great admiration. And the angel said unto me, Wherefore didst thou marvel? I will tell thee the mystery of the woman, and of the beast that carrieth her, which hath the seven heads and ten horns. The beast that thou sawest was, and is not; and shall ascend out of the bottomless pit, and go into perdition: and they that dwell on the earth shall wonder, whose names were not written in the book of life from the foundation of the world, when they behold the beast that was, and is not, and yet is... And the ten horns which thou sawest upon the beast, these shall hate the whore, and shall make her desolate and naked, and shall eat her flesh, and burn her with fire.

Revelations 17:6-8, 17

Revelations tells us about the false prophet, Abaddon, proclaiming the coming of the Satan will physically appears on the earth as the false messiah – claiming to be God Himself – forcing mankind to receive the seal of his counter-covenant – the mark of the Beast.

The True Messiah in contrast shows who He really is – he already poured out His blood for His bride as the one and only Redeemer of humanity. Despite Satan's effort every human being will have ample opportunity to prepare ourselves for the betrothal covenant with God. We must choose to respond positively to the gift of covenant with Jesus Christ the only LORD.

4.6.4 THE POWERFUL DELUSION

The Bible is clear about the powerful 'End-Time' delusion. Many will be deceived and influence by the miracles and power of the false messiah and the false prophet as seen in Thessalonians.

Even him, whose coming is after the working of Satan with all power and signs and lying wonders, And with all deceivableness of unrighteousness in them that perish; because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved. And for this cause God shall send them strong delusion, that they should believe a lie: That they all might be damned who believed not the truth, but had pleasure in unrighteousness.

II Thessalonians 2:12

Satan will enter Jerusalem and attempt to take God's place in the rebuilt Temple, defiling the Holy of Holies. Those who do not choose God, will be deceived into accepting the ultimate counter-covenant mark and becoming the false bride of Satan.

And I saw an angel come down from heaven, having the key of the bottomless pit and a great chain in his hand. And he laid hold on the dragon, that old serpent, which is the Devil, and Satan, and bound him a thousand years, And cast him into the bottomless pit, and shut him up, and set a seal upon him, that he should deceive the nations no more, till the thousand years should be fulfilled: and after that he must be loosed a little season.

Revelations 20:1-3

5. CONCLUSION

Scripture reveals that there are two mayor mysteries at work in the universe and all other mysteries referred to in the word of God find their place under them. These two mysteries are called: The Mystery of Godliness and the Mystery of Iniquity (EVIL and the fruit of it – SIN).

Good and evil, light and dark, life and death, godliness and iniquity are all at work under them. All created beings – angelic or human – will make their choice and take place under one mystery or the other and their choice will settle their eternal destination.

Christianity further established that the Mystery of Iniquity / Evil has two roots: (1) one the twisted will of Satan and his demonic followers and the other root, (2) the twisted will of Adam and his followers – all humanity.

Iniquity originated in the heart of Lucifer. The moment he allowed the first corrupt thought, opposite to Divine Justice into his heart, it produces a tremendous evil force called iniquity, which became the root of all evil. Evil came earthly in the form of the serpent who deceitful manipulate the women to use the tool of free will, to choose to submit to “the tree of good and evil”, other than to submit to the will of God.

From the beginning, a perpetual enmity struggle exists between the seed of serpent and the seed of the woman. This two seeds represents two natures – the one nature holy and righteous – a force of Divine Justice, the other nature evil and corrupted – a force of iniquity.

Iniquity impregnates the spirit of the human being at the moment of conception and operates as a spiritual umbilical cord to produce an axiom of all personal sin as well as bloodline curses and generational sin. Iniquity forms part of the depraved nature of mankind, which is situated within man spirit – even after regeneration.

This evil corrupt forces spring from man’s spirit and shapes his soul, which in itself serves the law of sin and death resulting in spiritual prisons of parts of the human soul and spirit.

Iniquity is a heart condition. From birth iniquity began to influence and corrupt the human soul and through it, the person’s behaviour: (1) his heart through reasoning, (2) his emotions through a disturbed self-concept created by ungodly circumstances and (3) his will through deceitful lies about God, himself and his fellow men.

The nature of the flesh (depraved nature) of man is an evil pattern forming design of Satan – working within believers, pulling them away of Gods design of divine righteousness.

In itself it is an attraction intrinsically tied to the devil. More than one Prophet or Apostle ask the question: Who can deliver us from this devious evil within ourselves? Paul gave us the answer in Romans 7: 25 and 8: 4. Arguments used to PROVE the Biblical doctrine of Sin includes the following: Humankind is the crown of God's earthly creation.

I will praise thee; for I am fearfully and wonderfully made: marvelous are thy works; and that my soul knoweth right well.

Psalm 139:14

Gloriously, humans have been given the ultimate honour – being made in the image of God.

And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth. So God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them.

Genesis 1:26-27

Since the fall humans have been radically marred or corrupted by sin. Sin is anything contrary to the holy nature of God, for example, as codified in the Ten Commandments. Sin is contrary to God's nature.

And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth. So God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them.

Genesis 1:26-27

Since the fall humans have been radically marred or corrupted by sin. Sin is anything contrary to the holy nature of God, for example, as codified the Ten Commandments. Sin is contrary to God's nature.¹⁴⁶

¹⁴⁶James 1:13.

Sin is an offence against God.¹⁴⁷ Sin is rebellion against God.¹⁴⁸ Sin is a violation of God's holy law.¹⁴⁹ There are many ways humans can sin. The following are some examples:

- Worshiping false deities is sin.¹⁵⁰
- Occult practice is sin.¹⁵¹
- Pride is sin.¹⁵²
- Sexual immorality is a sin.¹⁵³
- Lusting is a sin.¹⁵⁴
- Self-righteousness is a sin.¹⁵⁵

Satan has a malignant hatred against the true seed of Jesus Christ – which in union with Him, will bruise the Serpent's head. The devil's aim was to prevent the birth of Jesus Christ, and in the End-Times to delay the growth of the seed line of Christ. Satan knows that he will not impede any widespread apparent work of God since the Word of God declares that the seed of Christ is incorruptible seed and live and abides in the believer for ever.

Counterfeit sin – Evil spirits can also counterfeit sin by causing some apparent manifestation of the evil nature in a person's life. Mature Christians should know whether such a manifestation is really sin from the old nature or a manifestation from Evil spirits. Evil spirits thrive on the fact that deceived Christians easily accepted thoughts from them giving them a foothold in the person's life. When a believer knows the Cross and his position of death to sin and unflinchingly rejects all known sin in will and in practice and thereafter a manifestation of sin takes place – the person should right away discerns the origin of the sin as from demonic origin.

¹⁴⁷ Ps 51:4.

¹⁴⁸ Isaiah 1:2.

¹⁴⁹ I John 3:4.

¹⁵⁰ Joshua 23:7; II Kings 17:16.

¹⁵¹ Deuteronomy 18:10-12; II Kings 17:17; Galatians 5:19-21.

¹⁵² Psalm 119:21, Proverbs 8:13; 8:13; 21; 4; Isaiah 2:11.

¹⁵³ I Corinthians 6:9; I Thessalonians 4:3-5; Revelations 9:21.

¹⁵⁴ Matthew 5:28; I Peter 4:3.

¹⁵⁵ Luke 16:15; 18:9-14.

If the person does not discern this, he believes a LIE as much as in any other way. When such a person confesses it as a sin from his own, that brings the power of the Enemy upon him to drive him into the sin that he has confessed as his own.

Many Christians are held down by supposed “**besetting sins**”, which he has confessed as their own. No amount of confession of sin will remove this sin, but believers would find liberty if they attributed these sins to its right course. Such a believer is so acutely conscious of the “**self**” whom he hates and loathes that he is never free from the dark shadow of self-condemnation, self-accusation or self-despair which no appropriation with Christ in death destroys. A false personality encompasses the “**true inner man**”. Few are aware that this is possible, but it is sadly a real thing among multitudes of the children of God.

Christians should realize that they are seated with Christ in Heavenly places. Our authority over demons does not require miraculous powers. It is ours by virtue of our position in Christ.

Deliverance is the application of the Word of God, prayer and command by any who qualify by knowledge of the Word, faith and some experience – anointing of God’s Holy Spirit and divine discernment with the compassionate love of Jesus Christ, we do believe are the ingredients to successful deliverance of the demonic.

The sin that holds out last on the battlefield is the one which the sinner is least aware of and which the saint ordinarily conquers last – This is the sin of unbelief. Unbelief is a sin making sin. There is a pre-eminence of unbelief among sins. The sin of unbelief as the Beelzebub – or prince of all sins that is used by Satan to lure to other sins. To eat of the tree of good and evil is the first poisonous breath with Eve took in from the enemy. It is the gateway opening up the path into Eve’s heart for receiving further sins and stronger deceptions; even now Satan continues to hold the same gate wide open and to use the same strategy and tactics on believers.

There are two sin, which claim, pre-eminence in hell, namely hypocrisy and unbelief.¹⁵⁶ It seems as if infernal mansions are reserved principally for the sins of hypocrisy and unbelief and that all others are inferior prisoners – however, of the two, unbelief is the greatest, for it is called the damning sin. He that belief NOT is condemned already.¹⁵⁷ The unbelieving person carries his own warrant to jail – in a sense he is already imprisoned, for he wears the brand of a damned person. Scripture reveals that the Jews are shut up in “unbelief”.¹⁵⁸

The strategy that Satan uses in connection with the sin of unbelief is the following:

- The Word preached did not profit them because it is not being mixed with faith in them that hear it.¹⁵⁹
- The secret of sin’s stronghold upon a person is unbelief. There is no mastering for a sinner while unbelief overpowers him. This sin will break down all reasoning. Often a sinner will confess other sins but he will not accept Christ’s mercy. It is hard to persuade a human to do this, when the devil has already taken himself into the city of gates and bars and stands guard.
- To keep people in bondage, Satan uses the most superficially plausible of all sin, the fear of sinning with presumptuous faith. Satan intends to use this sin to put the greatest dislike upon God and unfold all his deceased malice against God at once.
- Only by faith can the saint obtain a good report.¹⁶⁰ By faith will God have a good report in the world. Yet, by unbelief the devil does his worst to raise an evil report of God.

Sin is the coming short of the Glory of God.¹⁶¹

¹⁵⁶ Matthew 24:51; Luke 12:46.

¹⁵⁷ John 3:18.

¹⁵⁸ Romans 11:32.

¹⁵⁹ Hebrew 4:2.

¹⁶⁰ Hebrew 11:39.

¹⁶¹ Romans 3:23.

Jesus of Nazareth came to abolish the malignant power of iniquity / evil that results in sin and He sent His Holy Spirit with his tremendous force of righteousness to uproot the depraved evil nature of man. Not only did Jesus Christ bruise the head of the serpent, but He send His Holy Spirit as matchless Force to uproot the evil seed of iniquity – in the spirit of men and woman – those who deliberately ask God to purify them with His refinery fire of righteous judgment in every area of iniquity.

Righteousness is intrinsically linked with the Glory of God. The glory of God will manifest where the power of righteousness has started the transformation process of sanctification in a person's life. Scripture and practice reveals that in the glory of God, men and women is changed into His image.

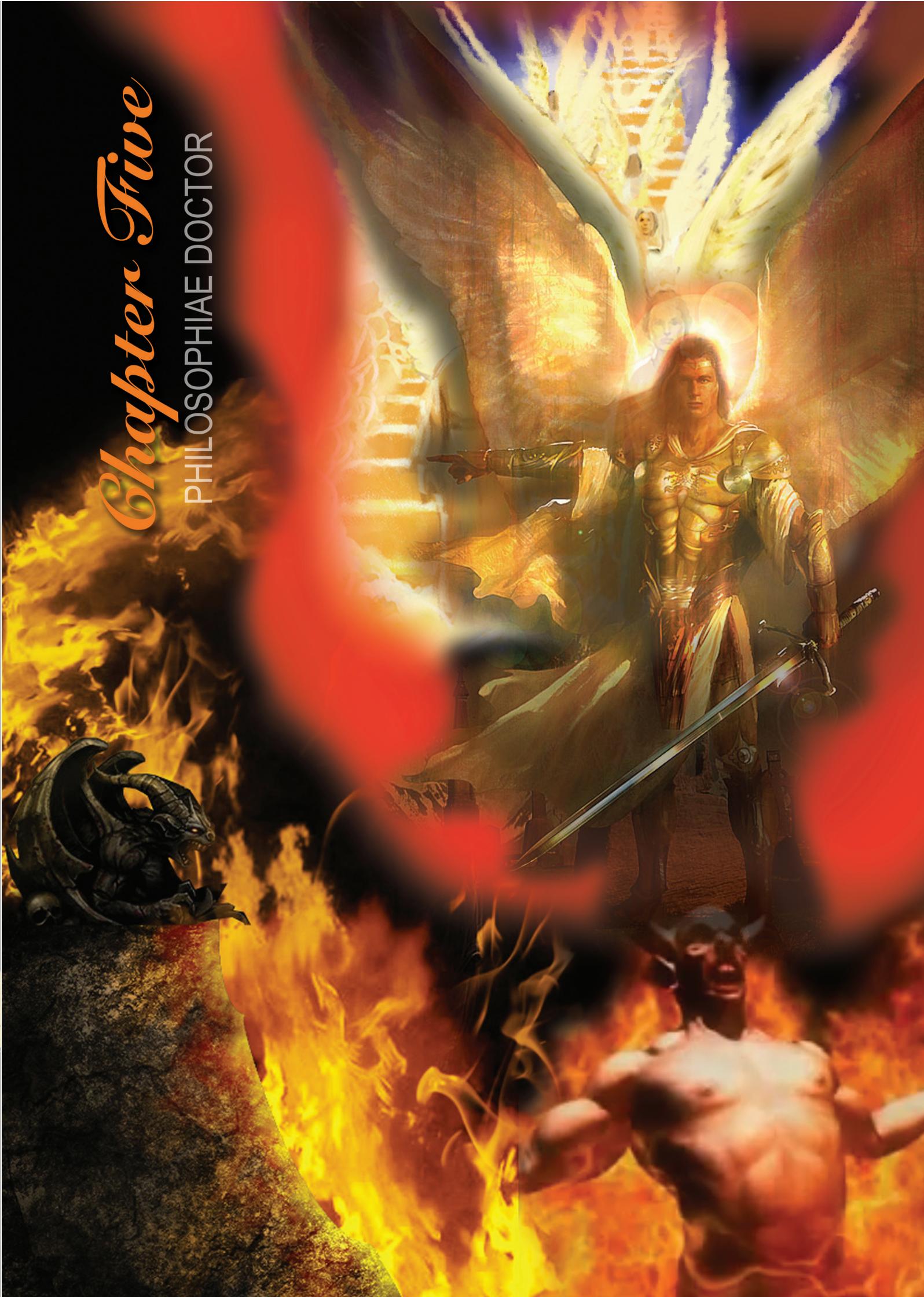
-----oOo-----

And the beast which I saw was like unto a leopard, and his feet were as [the feet] of a bear, and his mouth as the mouth of a lion: and the dragon gave him his power, and his seat, and great authority.

Revelation 13:2

Chapter Five

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR



Chapter Five

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR



*The wicked shall be turned into hell,
[and] all the nations that forget God.*

Psalms 9:17

Cover Art for Chapters:
Graphic Design:

Susan Langeveldt
SL Studios



Chapter 5

The Excerpts Pertaining to the Reality of Heaven and Hell

Enter ye in at the strait gate: for wide is the gate, and broad is the way, that leadeth to destruction, and many there be which go in thereat: Because strait is the gate, and narrow is the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it.

Matthew 7:13-14

1. INTRODUCTION

If death should confront you, up-close-personal, right now, will you be overcome by **fear** or the **peace** of Jesus Christ? When is your free will, which is a gifting of God, going to fall away or stop functioning in the process of dying?

Several intrinsic questions arise, for instance: The belief that in the dying moment the earthly life will escalate into godhood? Maybe the answer would lie in the fact that the dying person will consider him/herself to become dust and “**nothing**” forever as in hardcore atheism. Another scenario; will fear encompasses soul, body and spirit as the cold fingers of death encircle it? Or maybe the epitomé of an assurance of Jesus’s personal encountering will fill you with peace, harmony and grace, taking spirit and soul to your heavenly destiny.

Scientists, Philosophers, Theologians and adherents too many Religions, even Atheists pondered and fear the finality of Death for ages and ages.

Chapter five deals with **real life experiences**, how real people experienced death, entering into either heaven or hell and granted a second chance by God to come back to earth as a living witness to relate to the experience pertaining to the eternal destiny, which awaits every living person on planet earth.

Academically a synopsis acting as cryptic case studies will be used to portray the analytical / statistical evidence to the hypothesis.

This thesis concurs with the axiom that heaven and earth is real and that Jesus Christ is real. All pertaining to the reality of death and eternal life.

In the last Chapter of the Bible, in the Book of Revelation, God gave the Apostle John a revelation of Jesus Christ, the firstborn from the dead and the ruler of the Kings of the earth. John was caught up into heaven, where he sees **a vision¹ of God Almighty on His throne**. All of Christ's followers and the heavenly angels were worshipping him (Revelations 4:1-11). John heard a loud voice behind Him like a trumpet and he turned.

The Son of Man - Jesus as the Messiah – was standing in the midst of the throne room. His **hair** as white as snow, indicating His wisdom and divine nature, his **eyes** were blazing with fire - symbolizing JUDGMENT of all EVIL; the **golden sash** around His chest reveals Him as the High Priest. From His **mouth** came the sword of the Spirit with a message of power and force, laying bare the motives of the heart.

¹ **Etymology: Visions** were often used by God to reveal His Word of will to His servants. Whatever the form of the vision, an *action type* (video), a *still type* (picture), or simply a *voice heard*, such as Apostle Paul in Acts, it is always a message of God. Vision has always to do with “seeing”. Visions are often dreams and always involve direction, instruction or prediction. They are not to be confused with visitations, such as Peter's deliverance from prison at the hand of the angel in Acts 12:7. Biblical visions are given to men who are dedicated to the service of God.

Pheiffer, Charles F; Vos, Howard F; Rea, John (1999) Wycliffe Bible Dictionary. Peabody, Massachusetts: Hendrickson Publishers, p.1780.

His **Words** of judgment are as sharp as a sword, bringing division between soul and spirit (Isaiah 49:2; Hebrew 4:12). His **face** was like the sun shining in all its brilliance. His resurrected body was radiating the ultimate force of God's resurrection power.

And in the midst of the seven candlesticks one like unto the SON OF MAN, clothed with a garment down to the foot, and girt about the paps [chest] with a golden girdle. His head and His hairs were white like wool, as white as snow; and His eyes were as a flame of fire; And His feet like unto fine brass, as if they burned in a furnace; and His voice as the sound of many waters. And He had in His right hand seven stars: and out of His mouth went a sharp two edged sword: and His countenance was as the sun shine in his strength. And when I saw Him, I fell at His feet as dead. And He laid His right hand upon me, saying unto me, Fear not; I am the first and the last: I AM HE THAT LIVE, AND WAS DEAD; AND BEHOLD, I AM ALIVE FOR EVERMORE, Amen; and have the KEYS OF HELL AND OF DEATH.

Revelations 1:13 -17 (emphasis added)

The message of the Book of Revelation is crystal clear: Jesus Christ is the living one, He was dead and behold He is alive forever and ever. The King of kings holds the keys of *Death and Hades*. God gave John seven messages for his Churches on earth.

To get a deeper understanding of the Book of Revelation as well as of the Prophetic Books this thesis deems it necessary to expound the meaning of some symbols in the Bible.

John Klein and Adam Spears wrote: The **depths of God** can only be understood to some extent through His **Symbols**, as manner of revelation to humankind. His Great Book is multi-layered and multi-faceted and practically everything He put into it interacts with the rest of the text, in ways that are often overlooked in conventional, non-Hebraic, Greco-Roman methods of Biblical exegesis.

The Bible is not shallow. The Bible renews itself daily for everyone who opens it with a truly receptive heart.²

It is the glory of God to conceal a thing: but the honour of kings is to search out a matter.

Proverbs 25:2

Doors, portals and gates are used frequently in Scripture as symbols – this is extremely important to keep in mind during Spiritual Warfare.

On the island of Patmos, God showed John **a door** standing open in heaven. He heard the voice of God: “**Come up, here.**” At once John was “**in the Spirit**” and was standing before **the throne** in heaven. The **One** who sat on it, had the appearance of jasper and a rainbow³ resembled an emerald encircling the throne. John saw also twenty-four other thrones in the throne room and seated on them was the twenty-four elders who were dressed in white with golden crowns on their heads.

In the center of the throne were four living creatures **covered with eyes**, one like a lion, another like an ox, the third one had a face like a man and the fourth was like a flying eagle. They were **the archangels** and each had six wings. There are three types of angels – who have been expounding in Chapter Three.

² Klein, John and Spears, Adam (2007) Lost in Translation. Bend, OR: Selah Publishing Group, pp, 188, 197.

³ **A Hebrew Study pertaining “color” and “covenant” shows:** The colors of covenant occur in the exact order that colors are refracted in the rainbow. From the “**least bend**” to the “**most bent**” colors, you start with red and progress through all the colors of the covenants, in order, ending with purple.³ The unseen world of light symbolizes the hierarchy of covenant. If people are not willing to bend, they cannot progress – “**dying to self**” both requires and allows more bending. Red and orange is refracted – thus “**bent**” to the Fathers will – the least. In the same way, is a servant the least in the household and undergoes the least restoration of his nature. The sequence continues from yellow, green, blue to purple, which is the color of inheritance and represented royalty – the highest form of sonship of daughtership. Of course, purple requires the greatest alteration of our sin natures. It take more and more heat to purifies God’s people, to make them more effectively. THIS is way God allow trails and tribulations – He is constantly preparing His followers to become His Bride – trying to burn out of them all the brokenness and impurities that stands in the way of greater intimacy with Him. At the most basic servant level, in response to the believers’ commitment to be His servant – the indwelling reflects a red color. As the believer embraces the friendship covenant he/she begin to reflect yellow and as he embraces the inheritance covenant he/she reflects blue. It is well-known scientific fact that when you shine pure **light** through a prism you break that white light apart into its separate components and thereby create the spectrum of color that we know as a rainbow. God is LIGHT. If John was the prism in Gods presence, the color of the rainbow could most probably be a reflection of John’ covenant relationship with God.

Klein, John and Spears, Adam (2007) Lost in Translation II. Bend, OR: Selah Publishing Group, pp. 179-186.

Also out of the midst thereof came the likeness of four LIVING CREATURES. And this was their appearance; they had the likeness of a man... their appearance was like burning coals of fire, and like the appearance of lamps: it went up and down among the living creatures... And the living creatures ran and returned as the appearance of a flash of lightning. Now as I beheld the living creatures, behold one wheel upon the earth by the living creatures, with his four faces. And when the living creatures went, the wheels went by them: and when the living creatures were lifted up from the earth, the wheels were lifted up.

Ezekiel 1:5, 13-15, 19 (emphasis added)

To understand the sequence of the events to be expected, prior to the Second Coming of Christ, to consummate the Judgment the following must be revealed. The archangels⁴ were honoring the LORD day and night by saying, “**Holy, holy, holy**”, while the elders fell down before the throne, laying down their crowns at the LORD’s feet in worship and adoration. In the hands of HIM who sits on the throne, John saw a Book. God the Father was waiting for someone who had the power and authority to come and open the book that was sealed. NO MAN was found worthy to open the seals and John wept much about it.

And I saw in the right hand of Him that sat on the throne a book written within and on the backside, sealed with seven seals. And I saw a strong angel proclaiming with a loud voice, WHO IS WORTHY TO OPEN THE BOOK, and to loose the seals thereof? And no man in heaven, nor in earth, neither under the earth, was able to open the book, neither to look thereon. And I wept much, because no man was found worthy to open and to read the book, neither to look thereon.

Revelation 4:5:1-4

Then John saw a **LAMB**, looking as if it had been slain, standing in the center of the throne encircled by the twenty-four elders and the four living creatures. The LAMB of God who died as the final sacrifice for all sin, He was worthy to **open the scrolls** because He had purchased men for God.

⁴ In figurative language, the four cherubim are guardians of God’s throne and together with the four wheels. They symbolize the Omni-directional mobility of His throne and the power and intelligence of His rule. Pfeiffer, Charles F; Vos, Howard F; Rea, John (1999) Wycliffe Bible Dictionary. Peabody, Massachusetts: Hendrickson Publishers, p.1044.

...and in the midst of the elders, stood a LAMB as it had been slain, having seven horns and seven eyes, which are the seven Spirits of God sent forth into all the earth. And he came and took the book out of the right hand of him that sat upon the throne. And when he had taken the book, the four beasts and four and twenty elders fell down before the Lamb, having every one of them harps, and golden vials full of odours, which are the prayers of saints. And they sung a new song, saying: Thou art worthy to take the book, and to open the seals thereof: for thou wast slain, and hast redeemed us to God by thy blood out of every kindred, and tongue, and people, and nation; And hast made us unto our God kings and priests: and we shall reign on the earth.

Revelation 4:4-14 (emphasis added)

Then John heard the **voice of many angels**, numbering thousands upon thousands and ten thousands upon ten thousands in loud voices sang to Christ who are worthy of honor and glory and praise.

Isaiah had the same **humbling refinery experience** when God revealed Himself to Isaiah in the Old Testament. When God reveals Himself to Isaiah, it was to find a human vessel whom he could work through – could send with a message to His Church.

In the year that king Uzziah died I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and His train filled the temple. Above it stood the seraphim's: each one had six wings; with twain He covered His face, and with twain He covered His feet, and with twain He did fly. And one cried unto another, and said, Holy, holy, holy, is the LORD of hosts: the whole earth is full of His glory. And the posts of the door moved at the voice of him that cried, and the house was filled with smoke. Then said I, Woe is me! for I am undone; because I am a man of unclean lips, and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips: for mine eyes have seen the King, the LORD of hosts. Then flew one of the seraphim's unto me, having a live coal in his hand, which he had taken with the tongs from off the altar.

Isaiah 6:1-6 (emphasis added)

John announced the **Second Coming of the LORD**. Matthew announced that it will be "**as it was in the days of Noah**", so will it be in the days prior to the Coming of the Son of Man. See Chapter One.

Scripture reveals that just before the LORD will appear in the sky, the sun and the moon will be darkened, stars will fall from the sky and the heavenly bodies will be shaken. Then all will see the Son of Man, coming on the clouds of the sky with power and great glory.

And then shall appear the sign of the Son of man in heaven: and then shall all the tribes of the earth mourn, and they shall see the Son of Man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory. And he shall send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other... But of that day and hour knoweth no man, no, not the angels of heaven, but my Father only. But as the days of [Noah] were, so shall also the coming of the Son of man be.

Matthew 24: 30-37 (emphasis added)

I Thessalonians 4:16-17 notes that with a ***loud trumpet call*** of the archangel (Michael the warrior angel), God will ***raise the dead*** and then will Jesus send His angels and they will ***gather His elect*** from the one end of the earth to the other. See Chapter Two for more information on the different kinds of angels. God's elect will be caught up by the angels to meet the LORD in the air.

For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first: Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord.

I Thessalonians 4:16-17

Scripture reveals that, "***many will not be ready***". In Malachi, the LORD proclaims that HE will send a messenger (John the Baptist / Elijah) before the first coming of the LORD, whom shall ***prepare the way for Jesus Christ***.

Today again, many people who had a near death experienced, proclaims that God revealed the reality of heaven and hell to them and sent them back with a message that the time of His Second Coming of the LORD is here and His church is not ready!

This was precisely the message God gave to John in the book of Revelation pertaining to the End-Times.

As it is written in the prophets, Behold, I send my messenger before thy face, which shall prepare thy way before thee. The voice of one crying in the wilderness, Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make his paths straight.

Revelation 1:2-3

2. WARNINGS AND CHRIST'S SECOND COMING

The Apostle Paul distinguishes between the two Comings of the LORD and their doctrinal significance. “**The Cross**” represents Jesus Christ’s first Coming and “**the Crown**” His second Coming. The cross precedes the crown. The religious leaders of Christ’s day failed to distinguish between the prophecies that relates to His “**First Coming**” and those related to His “**Second Coming**”. There was a time space between the Cross and the Glory – between the Cross and the Crown.

Not purloining, but shewing all good fidelity; that they may adorn the doctrine of God our Saviour in all things. For the grace of God that bringeth salvation hath appeared to all men.

Titus 2:10-11

According to the Wycliffe Bible Dictionary, the first coming was as the suffering Messiah and to die as an atoning sin, while the second coming, He will be coming as the reigning, ruling Messiah – whose Kingdom is to be a literal reign on earth. On the details of the Second Coming there are a wide divergence of opinions.

Christ’s second coming includes two fazes:⁵ (1) His coming in the air for His own at the Rapture⁶ and (2) His coming to rule over the nations of the world.⁷

⁵ Pfeiffer, Charles F; Vos, Howard F; Rea, John (1999) Wycliffe Bible Dictionary. Peabody, Massachusetts: Hendrickson Publishers, p.332.

⁶ John 14:3; I Corinthians 15:51-53; I Thessalonians 4:13-18; Revelations 16:15.

⁷ Zechariah 14:1ff; Revelations 20:4-6.

The Son of Man shall come in the glory of His Father with His angels and then He shall reward every man according to his works. The revelation of Jesus Christ in the book of Revelation pertains to “**warnings to each of the churches**”. There are three views: a Pre-Tribulation Rapture, Mid-Tribulation Rapture, or a Post-Tribulation Rapture – but before the seven vials of wrath.

2.1 LIVING IN THE DAYS OF LAODICEA

Clarence Larkin have an extraordinary vindication pertaining to the seven Churches to whom Christ send “**the seven messages**” in Revelations: The book of Revelation reveals a divine program pertaining to, events that will happen. The Book of Revelation is addressed to the **Seven Churches which are in Asia**. Since there was only three Churches in the Western End of Asia, Larkin notes that the Seven Churches then must be representative or “**typical Churches**”, chosen for certain characteristics typical of the character of the Church of Christ from the End of the first century to the time of Christ’s return for His Churches and therefore descriptive of “**Seven Church Periods**” clearly defined in Church History:⁸

We must not forget that the characteristics of all these Church periods continue in the Church down to the end.

- The **EPHESUS PERIOD**, A.D. 70 – A.D. 170: Revelations 2:1-7 reveals a Church period where the Church was backslidden. It had lost its first love although they hated the Nicolaitanes – a party in the Church who was trying to establish a **Priestly Order**.
- The **SMYRNA PERIOD**, A.D. 170 – A.D. 312: Revelation 2:8-11 discloses a persecuted Church by Judaizing teachers and rulers. Smyrna has at the root **bitterness** and not to fear the things they should be called on to suffer, but to be **faithful unto death** not until death.

⁸ Larkins, Clarence (1918) Dispensational Truth. Glenside, Pa: Rev. Clarence Larkin Est., pp. 26-132.

- The **PERGAMOS PERIOD**, A.D. 312 – A.D. 606: Revelation 2:12-17 exposes an immoral Church consisting of the union between State and Church under Constantine – revealed as the **seat of Satan** – referred to as the doctrine of Balaamism.⁹
- The **THYATIRA PERIOD**, A.D. 606 – A.D.1520: Revelations 2:18-20 tell about the lax church period where the church was charged with permitting the **Prophetess Jezebel** to teach harmful doctrines and seduce God’s servants. This period was when the **Papal Church introduced its many heathen** practices, detailed below in the order in which they were introduced: Baptismal Regeneration, Justification by works, Image worship, Celibacy, Mariolatry, Confessional Purgatory and Tran-substantial Indulgences Penance.
- The **SARDIS PERIOD**, A.D. 1520 – A.D. 1750: Revelations 3:1-6 divulge a dead Church – one whom had the **form of Godliness without the power**, one who was **in name alive** but was “**dead**”. This Church was formalistic given over to **formal and ritualistic** worship. In this period, Reformation took place by men such as Martin Luther and a number of other reformers – protesting against the false teachings, tyranny and claims of the Papal Church. It was however, more a struggle for political liberty, than a purely Christian or religious movement.
- The **PHILADELPHIA PERIOD**, A.D. 1750 – A.D. 1900: Revelations 3:7-13 reveals a favoured Evangelic and Missionary Church. Philadelphia means “**Brotherly Love**” and describes the charity and brotherly fellowship that dissipated the bitter personal enmity that characterized the theological disputants of the previous period. This period threw much light on the **Word of God**, although it interfered greatly with the spiritual state of the Church – it had a little strength and was like a person coming back to life who was still very weak. It was the dead Sardis revived. **Revivals have been the characteristic of this period**, beginning with George Whitefield, John Wesley, Charles Finney and DL Moody. God **opened a door** that **no man** could shut.

⁹**Etymology:** Balaamism practical implies that the Church is married to the world. The first temple of the Royal Cult was built in Pergamos which was the center of monarch / royal leader worship. It involves celebrations of sinful sensual spiritual idolatry feasts – such as the birthday feast of the Sun-god on 25th December. They changed the Birthday of Jesus Christ from April, the time He was probably born,

The church of Philadelphia is still in existence and the only one of the seven Churches that survived.

- The **LAODICEA PERIOD**, A.D. 1900 – A.D. 2012 and beyond: Revelation 3:14-22 disclose a luke-warm Church, neither cold nor warm, but **rich and active without Spirituality** – in fact – **Christ is standing outside the door of the hearts of his people and knock to be let in!** The words are usually words generally quoted as an appeal to sinners – those who are still in the Kingdom of Darkness. Christ is warning the Church of this period that He is NOT in their midst that they are “**Christ-less**”! How did Christ come to be outside the Church? The Laodicea Church continues to worship Him, yet He had withdrawn. The reason – their worldliness. Church became mechanical and of a **social character**. Revival meetings are held, but instead of waiting on the LORD for power, evangelists and paid singers are hired and **soul winning is made a business**. The root of this luke-warmness is “**self-deception**”! Thirdly the End-Time Church is naked and was counselled to purchase **White Garments** for their **raven black woolen garments**. The gold of the Church is not of the right kind and the LORD counselled to buy of HIM “**gold tried in the fire**”. The Laodicea Church was also blind and the LORD counselled them to buy of HIM “**eye-salve**”.

And unto the angel of the church of the Laodiceans write; These things saith the Amen, the faithful and true witness, the beginning of the creation of God; I know thy works, that thou art neither cold nor hot: I would thou wert cold or hot. So then because thou art lukewarm, and neither cold nor hot, I will spue thee out of my mouth. Because thou sayest, I am rich, and increased with goods, and have need of nothing; and knowest not that thou art wretched, and miserable, and poor, and blind, and naked: I counsel thee to buy of me gold tried in the fire, that thou mayest be rich; and white raiment, that thou mayest be clothed, and that the shame of thy nakedness do not appear; and anoint thine eyes with eye-salve, that thou mayest see. As many as I love, I rebuke and chasten: be zealous therefore, and repent. Behold, I stand at the door, and knock: if any man hear my voice, and open the door, I will come in to him, and will sup with him, and he with me.

To him that overcometh will I grant to sit with me in my throne, even as I also overcame, and am set down with my Father in his throne. He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches.

Revelation 3:14-22

The book of II Thessalonians 2:1-4 reveals that there will be a “**Great Falling away**” just before the Coming of the LORD and the Church should make themselves ready.¹⁰

Prof Dr Brand wrote: *Today, those who take firm stands on Biblical Doctrine are very frequently criticized for splitting hairs and being ‘unloving’ because the norm today is to gaze lazily at the surface of Scriptural Truth and then even justify such shallowness as the generosity of spirit towards those who differ. This is rampant in the Church. It is not an accident that the Church in the name of unity, love and relationships has moved away from clarity, conviction and doctrine and has begun to favour openness, rejecting narrowness and dogmatism. THIS has been the prevailing climate in the culture around us. **Sharing has now replaced preaching.** Therefore, the main contributor to this lack of discernment has been the weakening of doctrinal clarity and conviction in the name of unity, or mystical experiences together with the failure to be antithetical. There are only two ways and it is up to us to recognize the difference, for the way of death comes to us under many guises. Jesus clearly taught this idea of the two ways in His famous Sermon on the Mount:¹¹*

Enter ye in at the strait gate: for wide is the gate, and broad is the way, that leadeth to destruction, and many there be which go in thereat: Because strait is the gate, and narrow is the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it.

Matthew 7:13-14

In the light of the above views, it is most probable that we are living in the days of the Laodicea Church period. The Church of today had become luke-warm and the warning to be spit out a relevant danger!

¹⁰ Klein, John and Spears, Adam (2007) *Lost in Translation II*. Bend, OR: Selah Publishing Group, pp. 21,24.

¹¹ Brand, Connie MJ Prod Dr (2005) Master Degree: *An Exposition of Biblical Warfare Central To Christian Involvement in A Theodicy Considered from Philosophic-Theological Perspective*. Lynnwood Ridge, Gauteng: Un-published, pp. 146-149.

Now we beseech you, brethren, by the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, and by our gathering together unto him, That ye be not soon shaken in mind, or be troubled, neither by spirit, nor by word, nor by letter as from us, as that the day of Christ is at hand. Let no man deceive you by any means: for that day shall not come, except there come A falling away first, and that man of sin be revealed, the son of perdition; Who opposeth and exalteth himself above all that is called God, or that is worshipped; so that He as God sitteth in the temple of God, showing Himself that He is God.

II Thessalonians 2:1-4

2.2 EVERY KNEE SHALL BOW AND EVER TONGUE CONFESS THAT HE IS LORD, ON THE DAY OF JUDGMENT

In Revelation 20:11-15, God show John the day when the dead will be judged, will be coming soon. The Bible shed more light on that day.

John saw the “**Great white Throne**” and Him who was seated on it and the dead, great and small standing before the throne and the books were opened.

The “**Book of life**” contains the names of those who have put their trust in Christ to save Him and it recorded the deeds everyone did. The “**dead were judged**” according to what they have “**DONE**”. If anyone’s name is NOT found written in the Book of Life, he/she will be thrown into the lake of fire.

And I saw a great white throne, and him that sat on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled away; and there was found no place for them. And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened: and another book was opened, which is the book of life: and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works. And the sea gave up the dead which were in it; and death and hell delivered up the dead which were in them: and they were judged every man according to their works. And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death. And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire.

Revelation 20:11-15

According to Clarence Larkin's: statement that "**The time of the second Coming of Christ**" the key is to unlock the "**Dispensational truth**" of God: The vast majority of Christians believe in the return of Christ but differ in the time as to when it will be. Some believe that Christ will come Pre-Millennium and others say that he will come Post-Millennium. The coming of the Millennium,¹² is to be ushered in by the preaching of the Gospel.

Scripture reveals **the Throne of God**, which is the basis of judgment, manifesting in different times in different ways:

- "**The Judgment seat of Christ**" in THE AIR is "**for the believers only**". The Throne of Grace is revealed in Hebrews 4:14-16; Romans 8:34 and I Corinthians 3:10-15; Revelations 19:7-9. The "**first judgment is PAST**" and the Bible is proof of the results in Romans 10:4. Christ has redeemed the believers from the "**Curse of the Law**" (Gal 3:13). There is therefore "**NO condemnation (Judgment)**" to them, which are "**in Christ Jesus**".¹³

Therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit. For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death.

Romans 8:1-2

In the Book of Romans, Jesus Christ was asking His disciples why are they judging each other and warns them that of every idle word that men speaks, shall be given account off in the day of judgment (Matthew 12:26).

But why dost thou judge thy brother? or why dost thou set at naught thy brother? for we shall all stand before THE JUDGMENT SEAT OF CHRIST.

Romans 14:10 (emphasis added)

¹²**Etymology:** The Millennium is an Thousand Year "Age of Righteousness and Peace" on earth, under the reign of "the Messiah the Prince [Jesus Christ]".

Larkin, Clarence Rev (1918) Dispensational Truth. Glenside, Pa: Rev. Clarence Larkin Est., p.4.

¹³ Larkin, Clarence Rev (1918) Dispensational Truth. Glenside, Pa: Rev. Clarence Larkin Est., p.4.

For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ; that every one may receive the things done in his body, according to that he hath done, whether it be good or bad.

II Corinthians 5:10

For the Lord Himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first: Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord.

I Thessalonians 4:16-17

- **“The Throne of Glory”** on the earth is for **“the nations”** as seen in Matthew 25:31-46.

When the Son of man shall come in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then shall he sit upon the throne of glory: And before him shall be gathered all nations: and he shall separate them one from another, as a shepherd divideth His sheep from the goats: And He shall set the sheep on his right hand, but the goats on the left. Then shall the King say unto them on His right hand, Come, ye blessed of my Father, inherit the Kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world: For I was an hungred, and ye gave me meat: I was thirsty, and ye gave me drink: I was a stranger, and ye took me in: Naked, and ye clothed me: I was sick, and ye visited me: I was in prison, and ye came unto me. Then shall the righteous answer him, saying, Lord, when saw we thee an hungred, and fed thee? or thirsty, and gave thee drink? When saw we thee a stranger, and took thee in? or naked, and clothed thee? Or when saw we thee sick, or in prison, and came unto thee? And the King shall answer and say unto them, Verily I say unto you, Inasmuch as ye have done it unto one of the least of these my brethren, ye have done it unto me. Then shall he say also unto them on the left hand, Depart from me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels.

Matthew 25:31-41 (emphasis added)

- **“The Great White Throne”** in heaven when the earth and its atmosphere having fled away, is for **“the wicked dead”** revealed in Revelations 20:11-12.

“And I saw a GREAT WHITE THRONE, and him that sat on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled away; and there was found no place for them.

And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened: and another book was opened, which is the book of life: and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works.

Revelations 20:11-12

Larkin Clarence reveals “**5 different Judgments**” pertaining to the End-Times, subjected to time, place, basis of Judgment and results.

The Wycliffe Bible Dictionary states that God is **“the supreme and absolute judge”** of all the earth.¹⁴ He is the absolute righteous¹⁵ has infinite knowledge of the secrets of man’s life and He has the irresistible power¹⁶ to bestow rewards or inflict punishment. God’s throne is eternally set for judging mankind **righteously**.¹⁷ God always judge according to **truth**.¹⁸ He will render to every man according to his deeds.¹⁹ A day is inexorably set in the divine plan for the judgment of all men.²⁰

Examples of God’s judgment in the past includes the judgment of Adam, Eve and the Serpent,²¹ the destruction of the ancient world by the flood,²² the destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah,²³ the punishments visited upon Israel at Sinai,²⁴ and many subsequently times in history, the definite judgment of Israel for her rejection of her Messiah,²⁵ and the final judgment and punishment upon those who reject the Lord²⁶ Jesus Christ.

¹⁴ Genesis 18:25.

¹⁵ Psalm 9:8; 96:13; 98:2,9.

¹⁶ Job 34:21-28; Isaiah 28:17; Romans 2:16.

¹⁷ Ps 9:4, 7-8; 89: 14; 97:2.

¹⁸ Romans 2:2.

¹⁹ Romans 2:6; Revelations 20:12.

²⁰ Romans 2:1-16; Matthew 11:22-24; 25:31-46; Acts 17:31; II Peter 2:9; 3:7; Revelations 20:11-15.

²¹ Genesis 3; Romans 5:12.

²² Genesis 6-8; Luke 17:26-27; II Peter 2:5; 3:5-6.

²³ Genesis 19; Luke 17:28; II Peter 2:6.

²⁴ Exodus 32.

²⁵ Luke 21:20-24; I Thessalonians 2:14-16.

²⁶ John 3:36; 5:24; II Thessalonians 1:8-9; Hebrew 10:26-31; 12:25; II Peter 2:1-10; 3:7.

Theologians had often maintained that there is one general judgment. This is a tenet strongly entrenched in Christian theology, more the result of rationalization than of thorough Biblical exegesis. Nevertheless, a careful inductive study of all the Scriptures involves demonstrates that there are at least seven distinct divine judgments described in the Bible.²⁷

- The Judgment of the Cross.²⁸
- The Judgment of the Believer's walk.²⁹
- The Judgment of the believer's works.³⁰

²⁷ Pfeiffer, Charles F; Vos, Howard F; Rea, John (1999) Wycliffe Bible Dictionary. Peabody, Massachusetts: Hendrickson Publishers, p.970.

²⁸ **Judgment at the Cross:** Christ as our substitutionary atonement bore the punishment for our sins on the Cross (Isaiah 53; Hebrew 10:10-12; I Peter 2:24). He bore the curse of sin (Galatians 3:13) and became our sinbearer (John 1:29); II Corinthians 5:21; Hebrew 9: 26-28) and before He commended his Spirit finally to God He could say, "It is finished" (John 19:30). When we acknowledge our sin and accept Christ as our Saviour, God identifies us with His Son and sees us as having both died in our Representative and risen in Him in newness of life ((Romans 5:12 ff; 6:3-5; I Corinthians 15:22). Because of this we read in Romans 8:1, "there is therefore now no condemnation (judgment or damnation) to those who are "in Christ". As a result, the believer will never again be judged for his sins. God has put them behind His back and they shall be remembered no more (Isaiah 38:17; 43:25; psalm 103: 12; Jeremiah 31:34; Hebrew 10:17).

²⁹ **The Judgment of the believers walk:** This comes in the form of divine correction and chastisement (I Corinthians 11:30-32; John 15:1-8; Hebrew 12:3-15). God inflict is on the Christian so that he may not be judged with the world (I Corinthians 11:32). It may take the form of severe afflictions at the hand of Satan in order to subjugate his fleshly nature (I Corinthians 5:5). It may end in the removal of the Christian by death if he does not repent (I Corinthians 11:30). The "sin unto death" spoken of in I John 5:16, is punished by eternal death in the case of the one who deliberately continues in sin (Hebrew 10:26) and persistently denies the incarnation of God's Son (I John 2:22; 4:22; 4:3; II John 7) or His Deity.

Pfeiffer, Charles F; Vos, Howard F; Rea, John (1999) Wycliffe Bible Dictionary. Peabody, Massachusetts: Hendrickson Publishers, p.977.

³⁰ **The Judgment of the believers works:** Since his sins have already been judged in the person of his substitute – the LORD Jesus Christ (Romans 8:3; II Corinthians 5:21; I Peter 2:24), the Christian is not judged again for his sins along with the world (I Corinthians 5:5). He must, however, appear or be made manifest (ASV) before what is called the judgment seat (Gr. *bēma*) of Christ (II Corinthians 5:10; Romans 14:10), that each one may receive the things done in the body, according to what he hath done, whether it be good or bad. His works must be openly displayed at the *bēma* or judge's tribunal (cf. Acts 25:6, 10, 17, NASB), also the stand or platform in an amphitheater where awards were given, as Caesarea (Acts 12:21). It is quite necessary that the service of every child of God be scrutinized and evaluated (Matthew 12:36; II Corinthians 9:6; Gal 6:7, 9; Ephesians 6:8; Colossians 3:24-25). As a result of this judgment of the believer's works there will be reward or loss of reward. Even in the latter case, if his work is burned up, the truly born-again believer will be saved, "yet so as through fire" (Corinthians 3:12-15).

Pfeiffer, Charles F; Vos, Howard F; Rea, John (1999) Wycliffe Bible Dictionary. Peabody, Massachusetts: Hendrickson Publishers, p.977.

- The Judgment of Israel.³¹
- The Judgment of the Nations.³²
- The Judgment of the angels.³³
- The judgment of the wicked.³⁴

This thesis argues that it is very relevant and important for the believer to acknowledge NOT only the existence of the spirit realm, but to precisely acknowledge the reality of Heaven and Hell.

³¹ **Judgment of Israel:** The Lord will judge His chosen nation Israel when He returns with all his saints, before setting up His Kingdom (Ezekiel 20:33-44; Malachi 3:2-6). This action is the final stage of His continuing judgment of national Israel, foretold so often (Deuteronomy 28:15-68; Isaiah 1: 3; 5; etc.; Jeremiah 2-9) and carried out so severely in history.

Pheiffer, Charles F; Vos, Howard F; Rea, John (1999) Wycliffe Bible Dictionary. Peabody, Massachusetts: Hendrickson Publishers, pp.977-978.

³² **Judgment of nations:** This is the most difficult judgment to place and define. It is spoken of in two parts. First the judgment by Christ as he comes to punish those nations that have united under the anti-Christ to destroy Israel (Joel 3: 12-16; cf. Zechariah 12; 2, 9; 14:2f). Such destruction is the climax of God's judgment against specific nations that harmed His chosen people Israel, as announced by the OT prophets (e.g. Isaiah 13 – 23; Jeremiah 46 – 51; Ezekiel 25 – 32). Second, a judgment of all the nations after Christ second coming (Matthew 25:31-46).

The LORD cannot take up His Millennial rulership over the earth without first judging the nation (all gentiles not killed in the battle of Armageddon) for what they have been doing (Revelations 16:14; 16; 19:19 – 21). The basis of this judgment is to be how these gentiles treated both the Christians and God's people – Israel (Hebrew 2:11-14; Ps 22:22; 69:8). This previously unsaved people will receive either eternal blessing or eternal condemnation on the basis of their works. Since no man can be justified by his works – this judgment cannot form part of the general judgment of the righteous and the wicked. It does therefore fit the situation at Christ's second coming and describes the judgment due to the actions of the gentiles for their actions toward believers and Israelites during the Great Tribulation – The goats shall go into eternal punishment and the sheep / righteous shall go into eternal life (Matthew 25:46). This may be taken as referring to entry into the millennial Kingdom without implying salvation, or it may mean that it will lead on to eternal life since it is one and the same with the LORD. Scripture also refers to the salvation of Israel as a national repentance on one day at that time (Deuteronomy 20:1-10; Zechariah 12:10-13; Revelation 1:7) and the salvations of the gentile nations in a day (Isaiah 66:8; Zechariah 3:9; Romans 11:26). Being permitted to enter the Kingdom, they will immediately repent, acknowledge Christ and be saved.

Pheiffer, Charles F; Vos, Howard F; Rea, John (1999) Wycliffe Bible Dictionary. Peabody, Massachusetts: Hendrickson Publishers, p.978.

³³ **Judgment of angels:** In this, the church will have a part (I Corinthians 6:3).

Pheiffer, Charles F; Vos, Howard F; Rea, John (1999) Wycliffe Bible Dictionary. Peabody, Massachusetts: Hendrickson Publishers, p.978.

³⁴ **Judgment of the wicked:** There is no indication of any judgment of the wicked before Revelations 20:11, excepts for the wicked nations in Matthew 25. Only the righteous dead are to be resurrected at the beginning of Christ's millennial reign (Revelations 20:4) and the second death has no power over them. All the wicked in contrast, called the rest of the dead, will not live again until the thousand years are finished (Revelations 20:5). Their judgment will rest on their works – which alone cannot save them and the presence of their names in the book of life. All not found in the book of life are to be cast into the lake of fire (Revelations 20:15).

Pheiffer, Charles F; Vos, Howard F; Rea, John (1999) Wycliffe Bible Dictionary. Peabody, Massachusetts: Hendrickson Publishers, p.978.

To make a precise choice and to choose Jesus Christ as his/her LORD and to following Him is of uttermost importance. NOT doing it, could ends in Great Destruction or Eternal Damnation.

3. EVIDENCE OF THE REALITY OF THE SPIRIT REALM

The book Daniel reveals the spiritual invisible heaven as a place of great cosmic earthly conflict or spiritual warfare.

And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him... Therefore rejoice, ye heavens, and ye that dwell in them. Woe to the inhabitors of the earth and of the sea! for the devil is come down unto you, having great wrath, because he knoweth that he hath but a short time.

Revelations 12:9, 12

3.1 WE ARE AT WAR

As seen in Chapter Three, ***the Kingdom of God and the Kingdom of Evil supernaturalism are engaged in fierce conflict*** – one against another. This reality exists in a state of dualism, but such was it not from the beginning, nor will it be so in the future.³⁵

3.2 THE NECESSITY OF PURIFICATION AS EVIDENCE OF SPIRITUAL REALM

Of Josephus Scaliger the Jewish historian is said that he is the most diligent and greatest lover of truth of all writers – not only Jews but also Gentiles.

³⁵ Murphy, ED Dr (2003) *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson, p. 13.

It is more save to believe his testimony than all the Greek and Latin writers and this because his faithfulness and his compass of learning are everywhere conspicuous. In his books, he gave a historical preview over the life's of Jesus, His brother James and John the Baptist in some detail pertaining to purification.³⁶

According to Will Durant: Readers tend to picture John the Baptist as an Old Man, however, he was apparently of the same age as Jesus Christ. Mark and Matthew describe him as garbed in haircloth, living on dried locusts and honey, standing beside the Jordan and calling people to REPENTANCE. He shared the asceticism of "**the Essenes**", but differed from them in holding one baptism to be enough; his name "**the Baptist**" may be a Greek equivalent of "**Essene (bather)**". To his rite of **symbolic purification**, John added a menacing condemnation of hypocrisy and loose living, warned sinners to prepare themselves for the Last Judgment and proclaimed the early coming of the Kingdom of God. All Judea should repent and be cleansed of sin, said John, the Messiah and the Kingdom would come at once.

In or shortly after the fifteenth year of Tiberius, says Luke, Jesus came down to the Jordan to be baptized by John. This decision, by a man now "**about thirty years old**", attested Christ's acceptance of John's teaching and his own would be essentially the same. His methods and character, however, were different: Jesus would himself never baptize anyone. He would live not of the world, but physically in the world until the sacrifice on the Cross.

Soon after this meeting Herod Antipas, the "**tetrarch – ruler of four cities**" of Galilee, ordered the imprisonment of John. The Gospels ascribe the arrest to John criticism of Herod's acts in divorcing his wife and marrying Herodias while she was still the wife of his half brother Philip. Josephus attributes the arrest to Herod's fear that John was fermenting a political rebellion in the guise of religious reformation.

³⁶ Whiston, William (1999) *The New Complete Works of JOSEPHUS*: Translated by William Whiston. Grand Rapids, MI: Kregal Publishers, p. 987.

The books of Mark and Matthew tell the story of Salome, Herodias' daughter, who danced so alluringly before Herod that he offered her any reward she might name. At her mother's urging, we are told, she asked for the head of John and the tetrarch, reluctantly accommodated her. There is nothing in the Gospels about Salome loving John, nor anything in Josephus about her share in John's death.³⁷

3.3 SPIRITS IN PRISON AS EVIDENCE OF THE SPIRITUAL REALM

The Wycliffe Bible Dictionary contributed to the evidence of the reality of the spirit realm by the discerning of ***spirits in prison***: The interpretation of the spirits in prison as seen in I Peter 3:19, has been debated throughout Church history.

One view is that the spirits referred to is the ***unregenerate deceased individuals confined in the prison of Hades*** awaiting their final destination described in Luke 16:17-31. To these, Jesus went after his death and announced victory over sin and death during the three days that He was in the grave (I Peter 4:6 and Ephesians 4:9-10). Hebrews 7:27 rules out the possibility that they could have been redeemed after their death.

A better explanation of I Peter 3:19 in Biblical context, is that they are "***people living in the days of Noah***" who were preached to by the Spirit of God and of Christ working in Noah's life. Noah was a testimony to the fact that there is a God who demands righteous living. II Peter 2:5 however testifies that these people rejected Noah's testimony and consequently died in the flood God sent and because of their rejection, they perished and are now spirits confined in prison.

A third view holds that the spirits in prison are "***fallen angels or demonic beings***". Satan's evil spirits that masterminded the corruption and wickedness of the whole human race before the Flood.

³⁷ Durant, Will (1944) *Caesar and Christ: A History of Romans Civilization and of Christianity from their beginnings to A.D. 325*. New York, New York: Simon and Schuster, p. 560.

Christ as Victor over Satan and SIN descended to their prison to make proclamation of His Cosmic triumph as seen Colossians 2:15 and I John 3:8.³⁸

3.4 SPIRITUAL WARFARE AS EVIDENCE OF THE SPIRITUAL REALMS

Prof Dr Connie Brand argues: Knowingly or unknowingly all humans are involved in warfare one way or another. Spiritual warfare is closely linked to **SIN, INIQUITY, SATAN and the Power of Darkness**.³⁹

Walter Wink wrote: Exorcism was not a rare and extreme intervention in the early church. It was the indispensable prerequisite for getting a “**new mind (metanoia)**”.⁴⁰

Jessie Penn-Lewis in her book, “**Secrets of Spiritual Warfare**”, notes: “**Angels and men did not know evil until they fell into a state of evil**”. Satan did not tell Eve this when he said that she would know good and evil. His true objective is deceiving Eve was to get her to disobey God, but his deception was. “**Ye shall be as gods**”. Had she thought about it, she would have realized that the Deceiver’s own suggestions exposed itself, for his reasoning amounted to: “**Disobey God to be more like God**”.⁴¹

Dr ED Murphy wrote: The Post-Enlightenment Western worldview has filtered out much that the Bible reveals about the evil spirit world from believers understanding. The Church is revealed in Scripture NOT only as the people of God and the body of Christ, but also as a part of God’s warrior Kingdom in ongoing conflict with evil.

Today God seems to be awakening His Church anew to the vivid reality that we are at war:

³⁸ Pfeiffer, Charles F; Vos, Howard F; Rea, John (1999) Wycliffe Bible Dictionary. Peabody, Massachusetts: Hendrickson Publishers, p.1619.

³⁹ Brand, Connie MJ (2005) Master Degree: An Exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian Involvement in a Theodicy Considered from Philosophic-Theological Perspective. Lynnwood Ridge, Gauteng: Unpublished, p.32.

⁴⁰ Wink, Walter (1988) “The Education of the Apostles: Mark’s View of Human Transformation. Religious Education 83, p. 277-290.

⁴¹ Penn-Lewis, Jessie (1996) Secrets of Spiritual Warfare. New Kensington, PA: Whitaker House, p.31.

“We are at war with evil; that evil is personal, not impersonal; it is supernatural evil, the Kingdom of Satan”. Jesus the Lamb (the gentle, sacrificial Savior) and the Lion (the mighty warrior) calls the believer out of our complacency to be soldiers of the Cross. Girded with the full armour of God, we are to overcome the Evil One, to challenge the principalities and powers who holds individuals and people in bondage with the authority we have in Christ through declaration and intercession (see Acts 26:18).⁴²

Tragically, much conflict occurs in the inner circle of the Church about the ***Spiritual Warfare*** the Church are involve in, while Scripture ultimately reveals the ***judgment of sin***⁴³ and ***the reality of hell***.⁴⁴

This thesis indisputable confess the reality of reality of Heaven and Hell and in the resurrection of both the saved and the unsaved – the one to everlasting life and the other to everlasting damnation. There is Hell to shun and a Heaven to gain. From Genesis to Revelations one message is going out – ***REPENT or else I will come, and remove the candlestick from its place***. Repentance means change, radical change. Your choice will cost you something, no, it will cost you everything.

Enter ye in at the strait gate: for wide is the gate, and broad is the way, that leadeth to destruction, and many there be which go in there-at. Enter ye in at the strait gate: for wide is the gate, and broad is the way, that leadeth to destruction, and many there be which go in thereat: Because strait is the gate, and narrow is the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it... Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father which is in heaven. Many will say to me in that day, Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name? and in thy name have cast out devils? and in thy name done many wonderful works? And then will I profess unto them, I never knew you: depart from me, ye that work iniquity.

Matthew 7:13-23

⁴² Murphy, ED Dr (2003) *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson, p.vii.

⁴³ Romans 3:23; 3:19; John 3:3; II Timothy 4:1.

⁴⁴ Revelations 20:12-15; I Corinthians 2:9.

Man is not meant to be to go to hell. Hell is a place for the wicked, the fallen angels and the demons who do not kept within their God-given boundaries,⁴⁵ however, man is destined to go to hell if he or she do not believes that God send his only begotten Son that whosoever believe in Jesus Christ as his personal Saviour should not perish, but have everlasting life.⁴⁶

God did not send His Son into the world to condemn the world, but that the world can be saved.⁴⁷ However, those that belief not is already condemned because he had not believed in the NAME of Jesus Christ.⁴⁸ God send His Light into a world of darkness.⁴⁹ The great divide is revealed when Men love darkness rather than light chose evil above holiness.⁵⁰

This thesis also portray that the central issue in **deliverance** center on **deception** as Satan's main objective revealed from the book of Genesis up to the Second Coming of Christ. From Genesis to Revelations this twofold spiritual war is revealed. The seven messages to the seven churches in Revelations are formed within the context of Spiritual Warfare – within dispensationalist or not. There is no redemptive ministry apart form warfare sufferings.

3.5 DEMONIC MANIFESTATIONS AS EVIDENCE OF THE EXISTENCE OF THE REALITY OF THE SPIRITUAL REALM

It is reported that CG Jung, one of the founding fathers of modern psychology, said words to the effect that in the absence of an adequate terminology we must resurrect the category of demons.

⁴⁵ Jude 1:6.

⁴⁶ John 3:16.

⁴⁷ John12:47.

⁴⁸ John 3:18.

⁴⁹ John 8:12.

⁵⁰ John 3:19.

This was just after the World War II and he recognized that the 20th century's vocabulary had lost the ability to speak adequately for the appalling expressions of evil that that catastrophic war had thrown up. In the wake of the collapse of the Nazi regime, Jung refer to Matthew 8:28-34 and the Gaderene demoniac, pointing out that when a devil is cast out it goes somewhere else (Essay on Contemporary Events. CJ Jung).

And when he was come to the other side into the country of the Gergesenes, there met him two possessed with devils, coming out of the tombs, exceeding fierce, so that no man might pass by that way. And, behold, they cried out, saying, What have we to do with thee, Jesus, thou Son of God? art thou come hither to torment us before the time? And there was a good way off from them an herd of many swine feeding. So the devils besought him, saying, If thou cast us out, suffer us to go away into the herd of swine. And he said unto them, Go. And when they were come out, they went into the herd of swine: and, behold, the whole herd of swine ran violently down a steep place into the sea, and perished in the waters. And they that kept them fled, and went their ways into the city, and told every thing, and what was befallen to the possessed of the devils.

Matthew 8:28-34

And he besought him much that he would not send them away out of the country.

Mark 5:10

Roger Foster continues: It is sad that the Christian leaders who love and trust the Bible should be too slow, or even blinded by contemporary secular thinking, to serve our generation and advance God's Kingdom in providing an understanding in the important subject of evil supernaturalism.⁵¹

In accordance with Bufford this thesis argues that within the ***sin war*** believers are involved in is interrelation with the flesh, the world, the devil and how the flesh can open a life to demonic influence.

⁵¹ Wagner, Peter C Prof (1991) Territorial Spirits. Chichester, England: Sovereign World Limited, pp. vii-viii.

The Bible warns us that living for the things of the world – **sex, power, wealth, status, fame, influence and popularity** – it can lead to **potential demonization or possession** in the case of the unregenerate: To fail to submit to God and contrary to side with Satan in adopting the view – that we know better than God – and hence will decide for ourselves how to live our life's, will open humankind to the cosmic struggle between good and evil and place him/her at risk of coming under the control of Satan's demonic agents.⁵²

Dr Merrill F Unger says: The fact that confronts the believer in all 'demonization's' is that, **demons are partially in control of the demonized person**. This is true of all degrees of demonization: mild oppression, moderate oppression, severe oppression and total demonization.⁵³

Dr Ed Murphy notes of deliverance: The Bible reveals four primary documents which records the experience of the disciples of Jesus with the world of EVIL supernaturalism. The Gospels; the Acts of the Apostles; the Epistles and the book of Revelations. In the Gospels the disciples begins their "**deliverance ministry**" observing Jesus as he deals with the spirit world. Very soon they encounter demonic manifestations themselves – demonic resistance to the disciple's invasion of Satan's Kingdom in the name of the LORD Jesus Christ and in the power of God. Deliverance is "**a Kingdom ministry**" and the result of it, is power encounters between the two Kingdoms.

The first Coming of Christ was the invasion of the Kingdom of Satan by "**the Kingdom of God in the person of the KING**". He came as a man – the God-man – but the spirit world knows He is the King of Heaven who came. Both Satan and the demons openly declared Jesus to be the Christ, the Holy One of God – even the Son of God. In Jesus Redemptive event, He totally defeated the Kingdom of **evil** supernaturalism, once and for all.

⁵² Bufford, Counseling and the Demonic. Dallas, Texas: Word Publishers, p.143.

⁵³ Unger, Merrill, F (1977) What demons Can Do to Saints. Chicago: Moody Publishers, p.129.

The early disciples understood they were “**still involved in a terrible sin war**”, but to them it was a war with an “**already defeated foe**”. The sheer volume of references to the world of evil supernaturalism is impressive in the rest of the New Testament.

Jesus Christ commissioned His twelve disciples to preach the “**Gospel of the Kingdom**” and to cast our demons, heal the sick and raise the dead (Matthew 10:7-8). One of the primary features of the “**Apostolic commission**” apart from preaching the Gospel is the ministry to cast out demons, and to set free the captives.

Ed Murphy continues: In the technical sense, the church did not begin until Pentecost; yet since it began with the Apostles, we consider their deliverance ministry prior to Pentecost to be the “**beginning of the deliverance ministry of the Apostolic church**”.⁵⁴

4. HEAVEN DEFINED

Wycliffe concurs to the Biblical view of the reality of heaven: From a Biblical theological standpoint, the most importance use of the term heaven refers to the invisible realm of which the visible may be simply the fringe nearest to man – best described as God’s dwelling place. Much of the description of heaven is often symbolical – however, this surely does NOT mean that there is nothing literal about heaven and that it is simply a state or a condition. Jesus openly confesses that He is going to a place were the disciples could not come with Him yet, but that He went in advance to prepare a place for them.

In my Father's house are many mansions: if it were not so, I would have told you. I go to prepare a place for you.

John 14:2

Christ lives forever in His glorious resurrection body. There is surely a place where Christ dwells with His saints and it is also the habitat of God’s angelical beings.

⁵⁴ Murphy, ED Dr (2003) *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson, pp. 288.

That in the dispensation of the fullness of times he might gather together in one all things in Christ, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth; even in him.

Ephesians 1:10

But ye are come unto mount Zion, and unto the city of the living God, the heavenly Jerusalem, and to an innumerable company of angels.

Hebrew 12:22

Considerable attention is given in the Bible about things, which is NOT found in heaven. There will be no tears, no death, no sorrow or pain, no giving out in marriage, nothing that defiles men and women; there will be NO need for light since the LORD will be the Light.⁵⁵

John F MacArthur notes: Heaven is far more than an adjective or an attitude. It is a **real place, where people of God go after they die**. It is God's home and the Bible give us an amazing insight into it's splendorous glory. In fact, the Bible is full of details about heaven. It is as if God has unwrapped some of the mystery about heaven and opened it so that we can see and desire. However, because human nature is so tainted by the effects of sin, people left to their own instincts will inevitable corrupt every spiritual truth. Subjects like heaven, hell, angels and eternal life are certainly no exception to this rule.

People lacking a Biblical perspective always think wrongly about heavenly things. Either they **ignore the spiritual realm** altogether, choosing instead to live for this temporal world – or they become so **absorbed in fantasies about the spiritual worlds** that they **forfeit the truth**. Look around and you will find bookshelves lined with books that reflect the unhealthy, occultish obsession with heaven, angels and the evil spiritual realm. Such books have risen sharply in popularity because of the influence of the New Age movement. Most of them are mystical, extra Biblical and sometimes even demonic.

⁵⁵ Pfeiffer, Charles F; Vos, Howard F; Rea, John (1999) Wycliffe Bible Dictionary. Peabody, Massachusetts: Hendrickson Publishers, pp. 768-769.

Frankly, both perspectives are extremely ***harmful spiritually***. Either ways will draw people far away of the truth, away from Scripture and draw people into spiritual bondage. Whether it is the materialistic view or the occult variety – it is bondage just the same. And it will cause multitudes ***to miss the true heaven and perish in hell***.⁵⁶

Casting down imaginations, and every high thing that exalteth itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ.

II Corinthians 10:5

Christians are to confront every corruption of the truth with Biblical wisdom. After all only the Bible provides reliable insight into the spiritual world.

But as it is written, Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love him. But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God.

I Corinthians 2:9-10

4.1 BIBLICAL EVIDENCE OF THE REALITY OF HEAVEN

The Apostle Paul testifies of the reality of heaven after God met him on the road of Patmos and He received a vision.

I knew a man in Christ above fourteen years ago, (whether in the body, I cannot tell; or whether out of the body, I cannot tell: God knoweth;) such an one was caught up to the third heaven. And I knew such a man, (whether in the body, or out of the body, I cannot tell: God knoweth;) How that he was caught up into paradise, and heard unspeakable words, which it is not lawful for a man to utter. Of such an one will I glory: yet of myself I will not glory, but in mine infirmities.

II Corinthians 12:5

⁵⁶ MacArthur, John (1996) The Glory of Heaven. Wheaton, Illinois, Crossway Books, pp. 9-10.

This passage indicates **three different places in the heavenlies** – all combined under the heading heaven.⁵⁷ These places may be given to different beings and different activities.

The first heaven is the visible natural atmospheric heaven. The book of Revelations commences the reader to an area referred to as the “**mid-heaven (second heaven)**” describing different kinds of beings in it.⁵⁸

Scripture reveals the **second heaven** as a place in the spiritual realm – a place of great conflict between warring angels serving God and demonic beings serving Satan. The book of Daniel reveals precisely this battle. The Greek word for the mid-heaven is “**mesouranema**”, which means mid-heaven.⁵⁹

And I beheld, and heard an angel flying through the midst of heaven, saying with a loud voice, Woe, woe, woe, to the inhabitants of the earth by reason of the other voices of the trumpet of the three angels, which are yet to sound!

Revelations 8:13

The highest heaven is what the Apostle describes as the “**third heaven**”. It is the location of Paradise and the place of God’s personal dwelling – the most sacred place in the universe.

Paradise, “**paradeisos (# 3857)**” is the Greek word for “**garden**”.⁶⁰ It describes God’s garden in heaven – the ultimate destination of all sinners who have **truly repented** and who have persevered in a **life of faith**.

The Apostle Luke reveals the words of Jesus Christ about Paradise when He promised the murderer who turned to Him on the Cross of Calvary.

And Jesus said unto him, Verily I say unto thee, To day shalt thou be with me in paradise.

Luke 23:43

⁵⁷ Prince, Derek (2003) War in Heaven. Christchurch, New Zealand: Derek Prince Ministries India, p. 9.

⁵⁸ Revelations 12:17.

⁵⁹ Prince, Derek (2003) War in Heaven. Christchurch, New Zealand: Derek Prince Ministries India, p. 11.

⁶⁰ Strong’s Exhaustive Concordance of the Bible. Hendrickson Publishers, p. 54.

Scripture reveals numerous places that heaven is the place where God has his throne precisely that it is a physical place from which the LORD reigns presently as well as a spiritual place from where the LORD reigns in the hearts of His people, but it will also be a physical place from where God will reign eternally on the new earth.

And I saw a new heaven and a new earth: for the first heaven and the first earth were passed away; and there was no more sea. And I John saw the holy city, new Jerusalem, coming down from God out of heaven, prepared as a bride adorned for her husband. And I heard a great voice out of heaven saying, Behold, the tabernacle of God is with men, and he will dwell with them, and they shall be his people, and God himself shall be with them, and be their God.

Revelations 21:1-3

And he carried me away in the spirit to a great and high mountain, and showed me that great city, the holy Jerusalem, descending out of heaven from God.

Revelations 21:10

And I saw heaven opened, and behold a white horse; and he that sat upon him was called Faithful and True, and in righteousness he doth judge and make war. And the armies which were in heaven followed him upon white horses, clothed in fine linen, white and clean.

Revelations 19:11, 14

And I saw an angel standing in the sun; and he cried with a loud voice, saying to all the fowls that fly in the midst of heaven, Come and gather yourselves together unto the supper of the great God.

Revelations 19:17

The Lord knows how to rescue godly men from trials and to hold the unrighteous for the Day of Judgment while continuing their punishment. This is specific true of those who follow the corrupt desires of the sinful nature and despise authority.

(For that righteous man dwelling among them, in seeing and hearing, vexed his righteous soul from day to day with their unlawful deeds;) The Lord knoweth how to deliver the godly out of temptations, and to reserve the unjust unto the day of judgment to be punished.

II Peter 2:8-10

5. HELL DEFINED

Wycliffe concurs to the Biblical view of the reality of heaven: Hell in common and theological usage is the place of future punishment of the wicked dead. However, since the KJV uses “**hell**” to signify the grave and the place of disembodied spirits both good and bad, care must be taken to prevent mistakes and confusion. Hell, in the sense of a place of future punishment, is certainly distinct taught in the Bible.⁶¹

Words translate as “**hell**” includes the following meanings:⁶² Sheol, Hades, Gehenna and “**Tartaroō**” and Abyss.

- In the Old Testament, the word **Sheol** is used of the grave and of the place of the dead. It was conceived of as a world below where “**darkness, decay and forgetfulness prevail and one is remote from God**”. In post-Biblical Hebrew, the word is used for the “**deep**” of the sea.

For in death there is no remembrance of thee: in the grave who shall give thee thanks?

Psalm 6:5

For the grave cannot praise thee, death can not celebrate thee: they that go down into the pit cannot hope for thy truth.

Isaiah 38:18

- The Greek meaning of the word **Hades** is also the name of the Greek god of “**the underworld**”. Christ taught that the realm of departed human spirits is divided into two parts: the one described as Abraham’s bosom to distinguished it from the other which is a place called Hades and is the place of the wicked dead. The KJV translate the word as “hell” in all ten instances of its use.

⁶¹ Pheiffer, Charles F; Vos, Howard F; Rea, John (1999) Wycliffe Bible Dictionary. Peabody, Massachusetts: Hendrickson Publishers, pp. 778-779.

⁶²Pheiffer, Charles F; Vos, Howard F; Rea, John (1999) Wycliffe Bible Dictionary. Peabody, Massachusetts: Hendrickson Publishers, p. 16.

And in hell he lift up his eyes, being in torments, and seeth Abraham afar off, and Lazarus in his bosom.

Luke 16:23

- ***Gehenna*** refers to the Grecized form of the Hebrew word meaning “***the valley of Hinnom***” - a ravine (narrow valley) on the Southern side of Jerusalem where rites of the heathen god Moloch were celebrated. Converted by Josiah into a place of abomination by the strewing of dead men’s bones, it became the garbage and rubbish heap of Jerusalem and the place of continuous fires, a symbol of the place of lost spirits in torment. The proper use of this word properly refers to “***hell***”.

Then did Solomon build an high place for Chemosh, the abomination of Moab, in the hill that is before Jerusalem, and for Molech, the abomination of the children of Ammon, behold, the days come, saith the LORD, that it shall no more be called Tophet, nor the valley of the son of Hinnom, but the valley of slaughter: for they shall bury in Tophet, till there be no place.

I Kings 11:17

- ***Tartaroō*** in Greek means “***to send into Tartarus***” – a subterranean place lower than Hades where divine punishment was meted out.

For if God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast them down to hell, and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment.

II Peter 2:4

- The word ***Abyss*** implies “***the bottomless pit***” and refers to “the depths of the ocean”.

And the fifth angel sounded, and I saw a star fall from heaven unto the earth: and to him was given the key of the bottomless pit. And he opened the bottomless pit; and there arose a smoke out of the pit, as the smoke of a great furnace; and the sun and the air were darkened by reason of the smoke of the pit. And they had a king over them, which is the angel of the bottomless pit, whose name in the Hebrew tongue is Abaddon, but in the Greek tongue hath his name Apollyon. And I saw an angel come down from heaven, having the key of the bottomless pit and a great chain in his hand.

Revelations 9:1-2, 11

And he laid hold on the dragon, that old serpent, which is the Devil, and Satan, and bound him a thousand years, And cast him into the bottomless pit, and shut him up, and set a seal upon him, that he should deceive the nations no more, till the thousand years should be fulfilled: and after that he must be loosed a little season.

Revelations 20:2-3

According to RC Sproul, a professor of Systematic Theology and Apologist at Reformed Theological Seminary, notes that **almost all the Biblical teachings about Hell comes the lips of Jesus Christ**. Modern Christians have pushed the limits of minimizing hell in an effort to sidestep or soften Jesus' own teachings.

The Biblical describe **HELL as a place of outer darkness, a lake of fire, a place of weeping and gnashing of teeth, a place of eternal separation from the blessings of God, a prison, a place of torment where the worm doesn't turn or die.**

The question arises if graphic images of eternal punishment, is not mere symbols and NOT literal descriptions?

RC Sproul continues: Such may be, but that people cannot find relief in the possibility that it "**might be mere symbols**". Most probable will the sinner in hell prefer a symbolic fire image as his eternal abode to the reality of hell, above a literal lake of fire. The reality will in any case be much more severe than the symbol suggest. The function of symbols is to point beyond themselves to a higher or more intense state of actuality than the symbol itself can contain. That Jesus used the most awful symbols imaginable to describe Hell is no comfort to those who see them thus as simply symbols.⁶³ He summarizes the reality of Hell as follow:

- The suffering of Hell is beyond and experience of misery found in this world.
- Hell is clearly included in the teachings of Jesus.
- If the Biblical description of hell are symbols, then the reality will be worse than the symbols.
- Hell is the presence of God in His wrath and judgment.

⁶³ Sproul, RC Prof (1992) Essential Truths of the Christian Faith. Wheaton, Illinois: Tyndale House, pp.285-287. (<http://www.bible-researcher.com/hell6.html>)

- There is no cruelty in Hell. It will be a place of perfect justice.
- Hell is eternal – there is no escape through either repentance or annihilation.

5.1 BIBLICAL EVIDENCE OF THE REALITY OF HELL

In the New Testament is the LORD Jesus Christ who gave the fullest teaching about the Hell. Only from the One who loved men enough to die for them can men receive this terrible truth. The Apostle John adds details to it in the book of Revelations.⁶⁴

According to Clarence Larkin: The Bible reveals a **final judgment** of the **wicked dead** in Revelations 20: 11-15, which will results in hell. This is a future judgment, which will take place at the close of the Millennium – a thousand years after the **Judgment of the Nations** before the **Great White Throne** – and the result will be the casting of individuals into the **Lake of Fire**.

On that day **the Books** will be opened in which the **Recording Angel** has kept a record of every wicked person's life and all will be judged according to their **works**. Some will be sentenced to a more severe punishment than others, but none will escape.⁶⁵

For what is a man profited, if he shall gain the whole world, and lose his own soul? or what shall a man give in exchange for his soul?"

Matthew 16:26

For what is a man profited, if he shall gain the whole world, and lose his own soul? or what shall a man give in exchange for his soul?"

Matthew 16:26

And many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt.

Daniel 12:2

⁶⁴ Pfeiffer, Charles F; Vos, Howard F; Rea, John (1999) Wycliffe Bible Dictionary. Peabody, Massachusetts: Hendrickson Publishers, pp. 778-779.

⁶⁵ Larkin, Clarence (1918) Dispensational Truth. Glenside, Pa: Rev. Clarence Larkin est., pp.107-114.

But he knoweth not that the dead are there; and that her guests are in the depths of hell.

Proverbs 9:18

And they shall be gathered together, as prisoners are gathered in the pit, and shall be shut up in the prison, and after many days shall they be visited.

Isaiah 24:22

I am counted with them that go down into the pit: I am as a man that hath no strength: Free among the dead, like the slain that lie in the grave, whom thou rememberest no more: and they are cut off from thy hand. Thou hast laid me in the lowest pit, in darkness, in the deeps.

Pa 88:4-6

The sorrows of hell compassed me; the snares of death prevented me.

II Samuel 22:6

And the fifth angel poured out his vial upon the seat of the beast; and his kingdom was full of darkness; and they gnawed their tongues for pain.

Revelations 16:10

Not only are human beings going to be judged by God, but also all angelical beings. The book of Jude notes about the Angels who did not keep their position of authority but abandonment their own home – these he has kept in darkness, bound with everlasting chains for judgment on the great Day. God did not spear angels who sinned, but sent them to **hell**, putting them into gloomy dungeons (prison sells / chains of darkness) to be held for judgment.

For if God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast them down to hell, and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment.

II Peter 2:4

The Bible reveals that when Christ return to the Mount of Olives at the close of the tribulation period, the **Beast** and **the False Prophet** shall be cast into the **Lake of Fire**.

An angel from Heaven will seize **Satan** and bind him with a great chain and cast him into the **Bottomless Pit**, where he shall remain for thousand years after which he shall be loosed for a season.⁶⁶

6. BIBLICAL REASON FOR PEOPLE TO END UP IN HELL

The Bible reveals clearly the precise reasons why people will end-up in Hell.

6.1 THE WICKED AND THE UNGODLY WILL BE SEND TO HELL

The wicked and the ungodly shall be sent to hell. They will not be judged to see whether they are entitled to Eternal Life, but to ascertain the **degree** of their punishment. Heaven is a holy place. God is a Holy God. We have to be holy. The one thing God requires of us belief in the Lord Jesus Christ, to repent of your sin and then turn away from it.

The wicked shall be turned into hell, and all the nations that forget God.

Psalms 9:17

Therefore the ungodly shall not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the congregation of the righteous. For the LORD knoweth the way of the righteous: but the way of the ungodly shall perish.

Psalms 1:5-6

An ungodly witness scorneth judgment: and the mouth of the wicked devoureth iniquity.

Psalms 19:28

But the heavens and the earth, which are now, by the same word are kept in store, reserved unto fire against the day of judgment and perdition of ungodly men.

II Peter 3:7

⁶⁶ Larkin, Clarence (1918) *Dispensational Truth*. Glenside, Pa: Rev. Clarence Larkin est., pp.107-114.

To execute judgment upon all, and to convince all that are ungodly among them of all their ungodly deeds which they have ungodly committed, and of all their hard speeches which ungodly sinners have spoken against him.

Jude 1:15

And spared not the old world, but saved Noah the eighth person, a preacher of righteousness, bringing in the flood upon the world of the ungodly; And turning the cities of Sodom and Gomorrha into ashes condemned them with an overthrow, making them an ensample unto those that after should live ungodly.

II Peter 2:5-6

And turning the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah into ashes condemned them with an overthrow, making them an ensample unto those that after should live ungodly; And delivered just Lot, vexed with the filthy conversation of the wicked.

II Peter 2:7

6.2 THE UNFORGIVING WILL BE SEND TO HELL

Anyone who is **UNFORGIVING** and those who are **ANGRY WITH HIS BROTHER** will be subjected to judgment.

For if ye forgive men their trespasses, your heavenly Father will also forgive you.

Matthew 6:14

But I say unto you, That whosoever is angry with his brother without a cause shall be in danger of the judgment: and whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca, shall be in danger of the council: but whosoever shall say, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell fire.

Matthew 5:22

So likewise shall my heavenly Father do also unto you, if ye from your hearts forgive not every one his brother their trespasses.

Matthew 18:35

6.3 THE SEXUAL DEPRAVED WILL BE SEND TO HELL

The SEXUAL DEPRAVED and even those who LOOK LUSTFULLY AT A WOMEN will be judged as God recons it as committed ADULTERY. If your right eye causes you to sin, cut it out and through it away, it is better for you to lose on part of your body than for your whole body to be thrown into Hell.

God did not spare the ancient world when he brought the flood on the ungodly sexual perverse people in the days of Noah. In a similar way, Sodom and Gomorrah and the surrounding towns gave themselves up to “**sexual immorality and perversion**”. They serve as example of those who suffer the punishment of eternal fire. In the very same way did these dreamers pollute their own bodies, rejecting authority and slander celestial beings. God rescue Lot a righteous man, living among them who was tormented in his righteous soul by the lawless deeds he saw and heart. God is Good and Holy and cannot permit evil. God so love the world that He send His only Son so that everyone who beliefs in Him, may not perish but have Eternal Life.

For if God spared not the angels that sinned... and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment. And spared not the old world, but saved Noah the eighth person, a preacher of righteousness, bringing in the flood upon the world of the ungodly.

II Peter 2: 4b-5

That they may keep thee from the strange woman, from the stranger which flattereth with her words... I have decked my bed with coverings of tapestry, with carved works, with fine linen of Egypt. I have perfumed my bed with myrrh, aloes, and cinnamon. Come, let us take our fill of love until the morning: let us solace ourselves with loves. For the goodman is not at home, he is gone a long journey: He hath taken a bag of money with him, and will come home at the day appointed.... With her much fair speech she caused him to yield, with the flattering of her lips she forced him. Her house is the way to hell, going down to the chambers of death.

Proverbs 7:5, 16-21, 27

Ye have heard that it was said by them of old time, Thou shalt not commit adultery: But I say unto you, That whosoever looketh on a woman to lust after her hath committed adultery with her already in his heart.

Matthew 5:27-28

Behold, I will cast her into a bed, and them that commit adultery with her into great tribulation, except they repent of their deeds.

Revelations 2:22

But whoso committeth adultery with a woman lacketh understanding: he that doeth it destroyeth his own soul.

Proverbs 6:32

For all that is in the world, the lust of the flesh, and the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life, is not of the Father, but is of the world.

I John 2:16

6.4 THOSE WHO'S HEARTS ARE HARDENED BY SIN, WILL BE SENT TO HELL

Where people's HEARTS ARE HARDENED by sin.

But after thy hardness and impenitent heart treasurest up unto thyself wrath against the day of wrath and revelation of the righteous judgment of God; Who will render to every man according to his deeds.

Romans 2:5-6

Speaking lies in hypocrisy; having their conscience seared with a hot iron.

I Timothy 4:2

Unto the pure all things are pure: but unto them that are defiled and unbelieving is nothing pure; but even their mind and conscience is defiled.

Titus 1:15

Let us draw near with a true heart in full assurance of faith, having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience, and our bodies washed with pure water.

Hebrew 10:22

6.5 THOSE WHO DO INIQUITY / EVIL AND DO NOT BEAR FRUIT WILL BE SEND TO HELL

Those who do NOT bear fruit, but do INIQUITY / EVIL.

Every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire. Wherefore by their fruits ye shall know them. Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father which is in heaven. Many will say to me in that day, Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name? and in thy name have cast out devils? and in thy name done many wonderful works? And then will I profess unto them, I never knew you: depart from me, ye that work INIQUITY.

Matthew 7:19-23 (emphasis added)

For rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft, and stubbornness is as iniquity and idolatry. Because thou hast rejected the word of the LORD, he hath also rejected thee from being king.

1 Samuel 15:23

And the tongue is a fire, a world of iniquity: so is the tongue among our members, that it defileth the whole body, and setteth on fire the course of nature; and it is set on fire of hell.

James 3:6

And then will I profess unto them, I never knew you: depart from me, ye that work iniquity.

Matthew 7:23

The Son of man shall send forth his angels, and they shall gather out of his kingdom all things that offend, and them which do iniquity.

Matthew 13:41

And because iniquity shall abound, the love of many shall wax cold.

Matthew 24:15

And the heathen shall know that the house of Israel went into captivity for their iniquity: because they trespassed against me, therefore hid I my face from them, and gave them into the hand of their enemies: so fell they all by the sword.

Ezekiel 39:23

Thou wast perfect in thy ways from the day that thou wast created, till iniquity was found in thee.

Ezekiel 28:15

It is joy to the just to do judgment: but destruction shall be to the workers of iniquity.

Proverbs 21:15

6.6 THOSE WHO DO NOT BELIEF WILL BE SEND TO HELL

Those who 'DO NO BELIEF' that Jesus Christ is the Son of God. People also do not belief in feature Judgment and in hell anymore, and the reality of it is a devastating terror. Hell was not prepared for humanity.

Just as a city has prisons and it is not the governing body of the cities choice to send anybody to hell, just so is it not God's intention to send anybody to hell. Out of the loving heart of God came a last minute warning:

I call heaven and earth to record this day against you, that I have set before you life and death, blessing and cursing: therefore choose life, that both thou and thy seed may live.

Deuteronomy 30:19

But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death.

Revelations 21:8

6.7 THOSE WHO GLORIFY THE CREATURE AND NOT THE CREATOR WILL BE SEND TO HELL

Self-idolatry; those who 'GLORIFIES THE CREATURE' above 'THE CREATOR'. God revealed to Howard his own deceitful heart – ***he had become his own false god***: No iniquities, sin or self-idolatry will be accepted in heaven.

For our work to be accepted, we have to work in accordance to His command in Matthews 6: 33. Howard remembered that the Church of Laodicea was called **to first seek the Kingdom of God**. God showed Howard that his true **motive was opposing of self-denying, cross bearing and obedience**. God only spoke about the fruit of Howards works. God **dealt with every evil thought in the mind** of Howard.

Because that, when they knew God, they glorified him not as God, neither were thankful; but became vain in their imaginations, and their foolish heart was darkened. Professing themselves to be wise, they became fools, And changed the glory of the incorruptible God into an image made like to corruptible man, and to birds, and four-footed beasts, and creeping things. Wherefore God also gave them up to uncleanness through the lusts of their own hearts, to dishonour their own bodies between themselves: Who changed the truth of God into a lie, and worshipped and served the creature more than the Creator, who is blessed for ever. Amen. For this cause God gave them up unto vile affections: for even their women did change the natural use into that which is against nature: And likewise also the men, leaving the natural use of the woman, burned in their lust one toward another; men with men working that which is unseemly, and receiving in themselves that recompense of their error which was meet.

Romans 1:21, 24-27

6.8 THE HYPOCRITES

God condemn Pharisees who are HYPOCRITES. Believers must make sure that they are not getting caught up in outward obedience at the expense of inward renewal.

And shall cut him asunder, and appoint him his portion with the hypocrites: there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.

Matthew 24:51

The sinners in Zion are afraid; fearfulness hath surprised the hypocrites. Who among us shall dwell with the devouring fire? Who among us shall dwell with everlasting burnings?

Isaiah 33:14

Ye serpents, ye generation of vipers, how can ye escape the damnation of hell?

Matthew 23:33

6.9 THOSE TO WHOM THEIR RICHES WEIGHT MORE THAN GOD, WILL BE SEND TO HELL

The book of Luke tells of THE RICHMAN and Lazarus. The rich man went to hell where he was in torment. He look up and saw Abraham far away with Lazarus by his side. He asked for just a small drop of water and cool his tong, for he had agony.

You are they which justify yourselves before men; but God knoweth your hearts: for that which is highly esteemed among men is abomination in the sight of God... There was a certain rich man, which was clothed in purple and fine linen, and fared sumptuously every day: And there was a certain beggar named Lazarus, which was laid at his gate, full of sores, And desiring to be fed with the crumbs which fell from the rich man's table: moreover the dogs came and licked his sores. And it came to pass, that the beggar died, and was carried by the angels into Abraham's bosom: the rich man also died, and was buried; And in hell he lift up his eyes, being in torments, and seeth Abraham afar off, and Lazarus in his bosom. And he cried and said, Father Abraham, have mercy on me, and send Lazarus, that he may dip the tip of his finger in water, and cool my tongue; for I am tormented in this flame. But Abraham said, Son, remember that thou in thy lifetime receivedst thy good things, and likewise Lazarus evil things: but now he is comforted, and thou art tormented. And beside all this, between us and you there is a great gulf fixed: so that they which would pass from hence to you cannot; neither can they pass to us, that would come from thence. Then he said, I pray thee therefore, father, that thou wouldest send him to my father's house: For I have five brethren; that he may testify unto them, lest they also come into this place of torment. Abraham saith unto him, They have Moses and the prophets; let them hear them. And he said, Nay, father Abraham: but if one went unto them from the dead, they will repent. And he said unto him, If they hear not Moses and the prophets, neither will they be persuaded, though one rose from the dead.

Luke 16:15-31

6.10 THE FEARFUL, THE UNBELIEVING, THE MURDERERS, THE SORCERERS, THE IDOLATERS AND THE LIARS WILL BE SEND TO HELL

The FEARFUL, the UNBELIEVING, the MURDERERS, the SORCERERS, the IDOLATERS and the LIARS shall be thrown in the lake of fire.

But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death.

Revelations 21:8

But when the king heard thereof, he was wroth: and he sent forth his armies, and destroyed those murderers, and burned up their city.

Matthew 22:7

Because ye have said, We have made a covenant with death, and with hell are we at agreement; when the overflowing scourge shall pass through, it shall not come unto us: for we have made lies our refuge, and under falsehood have we hid ourselves.

Isaiah 28:15

For rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft, and stubbornness is as iniquity and idolatry. Because thou hast rejected the word of the LORD, he hath also rejected thee from being king.

I Samuel 15:23

7. THE JUDGMENT OF GOD ON THE WICKED AND ACCOMPANYING SPIRITS

God had not pleasure in the death of the wicked. God so loved the world that He gave His only begotten Son so that everybody could be saved and nobody will perish. Jesus Christ came to earth so that we can have life and life abundantly.

On the judgment of God against Babylon, Amanda Buys of Kanaan Ministries notes:⁶⁷

⁶⁷ Buys, Amanda (2012) *The Defiled Bride: Harlotry & Idolatry*. Cape Town, SA: Self-Published, pp.58-63. (www.kanaanministries.org)

Those who do NOT follow God's principles of the Sabbath rest have brought judgment upon themselves in the form of periods of captivity to the Babylonian world system according to the time not entered into God's rest because of UNBELIEF.

Judgment originates where spiritual harlotry polluted the land: where HEARTS are HARDENED against God's WORD and His VOICE is abandoned and rejected; where the creation is exalted above the Creator; where man-made ideas and philosophies is preferred above God (science, technology and political- and social systems) and where people is trusting in their own works more that in God's provision.

Idolatry and evil perversion corrupted the inheritance and heritage that God has in store for humanity. In these last days, surely humanity became REBELLION EXPERTS who do not know God any more. Where OBEDIENCE should fulfill the terms of covenanting with God, iniquity and Evil is reigning and ruling in the heart of a defiled bride.

And there came one of the seven angels which had the seven vials, and talked with me, saying unto me, Come hither; I will shew unto thee the judgment of the great whore that sitteth upon many waters: With whom the kings of the earth have committed fornication, and the inhabitants of the earth have been made drunk with the wine of her fornication.

Revelations 17:1-2

BAAL is the primary spirit that associated with Babylon. The spirit of Baal always attempts to cause God's people to break covenant with God. This spirit cannot be broken by flesh and blood. Only repentance could break the curse of it. Baal is also working together with Asherah (Jezebel), the mother of Baal – the goddess of passion and the sea.

Jezebel is an analogy of those who worship Baal. They are steeped in worshipping ***Fertility Cults***. They are living in the pattern of the false Trinity, as well as false king, false priest and false prophet.

Biblical, the prophet Elijah was called by God to confront the spirit of Babylon. Baal is worshipped in all fertility cults. The anointing of Elijah later came upon John the Baptist to continue to expose the Babylonian Fertility cults. He sincerely preached repentance for one to be a partaker of God's Kingdom.

And now also the axe is laid unto the root of the trees: therefore every tree which bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire.

Matthew 3:10

This entire ***False Religious System*** will be destroyed at the ***Second Coming of Jesus Christ***. The book of Revelations reveals the judgment that was to given to them. The ***rebellion*** against GOD the true Creator will cease. Man's attempt for eternal life through genetic engineering is pitiful in the light of the free offer of Eternal Life by Jesus Christ. When Jesus Christ return, it will be during the battle of Armageddon.

The LORD is going to annihilate ***the Beast (Anti-Christ)*** and ***the False Prophet*** and cast them both into Hell as seen in Revelations 19:20. In these End-Times the God of the Bible is going to reject vast numbers of people. When man creates their own ***image*** – there is a sinister EVIL motive behind it. The goal is surely to show that man is now the creator and his own god. The False Prophet will take the creation of "***the Image***" into the spiritual realm and demand that it should be worshipped. Those who do not participate would be killed! The Bible issue a warning about the worshipping of "***the Image***": It is strictly forbidden – all who submit and worship the Anti-Christ and his Image, will be eternally separated from the Creator.

8. DECEPTION AS RATIONALE FOR THE GREAT FALLING AWAY

The comment of John Klein and Adam Spear could be taken as representative of those holding the view of "***the Great falling away***" before the Second Coming of the LORD, Jesus Christ.

John Klein notes that the book of Revelations is a book of instructions intended to prepare God's people physically, mentally and spiritually for what's coming. He gave an excellent relevant exposition of erroneously translated Bible texts, which bring much deception especially in the area of sin and grace of the New Covenant:

In Matthew 5, Yeshua (Jesus Christ) said that He did not come to abolish the Law (the Torah), but to fulfill it. In a Rabbinic discussion, Jesus was accused of "**destroying**" the Law by His way of interpretation Scripture. When accused, Jesus strongly denied that his method of interpretation weakens the meaning of the Law, He profoundly states He is actually more orthodox than His accusers.

Think not that I am come to destroy the law, or the prophets: I am not come to destroy, but to fulfill. For verily I say unto you, Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled.

Matthew 5:18

The word that is used for "**destroying**" the Law is "**malah**", which is generally interpreted as "**fulfill**". However "**malah**" has a number of possible meanings – including "**to do anything fully, thoroughly, strongly, to be fulfilled, to be filled to overflowing.**" This idea in context of Scripture was NOT to "**complete, to thereby end, to terminate the applicability of Torah in our lives**". The Office of a High Priest however, would surely be to "**do anything fully**".

The deception came as most people today read Matthew 5:17 and believe that that the New covenant people were liberating them from the "**outdated laws**" of the Old Testament because Yeshua came to "**fulfill**" it and thereby cancel the Law, rather than coming to "**interpret**" it as the Scripture really say. Jesus actually came to fulfill prophecies and NOT CANCEL DIVINE PRINCIPLES. He literally came to show the believer how to live a HOLY LIVE.

John Klein and Adam Spears continue: Much confusion also occurs about Romans 10:4.

For Christ is the END of the LAW for righteousness to every one that believeth.

Romans 10:4 (emphasis added)

The Greek word “**end (tel'-os, #5056)**” in this context does not mean, “**Terminates, conclusion or finalization**”, but means “**focus or goal, the conclusion of an act or state, result, utter most**”. Romans 6:4 would be more correctly rendered as: “**The whole purpose of Torah (the Law) is to lead you to Yeshua so that you can achieve true righteousness through Him**”⁶⁸

When this deception is taken into account, the instructions and warnings of the End-Times in the book of Revelations is understood much clearer.

Behold, I come as a thief. Blessed is he that watcheth, and keepeth his garments, lest he walks naked, and they see his shame.

Revelations 16:15

The word translated as “**end**” in the New Testament, is used forty-two times and thirty-seven times, it is interpreted as goal. This verse has nothing to do with physical nakedness, but has all to do with spiritual garments – representing an eternal covenant with God. Most surely, THIS DECEPTION will add greatly to the “**Great Falling-away**” at “**the End-Times**”.

9. PRACTICAL SUBSTANTIAL PROVE OF THE REALITY OF HEAVEN AND HELL

The reality of hell can by no way be substantiating better, than through the true testimony of living people. Information of Dr Iyke Nathan Uzorma⁶⁹ and Dr Ana Mendez-Ferrell⁷⁰ are used as foundational knowledge of occult experiences for practically evolutionary purposes, supplementary to Biblical knowledge in this thesis.

⁶⁸ Klein, John and Spears, Adam (2007) Lost in Translation II. Bend, OR: Selah Publishing Group, p. 34.

⁶⁹ Uzorma, Iyke Nathan Dr (2007) Occult Grandmaster Now in Christ: Book One. Lagos State, Nigeria: Glorious people Nig. Ltd.

⁷⁰ Mendez-Ferrell, Ana (2012) High-level Warfare. Ponte Vedra, Florida: Voice of the Light Ministry.
Mendez-Ferrell, Ana (2010) Regions of Captivity. Shippensburg, PA: Destiny Image Publishers, Inc.

“**Two types of case studies**” will be examined as evidence to prove “**the existence of the spirit world**” and to prove “**the reality of heaven and hell**”: First, will testimonies of two persons who were “**trapped in the reality of the Occult**”, but who were saved by our LORD Jesus Christ – used as case studies; and secondly, will testimonies of a real live people, who had “**near death experiences**” be evaluate as evidence of prove of the reality of heaven and hell.

9.1 LIVING TESTIMONIES OF PEOPLE WHO WERE INVOLVED IN THE OCCULT AS EVIDENCE OF THE REALITY OF HEAVEN AND HELL

Testimonies of people who were captivate in the Evil power of the Occult, demonstrate how people’s lives can be malformed into a living hell, by Satan – the precursor of eternal destruction and gives indisputable evidence of the reality of a *bona fide* place, called Hell.

9.1.1 CASE STUDY A: JACQUELINE

This thesis presents the true testimony of Jacqueline as living evidence of the reality of Satan with his destructor demons that works under his rule as axiom for substantiation of the reality of the spirit world.

Jacqueline⁷¹ was a voodoo priestess who gave her life to Satan, his influences, his demonic followers and his strategies and afterwards came to know the Lord Jesus Christ as her personal redeemer and Saviour. Jacqueline was so perverted by the Occult that she ended up in a mental hospital – totally possessed by demons, but now, she is totally sold out to her beloved and Lord.

⁷¹ Pseudonym.

Jacqueline was raised in the Roman Catholic Church, but after a vision of the Lord, a passion for Truth drives her to seek Jesus Christ in religion – starting with her own Church, then the Eastern Religions and finally ends in the Occult where “*an enlightened Occultist*” deceitfully convinced her to offer herself to “*the Spirit of Death*”. [It is essential to know that the characteristic of a counterfeit is not the opposite of truth, but something that is so much like the truth, that it seems to be the truth. The devil always disguises himself as an angel of the Light, therefore, in every false religion, the name of Jesus is used as a deceptive.]

Jacqueline was so desperate to find her Jesus that she decided to go into the ceremony of “*initiation of the dead*”. When she came out of the ceremony, she was “*totally demonized*” by demons. The power of Evil took over her life. She could “*see into the spirit realm*” and had “*the strength of the devil*” himself. Jacqueline got visited by Satan himself – at first as the “*angel of Light*” but later he manifested in the flesh, claiming her to be “*his wife*” and to marry her. Jacqueline refused straightaway and from that day on, “*the Spirit of Death*” tried to kill Jacqueline. After a blood mad suicide attempt she end-up in a mental hospital, totally insane.

Just as with the man of Gadarenes in Luke 8:26-29, whose mind was totally clear when Jesus appeared to him, Jacqueline’s mind was totally clear when a Christian Pastor shared the True Gospel of Jesus Christ with her. Convinced by God’s Holy Spirit that she is *being lost totally* and in desperate need of Redemption, Jacqueline cried out to God for mercy and grace.

It is as if the echo of God’s Words to Joshua in the Book of Zecharia could be heard vocally.

And He answered and spoke unto those that stood before Him, saying, Take away the filthy garments from him. And unto him He said, Behold, I have caused thine iniquity to pass from thee, and I will clothe thee with change of raiment. And I said, Let them set a fair mitre upon his head. So they set a fair mitre upon his head, and clothed him with garments.

Zecharia 3:1-5

Then the man with the blue eyes finally set the captive free with the words: “*Every demonic force that dwells in you, Jacqueline, come out right now in Jesus Name.*” He did not go through thousands of lists of demons. He just talked with the Authority that is given to those who is crucified with Christ. She could feel the chains fall off her spirit, soul and body and the rushing wind of God Spirit lifting all weight from her. She was delivered, instantly and profoundly and she was free! All the depression was gone, all the emotional baggage lifted of his shoulders and her mind was fully restored and clear.

The man of God asked Jesus to come and baptize Jacqueline with His Holy Spirit of Truth. God filled her with His Holy Spirit. For hours the presence of God was felt in that place – the transcendent God became an immanent Holy Gracious Loving God. She could only stand in His presence and let Him wash her with his love and cleans her of all her sin. A remarkable joy came over Jacqueline as her spirit experience the wonder of regeneration and restoration. The man of God gave Jacqueline a warning. The devil is after you. Never ever, look back on time, the devil wants to destroy you, however, if you remain in Him, He promise to remain in you and the Devil can not touch you.

9.1.1.1 SPIRITUAL EVIDENCE OF THE REALITY OF HELL IN THE LIFE OF JACQUELINE

Without God – even on the earth – there is total hopelessness. Many life’s end in suicide for this reason, such as the life of Jacqueline and if the person escapes the snares of death, he/she will most likely end up in a mental hospital. Satan has only one plan for humankind – He come only to steal, to kill and to destroy.⁷²

⁷² John 10:10.

Frequently, when there has been trauma in childhood or manipulation and control by authority figures over a child, e.g. abuse, molestation, beatings or some ungodly actions against a child the ***spirit of Jezebel*** enters a child. This may happen to grown-ups also – specifically where great trauma and abusive situations took place. The Bible states that “***rebellion is as witchcraft and stubbornness is as iniquity and idolatry***”. Rebellion and stubbornness is thus directly linked to the Occult, iniquity and idolatry.

For *rebellion is as* the sin of witchcraft, and *stubbornness is as* iniquity and idolatry. Because thou hast rejected the word of the LORD, he hath also rejected thee from *being* king.

I Samuel 15:23

In the case of Jacqueline, she became a voodoo witch by choice. This spirit involved in witchcraft is one of an “***unholy trinity***”: (1) Jezebel, (2) the Anti-Christ spirit and (3) Death and Hell.⁷³

The spirit of the Anti-Christ is referred to, in the book of II Thessalonians.

Let no man deceive you by any means: for that day shall not come, except there come a falling away first, and that man of sin be revealed, the son of perdition; Who opposeth and exalteth himself above all that is called God, or that is worshipped; so that he as God sitteth in the temple of God, showing himself that he is God.

II Thessalonians 2:3-4

The primary manifestations of “***the Anti-Christ spirit***” are “***rebellion***” and “***lawlessness***”. Groupings of spirits under this spirit are often: “*Spirit of abortion, anger, bitterness, blasphemy, corrupt, curses, dissensions, drunkenness, envy, hatred, fear, frigidity, lying, nightmares, rebellion, rejection, selfishness, ambitions, torment and other*”.⁷⁴

⁷³ Subritzki, Bill (1991) How to cast our Demons and Break Curses. Auckland, New Zealand: Dove Ministries, p. 39.

⁷⁴ Subritzki, Bill (1991) How to cast our Demons and Break Curses. Auckland, New Zealand: Dove Ministries, p. 34.

The “**Queen Mother (Jezebel)**” and “**the Anti-Christ**” Kingdoms establish heavenly control over such a person by a **manipulating and indwelling control spirit**, which often takes on the name of the person involved. Thus, this spirit is hidden from sight.⁷⁵

A person, who was exposed to trauma, may have a controlling spirit, which will deny the truth and put up a shield to protect them from the memory of it and this subsequently becomes a demonic shield, which intends to bring calmness. Often these spirits need to be cast out before any manifestation of other demonic power below it.⁷⁶ The Dark angels of “**Death and Hell**” are referred to in the book of Revelations:

And I looked, and behold a pale horse: and his name that sat on him was Death, and Hell followed with him. And power was given unto them over the fourth part of the earth, to kill with sword, and with hunger, and with death, and with the beasts of the earth.

Revelations 6:8

And the sea gave up the dead which were in it; and death and hell delivered up the dead which were in them: and they were judged every man according to their works. And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death.

Revelations 20:14

These dark spirits are often behind cases such as “**frequent accidents, succession of deaths in families, sickness, pain, plaques on Christians, breathing problems, guilt and condemnation**”. The function of these spirits are to cause “**SUICIDE**” in people.

⁷⁵ Subritzki, Bill (1991) How to cast our Demons and Break Curses. Auckland, New Zealand: Dove Ministries, p. 39.

⁷⁶ Subritzki, Bill (1991) How to cast our Demons and Break Curses. Auckland, New Zealand: Dove Ministries, p. 119.

The world was controlled for centuries through Satan's deception of "**goddess (false god) worship**" – the feminine independence, not needing a man, not needing a Heavenly Father. God promised to cast the "**unholy trinity**" into Hell in the order of "**Jezebel, the Anti-Christ and Death and Hell**".⁷⁷

How much she hath glorified herself, and lived deliciously, so much torment and sorrow give her: for she saith in her heart, I sit a QUEEN [JEZEBEL], and am no widow, and shall see no sorrow. Therefore shall her plagues come in one day, death, and mourning, and famine; and she shall be utterly burned with fire: for strong is the Lord God who judgeth her.

Revelations 18:7-8

And THE BEAST [Anti-Christ] was taken, and with him the false prophet that wrought miracles before him, with which he deceived them that had received the mark of the beast, and them that worshipped his image. These both were cast alive into a lake of fire burning with brimstone.

Revelations 19:20

And DEATH AND HELL were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death.

Revelations 20:14

Satan uses his "**unholy trinity**" to lure, control and kill everybody who enter the Occult, even if is through rebellion, stubbornness, trauma or emotional abuse. If he cannot get them to kill themselves, he will try "**to prevent them from procreating**" by "**destroying there bodies**", one way or another. It is recommended that the "**cords of the unholy trinity be cut in the heavens**". This is done by cutting the person loose from any unseen spiritual cords, which exists between that person and the heavenlies.

Believers should pray and ask to be guide by God's Holy Spirit to do "**the deliverance**". All progress in the spiritual dimension results from a decision or a series of decisions made by the individual.

⁷⁷ (2008) Signs and symbols: An Illustrated Guide to their Origins and Meanings. England: Dorling Kindersley limited, p.44.

The “**decision to be free**” is one that only the individual can make. It is a decision to obey God, enjoy life, health and prosperity or to disobey God, reject His offered blessings and have death in their place.

“I call heaven and earth to record this day against you, that I have set before you life and death, blessing and cursing: therefore choose life, that both thou and thy seed may live: That thou mayest love the LORD thy God, and that thou mayest obey his voice, and that thou mayest cleave unto him: for he is thy life, and the length of thy days: that thou mayest dwell in the land which the LORD swear unto thy fathers, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, to give them.”

Deuteronomy 30:19

Mental deliverance starts at the deliverance of the mind. All sin and iniquities should be acknowledge and repented from.

“I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that ye present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable unto God, which is your reasonable service. And be not conformed to this world: but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind, that ye may prove what is that good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God.”

Romans 12:1-2

9.1.2 CASE STUDY B: ISAAC

Isaac⁷⁸ grows up in an Africa Culture of ancestral worship. After five Cosmic initiations, many evil blood ceremonies, out-of-body and shape-shifting experiences, Isaac had great extra-ordinary abilities (demonic powers) and had his own *spirit guide* (a familiar spirit), but was ***totally deceived and demon possessed***. Isaac was meeting with “Living Grant Masters” through his *astral traveling* and *shape shifting* journeys to other planets in the heavenlies.

⁷⁸ Pseudonym.

Through a divine intervention of the LORD Jesus Christ, Isaac come to the truth that this “*Living Grant Masters*” was none other than the Arch Deceiver (Lucifer, called Satan) and his Hierarchy of demons, functioning in the second heaven. Afterwards Isaac was desperately searching Scriptures to know Jesus Christ as personal Saviour. God gave him a vision and Isaac found himself before His “**Great White Throne**” where he witnessed the future judgment of Satan and his “*Grand Masters* (demons). Isaac was never the same; his life changed forever.

Surely, has Isaac regretted, confessed and renounced his Occult involvement, and rejected Satan as his lord and master. Before the Great White Throne Isaac met the True Jesus Christ and did he choose Jesus Christ as his Lord and Saviour. Jesus Christ empowered him and sent him back to reveal the works of the devil in the End Time.

The Occult has its origin / root in Idolatry, which is usually driven by the lust for power. Rebellion against God is the root of the Occult and involves the seeking of hidden knowledge and esoteric power.

9.1.2.1 SPIRITUAL EVIDENCE OF THE REALITY OF HELL AND THE SPIRIT WORLD IN THE LIFE OF ISAAC

Little is understand by the Church of the deception and tremendous danger of the world of the Occult. The questions derive: How will captives acquire liberation, if the Church still questions the existence of Satan and demons and strongly rejects oppression and demon possession?

Isaac testimony under-scribes numerous Biblical teachings:

- Isaac saw in a vision that the Devil who deceived many will be judged and sent to hell and all his “*Grand Master (demons)*” with him (Revelation 20:10,15).
- In the occult Kingdom Christians are called soldiers of Christ (II Timothy 2:3-4).

- Any one who is not in the righteousness of Christ, is a spiritual slave or captive living under manipulation of Satan, whether he is aware of it, or not.
- Spiritual Warfare is very dangerous. Principalities and powers of Darkness have diverse crafts, manipulations, weapons, systems and techniques with which they operate against people – all within the invisible level.
- The whole armour of God is the only source of Christian's total victory over the manipulations of the powers of Darkness (Ephesians 6:11).
- Nobody who is dominated by the propensities of lust, anger greed, vanity and attachment to mundane things will ever be able to put on the whole armour of God.
- A sinner is a servant of sin unto death.
- Sinners must repent and receive Jesus Christ in order to secure eternal protection of God's Holy Spirit.
- From the occult kingdoms, arrows of wickedness and destruction are projected daily by the Prince of Darkness, the fallen angels, unclean spirits, witches, wizards, principal and minor agents of demonic powers.
- Isaac professed that the power of strong believers operates via the following seven factors: (acts of righteousness; strong prayers and confidence in Jesus Christ; Confidence in the Blood of Jesus Christ; Fellowship of believers; preaching of the Gospel; knowledge of the Scripture).
- Weak minister are those whose spiritual strength was in zero point through the power of lust; anger; greed; vanity / pride; attachment to mundane things.
- Strong minister are inside a field of fire that protect him.
- Where anger and greed exists in the heart of a believer, he is open to occult manipulation unto death.
- Thought manipulation is a very confidential aspect of subtle manipulation of the powers of darkness against people in general. The only way to over the manipulation is to set the thoughts of your heart solely on thing of Christ.
- The banner of a Christian's victory is when his faith and righteousness in Christ is upheld daily.

9.1.3 NEAR DEATH EXPERIENCES AS PROVE OF THE REALITY OF HEAVEN AND HELL

Near-death experiences (NDEs) have been reported for much of human history. The earliest account of NDE can be traced to the Myth of Er, recorded by Plato, in *The Republic*, wherein Plato describes a soldier telling of his near-death experience.

The online Oxford Advanced American Dictionary defines a “***near-death-experience***” as an occasion when you almost die, which is often remembered as leaving your body or going down a tunnel.⁷⁹ Profound evidence of numerous people who had “***near death experiences*** (NDE)” - people who died and experienced the reality of heaven and hell, but were sent back with a message from God, correlates with Biblical evidence.

In December 2001, *Lancet*, the journal of the British Medical Society, reported research on Near Death Experiences.

Instead of interviews, hundreds of patients who had been resuscitated after suffering clinical death experiences were followed up. The most remarkable aspect of the outcome is that after the near death experiences, a positive change in most of the personalities of such people took place.

Two group opinions maintained after the research: (1) One group believed that Near Death Experiences were merely the psychological states of those dying; (2) the other group maintained that hard evidence support the validity of the near-death occurrence, suggested that Scientist rethink-theories which dismiss the validity of the near death occurrences.⁸⁰

⁷⁹ Oxford Advance American Dictionary. (<http://oaadonline.oxfordlearnersdictionaries.com/dictionary/near-death-experience>)

⁸⁰ Von Lommel, Pim; Van Wees, Rud; Meyers, Vincent; Elffench, Ingrid (2001 December, 15) “Near-death Experience in Survivors of Cardiac Arrest: A prospective Study in the Nederland. *Lancet*, p358, no 9298: 2039-45.

9.1.3.1 THE TESTIMONY OF HOWARD PITTMAN, AFTER A NEAR DEATH EXPERIENCE

On August 3, 1979, Howard Pittman,⁸¹ a Baptist minister for 35 years, died while on the operating table during surgery and had a near-death experience.

After God's *escorting Angels* showed him the second heaven with its invisible malignant demons and evil activities, Pittman was taken to the third heaven and before the very throne of God. God convince Pittman of sin, righteousness and judgment – ***his faith was dead, his works not acceptable*** and his labor in vain – he was in danger of everlasting judgment. God revealed to Howard his own deceitful heart and states that ***he had become his own false god***. No iniquities, sin or self-idolatry will be accepted in heaven. For Howard, there was nothing to stand on, no works, no own righteousness, but only shame and guilt. As soon as the scales fell from his eyes, he repented and his soul was filled with the grace, love and peace of God when he realized that he spent his life in self-idolatry.

After this life changing experience, Pittman could not be kept quite about the devastating outcome of sin and the righteousness and judgment of God especially on idolatry. On earth, people are in danger of demonic oppression or even possession – but the moment you die, every living being will be confronted with the outcome of his choices either eternal damnation and destruction in Hell and Hades or perpetually in the Presence of the King.

And when he is come, he will reprove the world of sin, and of righteousness, and of judgment.

John 16:8

Pittman's testimony further describes numerous Biblical teachings pertaining to:

- The reality of Satan and his Hierarchy of demons (facts that he denied previously in his life, contrary to Biblical teaching).

⁸¹ Pittman, Howard (1979) Placebo. (http://spiritlesson.com/dreams_and_visions/placebo_howard_pittman.htm)

- There is a precise difference between the souls of animals and that of man. The animals in this world also have a soul. The only difference between their souls and our souls is that our souls belongs to the spirit, while their souls belongs to the body. When their body perishes, their soul perish with it. When the outer body perishes, the soul remains with the spirit. Pittman notes that when his spirit was lifted from his body, his soul came with it. The simplest way is to define the soul is to say that it is one's personality.
- The second heaven is the place where Satan presently has his throne located. He is not in Hell although Hell is to be his final destination.
- In the Spiritual realm nobody communicates with their mouths, but rather, they communicate with their minds. It was like projecting a person's words on thought waves and receiving the answers the same way. The angels could read your mind.
- In the demonic world there is a division of power much like a military structured chain command with rank and order. Certain demons carry the title of prince, which is always the demon in charge of a principality. A principality is a territory or an area / place. When Satan assigns a prince a tasks, the prince is given the authority to act in the name of Satan.
- Different groups of demons is shown to Pittman in the second realm:
 - (a) Those at the top of that order were humanlike warring demons who look like giants – about eight feet tall and were handsome like athletes.
 - (b) The second most powerful type demon was looked like ordinary people. Chief among this group was the demon of greed and contained within this same group was the demons of hate, lust, strife and a few others.
 - (c) The third most powerful type and group of demons were revealed to Pittman in mixed shapes and forms. Some had human forms while others resembled animals in their forms. Among this group were demons of fear and self-destruction as well as those demons which are expert in mimicking departed human spirits (familiar spirits) and in manifesting themselves to the physical world as ghosts.

(d) The fourth group we revealed in forms other than human. Some have forms like animals, others have half-human and half-animal forms and then there were unknown mixed forms. In this group were the demons of murder, brutality, sadism and other related to carnage.

- Every demon is an expert on his specific area.
- Pittman notes that his escort wanted him to see a demon in the process of actually possessing a human being. A demon with a horrible shape and form, which he recognized as from the lower perverted group was busy possessing a young man. Those in the flesh were only aware of themselves and they could not see or hear those in the spirit realm. The demon made himself desirable and attractive to the human. Man has a sovereign will, beyond which the demon cannot come. Angels or demons could not come beyond that sovereign will of man. God, Himself will not violate that will.

The 'second time' around in ministry, Pittman's complete focus changed as the Holy Spirit took the lead with the emphasis on what Jesus Christ showed His followers whilst on earth.

9.1.3.2 THE TESTIMONY OF BILL WIESE AFTER A NEAR DEATH EXPERIENCE

God took the Christian, Bill Wiese, to hell to experience 23 minutes in Hell. On the early morning of November 23, 1998 the real estate broker found himself in a cell approximately fifteen feet high and ten feet by fifteen feet in area, where there were two foul-smelling beasts, personifications of evil and terror, who spoke in blasphemous language. Wiese says that the creatures had strength approximately one thousand times greater than a man's strength. The Beasts threw him against the stone-wall, breaking his bones and ripped his flesh. Wiese nevertheless managed to crawl out of his cell, where he heard the screams of the billions of damned people in hell.

At that moment Bill was lifted out of Hell by the Lord Himself – extremely glad to be taken out. Bill asked the Lord why God had sent him to Hell? The Lord answered that he wanted to warn his people. ***They do not belief in Hell anymore, and the reality of it is such a devastating terror.*** Hell was not prepared for humanity. Just as a city has prisons and it is not the governing body of the cities choice to send anybody to prison, just so is it not God's intention to send anybody to hell. Out of the loving heart of God came a last minute warning. Every human being has a free will to choose:

I call heaven and earth to record this day against you, that I have set before you life and death, blessing and cursing: therefore choose life, that both thou and thy seed may live.

Deuteronomy 30:19

Wiese describes the devastation of Hell in the following Biblical ways:

- A real place with a literal fire lake, extremely heat (Luke 16: 24; Matthew 25:41; Mark 9:45; Revelation 20:14).
- A place of pith black darkness (II Peter 2:4).
- A revolting sulphur smelling place.
- Uncountable demonic creatures who hate man and find pleasure in causing horrible torment (Revelation 20:10).
- People cannot breath properly because there is no air (Revelation 14:11).
- People experience real pain in hell (Luke 16:23; Matthew 13:50).
- Hell is a place of torment (Matthew 23: 33, 13, 15, 16, 23, 25, 27, 29).
- There is no drop of water in hell (Zechariah 11).
- There is no blood in hell (Leviticus 17:11).
- No peace, rest or sleep in hell (Revelation 14:11).
- Indescribable fear levels.
- Magnets of hell is feeding on human flesh (Matthew 9:46).
- Completely lost and alone – will never see your loved ones ever.

- The hell was prepared for the devil and his demons – not for people (Matthew 25:41)

9.1.3.3 THE TESTIMONY OF DON PIPER AFTER A NEAR DEATH EXPERIENCE

Don Piper, a Baptist Pastor for thirty-eight years, died on a bridge called Trinity in January 1989 on his way home after a conference. The medical personnel, who examined him there, declared he died instantly. They covered his lifeless body still trapped in the smashed car, with a tarp so that onlookers would not stare at him while they were waiting for somebody to come and collect the body. While his lifeless body lay inside the ruins of his car, Don Piper went straight to heaven and experienced the glories of heaven.⁸²

Dick and Anita Onerecker, a Pastor who also came from the conference, decided to go and ask if he can pray for anybody who was injured in the accident. Dick heard God's voice so clearly that he acted involuntarily: "*Go and pray for the man in the red car.*" God said it; he heard it and that settles it. Dick acted in obedience.

God stirred Dicks spirit and he started to pray fervently and with times singing songs to the Lord and then back to prayer again. While he was singing the old hymn, "What a friend we have in Jesus", Don Pipers began to sing with Dick! When the dead man began to sing with him, Dick scramble out of the smashed car and raced over to the nearest EMT. "The dead man is singing with me!" he shouted. "The man has come back to life!"

After 13th months in hospital, 34 operations and almost impossible painful times, Don Pipers recover to such an extent that he could go home.

Don Piper gave the following profound testimony of heaven:

⁸² Piper, Don (2004) A true Story of Death and Life: 90 Minutes in Heaven. Grand rapids, Michigan; P. 205.

- Heaven is a holy place. God is a Holy God. We have to be holy.
- Jesus Christ is the only way into heaven. Jesus death allows the lost to enter in. You just have to accept it from Him, it is a gift.
The only thing God requires of us belief in the Lord Jesus Christ, to repent of your sin and then turn away from it. He will help the person to do it.
- Coming from behind the heavenly gates – brilliance was radiating from somewhere in the city. Don felt that he was ushered into the presence of God. A holy awe came over him as he walked. Strange enough, the entrance through the huge gates was very small – only one person could enter at a time.
- Don say he believed in answered pray. If we will pray as this preacher prayed for Don, God can revive the World, but we have not because we ask not.

Genesis 28:17 had a profound meaning for Don. The only difference was that Jacob had a dream, while Don Williams experience the reality of heaven Himself.

And, behold, the LORD stood above it, and said, I am the LORD God of Abraham thy father, and the God of Isaac: the land whereon thou liest, to thee will I give it, and to thy seed... And Jacob awaked out of his sleep, and he said, Surely the LORD is in this place; and I knew it not. And he was afraid, and said, How dreadful [awesome (NIV)] is this place! this is none other but the house of God, and THIS IS THE GATE OF HEAVEN.

Genesis 28:12 -17 (emphasis added)

9.1.3.4 THE TESTIMONY OF CAPTAIN DALE BLACK AFTER A NEAR DEATH EXPERIENCE

Captain Dale Black, was the only survivor of a horrific plane crash on 22 of May 1969 over Zambia in Africa. When paramedics arrived, they found him staggering through the rubble in a state of shock, drenched in fuel with massive injuries.

Suddenly he found himself suspended in the air, hovering over the wreckage of his body. When he awoke in the ICU, he was a changed man.⁸³ Nothing looked the same. It was as if he were seeing in new dimensions.

A deep love and compassion for people filled his heart: 'Do they know Jesus? What if they does not know Jesus and dies?' This feeling was real and permanent. God clearly spared his life and was turning him back, showing him where he lost his way. Dale believes in prayer.

Dale testimony, signifies the reality of heaven:

- While Dale was floating in the air, he remembered a time that he was a tenderhearted kid who just received Jesus Christ as his personal Lord and Saviour. He remember how he believed the Bible's teaching about Jesus being God's only Son and that He loved us so. He was so sorry for his sins and prayed to Jesus to become his Saviour and friend.
- Dale knew that he was not tendered hearted anymore. He was selfish and arrogant. His whole life was about himself, his life, his career, his hopes and dreams – a life self-idolatry. Slowly he moved away from his body out of the room. He did not know where he was going. God loved the heart of the little boy Dale once. His heart lost its way.
- An incandescent-like beam of light was originated from Dales and illuminated his path. It was like a tunnel of light that he was travelling through in a total darkness.
- Dale approaches a magnificent city of golden and gleaming colours. He new instantly that heaven was utterly holy. In heaven, there is no sin, no strife, no competition, no sarcasm, no betrayal, no deception, no lies no murders, no unfaithfulness, no disloyalty and nothing contrary to light and life and love.
- The narrow road led to the entrance in the wall, which led into the city.

⁸³ Black, Dale Captain (2010) *Flight to Heaven: A pilot's true story*. Minneapolis, Minnesota: Bethany House, p.12.

Dave was escorted by two angelical guides.

Dale wanted to be a warrior, one of the Kings' men, but first he had to know the King – as he started to know him as a young boy. He desired a friendship with the God who spared his life.

For we walk by faith, not by sight.

II Corinthians 5:7

10. CONCLUSION

Every human being is destined to die once and appear before the Great White Throne. Destined to go to hell if you do not receive Jesus Christ as your personal Saviour.

Bible is a Book of Mercy and Grace. Hell is a real place, not made for humans, but for the wicked and the Fallen Angels. A key verse of the Bible tells about the great love of God for humans, who want to rescue them from the terrors of Hell.

For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life. For God sent not his Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through him might be saved. He that believeth on him is not condemned: but he that believeth not is condemned already, because he hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God. And this is the condemnation, that light is come into the world, and men loved darkness rather than light, because their deeds were evil.

John 3:16-19

God gave humanity the power of choice. He does not make us robots and make people get saved but gives opportunities ***for grace to be saved.***

Not to choose is to be separated from God too, since depraved man are born as citizens of the Kingdom of Darkness (Ephesians 2:1-2). Hell will be unimaginable torment, day and night. There is no way to get out of it. No human being wants to go to Hell.

The Bible is all about getting in alignment with God. Some think they are going to heaven; **however, Satan will take them out.** He is the most cunning, cruel immoral despicable malignant **person that walked this earth.**

Satan's choice divided him and his followers from God for good. Their ultimate-destiny is Hell – a place where God is not and where His attributes is withdrawn from a place – it will ultimately change into total destruction.

- God is Light and where He withdraws, pitch-darkness will permeate (Revelation 22:5).
- God is Life and where He withdraws, death, pain and torment will reign (I John 5:20).
- God is Love and where He withdraws malignant hatred, jealousy and aggression will rage (I John 4:8).
- God is the Living Water and where He withdraws there is unremitting thirst (John 4:10).
- God is Peace and where He withdraws there is total panic, fear and insanity (Philippians 4:7).
- God is Righteousness and where He withdraws, the malignant reign of evil and iniquity reigns (Hebrew 7:2).
- God is the only source of Hope and where He withdraws there is total hopelessness and devastation (I Peter 1:21).

Hell is surely not a place for human beings. When the Spirit of Truth comes, He will teach the believer all things. Jesus said that He was going to His Father, but will not leave his Church as orphans.

He will send them the Spirit of Truth – the comforter – and He will be with His children forever and will learn him/her. When the Spirit of Truth comes, every demonic spirit will react. The Spirit of Truth is the most powerful deliverer in the Church.

He is the One who destroy the empire of Darkness in the believers' life. Satan is the Father of all lies and only the Light – the Spirit of Truth – can destroy the empire of Darkness.

There is a **luke-warn** 'watered-down' Gospel preached presently, while millions of people are deceived into the Occult and going right into Hell. Tragically, the Church has withdraw from everything that has to do with evil supernaturalism and what makes it even worse – many ministers is so deceived that they do not acknowledge the multi-dimensional sin war in which every living being is involved in.

They reject Spiritual Warfare and many even do not even believe in the existence of Satan as a person or the possibility of demonization of Christians at all. This leave the believer, totally unequipped for the raging battle.

Leaders have taken away the power of the Gospel because people want a Gospel that will accommodate sinners. The Bible however, do not accommodate sinners, sinners have to accommodate the Gospel and submit to the Word of God – the supreme Authority on earth. The greatest lie of the Devil that infiltrated our Churches is that believers can live as they wish and still be saved!

The Bible very clearly reveals a dividing line between sinners and saved-ones. A sinner is a person who is not drawn out of the Kingdom of Satan into the Kingdom of God. Surely there is a difference between a sinner and the immature. Regeneration only happens where a person submits his life to the Lordship of Jesus Christ. Where a person is still going on with his sinning – he is still the lord of his own life. Such a man is still a slave of his sin and on his way to hell. This is what contaminates the Church of Jesus Christ.

No person in the Bible considers a sinner a saved person. Nobody can live a double life and calls himself saved. Nobody can be a sinner and a believer at the same time.

Scripture declares that with your heart you believe and with your mouth you confess to salvation. Preachers have reduced the Gospel of God to the one verse of Romans 10.

For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth.

Romans 10:4

It is however only one piece of a marvelous truth. The many passages that reveals the danger of eternal destruction to those who lives as they wish, is rejected.

Even so faith, if it hath not works, is dead, being alone.

James 2:17

He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

I John 3:8

We know that whosoever is born of God sinneth not; but he that is begotten of God keepeth himself, and that wicked one toucheth him not.

I John 5:18

If ye know that he is righteous, ye know that every one that doeth righteousness is born of Him.

I John 2:29

He that saith, I know Him, and keepeth not His commandments, is a liar, and the truth is not in him. He that saith he is in the light, and hateth his brother, is in darkness even until now.

I John 2:4,9

A new commandment I give unto you, That ye love one another; as I have loved you, that ye also love one another.

John 13:34

Know ye not, that to whom ye yield yourselves servants to obey, his servants ye are to whom ye obey; whether of sin unto death, or of obedience unto righteousness?

Romans 6:16

If any man see his brother sin a sin which is not unto death, he shall ask, and he shall give him life for them that sin not unto death. There is a sin unto death: I do not say that he shall pray for it.

I John 5:16

Only where the Gospel is not ‘watered-down’, but **preached in the Spirit of Truth**, it will open the eyes of the blind, take them out of the Kingdom of Darkness and position them into the Kingdom of Light.

There is people ‘in the Church’, walking in the Kingdom of Darkness. This is an abomination to God. How many know that when a person is totally immersed in God’s Holy Spirit – such person cannot link himself with sin – such as pornography, adultery, abuse, bitterness and hatred, etc. Those born of God, immersed in His Holy Spirit cannot sin.

We as the Church have to pray again that the **Spirit of Truth** will come upon us! Only **the spirit of Truth overcomes the Occult**.⁸⁴ If a person wants to be filled with God’s Holy Spirit, he has to come out of sin and iniquity. Preachers have turned the most powerful Gospel in the world, into little formulas, which have bound up millions of people in lies. Jesus did not go after people and adopt the Gospel to their needs.

A man-made Gospel is keeping the Church in the bondage of the Devil. Scripture reveals clearly, he that sin is of the Devil! He who is born-again with the Seed of the Almighty cannot sin, since God prevent him and he cannot sin. When a person is born of God, the Spirit of Truth is in him/her and you cannot sin. This is the Gospel of the Overcomer! The Church is in bondage because we have twisted the Gospel into a social Gospel that has no saving power.

⁸⁴ Mendez-Ferrell, Ana. Personal Testimony: Deliverance from Witchcraft. (anamendez.org)

Preachers are called ones – to open the eyes of many so that they can see. The question is, ‘What must they see?’ People must see themselves as God see them:

- Sinners must see the filthiness of their souls.
- Sinners have to recognize what they have done to Christ.

Sinners have to repent that they have crucified the LORD through their sin. Out of a broken spirit will come the sinner’s prayer: “*Lord will you have mercy on me...*” Then the preacher has to give the assurance of God’s Word:

If we say that we have no sin, we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us. If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness. If we say that we have not sinned, we make him a liar, and his word is not in us.

I John 1:8-10

After the assurance that the sinner is accepted by God through grace by faith, the Preacher have to execute every demonic force that dwells in the person – to come out in the Name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth. This Authority is given to those who are crucified with Christ. Surely, God’s presence will come over those who repent, heal, and deliver him/her – spirit, body and soul. One day the believer will be holy, but in the meantime are they still in brokenness and bondage of sin. The foundation for deliverance is the following:

- Depart from iniquity
- Call to God to be filled with his holy Spirit

Those who have come in unity with God are ‘one spirit with God’ and the devil cannot touch them. Preachers have to talk to people about sin. Jesus is coming very soon and when He come there will be a judgment.

Preaching a luke-warm watered-down Gospel is going to take many people straight to hell and the Preacher will be responsible for it.

Righteousness means to obey God's Lordship over their lives. He is the Lord, whatever He say – be obedient. Your live do not belong to yourself anymore, but belongs to the LORD. The true Gospel will convict of sin, righteousness and judgment.

Little children, let no man deceive you: he that doeth righteousness is righteous, even as he is righteous.

1 John 3:7

This is the reason why Christians have to little power against the Devil. The Gospel of Truth transforms live, bring demon-possessed people to salvation.

The Spirit of Truth can do much more that any formula of deliverance. The main problem of demon-possession is *victimization* and *self-pity*. God gave believers a divine instrument – people have to develop a 'divine wrath' against sin and the enemy. Such a person will be an Overcomer.

Preachers should not make people dependant on their ministry, but make them bold, warriors who can fight for themselves. They have to be equipped to *get mad at sin, to get mad at their oppressor - the Devil* and his foul evil spirits followers. Only the Spirit of Truth can Overcome the Occult.

God is able to deliver.

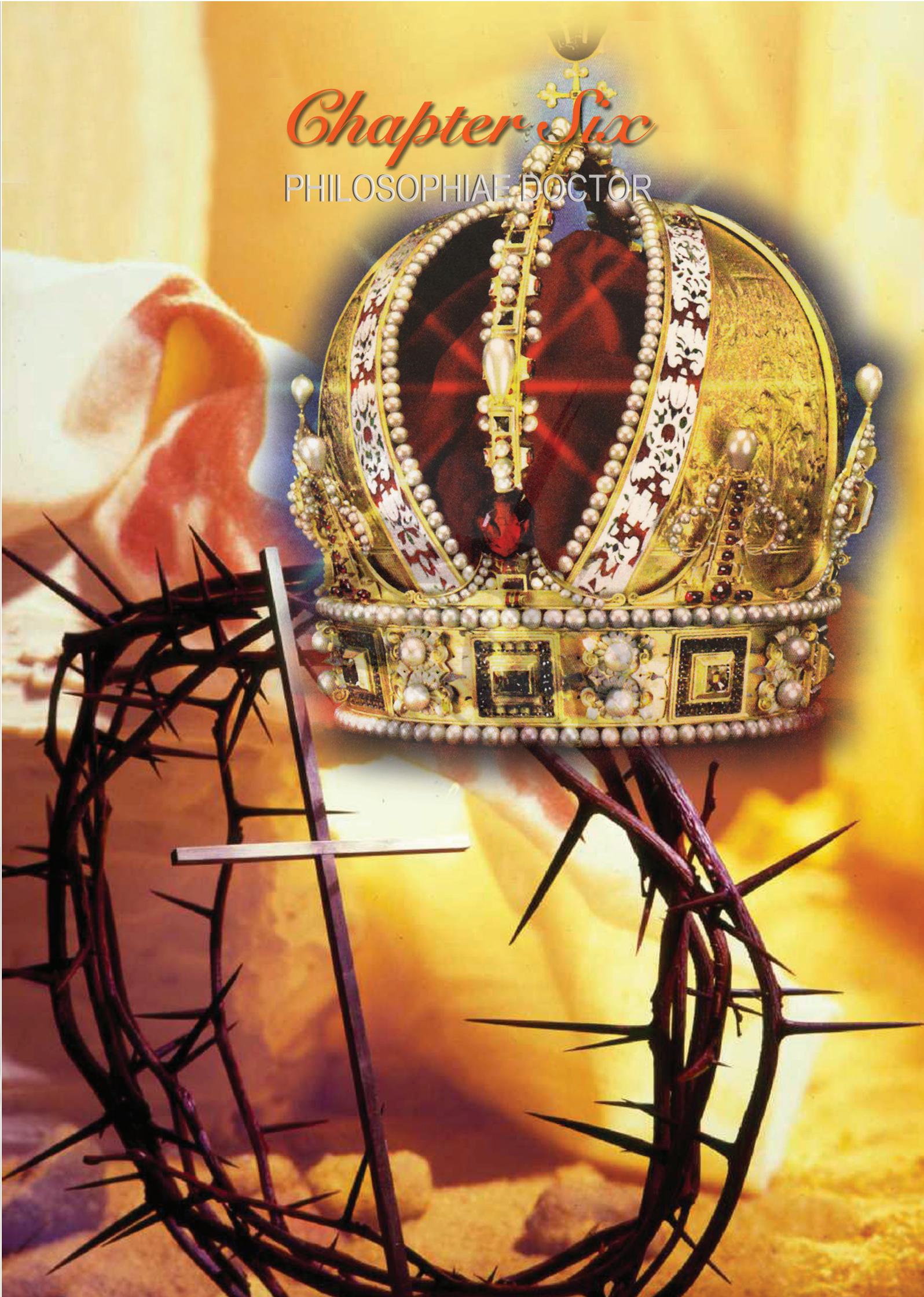
-----oOo-----

The wicked shall be turned into hell, [and] all the nations that forget God.

Psalms 9:17

Chapter Six

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR



Chapter Six

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR



*... The kingdoms of this world are become
[the kingdoms] of our Lord, and of His Christ;
and He shall reign for ever and ever.*

Revelation 11:15

The slaying of Leviathan, Western Berlin, Germany
Photographer: Daniel Brand

Cover Art for Chapters: Susan Langeveldt
Graphic Design: SL Studios



Chapter 6

Immersed in the King of Kings, Ruling from Heaven and Earth

Those of us who have encountered Him, know that Jesus Christ is at the center of history and stands at the end of history.

*Tal Brooke*¹

1. INTRODUCTION

A hair-raising question immersed in this End-Time hour where many strange phenomena are occurring: Did Christ exist? Is the life story of the founder of Christianity the product of human sorrow, imagination and hope – a myth comparable to the legends of Krishna, Osiris, Adonis, Dionysus and Mithras? Early in the eighteenth century the circle of Bolingbroke, shocking even Voltaire, privately discussed the possibility that Jesus had never lived. Volney propounded the same doubt in his *Ruins of Empire* in 1791. Napoleon, meeting the German scholar Wieland in 1808, asked him no petty question of politics or war, but did he believe in the historicity of Christ.

¹ Brooke, Tal (1998) *The Conspiracy to Silence the Son of God*. Eugene, Oregon: Harvest House Publishers, p. 19.

One of the most far-reaching activities of the modern mind has been the “Higher Criticism” of the Bible – the mounting attack upon its authenticity and veracity, countered by the heroic attempt to save the historical foundations of Christian faith; the result may in time prove as revolutionary as Christianity itself.²

The Christian evidence for Christ begins with the letters, ascribed to Saint Paul. Some of these are of uncertain authorship; several antedating A.D. 64 are almost universally accounted as substantially genuine. No one has questioned the existence of Paul, or his repeated meetings with Peter, James and John; and Paul enviously admits that these men had known Christ in the flesh. The accepted epistles frequently refer to the Last Supper and the crucifixion.

To understand who the real Jesus Christ is, it is essential to reveal clearly, who He is NOT. After we reject all the false teachings about Him, the question arising is still, “**Who is this man?**” The answer is both simpler and deeper than most people care to imagine. It is easy to state but hard to grasp, because Christ’s sacrifice symbolizes the ultimate paradox of the Christian faith.³

God conquers evil through Christ by allowing it to triumph on its own terms, serving His purposes in its very rejection of Christ. By letting evil express its nature without restraint, it works God’s ultimate triumph. If this paradoxical “*mystery of the faith*” is not understood, there is no way Jesus Himself can be understood, a fact that goes far to explain the many current misunderstandings about Him.

The question, “**Who is Jesus?**” is in shortly revealed in the fact that Jesus represent the present of God Himself. In Jesus, God personally faced the antagonism and hatred of fallen man – presenting enough love to neutralize our murderous rejection of Him by accepting it without resistance.

² Durant, Will (1944) *Caesar and Christ*. New York, NY: Simon and Schuster, p.553.

³ *Ibid*, p.229.

Jesus Christ changed the meaning of death by rising from it and in that way, His sacrifice abolished the barrier between God and man. His resurrection is proof of the finality and completeness of his triumph over evil, which results in the redemptive message of the Gospel. The word Gospel means “good news”. The death and resurrection of Christ are “news” because they happened in history. The news is “good” because those particular events conquer evil fundamentally and forever.

Jesus brought eternity into history and when He rose from the dead He ended the rule of death over humanity. The power of Christ resurrection sets us free in this world and makes us whole in the world to come. The Christian proclamation to the world encompass the fact that, “*Christ has risen!*” The real Jesus is therefore the one who overcome death and evil and who stood up in triumph after they had laid Him low.⁴

Apostle Paul revealed the answer to the question, “*Who is Jesus?*” in his first letter to the Corinthians. He extracts the essence of Christianity’s “*Good News*” into a “*four-aspects*”: 1) that Christ died for our sins according to the Scriptures, that (2) He was buried, that (3) He was raised on the third day according to the Scriptures and that (4) He appeared to his disciples after his resurrection.⁵ This message, however, is too deep for shallow minds, which turn its insights into clichés of ridicule, such as: “Christ died for your sins”, “Jesus is the Light of the world” and “You must be born again.” For many, these are empty phrases, relics of outdated thoughts. Few are aware that these words describe the “***mystery of God’s presence in our fallen world***” – the Eternal enters history, the Transcended becomes the Immanent, the Boundless embodied in human form.

One naked truth stands – that “*the Name of Christ*” is frequently either praised or cursed. This is unique with only one other name, “*the Name of God*”. No other name is uttered when men curse and no other name draws blood in the mouth which in itself is a dead giveaway.

⁴ Brooke, Tal (1998) Conspiracy to Silence the Son of God. Eugene, Oregon: Harvest House Publishers, p.230.

⁵ I Corinthians 15:3-5.

Those who do not believe in Christ will still utter His name as a blasphemy as though unconsciously acknowledging that He have power they do not want to recognize. Just as it was, 2000 years ago, people in our days become instantly divided when the name of Christ is raised. When the Truth entered a place it confronted without words and demanded a response. The Truth is a blinding light that not only offered hope, but at the same time reveals every lies, private sins and contradictions within humanity.

Everybody who ever lived stands before this **great divide**. It is almost impossible for those in His presence to sit on the fence, looking directly into the Light, while remaining unresponsive. We all came somewhere into the presence of the Son of God and there is no time for diplomacy, equivocation, or compromise. One thing of the enemy, he always will put the Name of Jesus in his deceit to make it stronger! The characteristic of the truth is not the opposite; it is that which is very alike. It looks like the truth.

How closer the counterfeit is to the truth, the more dangerous it became. Satan does not show up, as he really is, he shows up as the real Jesus. Satan will disguise himself as the angel of light. In every false religion Jesus is there – it is the hook that makes people believe that the real Jesus is present. If the Name of Jesus is there, it attracts a lot of people.

This chapter will expound some views of those who change the nature of Christ, those who replace Him and thereby disposes Him, not trying to robs Him on the deepest level possible from whom He really is any more, but to let He challenge you with the Truth. The evil nature, kingdom and leaders of those who try to replace Christ will also be exposed. Fallen man has consistently displayed an all-consuming need to change Him. Jesus Christ in the true essence of his being cannot be changed by man's desires or opinions.

The story of Jesus and the message of His “*Gospel or Good News*” are told in the four different books of the Bible: Matthew, Mark, Luke and John. Each book gives the reader a unique introduction to the person of Jesus Christ. For the New Testament writers Matthew and Luke, *the Kingdom of God in Christ meant two things: Divine Living* and an outpouring of *Divine Power* to validate that lifestyle and to overcome the powers that resist it. Jesus came to sit on the throne of David and establish His Kingdom on earth. His Kingdom is not of this world and yet, paradoxically, we witness a very real and present manifestation of it. The Kingdom of Heaven is God’s Rule, Light and order entering a chaotic world. The Kingdom of God is a mystery, which is revealed to some and hidden to others. It is important to understand the Kingdom of God in the first-century context.⁶ The Kingdom of God is the rule of God over Israel and worldwide.

2. WHO IS THIS ‘MAN’ KNOWN AS THE KING OF KINGS

The Bible will be taken as axiom (starting point) of this thesis for revealing Jesus Christ as the King of King. We shall regard the Bible as the Self-revelation of God and as the Word of God. As such, the Bible is the Truth; therefore, every proposition will be examined and proven in the light of it.

In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

John 1:1

The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the Gospel to the poor; he hath sent Me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised, To preach the acceptable year of the Lord.

⁶ Eckhardt, John (2011) *The Invisible King and His Kingdom*. Lake Mary, Florida: Charisma House, p.2.

**And He closed the book, and He gave it again to the minister, and sat down.
And the eyes of all them that were in the synagogue were fastened on Him.**

Luke 4:18-19

Compassion is the hallmark of our LORD. Consequently, Jesus' healings and exorcisms – which play such a major role in his ministry – are not simply patches on a body destined for death regardless, they are manifestations of God's Reign on earth – an in-breaking of eternity in time, a revelation of God's merciful nature, a promise to reconstitute of all things. In the form of God's Son, Jesus Christ was sent by the Father to come to the earth as the Kingdom Himself. Thus, the Kingdom of Light and Love and Justice came to search and seek *the sinners on the earth* so save them from the kingdom of Darkness.

2.1 THE MYSTERY OF OPPOSITION

Jesus' opposers wanted to eradicate Him and His message from the earth, if not by force they will use cunning and deceitful ways. God designed the universe with different laws: moral, spiritual and physical laws. The opposition of Christ cunningly embarked a process of deterioration and integration to enhance change, away from Biblical absolutes. It should be a subtle defeat: They embarked a gentle rise in their cunning planned *culture war*, *in civilized societies*. This change remained unnoticed, but this climate is changing rapidly.

Tal Brooke has drawn attention to the fact that Biblical absolutes are currently exchanged for new models of life. Influential evil leaders paved the way for the public to become daring enough, to speak openly about their sexual desires and sensual extravagances – the one desire that men's fallen corrupted nature naturally craves.

This paved the way for the public resentment of religious taboos.⁷

Moral barriers that once restrained society were coming down. The cultural war was heating up. New humanist mystical models for life and society were embarked that predicting liberation and change. Nobody, however was explained the final goal. Sigmund Freud adds fuel to this fire, explaining that passions had to be released and explored, not repressed.

On this, Prof Dr Connie Brand notes: If believers can not detect the true from the counterfeit, they either rejects or either accept both (true and false) because they fail to understand that there can be mixed workings of the divine and the satanic, divine and human, satanic and human, soul and spirit, soul and body and body and spirit.⁸ The Lord has a very different plan and design for the world - He's goal of the true Jesus Christ **is to fill the whole earth with his glory**. The Lord promised to take His beloved from glory to glory, but the hindrance that prevents a breakthrough is '**a mixture of seed**'.

David Tidy shed light: When I have prayed for the separation of mixed seed in my life, Daniel's vision of the coming Kingdom of God has inspired me. David saw a stone being cut loose from a mountain (mixture of this world) but not by human hands. That stone struck the statue of the kingdom of this world and it became a great mountain and filled the whole earth.⁹

John MacArthur Jr, another well-known preacher and author affirms this by saying: **Christianity is in a severe state of confusion**. It is not sure how it is supposed to act because it is not sure what it is supposed to think because it is not sure what it believes.

⁷ Brooke, Tal (1998) *The conspiracy to Silence the Son of God*. Eugene, Oregon: Harvest House Publishers, p.7.

⁸ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2005) *Masters Degree: An Exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian Involvement in a Theodicy Central to Christian Involvement in a Theodicy considered from Philosophical-Theological Perspective*. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Un-Published, p.141.

⁹ Tidy, David (1995) *Discerning The Mixture*. United Kingdom; Prayer Warriors International, pp. 4-5.

Watered down diluted theology will fail to produce deep reverence, repentance, humility and understanding of God, His nature, His laws, His standards and His principles. The Church today is mired in relativistic thinking about doctrine, relativistic thinking about morality and cannot move into Divine living. Discernment is crucial.¹⁰

Sadly and slowly we became members of Christ's' opposition – an enormous think tank of hereditary initiates and masterminds – whose sole purpose is *to rid the world of Christ, Christians and the Christian Faith*. The goal is to erase Christ from history, burning the books and evidence of Christianity, so that the greater masses living in the world will never be redeemed by His message.

An invasion was planned that will change Christendom from within. The attack is from the inside. The opposition became members of the church under protective camouflage. Subtle heresies were introduced – with the biggest onslaught ever entering the schools of theology and philosophy of the great universities, which change the message of the Faith – starting at the very top of the hierarchy. The enemy entered the seat of learning. Once academic theology was infected, graduates could infiltrate the broader church and denominations to preach increasingly, novel messages – “*a social gospel!*”

Tal Brooke warns about the ***coming danger***, that ***the traditional Christian message will be replaced by new belief systems***: Theological deconstruction is accelerated by transsexual appreciation, sexual diversity and even demonstrations within a new kind of “loving” Church body whose collective judgment and discernment was permanently disabled. Their goal is to create worshippers so dull that even the goddess-worshipping sex in the sanctuary would one day be tolerated as an acceptable form of worship (loving the goddess of permissive wisdom, Sophia).

¹⁰ McArthur, JP. A call for Discernment: Part 2 of 3. (<http://www.ondoctrine.com/2mac0017.htm>)

The final product of the church would be a caricature of the church's earliest beginnings, when it was bold, pure and on fire.¹¹ Alongside this inside battle, Christianity is being undermining and **attacked from the outside**. New post-Christian social systems would provide little or no room for Christ and His church. The expression of Anti-Christianity would remain safely political and social, all for the common good.

Walter Martin refers to this attack of the New Age Religions: The New Age agenda was clear and surprisingly unified: a millennium without the Biblical God.¹²

The mystic and scientist, Teilhard de Chardin (1881 – 1955) is the leading spiritual father in the West for the rising spiritual a political globalism taking the world by storm. He invented the conceptual Western framework for a global religion and social order. Teilhard was fueled by a mystical experience: Throughout his life his life he experienced a mystical unity with the cosmos, inspiring a unification of the earth and that it was vital for mankind's survival.

Teilhard duplicated Alice Bailey and the Theosophists explanation and abandoning the Genesis account of the fall of man¹³ and the doctrine of original sin.¹⁴

2.2 THE ARGUMENT ON WHO JESUS CHRIST IS NOT

More and more is the public confronted, with "**numerous counterfeit Christ's**" that will turns countless people off the true Christianity and makes them immune to all genuine attempts.

¹¹ Brooke, Tal (1998) *The Conspiracy to Silence the Son of God*. Eugene, Oregon: Harvest House Publishers, pp.11-12.

¹² Martin, Walter (2008) *The Kingdom of the Occult*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson, p.189.

¹³ Brooke, Tal (1998) *The Conspiracy to Silence the Son of God*. Eugene, Oregon: Harvest House Publishers, p.38,43.

¹⁴ Beverley James A (2009) *Nelson's Illustrated Guide to Religions: A Comprehensive Introduction to the Religions of the World*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson, p. 485.

Together with the different faces of counterfeit saviours, the New Age world power would overwhelm the post-Christian society and push for the enhancing of change.

Tal Brooke declares: People are seeking a tolerant nonjudgmental Christ – one who is politically corrects but who proclaims that all paths as leading to God. They are looking for a Christ who teaches that the ancient mystery religions of the divine within – that spark of divinity within man are waiting to be awakened. This Christ will be a type of a perfect Master (avatar), one who will be leading the way for the completely human race to enter into the secret of enlightenment¹⁵.

Dave Hunt, an international known Biblical Scholar, warns about the same thing – that the world is on the very edge of receiving “**a new saviour**”. The anti-Christ is almost certainly alive – biding his time, awaiting his signal and prompt to manifest.

Such prospects is based upon a sober evaluation of current events in relation to Bible prophesy. One passion will rules this remarkable man – a lust for POWER. It may be that he even believes that his motives are altogether pure and unselfish. The obsession that will drives this extraordinary man will inflamed the explosive charisma that makes him Satan’s’ chosen Messiah to rule the world.

Just as Judas’s lust for money made him vulnerable to Satan, so this man’s “**passion for power**” will make him similarly vulnerable. The anti-Christ will be so driven by his dream to rule – yes, perhaps in his own eyes to save the world – that he will pay any price, even satanic possession, to make his mark in history. So it has been predestined and so it will be.¹⁶

¹⁵Brooke, Tal (1998) *The Conspiracy to Silence the Son of God*. Eugene, Oregon: Harvest House Publishers, pp.25-26.

¹⁶Hunt, Dave (1990) *Global Peace*. Global Peace. Eugene, Oregon: Harvest House Publishers, pp.5-6.

Now we beseech you, brethren, by the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ... Let no man deceive you by any means: for that day shall not come, except there come a falling away first, and that man of sin be revealed, the son of perdition; Who opposeth and exalteth himself above all that is called God, or that is worshipped; so that he as God sitteth in the temple of God, shewing himself that he is God.

II Thessalonians 2:1-4

The only force greater than the coming New-World-Order, in the attempt to silence the Son of God, trying to destroy the world's Christian population – would be ***the return of Jesus Christ***. The “*giant beast*” of the global Leviathan would freeze in terror.

This thesis tends to give only relevant beliefs on New Age thought and dogma by revealing their religion and stating some of their goals under the New-World-Order, whose plan is to Rid the world of Jew, Christians and any Monotheistic group – those who worship only one God. As this field of research is a vast and comprehensive thesis, the following section on the different religions will only deal with the most important hypotheses to illustrate the covert meaning of the plan, the strategy and the purpose of the kingdom of darkness.

2.2.1 THE REAL JESUS IS NOT THE AVATAR OF THE NEW AGE MOVEMENT

If the Bible exists as a Truth, then Satan truthfully exists. The assumption can be made that if there is a Satan, there probably would be followers, called Satanists. In evidence and unity with the Bible this thesis, proclaim the reality of Satan as well as those connected to him in the demonic Kingdom of Darkness.

Satan is not just and evil, supernatural power, he is a very real fallen angle with supernatural powers. He is also not the keeper of Hell. The lake of fire – the Hell / Hades – was prepared for him and his angels.

Satan is evil, which is even worse because our culture stubbornly refuses to believe in the real existence of evil. Satan did not evolve as a personal being; he existed and acted from Genesis to Revelations.

Michael Green affirms to this statement by saying the Bible very seriously warns us of malign power of evil standing behind the pressures of a godless world from without and a fallen human nature from within.¹⁷ The Bible reveals him as the Dragon, who gives power to the Beast in the End-Time.

And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.

Revelations 12:9

It is amazing, this pattern of plan, strategy and purpose of this false deceiver god, stealing and perverting from the One and Only God and His Kingdom. The main strategy of SATAN is to lure people into 'strange-gods', idolatry, self-godship – a new religion called the One-World-Religion.

Secret Societies and Occult groups are established to **worship Satan** although under different names. The name of his church is the Mystery Babylon – popularly known as the New Age Movement. In Satan's End-Time plan there will be power-possessed humans, as well as those innocent of power-addiction – all under the spell and influence of Satan's dark DESIGN.

New Agers belief that all religions are the same; therefore, Jesus is not the only way to heaven and is not the only mediator or saviour. A strange blend of nineteenth-century Spiritism, mysticism and humanism, took the name of the New Age Religion and evolved into an organized revival of ancient Occultism.

¹⁷ Green, M. (1981) *Exposing the Prince of Darkness*. Ann Arbor, Michigan, Servant Publication, p.16.

Occultists alter Jesus' nature in multiple ways and twists work of Christ beyond recognition. They proclaim that He was filled with "*Christ consciousness*", something every person should aspire to be.¹⁸

Professor James A Beverley, an evangelical Christians Scholar who is well known for his study and analysis of New and World Religions, notes: All New-Agers place Jesus at a place of honour, although they believes that Jesus is only the great "Enlightened Master" and "Spiritual Teacher" of their doctrines – but is however, on the same level with other Spiritual Masters. They do ***not belief that Jesus is the Son of God***. They also believe that Jesus invoked and received the COSMIC CHRIST spirit' during his mission on earth and was thus a vessel for 'The Christ'. New agers do not believe that Jesus died to atone for the sin of the world. They do not believe in the doctrine of sin at all. For them, Jesus represents the highest ideal that humanity can reach. All New Agers believe in reincarnation and work-righteousness.¹⁹

Walter Martin notes: The New Age is nothing more than the mythology of the ancient world infused with satanic power – a satanic attempt to manipulate form and shape events, culminating in the rise of the Anti-Christ.²⁰

New-Agers proclaim that spiritual information comes from within – from the higher self, that the Bible reveals humankind as godlike – even gods and states that "*the new Christ*" is but a reflection of this divinized "*New Human*". In this process, they lead uninformed Christians towards a revelation that "*they are God*" and are NOT in need of an outside saviour, that they possesses a good nature and all physical desires are good and should be allowed. Everybody should seek divinity within himself or herself.

¹⁸ Brooke, Tal (1998) *The Conspiracy to Silence the Son of God*. Eugene, Oregon: Harvest House Publishers, p.79.

¹⁹ Beverley James A (2009) *Nelson's Illustrated Guide to Religions: A Comprehensive Introduction to the Religions of the World*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson, pp. 488, 485.

²⁰ Martin, Walter (2008) *The Kingdom of the Occult*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers, p. 189.

When the New Age religions refers to the Cosmic Christ, they do not see “Christ” as the mediator between God and man, but all of them are splitting Christ from Jesus. They depersonalized Christ and relativized the “*Incarnation*”. This view unite the divine (which they call Christ) with the human (Jesus) as a particular example of what happens to all spiritual people. Jesus is merely a prototype of what should happen to every spiritual being.

2.2.2 JESUS IS NOT, THE COSMIC CHRIST

Madeleine L’Engle – an associate of one of the institutes for *Creation Spirituality*, calls Jesus “***the man who housed the Christ***.”²¹ Creation Spiritualists see the Cosmic Christ as a “divine presence (*female goddess energy*)” in creation – a cosmic consciousness that permeates all creation. This pan-theistic view entails that “God is in all things and all things are in God”.²²

The New Ager, Matthew Fox defines ***creation spirituality*** as both a theological system and a movement that focuses on the ‘*original blessing* [probably referring to the goodness of the man’s nature]’ instead of ‘*original sin* [probably referring to the corruption of man’s nature]’.²³

Dr Norma Milanovich and Dr Shirley McCune notes: The Law of Divine Oneness helps us to understand that we live in a world where everything is connected to everything else... The ‘divine Concept of Oneness’ is the Universal Mind. It is the realization that all is mind and the universe exists within this field of pure energy and Light... It is here, at the subatomic lever, where the Oneness Concept sustains the life force within and it is at this level where higher consciousness is realized.

²¹ MacLaine, Shirley (1989) *Going Within*. New York: Bantam, p218.

²² Brooke, Tal (1998) *The Conspiracy to Silence the Son of God*. Eugene, Oregon: Harvest House Publishers, p.102.

²³ Fox, Matthew (1988) *The coming of the Cosmic Christ*. San Francisco: Harper and Row, p.15.

This field of energy is referred to as 'chi' or the 'life force energy [the Great Tao]' and is accessed by silencing of the active mind.²⁴ If it is accepted, a Luciferic initiation took place.²⁵

The principle of "*the Great Tao*" connects with a "*God-concept*", is rooted in the balance of these two forces – the "*Yin and Yang*".²⁶ According to Taoism, man must learn to balance his *yin and yang* by subtracting energy from "*the Great Tao*" that flows everywhere.²⁷ Like many before them, the New Age disciples seek a conscious awareness with "*God / the ultimate reality*" – a divinity who is encountered through direct experience.²⁸

The concept of "*pulling down divine energy*" from the "*divine ultimate reality (female goddess energy)*" is in fact a **dangerous counterfeit of God's Holy Spirit**.²⁹ This "*divine energy*" that is to be "*pulled down*" actually involves "*the invoking of evil spirits*" into the person – possesses takes place and a spiritual union with Satan himself is established.

Any Christian, who performs such action, is demonically "born again" – back into the kingdom of darkness and is heading for Hell straight away! Another dangerous aspect of the New Age is channeling.³⁰

²⁴ Milanovich, Norma and McCune, Shirley (1996) *The Light Shall Set You Free*. Scottsdale, AZ: Athena Publishing, pp. 132, 155, 157-158.

²⁵ Spanger, David (1977) *Reflections of the Christ*. Forres, Scotland: The Findhorn Foundation, pp. 50-51.

²⁶ Define: **Yang** is the positive force of good, light, life and masculinity, while **Yin** is the negative force of evil, death and femininity.

²⁷ Larson, Bob (1989) *Larson's New Book of CULTS*. Wheaton, Illinois: Tyndale House Publishers, pp. 84-85.

²⁸ Larson, Bob (1989) *Larson's New Book of CULTS*. Wheaton, Illinois: Tyndale House Publishers, p. 40.

²⁹ Miller, Kim (1987) "Mother God: Woman's Rites and the Tribulation." *Concerned Christians*, July/August 1987.

³⁰ **Define: Channeling** involves the alleged communication of spirit beings through humans as mediums (See next page).

The guidance from a disembodied spirit can occur in various forms. Often the New Age "channeler" goes into a trance and claims to communicate directly with the eternal realm. In some case the voice of the "channeler" changes, either in accent or tone or pitch. The channeling can also occur in the form of automatic writing.

Beverly James A (2009) *Nelson's Illustrated Guide to Religions: A Comprehensive Introduction to the Religions of the World*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson, p. 489.

Wanda Marris openly declare: In reality, “*the goddess within*” represents “*the Whore of Babylon*” revealed in Revelations seventeen and eighteen – the women with the cup of filthiness and the abomination of her fornications. The goddess is the unholy, evil spirit of Satan since he is the serpent. THIS feminine Tao energy flow of life sustaining energy is also (for the energy mirror), ***the image of the serpent***.³¹ This is a manifestation of the anti-Christ in the temple of God, one more notable expression of the abomination of desolation. The New Testament explicitly reveals that our bodies are the temple of God.

When ye therefore shall see the abomination of desolation, spoken of by Daniel the prophet, stand in the holy place, (whoso read, let him understand).

Matthew 24:15

The Bible mentions three goddesses by name, Asherah,³² Ashtoreth³³ and Diana³⁴ and Scripture also identify of the “***queen of heaven***”.³⁵

³¹ Marris, Wanda (1989) *New Age Lies to Women*. Austin, TX: Living Truth Publishers, pp. 95-98.

³² I Kings 15:13; II Kings 21:7; II Chronicles 15:16; Deuteronomy 16:21; Judges 6:25; II Kings 13:6; II Kings 23:15; II Kings 23:6-7..

Define: The Jewish Encyclopedia informs us that ***Asherah*** is a Hebrew word occurring frequently in the Bible and signify a wooden post or pole planted near the altars of various gods. The stone pillars seems to have represented the male god Baal (Jude 6:28), while the cult object of Asherah, probably a tree or a pole, constituted a symbol of this goddess. In the Old Testament, Asherah appears to be *a goddess by the side of Baal*, who consort she evidently came to be. Asherah was only one manifestation of a chief goddess of Western Asia, regarded as the wife, or as the sister of the principle Canaanite god EL.

Other names of this deity were Ashtoreth (Astarte) and Anath. Frequently represented as nude women beside a lion with a lily in one hand and a serpent in the other and styled Qudshu “the Holiness”, that is “the Holy One” in a perverted moral sense.

In the same sense the male prostitutes consecrated to the cult of the Qudshu and prostituting themselves to her honour were styled qedishim, “sodomites” (Deuteronomy 23:18; I Kings 14:24; 15:12). Characteristically in Canaanite religions the lily symbolize grace and sex appeal and the serpent fruitfulness.

Van der Walt, Amelia (2008) *Exegetical Evidence pertaining to the Immanence of the Eternal Feminine from Antiquity in the Dawn of the Age of Aquarius*. Pretoria, Gauteng: Print & Bookbinding Solutions, pp.521-523.

Her degraded cult offered a perpetual danger of pollution to Israel and must have sunk to sordid depths as lust and murder were glamorized in Canaanite religion.

³³ I Kings 18:19; Judges 10:6; I Samuel 7:4; 12:10.

Define: ***Ashtoreth*** was the moon goddess of the Phoenicians, representing the passive principle in nature. On the other hand, she was identified with the planet Venus (the goddess of Venus, called Aphrodite). This worship was connected with the most impure rites is apparent from the close connection of this goddess with Asherah.

Van der Walt, Amelia (2008) *Exegetical Evidence pertaining to the Immanence of the Eternal Feminine from Antiquity in the Dawn of the Age of Aquarius*. Pretoria, Gauteng: Print & Bookbinding Solutions, p.523.

³⁴ Acts 19:24-25.

All legends of the Sun-gods (Baal and his counterpart, the queen of heaven) can be traced back to the Babylonian religions.³⁶ Truly the nations might be said to be “*made drunk*” with the wine of her fornication in Revelations seventeen and eighteen. The *sun god*, identified as Satan, is an imitator of Jesus as clearly stated in II Corinthians 11:14.

And no marvel; for Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light.

II Corinthians 11:14

Dr Aletta CM Fouché wrote in her degree: Philosophiae Doctor, “*An Eschatological Exposition of Sun Worship*” that the world is carefully groomed for the arrival of the one whom the Scripture caledl the “*man of lawlessness ... the son of destruction*”, the Anti-Christ (II Thessalonians 2:3).³⁷

All forms of goddess or god worship are explicitly and emphatically condemned in the Bible. The book of Romans calls it the worship of the creature rather than the creator.³⁸ Likewise, pagan blasphemy is the ultimate expression of diabolic seduction, exchanging the truth of God for “*the lie*”.³⁹

The masses would be ripe for the worst elements of Western depravity “*to enter into the kingdom of darkness*” through the doors of this “*new democracy*”: The welfare system would weaken the family system, legalistically taking away the Christian freedom of Biblical parenting and Divine living.

Define: In Ephesus *Diana* was worshiped as the goddess of virginity and motherhood. She was said to represent the generative powers of nature and was pictured with many breast. She might have been the most worshiped deity of the whole Roman Empire at that time. Her followers called her the ‘great goddess’, the ‘saviour’ and the ‘queen of heaven’. She was known under other names, such as Artemis.

³⁵ **Define:** The Jews were corrupted by “*the goddess of heaven*”, just as are a great number of Christian professed people today. Many Bible Scholars are of opinion that the Queen of heaven refers to Semiramis, the wife of Ninus (Nimrod), who was worshipped in Egypt as Isis, in Babylon as Ishtar, as Ashtoreth by the Israelites, as Cybele by the Romans and by other eastern nations under the name of Rhea – the great goddess “mother”.

Hislop, Alexander (1999) *The Two Babylon's*. Ontario, Canada: Chick Publications, p.21.

³⁶ Sutton, William Josiah (1995) *The Illuminati 666*. Brushton, NY: TEACH Service, Inc., p.152.

³⁷ Fouché, Aletta CM Dr (200) *An Eschatological Exposition of Sun Worship*. Gauteng: Unpublished, p. 1.

³⁸ Romans 1:25.

³⁹ Romans 1.

Public education would “*open minds*” to “*the grandeur of humanism*”, followed up by diversity training, sensitivity training, the raising of multicultural consciousness and even gender workshops – all fully hostile to the Christian worldview. Public entertainment – such as books, television and movies – will enhance in only one direction, a “*Post-Christian*” outlook.

2.2.3 JESUS IS NOT, THE ANTI-CHRIST OF THE NEW-WORLD-RELIGION

If the Bible exists as a Truth, then Satan truthfully exists. The assumption can be made that if there is a Satan, there probably would be followers, called Satanists. In evidence and unity with the Bible this thesis, proclaim the reality of Satan as well as those connected to him in the demonic Kingdom of Darkness. Satan is not just an evil, supernatural power, he is a very real fallen angel with supernatural powers. He is also NOT the keeper of Hell. The lake of fire – the Hell / Hades – was prepared for him and his angels. Satan is EVIL, which is even worse because our culture resolutely refuses to believe in the real existence of evil. Satan did not evolve as a personal being; he existed and acted from Genesis to Revelation.

Michael Green affirms to this statement by saying the Bible very seriously warns us of the malignant power of evil standing behind the pressures of a godless world from without and a fallen human nature from within.⁴⁰

Specialized research of Prof Dr Brand has revealed: The New Age movement, as it is commonly called could be likened to a counterfeit “*John the Baptist movement*”, preparing the way for the coming of the Anti-Christ and his rule on earth in ‘the End-Time’. It is not one single movement, with a specific leader at this time, but a rallying together of thousands of groups and individuals, all working towards a common aim.

⁴⁰ Green, M. (1981) *Exposing the Prince of Darkness*. Ann Arbor, Michigan, Servant Publication, p.16.

This worldwide network has been described as a “huge cosmic sponge that absorbs all religions, cultures and governments and culminates in the New World Order”. Its primary aim is to establish a one-world, a one-world-religion and a one-world political and social order. A description of their goals can be found in the book of Revelation in the Bible: (1) As a World Government – Revelation 13:1-10; as a World Religion – Revelation 13:11-15; as a World Economy based on a cashless society - Revelation 13:16-18. This worldwide movement is inspired by Satan himself and is set up by him to be worshipped by humanity. Its culmination will be the revealing of the anti-Christ himself.

Scripture reveals a great East versus West battle will be the world’s last war and you will find that the New Age Movement who is extreme in Eastern Mysticism and its tradition, is at the center of it. This movement worship Satan and has deep roots in the Occult. It would be inconsistent with New Age Philosophy to criticize Satanism, even if it included molestations of children, suicide, murder and other inhuman sacrifices.⁴¹

According to the view of Dave Hunt, there was no need for the New Age religions to deny or confess Satanism, but because they openly stand for the rejection of Biblical absolutes, they have no ground to say that they are *discriminated* against, when accused of it.

Edgar Mitchell, Shirley MacLaine, tell us that there are *never any victims*. If this is true, why are the six million Jewish victims a proof of the reality of such crimes under the regime of Hitler, Himmler and company?⁴²

⁴¹ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2005) An Exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian Involvement in A Theodicy Considered from Philosophical Perspective. Pretoria, Gauteng: Print & Bookbinding Solutions, pp.382-384, 397.

⁴² Hunt, Dave & McMahon, TA (1988) The New Spirituality. Eugene, Oregon: Harvest House Publishers, p. 235.

Author and advisor of the last two Popes, New Age theologian Dr Miceal Ledwith gave a philosophical lecture live on a broadcast, at the UFO Science & Consciousness Conference held on 25-27 November 2011 in Johannesburg South Africa. He lectured on the “*The Secret Mars project declaring a farewell to the Annunaki*”:

Ledwith proclaims that an extension of the race of the *Annunaki (Ishbibenob)*, is living all over the world and refers to a book of James Pritchard reveals the similarities between the *Annunaki race* and the Christians. According to him, the Nephilim is part of the *Annunaki race* and is the *Annunaki’s DNA* genetically engineered to be slaves of their gods. THIS is the reason he gave for the Christians religious mindsets. The New Ager further said *the Quantum of Physics*⁴³ reveals the keys to see this “entities / orbs”. I suppose that he refers to the Christians as “this entities / orbs”.

Dr Ledwith also notes that the Bible is the written code of the Jewish priests, their *God [Elohim; Yahweh]* and this religions philosophy! He openly declares that Biblical evangelism deceives people so that their *God* can be of the hook for Evil (suggesting that the Trinitarian God is an EVIL God). He proclaims that Christianity is a *cult* with no *mercy* and that their morality is *to kill*.

Ledwith accuses *the Annunaki’s* for keeping the world from entering into “*deeper consciousness*” and peace. He also incite that *the Annunaki’s* used the rest of the world as *slaves to their God*. His final “*altar call*” is that: “**All Annunaki’s must be removed!** After they left, we will enter the age of kings and priests. Religion with its attitudes is what puts us in captivity. The time has come to destroy all religion. We have to address the following four greatest diseases of the MIND: (1) The need for approval; (2) A lack of Self-knowledge – consume our spiritual energy; (3) A tendency to blame (4) A religious MINDSET – god’s, worship, guilt and fear.”⁴⁴

⁴³ The ‘Quantum of Physics’ who revealed information to Ledwith and others is actually demons.

⁴⁴Tellingier, Michael (2011) Science and Consciousness Conference held on 25-27 November 2011 in Johannesburg , South Africa.

In contrast to the false accusations of Dr Ledwith, is this UFO conference the living demonstration and proof as to how the Satanic-led New Age movement is carefully preparing the minds of their associates, as future *murderers*. The New-World disciples are under the delusion that they are members of a new race of super-beings / gods. They are in fact very evil. Worse, the Christian per se is a thread and an obstacle to their One-World-Kingdom.

The Conference organized by Michael Tellinger was the revealed blueprint for a new social structure, advocating a “**World without Money**” (as obstacle to progress human achievement) and his deceptive book “**The slave species of god**”, is but mere tools in the hands of the bigger Leviathan’s World-engine, who is by themselves deceived by Satan and his demons.

The question to answer is: Who is the real power behind the scenes of the human dark designers? Satan we presume!

2.2.4 JESUS IS NOT ‘JAH-BU-LON’, THE GOD OF THE FREEMASONRY

The mode of Freemasonry is to hide behind Christianity. It is a very deceptive organization used to repackage **satanic worship** to the masses. The first three degrees of freemasonry along with the ‘royal arch’ degree are believed to be the rituals that originated from those who built the Tower of Babel. Freemasons is followers of Luciferian ritual, which is the dualistic belief that two Gods exist and are equal in their powers – the good god of light (Lucifer) and the god of darkness and ignorance (Adonai/Jehovah).

By applying their knowledge of genetic manipulation, they are working toward perfecting God’s creation to meet their needs.

It is their contention to regain Eden – therefore establishing the Hermetic Principle of ‘Heaven on Earth’ without Jehovah. Satan wants the world to worship the knowledge that technology offers.⁴⁵

Prof Dr Brand proclaims: The ‘*All Seeing Eye*’ could be traced back to the origin of evil associated with the fall of Lucifer / Satan and could be rooted in the knowledge which Lucifer pertained while still dwelling with the Most High God / Yahweh. The *All Seeing Eye* prove to be probably the root source of all Secret societies and other magick. It is also said that the entire symbol itself, most seen on the back of the US Dollar, denotes the SATANIC TRINITY with the Divine Couple: Father Osiris, Mother Isis and their progenitor Horus – the ultimate magical child. This sign is most important in its use and meaning to the New-World-Order. Many determine that the EYE ultimately represents the Anti-Christ.⁴⁶

The *All Seeing Eye* as well as the number (13) itself, is the last upward-ascension-step of the *step-pyramid*, represents the totality of the great work in its final stage, which is to place the ‘Sun possessed King’, the Anti-Christ upon the World Throne at Jerusalem.

Amanda Buys asserts: During the beginning of the Christian era this “*False Messiah*” of Free Masonry was wrongly associated with the true Jesus Christ: In their search for enlightenment, the Freemason climb up *Jacob’s ladder* according to the degree of Freemasonry until at last they are enlightened when they get to the 31 – 33 degrees. It is at this stage that the Kundalini serpent has climbed through the 7 chakras’ on the spine, the 31-33 vertebrae. At this stage, the freemasons are changed into so-called “*gods*”. This in turn, causes the eldest son of the Freemason to be a “*son of god*”.

⁴⁵ Pugh, Joye Jeffries Dr (2006) Eden. Mustang, OK: Tate Publishing & Entertaining.

⁴⁶ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2006) Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence pertaining to the Structures and Strategies to destruct Christianity: Involving the Theodicy of Darkness (Three volumes). Pretoria, Gauteng: Printing & Bookbinding Solutions, p. 713.

He sits in the middle of the rainbow (which is the symbol of the covenant that God made with Noah) as the “*messiah*”.

In the top degree of Freemasonry are the Knights Templars who move into high degrees of ***Satanism*** – specifically the 28th Degree. The ancient knight Templars dress in medieval costumes and worship a mysterious idol called ***Baphomet***. This idol is half beast and half man. The father of the Temple brings forth the spirit of the anti-Christ and death.⁴⁷

According to Michael Tellinger, an “*angel*” through some artificial insemination impregnated the mother of Jesus – the child was thus a genetic offspring of Enlil (the god of darkness also called Adonai the god of the Bible).⁴⁸

2.2.5 JESUS IS NOT, THE GOD OF PSYCHOLOGY (FOUNDED UNDER FREUD AND JUNG)

The view of secular Psychology is intricately interwoven into the process of healing and counseling and its danger is infiltrating the Church on large scale. This is of uttermost importance for the understanding of possible deception, misunderstandings and mixing of truths and lies in the lives of the Christian believer. The damage Psychology has done by inflicting our culture has passed largely unnoticed. Because Psychology is inherently a secular religion of faith, it makes it exceptional vulnerable to the natural predisposition that people carry against God.⁴⁹

Psychology is persuasive in exactly the areas the church has a weakness, resulting in a lack of Biblical authority to reject deviations in doctrines of justification by faith, the doctrine of Christ and millennialism.

⁴⁷ Buys, Amanda. Freemasonry: All you Need to know as a Child of God. (www.kanaanministries.org)

⁴⁸ Tellinger, Michael (2006) Slaves species of god. Waterval Boven, SA: Zulu Planet, p.517.

⁴⁹ Romans 1:18; I Corinthians 1:23-24.

As part of a larger anti-theistic revolution, modern Psychology has moved our collective awareness away from the God of the Bible, to the god of the self.

Many reputable Christians have rejected the philosophy of Psychology, such as the journalist Martin L Gross in *The Psychological Society: Psychology “has altered”* the nature of our civilization beyond recognition by promoting a massive internal shift in man’s psyche and self-understanding... Never has a general philosophical system revered self-indulgence... The lure is irresistible. To egocentric modern man, the prospect of **self** instead of God seated at the centre of a world philosophical system is exquisitely attractive.⁵⁰

Jung struggled to find the answers to life’s questions through the exploration of the “psyche”.⁵¹ Jung also teaches on the alleged extension of the psyche, which he called the “collective unconscious” of the race. This becomes Jung’s “God”. It is not until the end of his life, that Jung admitted that everything that he had represented in science, derived out of horrendous experiences with haunting spirits and nearly driving him insane.

This experiences leads to the break between him and Freud. It was during that time that he encountered that *Philemon* became his spirit guide. So real were the “*spirits of the dead*” that Jung many time felt that he was traveling with them. *Evil spiritualism* is being experienced more and more frequently today, since our culture is flooded with the Occult.

⁵⁰ Gross, Martin L (1978) *The Psychological Society: A Analysis of Psychiatry, Psychotherapy, Psycho-analysis and the Psychological Revolution*. NY: Random House, p.3, 14.

⁵¹ Carl Gustav Jung, *On the Nature of the Psyche*, Translated by RFC Hull, Mankind was freed from these fears by a continual process of symbol-formation that leads to culture. Reversion to nature must therefore be followed by a synthetic reconstruction of the symbol. Reduction leads down to the natural man and his peculiar mentality. Freud directed his attention mainly to this ruthless desires. Other characteristics of the primitive includes the psychology of prestige, mans’ playful, mystical or “heroic” tendency, but above all the outstanding quality of the primitive mind – with its subjection to supra-personal “powers” – be they instinct, affects, superstitions, fantasies, magicians, witches, spirits, demons or gods.

Jung and Freud were co-founders of Psychoanalysis. Freud hated religion and he actively sought to destroy people's faith in the Christian God – for him the Christian faith was a personal neurosis and a social evil. Modern Psychology is clearly anti-Christian and rejects God, ignores sin, “deifies” man and frequently admonishes Christianity.⁵²

In a *Journal of Psychology and Christianity*, Bill Zilka reveals: Many Christian Psychologists – to varying degrees – are accepting anti-Biblical practices, such as Eastern mysticism, altered states of consciousness and highly dubious therapies into their therapy methods.⁵³

Examples of it includes the following: dream-work, hypnosis, psycho-synthesis, structural integration, Freudianism, Eastern meditation, bio-energetic, primal scream therapy, psycho-imagination and other visualization therapies, psychedelic (LSD) therapy, Perls' Gestalt therapy and transactional analysis.

Garry Collins deems it evident that: There is evidence that Occult practices are accepted by a large and perhaps growing number of Psychological professions.⁵⁴

In agreement with Ankerberg, we realized that recovery along with modern psychology generally begins with man and not with God and thus emphasized humanistic solutions over Biblical ones... Biblical we are never told to look back to the past emotionally, but to find the answers in the Cross of Christ and what the Cross has done for us. In review, it is clear that Psychology replaced Jesus Christ as saviour with **“the god of self”**.

⁵² Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2005) *An Exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian Involvement in a Theodicy considered from Philosophic-Theological perspective*. Pretoria, Gauteng: Printing & Bookbinding Solutions, pp. 407-430.

⁵³ Zilka, Bill. “Meditation and Altered States of Consciousness: A Psychodynamic Interpretation”, in *Journal of Psychology and Christianity*, Vol. 3, no. 3; pp. 87-90 and relevant sections in the *Baker Encyclopedia of Psychology* and various issues in the *Journal of Psychology and Theology*.

⁵⁴ Collins, G (1988) *Can we trust Psychology?* Downer's Grove, IL: Inner Varsity p.104.

2.3 JESUS CHRIST – THE TRUE KING OF KINGS AND THE LORD OF LORDS

What evidence is there for the existence of Jesus Christ's? Will Durant write down remarkable specialized research on the History of Christ and the Christian beliefs in the encyclopedia, Caesar and Christ: A History of Roman Civilization and of Christianity from their beginnings to A.D. 325?⁵⁵

The earliest non-Christian evidence of the existence of Jesus Christ and His heavenly life, occurs in Josephus' Antiquities of the Jews (A.D. 93): At that time Jesus lived, a holy man, if he may called man – for He performed wonderful works and taught men, and joyfully received the truth. And He was followed by many Jews and many Greeks. He was the Messiah.⁵⁶

The oldest known mentioning of Christ – in Pagan literature – is in a letter of the Younger Pliny (ca.100), where he asked the advice of Trajan on the treatment of Christians. Five years later Tacitus described Nero's persecution of the *Christianity* in Rome. Sue (ac. 125) mentions the same persecution.⁵⁷ These passages accords well with the Acts of the Apostles and prove the existence of Christians, unless we assume that Jesus was *invented* in one generation.

In the middle of the first century, a pagan named Thallus argued that the abnormal darkness alleged to have accompanied the death of Christ, was a purely natural phenomena and coincidence; the argument took the existence of Christ for granted. The denial of the existence of Jesus Christ seems never to have occurred even to the bitterest gentile or Jewish opponents of nascent Christianity.

The Christian evidence begins with the letters ascribed to the Apostle Paul. The oldest extent copies of the Gospel go back to the third century.

⁵⁵ Durant, Will (1944) Caesar and Christ. Kingsport, Tennessee: Simon and Schuster, pp.553-574.

⁵⁶ Ibid., p.554.

⁵⁷ Ibid, p.554.

The original compositions were written between A.D. 60 – 120 and cannot be seen as models of grammar or literary finish; nevertheless, the directness and force of their simple style, their vivid power of their analogies and scenes, the depth of their feeling and the profound fascination give even the rude original a unique charm.⁵⁸

The Gospel of Mark probably came from the period 65 – 70 A.D. and was most likely circulated while some of the Apostles were still alive and that it differs substantially from their collection and interpretation of Jesus Christ. The Gospel of John was a presentation of Christ from a theological point of view.

The half Gnostic character of the work, have led many Christian Scholars doubting the Apostle John as author. Recent studies restore the Fourth Gospel to a date nearer to the end of the first century assigning it again to John. When all is taken into account, it can be said that the contradiction of the Gospels are not substantial, but it overall form a consistent portrait of Christ.⁵⁹

Despite the theological prejudices and preconceptions of the evangelists, Scholars record many incidents that mere inventors would have hidden: the competition of the apostles for high places in the Kingdom, their flight after Jesus' arrest, Peter's denial, the failure of Christ to work miracles in Galilee, the reference of some auditors to his possible insanity and his uncertainty as to his mission.

Other incidents that were not hidden, included Peter's confessions of ignorance as to the future, his moments of bitterness and his despairing cry on the Cross – no one reading these scenes, can doubt the reality of the figure behind them. The possibility that a few simple men could have invented – so powerful and appealing personality, which are so lofty and ethic and give such a inspiring vision of human brotherhood – would be a miracle far more incredible than any recorded in the Gospels.⁶⁰

⁵⁸ Durant, Will (1944) *Caesar and Christ*. Kingsport, Tennessee: Simon and Schuster, p.555.

⁵⁹ *Ibid.*, pp.556-557.

⁶⁰ *Ibid.*, p. 557.

2.3.1 HISTORICAL OVERVIEW OF THE LIFE OF JESUS CHRIST

One of the most important *tools* to understand the *message of Spiritual Warfare* in the New Testament is a proper appreciation of the *religious historical background* to its thought.⁶¹

In the Pauline letters as well as the book of Acts, we see the Pharisees and Sadducees of the Gospel traditions mentioned, while encountering the representatives of various religions in the research for the above-mentioned thesis through the New Testament. It is therefore necessary for this study to be thoroughly familiar with the background of the religious thought against which it was written.

The Old Testament is of indispensable importance for a correct understanding of the message of the New Testament. On almost every page of the New Testament, readers are reminded of the fact that the coming of Jesus was the decisive conclusion to a long history of religious experience. He was the promised *Messiah* of the Old Testament,⁶² as well as the fulfillment of the ancient prophecies.⁶³

“And He began to say unto them, this day is this scripture fulfilled in your ears.”

Luke 4:21

As seen in the History of Religions, God is the Sovereign Creator of the Word and of man; He is the Lord of History, NOT an abstract philosophical “*creatio ex nihilo*” that dominates Christian faith and thought, but the Holy, sovereign Will of God. Man, the world, nature and History are products and objects of God’s Will.⁶⁴

⁶¹ Durant, Will (1944) *Caesar and Christ*. Kingsport, Tennessee: Simon and Schuster, pp. 741-742.

⁶² Mark 14:61.

⁶³ Luke 4:21.

⁶⁴ Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2005) *An Exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian Involvement in a Theodicy Central to Christian Involvement in a Theodicy considered from Philosophical-Theological Perspective*. Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Printing & Bookbinding Solutions, p.351.

Will Durant further gave a remarkable overview of the Life of Jesus Christ.⁶⁵ Matthew and Luke assign the birth of Jesus to the days when Herod was king of Judea, consequently 3 B.C. Luke describes Jesus to be “about thirty years old” when John baptized him (in the fifteenth year of Tiberius – A.D. 28 to 29) – which place the birth of Jesus in the year 2 - 1 B.C.

Luke remarks that a decree was given from Caesar that the entire world should be taxed. At that time, Guirinius was governor of Syria. Josephus notes of a census by Caesar in Judea, but ascribes it to A.D. 6-7. Tertullian also records a census held in Judea by Saturninus, governor of Syria 8-7B.C. If this census was the one Luke had in mind, the birth of Christ would have to be before 6 B.C. We have no special knowledge of the specific day of His birth. Diverse opinions are reported.

As far back as the second century, the Eastern Christians celebrated the nativity on January 6. In 354 some Western churches including Rome commemorated the birth of Christ to be on December 25; this was then erroneously calculated as the winter solstice and calculated to be on 25 December, the birthday of the sun. The Eastern churches clung for a time to January 6 and charged the Western churches with sun worship and idolatry.

At the end of the fourth century this date was adopted in the East. The parents of Jesus gave Him the name of **Yeshu'a**, meaning “the help of **Yahveh**”.

From His youth many marveling at his authoritative teachings, asked: “Where did He get this wisdom and the power to do these wonders?” The life of Jesus Christ bear so much detailed witness – from the Annunciation with its literary art to his mothers’ helplessly witnessing of his crucifixion and receiving his body into her arms – that if it is not history, it is supreme literature.

⁶⁵ Durant, Will (1944) *Caesar and Christ*. Kingsport, Tennessee: Simon and Schuster, pp. 557-574.

Everybody could however acknowledge the clumsy fabricated tales circulated by Celsus and others about Mary and a Roman soldier. The virgin birth is not mentioned by Paul or John and Matthew and Luke – who revealed it – traced the genealogies of Jesus back to David.

Apparently the virgin birth rose later than that in the Davidic descent. Little is known about Christ's youth, accepts His circumcision at eight, the story of how He questioned the scholars in the temple. Josephus tells John's story in some detail. John the Baptist warned sinners to prepare themselves for the Last Judgment and proclaimed the early coming of the Kingdom of God. When Jesus came to the Jordan to be baptized, John revealed Jesus Christ as the Messiah.

When John was imprisoned Jesus took up the Baptist's work and began to preach the coming of the Kingdom. The Kingdom of God was at hand, soon He would put an end to the reign of wickedness on earth and would the Son of Man come on the clouds of the sky to judge all humanity, the living and the dead. The time for repentance was running out. Those who do repent have to live justly, love God and put their faith in His messenger – would inherit the Kingdom and would be raised to power and glory in a world freed from all evil, suffering and death.

Everybody in the synagogue was astonished at His words. From then on, He was boldly proclaiming the Gospel of repentance, belief and salvation. He forgave any fault but unbelief.

He vividly proclaims the concept of an everlasting hell where unbelievers and unrepentant sinners would suffer from inextinguishable fire and insatiable worms. He tells without protest how the poor man in heaven was not permitted to let a single drop of water fall upon the tongue of the rich man in hell. He however proclaimed that his Kingdom is not of this world.

Sometimes He speak of the Kingdom of a state of soul reached by the pure and sinless – within man; other times He pictured a real heaven in which those who had suffered for Christ's sake would receive a hundredfold reward.

Moral perfection is revealed as preparatory and price for the Kingdom. On another occasion, Jesus revealed that the Kingdom depends and waits upon the conversion of man to God and justice; usually He made its 'coming' an act of God – a sudden and miraculous gift of divine grace. The central theme of Christ's preaching involves (1) the coming judgment and (2) the Kingdom.

Jesus transformed everything by the force of His character and feelings. He added to the Law the injunction to prepare for the Kingdom by a life of justice, kindness and simplicity, but hardened the law in matters of sex and divorce. He also softened the law readier forgiveness. He brought religion back from rituals to righteousness.

Jesus counsel noble, "*Judge not, that ye be not judged*", but he reveals that those who would not bear fruit will however be cursed. He had the puritan zeal of a Hebrew prophet; His convictions consumed Him; righteousness was His only measurement. For the rest He was the most lovable of all men. He attracts crowds of people, men, women and children. He forgives and accept repentant sinner as His friends and bless the children.

He was no ascetic, provides wine for a marriage, living with publicans and sinners. He was not hostile to the simply joys of life, though he was un-biologically harsh on the desires of a man for a maid. He said that the rich would not go easy into heaven but profess that the poor and humble will be supreme in His Kingdom.

Those in leader position hope to reform men by changing institutions and laws, He wish to remake institutions and lessen laws by changing men's hearts. He answered with wisdom, although he did not depend on knowledge.

He drove demons out of several demon possessed, countless heal the sick and even call upon a few who were dead to be raised.

Jews and all sects opposed his innovations, resented His assumption of authority to forgive sins and finally divide from Him after His clear announcement that He is the Messiah.

He proclaimed that He was send by God to establish the reign of God on earth and prepare men for it. At the last Passover supper He the gave His disciples a new command: *“Love one another... Believe in God and believe also in Me. In My Fathers house is many mansions... I go to prepare a place for you.”*

That night Jesus was arrested, witnessed against, especially recalling His threat to destroy the Temple and in three day’s he will rebuilt it. When Caiaphas asked Him whether He was the *“Messiah, the Son of God”*, He answered *“I am”*. He was found guilty of blasphemy and crucified within the next days. The last words before He died were the desperate human utterance that Mark and Matthew attribute to our dying Lord: *“My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me?”*

In those bitter moments He willfully directs His soul into the hands of God with His final words: *“Father into thy hands I commend My Spirit”*. Was He really dead? Two days later Mary Magdalene visited the tomb with Mary the mother of James as well as Salome. They found it empty.

Christ has risen. He appeared to Magdalene, to the two disciples on their road back to Emmaus and twice to the twelve. Forty days later, Christ ascends physically into heaven. As he went, he told His disciples, that as He went He will come on the clouds.⁶⁶

⁶⁶ Durant, Will (1944) *Caesar and Christ*. Kingsport, Tennessee: Simon and Schuster, pp. 557-574.

2.3.2 JESUS CHRIST AS THE LAMB OF GOD

Behold the Lamb of God who has taken away the **sin** of the world. For this, He was crucified.

And looking upon Jesus as he walked, he saith, Behold the Lamb of God!

John 1:36

And I beheld, and, lo, in the midst of the throne and of the four beasts, and in the midst of the elders, stood a Lamb as it had been slain, having seven horns and seven eyes, which are the seven Spirits of God sent forth into all the earth.

Revelation 5:6

The Kingdom of God came to earth through the suffering and death of Jesus Christ. Most in Israel did not understand this, even though the prophets had spoken it. How can a suffering Messiah bring a Kingdom? They were looking for an earthly kingdom. They did not understand the Kingdom or the prophets. The carnal mind cannot comprehend the things of the Spirit. The kingdom they were looking for did not arrive.

Was Jesus just another false messiah? Was He just another deceiver? Was His announcement of the Kingdom a lie? There certainly was no earthly kingdom and certainly no earthly throne. There certainly was no physical deliverance. Could they have misinterpreted the message of the Kingdom?

THAT was exactly what Jesus taught: He taught that the Kingdom was a **MYSTERY**. It was hidden from the eyes of the disobedient and rebellious and was revealed to the humble. Many could not see the Kingdom and would not be allowed to enter into it. The kingdom would not be given to a rebellious people. It was NOT an earthly Kingdom and would never be apprehended by earthly people. Its principles are heavenly! The door would be shut to them by opened to those who humble themselves and believe the Gospel.

For thou art an holy people unto the LORD thy God: the LORD thy God hath chosen thee to be a special people unto himself, above all people that are upon the face of the earth. The LORD did not set his love upon you, nor choose you, because ye were more in number than any people; for ye were the fewest of all people: But because the LORD loved you, and because he would keep the oath which he had sworn unto your fathers, hath the LORD brought you out with a mighty hand, and redeemed you out of the house of bondmen, from the hand of Pharaoh king of Egypt.

Deuteronomy 7:6-8

The proud would NOT enter; the rebellious would NOT enter; the immoral would NOT enter. Only the remnant would enter the Kingdom and the rest would be judged!

As Albert Barnes notes on the issue of entering into the Kingdom: The charge on which Jesus was arraigned was that of laying claim to the *OFFICE OF A KING*. He here substantially admits that He did claim to be a king, but not in the sense in which the Jews understood it. They charged Him with attempting to set up an earthly Kingdom and of exciting sedition against Caesar.

In reply to this, Jesus says that His Kingdom is Not of This World. That means it is not the same nature as earthly kingdoms. It was not originated for the same purpose or conducted on the same plane. He immediately adds a circumstance in which they differ.

The kingdom of the world are defended by arms; they maintain armies and engage in wars. If the Kingdom of Jesus had been of this kind, he would have excited the multitudes that followed him to prepare for battle. He would have armed the host that attended Him in Jerusalem. He would not have been alone and unarmed in the garden of Gethsemane. But though he was a KING, yet His domain was over the heart, subduing evil passions and corrupt desires and bringing to the soul the love and peace and unity.⁶⁷

⁶⁷ Barnes, Albert (1962) Barnes' Notes on the New Testament. Kregel Publications, p.351. (<http://books.google.com/books?id+qvXCoSQ1yoXC&dq=Barnes>)

Mathew Henry gives the following account of Christ's Kingdom introduction of the Kingdom of God to His followers: He never took upon him any earthy power, never were any traitorous principle or practices laid to him. Christ gave an account of the nature of the Kingdom.

Its nature is not world; it is a Kingdom within men, set up in hearts and consciousness; it riches spiritual, its power spiritual and its glory within. Its support is not worldly; its weapons are spiritual; it needed not, nor used, force to maintain and advance it, nor any kingdom but that of SIN and SATAN. Its object and design are not worldly.⁶⁸

And when they had appointed him a day, there came many to him into his lodging; to whom he expounded and testified the kingdom of God, persuading them concerning Jesus, both out of the law of Moses, and out of the prophets, from morning till evening. And some believed the things which were spoken, and some believed not. And when they agreed not among themselves, they departed, after that Paul had spoken one word, Well spoke the Holy Ghost by Esaias the prophet unto our fathers, Saying, Go unto this people, and say, Hearing ye shall hear, and shall not understand; and seeing ye shall see, and not perceive: For the heart of this people is waxed gross, and their ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes have they closed; lest they should see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them.

Acts 28:23-27

We have come to a heavenly city, not the earthy. We are born from above by spiritual birth. This was an earthly Zion and a heavenly Zion. The earth was a type of the heavenly. The heavenly is greater and is the reality of which the earthy was simply a symbol. One day the heavenly Zion will cover the earth with the rule and reign of our invisible King.

Jesus Christ Reigns in Zion.

⁶⁸ Henry, Mathew. Matthew Henry's Commentary, s.v. "John 18:33-34". (<http://www.christnotes.org/commentary>)

2.3.3 JESUS CHRIST AS THE WARRIOR KING

The King is eternal, immortal and invisible. The King cannot be seen with the natural eye. The King can only be seen with the spiritual eye to those to whom He chooses to reveal Himself. He is worthy of honor and glory forever and ever. Different Biblical Prophets saw the King in a vision.

Isaiah saw the King sitting on the Throne. The one attribute of the King that stands out to Isaiah was the Holiness of the King and then he saw the judgment. Where God enters people fall down at His feet because of their sin - crying out for mercy and grace.

In the year that king Uzziah died I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple. Above it stood the seraphim's: each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly. And one cried unto another, and said, Holy, holy, holy, is the LORD of hosts: the whole earth is full of his glory. And the posts of the door moved at the voice of him that cried, and the house was filled with smoke. Then said I, Woe is me! for I am undone; because I am a man of unclean lips, and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips: for mine eyes have seen the King, the LORD of hosts. Then flew one of the seraphim's unto me, having a live coal in his hand, which he had taken with the tongs from off the altar: And he laid it upon my mouth, and said, Lo, this hath touched thy lips; and thine iniquity is taken away, and thy sin purged.

Isaiah 6:1-6

Apostle John also saw the King in His Holiness and have the same experience of judgment. God's judgment always precedes His holiness.

"After this I looked, and, behold, a door was opened in heaven: and the first voice which I heard was as it were of a trumpet talking with me; which said, Come up hither, and I will show thee things which must be hereafter. And immediately I was in the spirit: and, behold, a throne was set in heaven, and one sat on the throne. And he that sat was to look upon like a jasper and a sardine stone: and there was a rainbow round about the throne, in sight like unto an emerald.

And round about the throne were four and twenty seats: and upon the seats I saw four and twenty elders sitting, clothed in white raiment; and they had on their heads crowns of gold. And out of the throne proceeded lightning's and thundering and voices: and there were seven lamps of fire burning before the throne, which are the seven Spirits of God. And before the throne there was a sea of glass like unto crystal: and in the midst of the throne, and round about the throne, were four beasts full of eyes before and behind. And the first beast was like a lion, and the second beast like a calf, and the third beast had a face as a man, and the fourth beast was like a flying eagle. And the four beasts had each of them six wings about him; and they were full of eyes within: and they rest not day and night, saying, Holy, holy, holy, Lord God Almighty, which was, and is, and is to come. And when those beasts give glory and honour and thanks to him that sat on the throne, who liveth for ever and ever, The four and twenty elders fall down before him that sat on the throne, and worship him that liveth for ever and ever, and cast their crowns before the throne, saying, Thou art worthy, O Lord, to receive glory and honour and power: for thou hast created all things, and for thy pleasure they are and were created.

Revelations 4:1-11

The LORD is a man of war,⁶⁹ **LORD (YHWH, Elohim)** is His Name.⁷⁰ He is holy and He hates SIN and EVIL. He came to destroy sin and the works of the devil – every plan, structure and design.

Jesus Christ was involved in the highest level of strategic-level spiritual warfare on earth: Jesus not only invaded Satan's Kingdom, but He defeated him decisively on the Cross of Calvary.⁷¹ He had disarmed principalities and powers and make a public spectacle of them and triumphing over them, on the Cross. He is the **WARRIOR KING** of Revelations. He hates sin and war against all evil and his weapons of warfare is the weapons of Light. God is a Holy God, in Him is no darkness, His name is the Righteous-One, "**Johovah-Tsidkenu**" and His scepter is righteousness.

⁶⁹ The Etymology of the word "**war**" (*Milchamah*), as seen in the Strong's concordance, pertaining to the Old Testament, means *war, battle, skirmish, combat*. This word implies the confrontation between two forces (Genesis 14:2).

⁷⁰ Exodus 15:3

⁷¹ Wagner, Peter (1992) *Warfare Prayer*. Ventura, California: Regal Books, p. 52.

And I saw heaven opened, and behold a white horse; and he that sat upon him was called Faithful and True, and in righteousness he doth judge and make war. His eyes were as a flame of fire, and on his head were many crowns; and he had a name written, that no man knew, but he himself. And he was clothed with a vesture dipped in blood: and his name is called The Word of God. And the armies which were in heaven followed him upon white horses, clothed in fine linen, white and clean. And out of his mouth goeth a sharp sword, that with it he should smite the nations: and he shall rule them with a rod of iron: and he treadeth the winepress of the fierceness and wrath of Almighty God. And he hath on his vesture and on his thigh a name written, KING OF KINGS, AND LORD OF LORDS.

Revelations 19:11-16 (emphasis added)

“O God, is for ever and ever: a scepter of righteousness is the scepter of thy kingdom.”

Hebrews 1:5, 8

Judgment and justice will be executed in the house of the Lord, the time has come! Repent! However, out of judgment will come salvation. The proud will be judged, but the meek would be delivered. God brings judgment for the salvation of his people.

For the earth shall be filled with the knowledge of the glory of the LORD, as the waters cover the sea.

Habakkuk 2:14

As Priest-King Jesus Christ RULES over all Heaven and Hell now and forever. It is as believers apprehends and holds this truth that we have the key, which opens the door into the heavenly life upon earth.⁷² The reign of God’s Kingdom is established around His THRONE. He is far above any other form of rulership or authority in heaven and on earth. Before Him, every knee shall bow and profess, that Jesus is Lord.

Paul is opening the eyes of the Christians to the tremendous immeasurable power of God, in the first Chapter of Ephesians. God placed all things under His feet and appointed Him head over everything.

⁷² Murray Andrew Dr (1996) The Holiest of All. New Kensington, PA: Whitaker House, p. 260.

And what is the exceeding greatness of His power to us who believe, according to the working of His mighty power, Which He wrought [exerted] in Christ, when He raised Him from the dead, and set Him at His own right hand in the heavenly places, Far above all principality, and power, and might, and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this world, but also in that which is to come: And hath put all things under His feet, and gave Him to be the head over all things to the church, Which is His body, the fullness of Him that filleth [fills] all in all.

Ephesians 1:17-23 (emphasis added)

3. THE WARRIOR KING AND HIS WARRIOR BRIDE

Judgment and **righteousness** is the FOUNDATION of God's throne. The purpose of righteousness is to bring division between good and evil, to align all things to God's designs. Only when we allow God's judgment to refine our lives, are we ready to go into warfare. Where there is NO righteousness, there is NO inheritance and power.

Only when your case goes to COURT, justice can defend you. Judgment has directly to do with **iniquity**. God is sending a judgment of wrath against the iniquity of the world, but He is sending a judgment of refinery fire against all who seek His Kingdom and His righteousness. God needs to root out iniquity to establish His throne in our lives. Jesus is going to remain seated until all His enemies are made a footstool for Him.⁷³ Where Jesus Christ is, there is His church; they are sited "*in Christ*".

God is waiting for his warriors who have the power **to submit all evil** and overcome all darkness through the ministry of warfare, to make His enemies a footstool for Him.⁷⁴

⁷³ I Corinthians 15:25.

⁷⁴ I Peter 2:9.

Out of the book Hebrew, it is clear that Jesus Christ is not going to do the submission; he is waiting that His church will submit all things under His feet through the submission of our wills.⁷⁵

But this man, after he had offered one sacrifice for sins for ever, sat down on the right hand of God; From henceforth expecting till his enemies be made his footstool.

Hebrews 10:12-13

God wants to train a warrior that is bringing to His feet the greatest harvest of souls of all times. There is a big difference between saying, “*I am seated with God on His throne*”, and knowing that He has taken you by the hand and seated you there with Him.

Before the foundations of the world, the believer is chosen for this very reason – to reign with Him, to bring forth fruit that shall remain.⁷⁶ Christ gave the church power against the kingdom of darkness, however, this authority to reign with Christ is functioning only where a person lives in total dependency on God and under His principles for his life.⁷⁷ ***Spiritual authority*** derives from confidence in God’s love regardless of the battle and the difficult circumstances.

The church needs against men and women clothed with the authority of God’s prophetic word. The Word of faith decreed from a spirit united to Jesus does not stop on the surface of the earth, but has power to penetrate the invisible places of the second heaven. When we pray for someone we have to ***discover the designs of Darkness*** that is operating in the person’s life by the Spirit of God. We have to intercede prophetically for people, declaring that God had destroyed the works of the devil in the depths of hell in people’s lives – specifically the designs God showed us.

⁷⁵ Hebrews 2:8-16.

⁷⁶ John 15:16.

⁷⁷ Mendez-Ferrel, Ana Dr (2010) Seated in Heavenly Places. Ponte Vedra, Florida: BookMasters, p. 36.

We should also pray to God to manifest Jesus Christ as the Son of God in the person's life so that he can see clearly his iniquity and sin, and to bring the person to repentance. The following **designs of failure** are discovered in the lives of people: Financial ruin, poverty, debt, divorce, family destruction, sickness, accidents as well as many others. People will enter new levels of freedom when we undo these designs that bind them. Too often people seek their answer in deliverance but runs to others to confront the principalities and powers.⁷⁸

For though we walk in the flesh, we do not war after the flesh: (For the weapons of our warfare are not carnal, but mighty through God to the pulling down of strong holds;) Casting down imaginations, and every high thing that exalteth itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ.

II Corinthians 10:5

For those who overcome, the Lord promised to sit with Him on His throne. **Victory** never comes from emotions of intellect, in contrast true victory comes from refusing to judge by what our eyes see or our ears hear but by trusting God that what He promised, He will bring to pass. The **strength** of God's people resides in their unity, harmony, commitment, discernment and knowledge.

To him that overcometh will I grant to sit with me in my throne, even as I also overcome and am set down with my Father in His throne.

Revelations 3:21

The battle of the warrior bride involves two things: (1) *How to destroy the reign of the devil*⁷⁹ and (2) *How to establish the rulership of God* in the live of his people.

The heart of God wants to implement His reign of love, righteousness, peace and joy over the whole earth. God will **manifest His Kingdom** in people's lives in the following ways:

⁷⁸Mendez-Ferrell, Ana Dr (2008) *Shaking the Heavens*. Ponte Vedra, Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries, p. 24.

⁷⁹ Isaiah 13:2-4.

- Bringing true humility in the heart of the believer.
- Sent his judgment to refine us and lead us to true righteousness.
- Brings liberation and deep cleansing of the believers soul.
- Deliver the believer from bondage.
- God is revealing Himself to people and manifest His presence.
- Allowing a face-to-face encounter with Himself.
- Permitting the believer to manifest Him in such a way that no darkness will prevail around us.
- Manifests God's gleaming light.

3.1 THE BELIEVER, THE DWELLING PLACE OF GOD

According to Ana Mendez-Ferrell God is coming with great power upon the Harlot church in order to shake everything that needs to be shaken and only the immovable remains. He will use the base and the despised of the world in order to put the wise to shame. A clear difference will be seen between the people of the Kingdom and the religious people of the church. God gave a glorious Gospel but the church made it lifeless – an iron building with **religious structures** that subjugating God's church.⁸⁰

The design of God for the believers lives is that he/she will truly be the temple of God upon earth – His Dwelling Place. When Scripture reveals man as the dwelling place of God, is in exclusive context: to those who love Him and keep his commands and not to everyone that calls Him, "Lord, Lord"! The principle that the temple of God must be built in the believer is very important – since God will not establish His dwelling if, there is no temple to live in. The object of the focus of the church focus is on themselves – to have a change of heart, to be filled by His Holy Spirit, to submerge in His river, to be refreshed, etc.

⁸⁰ Mendez-Ferrell, Ana (2010) Seated in Heavenly Places. Ponte Vedra, Florida: Voice Of The Light Ministries, p.190.

All these things are to make us let feel good and centers upon ourselves.

Worship and the reason we live must be centered on Him. Such move of worship to glorify the greatness of God, will exalt all the attributes of God and this will make His anointing flow, His presence manifested and His manifestations descend. Worship is not singing, it is converting yourself into the altar from which the river of God flows. It is intimate communion that quests the soul until only the Spirit is heard and it will surely produce the union between heaven and earth. When the two realms begin to conjugate, it is then that Christ is revealed. Worshipping opens the prophetic dimensions so that you can see Him face to face.⁸¹

3.2 TRUE SALVATION A PROCESS OF TRANSFORMATION

Righteousness is the subject and the believer is the object of transformation from the servant-hood Covenant towards the Betrothal or Marriage Covenant. Throughout history, certain *colors* have been associated with certain activities, certain attitudes and certain classes of people.⁸²

The Lord has woven color, light into His overall scheme to help us look below the surface of the words, *and understand much more of the Bible at a much deeper level* – especially concepts of *Relationship* and *Covenant* that wants to have with the believer.

John Klein argues that Covenants are progressive.⁸³ The relationship offered by each of the preceding covenants makes the next covenant possible and all of this leads into a major point:

⁸¹ Mendez-Ferrell, Ana (2010) Seated in Heavenly Places. Ponte Vedra, Florida: Voice Of The Light Ministries, pp.234-240.

⁸² Klein, John and Spears, Adam (2007) Lost in Translation: Volume I. Bend, OR: Covenant Research Institute, p.179.

⁸³ Ibid..47.

As we enter into each New or “**Renewed Covenant**” with God, we do not leave behind the responsibilities – or the benefits – of the preceding one.

All these Covenants point us to that not-mentioned progressive nature of our purification, relationships and partnership with God. On the other hand, we do not acquire our salvation through any “works” connected with each covenant. Only Yeshua’s death on the cross, and our acceptance of His forgiveness, provides that the key to everyone ever regenerated.

3.3 COVENANT TYPES AS PATTERNS OF RELATIONSHIP WITH GOD

God’s seven progressive covenants are a pattern of restoration of mankind!

Four Covenant **types** represent these Seven Covenants:⁸⁴ (1) the Blood Covenant; (2) the Salt Covenant; (3) the Sandal Covenant; and (4) the Betrothal or Marriage Covenant.

Each Covenant is represented by a primary color. Blood is red, raw salt is yellow, inheritance is blue and the ultimate covenant with God, betrothal, is white. God establish his covenant with Noah with His rainbow and he placed it in the sky as symbol of the covenant for all generations to come.

3.3.1 COVENANT ONE: THE BLOOD COVENANT TYPE

The transformation process of the believer starts at the Blood Covenant Type, of which the color *red* is the symbol. God reveals in this successive covenantal types, how He is using “*righteousness*” as the transforming power of His Holy Spirit during the sanctification process, to bring His children into maturity. The whole world is waiting for the manifestations of “*the sons of God*”.

⁸⁴ John 3:14 -18.

All covenants begin at God's initiation. The first fundamental type is RED, and called the *Blood Covenant*.⁸⁵

The relationship of this covenant type is the "entering into a relationship of servant-hood", requires the shedding of the blood by sacrifice and must be renewed daily.⁸⁶ To apprehend the same dynamic in more graphic terms, understand that *man is at war with two propensities within himself*. The service covenant is a commitment we made to God *to fight against our evil depraved nature*, which, unchecked, would lead us into sin. Our positive obedient actions help us to maintain our covenant with God and are seen by Him as sign of honor. Sacrifices are also the symbol of restoration and purification.

The initial covenant relationship that God established with Adam and Eve and Noah was a blood covenant (service covenant) as seen as in Genesis 9:7-17 and Genesis 3:17-22. With this covenant God was conveying to the believer that the beginning of the restoration process, involves going back to the beginning – servant-hood and obedience.

So likewise ye, when ye shall have done all those things which are commanded you, say, We are unprofitable servants: we have done that which was our duty to do.

Luke 17:10

And, behold, I come quickly; and my reward is with me, to give every man according as his work shall be. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, the first and the last. Blessed are they that do his commandments, that they may have right to the tree of life, and may enter in through the gates into the city.

Revelations 22:12

⁸⁵Klein, John and Spears, Adam (2007) *Lost in Translation: Volume I*. Bend, OR: Covenant Research Institute, pp.40-41.

⁸⁶ I Corinthians 15:31. The author argues that in the context of the revelations of this text, the implication is to break the bread of Communion every day.

3.3.2 COVENANT TWO: THE SALT COVENANT TYPE

The Second fundamental type is yellow and called the ***Salt Covenant Type***.⁸⁷ This is an eternal covenant. Once you make it, it's made for ever and doesn't have to be renewed constantly. When two wanted to enter into this type of covenant relationship with each other, the parties mix their salt in a common bowl, break bread, dip it into the salt and eat it. When they are finished, they redistribute the salt between them. Just impossible as it is to separate the salt again, just so impossible is it to break this covenant again. It is forever. It is the covenant of hospitality/friendship. God is offers to restore the lost friendship and closeness by this Covenant. God reward the believer with more of Himself when enter into this Covenant.

Abraham established this Covenant with the Lord in Genesis 18:1-15. Once you enter into the Salt Covenant, the Blood Covenant is not cancelled. As friend of God, you continue to be a servant. God promised to make Abraham a great nation and He promised Abraham a huge inheritance.

3.3.3 COVENANT THREE: THE SANDAL COVENANT TYPE

The Third fundamental type is BLUE and called the ***Sandal Covenant Type***⁸⁸ or the *Covenant of in-heritage*. Hebrews used worn-out sandals to mark the boundaries of their property. They partially covered them with rocks to hold them in place against the natural elements. The sandal covenant is the picture of the relationship of sons and daughters with their parents. Along with this Covenant came the responsibility to maintain the servant covenant as well.

⁸⁷ Klein, John and Spears, Adam (2007) *Lost in Translation: Volume I*. Bend, OR: Covenant Research Institute, p. 42.

⁸⁸ Klein, John and Spears, Adam (2007) *Lost in Translation: Volume I*. Bend, OR: Covenant Research Institute, pp.43-44.

In Hebrew households nobody could tell the difference between the sons and daughter and the hired help. At dinner time the difference became obvious – sons and daughters were the only ones sitting with the parents at the family table. Inheritance requires being a good steward of our Father's estate. This was God's original intent for Adam and Eve. They were given the authority and the responsibility to rule and the reign. God promised to renew this covenant type in the book of Revelations 20 when the bride sits with Yeshua on the throne and rule and reign with Him.

3.3.4 THE FOURTH COVENANT WITH GOD: THE BETROTHAL COVENANT

The Fourth fundamental type is WHITE and called the Betrothal Covenant Type.

Marriage is the culmination of the previous three types of covenants. In Scripture after Scripture God reveals Himself as the Bridegroom and He compares all those who entered into Covenant of any of the four covenants as His bride. Many are called, but few are chosen. Free choice is central to the wedding partners. Once this is settled, the process of commitment and covenant started – the fulfilling often took several years.⁸⁹

On the prospective date of the Bridegrooms first move, His father came along to the intended bride's house. They carried a betrothal cup, wine and the anticipated bride price along with them. They knocked. Before the bride's father open the door, he look at her, to make sure if she wants to exceed with the wedding process. If she says yes, the commitment to go along through the process was made. Revelations 3:20 reveals the knock at the door of the bride's house and if she says yes, the restoration process of sanctification begin.

⁸⁹ Klein, John and Spears, Adam (2007) *Lost in Translation: Volume I*. Bend, OR: Covenant Research Institute, pp.53-56.

Beyond that, He asks you to enter into a covenant of Betrothal with Him. Will you walk in a loving relationship with your bridegroom? Even after the door was opened, the bride could end the process.

The message of the four covenants is clear: God has proposed a pathway of relationship that he describes as Covenant.

Just as light is bend that proceeds through a prism into a rainbow of color, the very same is needed for every believer who is willing. If the believer is not willing to bend, he cannot enter into the process of “***dying to self***”. The essence of all the covenants is servant-hood, and the only way to proceed to become the bride of Christ. The bridal garments are only allowed on be put on, because the bride has made herself ready.

Let us be glad and rejoice, and give honor to him: for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and his wife hath made herself ready. And to her was granted that she should be arrayed in fine linen, clean and white: for the fine linen is the righteousness of saints. And he saith unto me, Write, Blessed are they which are called unto the marriage supper of the Lamb. And he saith unto me, These are the true sayings of God.

Revelations 19:7-8

3.4 THE COVENANT AS FOUNDATION OF RELATIONSHIP

The Message of the Kingdom is about the redemptive reign of Jesus Christ, His salvific reign. The message of Christ was that the Kingdom was “***at hand***”. A new aspect of Gods reign arrived when Jesus Christ came to earth – an everlasting reign of righteousness, eternal redemption, reconciliation and remission of sins were at hand. THIS could only be accomplished through the BLOOD of the Lamb of God and through faith in His blood.

The rule of Christ would be His rule of Salvation. The salvation would be the work of Christ through His death and resurrection. It would be His rule through the operation of God’s Holy Spirit. Christ would reign in the hearts of His saints.

The rule would be spiritual, not earthly or physical. Light and glory were arising, salvation and deliverance had come. Judgment had arrived. These things are to be set straight. Mountains is about to be made low and valleys were about to be exalted.

The wicked were about to be judges and the righteous rewarded. Jesus Christ – the hope of glory had arrived. Where a revelation of Jesus Christ arrived and within true and living faith in Him His Covenants is found and it will bring about the transformation of the believers whole life.

And I will make an everlasting covenant with them that I will not turn away from them, to do them good: but I will put my fear in their hearts that they shall not depart from me.

Jeremiah 32:40

The Hebrew word for *covenant*⁹⁰ is “**bereth**” (1285), which implies the following: “**cutting, covenant** (promise)”, “**a compact** (made by passing between pieces of flesh)” and a “**confederacy**” (coalition / partnership / agreement). In Greek the word “**covenant**”, “**dee-ath-ay'-kay** (1242)” refers to: “**a disposition (nature/character), a contract (a devisors will), a covenant or a testament**”.

The Old Covenant was based on a person’s performance. If any man fell short in any way to perform the laws of God, curses would follow since man’s covenant with God relied on his performance. The promises were for man who obeyed and curses for man who did not. It is only by obedience to God’s commandment that man will ever be rewarded with the forfeited Tree of Eternal Live.⁹¹

Scripture reveals that Eternal destinies are settled here on earth.⁹² Jesus Christ came to fulfill all Old Testament utterances including all the Covenants and came to bring the New Covenant – providing for every believer a way to overcome and live their live on earth through the power of God’s Holy Spirit. The book of Hebrew reveals Christ as the faithful and merciful high Priest of the New Covenant.

⁹⁰ Strong’s, James (1901) Strong’s Exhaustive Concordance of the Bible. Peabody, MA: Hendrickson Publishers, p. 223.

⁹¹ Genesis 2:17; Revelations 2:7; 22:2, 14.

⁹² Conner, Kevin (1980) The foundations of Christian Doctrine, Portland Oregon, Bible Temple Publishing, p.293.

Not only did Jesus Christ opened the way to the Father and intercedes for us daily, but He undertook to keep every believer in fellowship with Himself, sustained the believer by the power of His Holy Spirit so that temptation cannot conquer them.

3.4.1 UNDERSTANDING GOD AS THE COVENANT GOD

God is a covenant God who establishes his promises with His people through different covenants. God used every possible means to give humanity confidence in Him and the full assurance of Who He is. It is with this view in mind, that God binds Himself by an Everlasting Covenant to His people, promised that He will never depart from them, that He will put “***the fear of the Lord***” in their hearts and that He will keep them – not ever to depart from Him.

Pettergrew draws the attention to two things that God promised the New Covenant believer:⁹³

- First God promised the believer a new heart with a new spirit, which *represents regeneration and sanctification (Old Covenant pneumatology)*;
- Secondly God promised to put His Spirit within the believer’s new heart which refers to the prose’s of *permanent indwelling (New Covenant pneumatology)*.

A new heart also will I give you and a new spirit will I put within you and I will take away the stony heart out of your flesh and I will give you an heart of flesh. And I will put My Spirit within you and cause you to walk in my statutes and ye shall keep my judgment and do them.

Ezekiel 36:26-27

And I will give them a heart to know me, that I am the LORD: and they shall be my people and I will be their God: for they shall return unto me with their whole heart.

Jeremiah 24:7

⁹³ Pettegrew, Larry (2001) The New Covenant Ministry of the Holy Spirit. Grand Rapids, pp.34-35.

The New Covenant is “**one of the irrevocable contracts**” that God made with the nation of Israel in the Old Testament.

The New Covenant is also known under other names, such as the everlasting covenant, a new heart and a new spirit and a covenant of peace. The following provision of the New Covenant is provided by God:⁹⁴

- The key provision of the New Covenant is the transformation through a new heart.
- For those in the New Covenant there is final forgiveness of sin. God promised to forgive their iniquities and remember their sin no more.⁹⁵
- God also promised to be their God and that they will be God’s people. God consummate his relationship with His people.
- The New Covenant provides physical blessings to Israel.
- God promised the permanent indwelling of His Holy Spirit for all Covenant believers.
- God promised to put His law inside a New Covenant believer, which means that God promised that he will provide a way that the New Covenant people would obey Him – not because they have to, but because they want to.

Christ is a Living Faithful Helper to all believers. His divinity secures His unending, abiding, indwelling and never ceasing presence, which is the secret of Christian life.

3.4.2 THE COVENANT OF EVERLASTING PRIESTHOOD

The Old Covenant Christians seeks to compel himself to love and obedience, but is painfully conscious of his failure. The New Covenant Christian trusts in Christ as High Priest in the power of an endless life. He breathes His own life within us – so that it is our very nature, lifting us up in spirit and in truth, into a vital fellowship with God.

⁹⁴ Pettegrew, Larry (2001) *The New Covenant Ministry of the Holy Spirit*. Grand Rapids, p.35.

⁹⁵ Jeremiah 31:34.

The question derives, “**Why is it so that so many Christians experience and prove so little of this power of the endless life that abides continuously?**”

- Some is not willing to give up the world for the heavenly life.
- Some do not believe that Christ is our High Priest.
- Others do not believe that it is possible to live a life as everlasting priesthood. Perfection was not in the law.

Israel was meant to be a nation of priests, to proclaim the Word of God, to be the channel through whom God’s knowledge and blessing were to be communicated to the world.

In the Old Covenant, God chose the tribe of the Levites, to be set apart for the work and power of God’s Spirit. Just as the priesthood of all people was part of the God’s Covenant, so the special calling of the Levites was part of God’s Covenant of an everlasting priesthood. God made an everlasting covenant with the Levites who made atonement for the children of Israel. God calls the New Covenant believer also as a royal priesthood.

But ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a peculiar people: that ye should show forth the praises of Him who hath called you out of darkness into His marvelous light.

II Peter 2:9

Jesus Christ came to work “**a perfection**” in the believer, which the law could not do. He came to bring us into full favor of God and in actual fellowship with God. Christ wants every believer to live the same life He lived upon earth – always looking up to the Father in total dependency and thereby honoring God in heaven above through it. God calls everyone who is willing to offer up their lives, to intercede for their fellowmen and loved-ones. God made the extension of His kingdom, dependent on the faithfulness of the prayers of His people.

The New Covenant stipulate that it is only by the unceasing intercession of God's people that His kingdom shall come and His will be done on earth as it is in heaven.⁹⁶ Jesus even stipulates that the laborers of His kingdom are few.⁹⁷ There is a mystery of glory in prayer. God choose to use prayer and intercession as the means to bring down the very life and love of heaven to dwell in human hearts. The main stronghold in Western churches is the loss of the truth of the priesthood for every believer.⁹⁸

4. PRAYER AND INTIMACY WITH GOD

Prayer is an encounter with the Living God, the pulsation of life. Prayer transpires where a believer takes time to practice fellowship with God and delight himself in God. The place and power of prayer is little understood. If prayer is viewed as a means to maintain your life, it will not be fully understand. Only when prayer is regard as the highest part of the work entrusted to the believer – the root and strength of all other work – that the art of praying will be found to be the most essential practice of all.⁹⁹

Life in the Spirit does not begin with an experience, but it begins on your knees with a decision to walk with God. The church should be brought to the understanding that the indispensable key to a life in the Spirit, is not preaching, not pastoral visitation, not church work, but fellowship with God in prayer until the believer is clothed with power from on high.¹⁰⁰ When the church shuts herself up to the power of the inner chamber and the soldiers of the Lord received power from on high, on their knees, then the powers of Darkness will be shaken and souls will be delivered.

The inner camber is the place where our heavenly Father will reveal Himself, His love will be tasted, His holiness will be revealed and where victory is obtained. There is no place on earth comparable to the joy of the inner chamber.

⁹⁶ Matthew 6:10.

⁹⁷ Matthew 9:37.

⁹⁸ I Peter 2:9

⁹⁹Murray, Andrew (1981) *With Christ in the School of Prayer*. New Kensington, PA: Whitaker House, p.7.

¹⁰⁰ Luke 24:49.

In His holy presence, the soul will offer his scarifies of love and worship, adoration and praise, prayer and supplication. Compelled by the purity and fire of Christ's love, believers will adopt an aggressive and watchful attitude towards evil (Ephesians 6:12). Scripture declares that God will surely act on behalf of those who wait on Him.¹⁰¹ Only where the believer acknowledge the priceless friendship relationship with God – He will reveals His secret things.

“The secret things belong unto the LORD our God: but those things which are revealed belong unto us and to our children forever, that we may do all the words of this law.”

Deuteronomy 29:29

Many times when God show the prayer warrior something, the person will have to wait for God's timing to act. One of the most important aspects of being a watchman is *to listen* to the Lord.¹⁰²

Listening provoke doing. Prayer is the breeding ground for Apostolic and Prophetic assignments.

4.1 THE APOSTOLIC AND PROPHETIC MINISTRY

God ordained Prophetic and Apostolic revelations as weapons of warfare against physical, emotional, mental, spiritual and physical sickness. For the spiritual battle, it is needed to understand the circumstances that give demons legal rights to torment people. Jesus came to destroy the works of the devil.¹⁰³ He was anointed to conquer the devil's kingdom, bind up the broken hearted; proclaim liberty to the captives and to open the prisons to them that are bound.¹⁰⁴ However, many people are being held captive in some emotional, mental or spiritual ways or even by a physical sickness.

¹⁰¹ Isaiah 64:4

¹⁰² Revelations 2 & 3; John 10:27-28; Habakkuk 2:1.

¹⁰³ I John 3:8

¹⁰⁴ Isaiah 61:1-3.

God send His Holy Spirit to authorize and empowered believers to set souls free from captivity, if they will only allow the Lord to be their teacher.

“And these signs shall follow them that believe: In my Name shall they cast out devils: they shall speak with new tongues. They shall take up serpents and if they drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick and they shall recover...”

Mark 16:17

4.1.1 APOSTOLIC AND PROPHETIC REVELATIONS DERIVING FROM INTIMACY WITH GOD

The Book of Daniel reveals one of the most important Scriptures pertaining to *Spiritual Warfare*.

The Scripture notes that the prophet Daniel was found fasting and praying for twenty-one days, seeking the Lord in hope that God would bless him with a revelation of Israel's future. On the last day of his fast, an angel suddenly appeared to him and said:

From the first day that thou didst set thine heart to understand and to chasten thyself before thy God, thy words were heard and I come for thy words. But the prince of the kingdom of Persia withstood me twenty-one days; but, lo, Michael, one of the chief princes, came to help me...

Daniel 10:12-13

For twenty-one days a powerful Persian demon opposed God's messenger to deliver God's answer to Daniel. The messenger was not free to continue his journey until the archangel Michael, came to assist in the battle. Daniel was dealing with a territorial spirit that ruled over that area (Daniel 10:13-14, 20-21). Demons and their militaristic interest in people and geography are ontological facts.

Persian theology expresses that war and all evil had its origin in Ahriman – the chief of all fallen angels. Ahriman and his followers were expelled from heaven after which they establish their abode in the space between heaven and earth from where they could corrupt the governments of men.

The Bible reveals the struggle of Satan and his followers, journeying the earth, seeking to oppose and defeat believers (Job 1; Matthews 4:3-11; Ephesians 6:11-12). The Old Testament exposes the demonic as the living force behind idolatry (Deuteronomy 32:17), while many New Testament writers uncover their influence on the body of Christ as well as against society.

4.1.2 GOD SEEKS INTERCESSORS

Isaiah notes that God sought for an intercessor but in vain. He was astonished that there were no one who loved the people enough, who had sufficient faith in His power to deliver man and was willing to intercede on behalf of the needy (Isaiah 64:7, Ezekiel 22:30-31).

An anointed Christian warrior will “*stand with Christ*” in the days of battle and overcome demonic attacks through the weapons of the Word (Ephesians 6:17). God’s anointing will provides information, wisdom, insight, discernment, authority and new vigor unto His children.

I have set watchmen upon the walls, O Jerusalem, which shall never hold their peace day of night: ye that make mention of the LORD, keep not silence.

Isaiah 62:6

Since the genesis of Scriptures, God had intercessors to whose voice He listened to give deliverance.

Behold the Lord's hand is not shortened that it cannot save; neither his ear heavy that it cannot hear. But your iniquities have separated between you and your God and your sins have hid his face from you that he will not hear. ...[The] LORD saw it (all evil doing) and it displeased Him that there was no judgment. And He saw that there was no man and wondered that there was no intercessor: therefore his arm brought salvation unto Him and His righteousness, it sustained Him.

Deuteronomy 59:1-2, 15-16

God choose that the working of His Holy Spirit shall follow the prayer of His children and therefore waits for their intercession. God waits for the intercessory prayers of His people. To the extent that His people is willing to intercede for others, to that extend they are ready to yield to the control of God's Holy Spirit.

And He saw that there was no man and wondered that there was no intercessor: therefore His arm brought salvation unto Him; and His righteousness, it sustained Him.

Isaiah 59:16

Only a life of consecration and self-sacrifice will empower the intercessor.¹⁰⁵

4.1.2.1 DOES A OMNI-POTENT GOD REALLY NEEDS PEOPLE'S PRAYER'S TO ACT ON

Does an all-powerful God need people's prayers and intercession before He can / will act on earth and if so, why? The answer lies in God's original plan when He created Adam. God placed Adam and his generations to come as his representatives to earth.¹⁰⁶ God assigned the earth to men.¹⁰⁷ So complete and final was Adam's authority over the earth, that he had the ability to give it away to Satan.¹⁰⁸

¹⁰⁵ Acts 15:6; 20:24; Philippians 2:17; Revelations 12:11.

¹⁰⁶ Genesis 1:26-27; Psalms 8:3-8.

¹⁰⁷ Psalms 115:6.

¹⁰⁸ Luke 4:6-7.

Jesus Himself called Satan, the ruler of this world.¹⁰⁹ God's decision to work through human beings cost Him to become incarnated to regain what Adam gave away. The Bible reveals a partnership between God and his people. Believers are His body, his *called ones*, called to work in His acre (the world). God decided to work through people – therefore He needs His children to be His body on earth and to represent Him.

And another angel came and stood at the altar, having a golden censer and there was given unto him much incense that he should offer it with the prayers of all saints upon the golden altar, which was before the throne.

Revelations 8:3

4.1.2.2 THE VICTORY IS WON IN THE INNER CHAMBER

The inner chamber of prayer is the place where the decisive victory is obtained by the anointed through Holy Spirit inspired prayers. The Holy Spirit is the Christian warriors bow and their prayers are God's arrows.

For though we walk in the flesh, we do not war after the flesh. For the weapons of our warfare are not carnal, but mighty through God to the pulling down of strong holds. Casting down imaginations and every high thing that exalteth itself against the knowledge of God and bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ; And having in a readiness to revenge all disobedience when your obedience is fulfilled.

II Corinthians 10:3-5

4.1.2.3 PERSEVERANCE AS THE ROOT OF BOLDNESS

Boldness is the only root of steadfastness and perseverance and therefore the only sustaining strength. The Christian should yield his heart boldly to Jesus Christ as His dwelling place. Glory in the hope that what He has promised to perfect his children.

¹⁰⁹ John 12:31; 14:30; 16:11.

As the temple of God, the believer can claim boldly that Jesus will keep his dwelling secure.¹¹⁰ Nothing will make us conquerors but a bold and joyful spirit who trust in the hope that God will do it all. Faith in the power of God's Holy Spirit is the only possibility of spiritual and emotional growth, Divine deliverance and healing. Perseverance is a fruit of God's Holy Spirit. In I Kings 18:41-45, the history of Elijah revealed a man who prayed with *perseverance* and James 5:16 speak about *fervent prayer*. Psalm 126:5-6 refers to those who sow in tears, who shall reap with joyful shouting. Isaiah 66:7-8 asks, if a land can be born in one day?

Watchmen are ordained a place on the walls of the city, to give notice to the rulers of coming danger, to intercede and plead to God for mercy, but also to wrestle against the rulers of darkness.

I have set watchmen upon the walls, O Jerusalem, which shall never hold their peace day or night that make mention of the LORD, keep not silence.

Isaiah 62:1

The great mark of intercessors is that they will not let hold of God. The merciful heart of an intercessor will give God no rest until deliverance come.¹¹¹ Christ as Head Intercessor in heaven calls earthly intercessors as helpers and fellow laborers on earth.¹¹² God is looking for people with the quality of perseverance to intercede on behalf of others.

And I sought for a man among them that should make up the hedge and stand in the gap before Me for the land that I should not destroy it: but I found none. Therefore have I poured out mine indignation upon them; I have consumed them with the fire of my wrath: their own way have I recompensed upon their heads, siath the Lord GOD.

Ezekiel 22:30-11

¹¹⁰ Hebrews 1:6

¹¹¹ Jeremiah 7:6, 27:18; I Timothy 11:2; Luke 18:7.

¹¹² Philippians 1:19; Matthews 9:37-38.

The implications of this verse reveal the necessity for fervent prayer. It is a staggering truth that God's integrity, holiness and consistent truth prevent Him from excusing sin. God have to judge sin, although His love wants to forgive.¹¹³

Although God provided His own sacrificial Lamb, He still needs intercessors who will not keep silent, until the person break through in righteousness and salvation.¹¹⁴

4.1.2.4 THE OUTCOME OF PRAYER AND INTIMACY WITH GOD

Prayer will always produce compassion for people and compel the believer to pray for them too.

Hayfors has drawn attention to the two sides of prayer: *compassion and care* for people propelling a heart to intercede, opposed to *boldness and anger* towards the onslaught of the enemy resulting in spiritual warfare. Prayer and intimacy with god surely produce two constituents, namely:

- Intercession,¹¹⁵ which comprises of “*an encounter with God*”.
- Spiritual warfare,¹¹⁶ which involves “*an encounter with Satan or his demonic followers*”.

4.1.3 THE POWER OF INTERCESSION

The Hebrew word for *intercession*¹¹⁷ is **paw-gah'** (6293), which means: to impinge (impose); by accident or violence; by importunity (persevere), cause to entreat (plead), make intercession (mediation), meet, pray, reach and run.

¹¹³ Ezekiel 33:11.

¹¹⁴ Isaiah 62:1.

¹¹⁵ Isaiah 53:11-12; 54:1; Jeremiah 7:16; 27:18; 36:25; Romans 8:26-27, 34; Galatians 4:19; Philemon 1:41; Colosians 4:12; Philipians 1:19; I Timothy 2:11, 5:5; Ephesians 6:16; 6:18; Hebrews 7:25; James 5:5-6; I Peter 3:12; Revelations 5:8; 8:3-4

¹¹⁶ Matthews 16:23; Mark 1:13; 4:15; John 13:27; Luke 22:31; 16; Act 5:3; 26:28; Romans 16:20; I Corinthians 5:5; II Corinthians 12:7; II Thessalonians 2:18; II Thessalonians 2:9; Revelation 12:9.

Another word for *intercession* in Hebrew is **ent'yook-sis** (1783) and refers to: an interview, supplication (petition prayer), intercession, prayer. The Greek word for intercession is **èn-toong-khan'** (1793) and encompasses: to entreat; deal (covenant) with; or to make intercession.

Violence and war are rooted in the very meaning of the Hebrew word for *intercession*, namely "**paga**" and it is therefore impossible to separate the ministry of intercession from the ministry of spiritual warfare. Intercession means to pray / mediate for another and involves the boldness to ask, plead, petition and to bring the covenant promises before God,¹¹⁸ to bring down the power of the God with all its blessings for specific people.¹¹⁹

I exhort therefore, that, first of all, supplications, prayers, intercession and giving of thanks, be made for all men.

I Timothy 2:1

God has made believers' ministers of His Holy Spirit. Whether in his feeding on the Word of God, or in his seeking in it for God's message for His people, whether it is private or intercessory prayer, whether it is counsel or teaching – man is to wait upon God Holy Spirit to receive and to yield to the energizing of His Spirit as the mighty power of God working with him. If a person is to be a minister of the New Covenant, nothing less will do than a full experience of the power of God's Spirit in himself.¹²⁰

The church believes so little in the mighty power of God and the truth of His holy Covenant that the grace of holiness is hardly spoken of. There is nothing needed more in the Church today. All its fatherlessness, abuse, violence, discord and emotional problems, anxiety, loneliness and broken relationships, addictions, isolation, captivity and sickness is owing to one thing – God's Holy Spirit is not known and honored and yielded to as the all-sufficient source of a holy life.

¹¹⁷ Strong's, James (1901) Strong's Exhaustive Concordance of the Bible. Peabody, MA: Hendrickson Publishers, p. 93.

¹¹⁸ Isaiah 62; James 5:16.

¹¹⁹ I Timothy 2:1; Acts 1:14; II Chronicles 6:34.

¹²⁰ I Corinthians 2:4

The key note of the New Covenant is the promise that God will sanctify the believer that waits on Him, wholly. It is a gift from above. The promise given with the Covenant was: “I the Lord have spoken; I will perform it.” It is thus essential to understand the Covenant and know the God of the Covenant. No relationship could be truly intimate without spending enough time together to know each other.¹²¹

Andrew Murray gives count of the blessed life: Oh the blessedness of a life in the Holiest! Here the Father's face is seen and His love tasted. Here His holiness is revealed and the soul made partaker of it. Here the sacrifice of love and worship and adoration, the incense of prayer and supplication, is offered in power. Here the outpouring of His Spirit is known as an ever-streaming, overflowing river from the throne of God and the Lamb. Here the soul, in God's presence grows into more complete oneness with Christ and more entire conformity to His likeness. Here, in union with Christ, in His unceasing intercession, we are emboldened to take our place as intercessors, who can have power with God and prevail.

Here the soul mounts up as on eagle's wings, the strength is renewed and the blessing and the power and the love is imparted and God's priests can go out and to bless a dying world.¹²² Healings take place where God meets with people¹²³ and when the Victory of Christ is enforced over the works of the Evil-One.¹²⁴ Jesus promised not only the forgiveness of sin and sanctification but to perform Divine healings and deliverance.

And ye shall call upon Me, and ye shall go and pray unto Me and I will hearken unto you. And ye shall seek me and find Me when ye shall search for Me with your whole heart. And I will be found of you, saith the LORD: and I will turn away your captivity.

Jeremiah 29:13

¹²¹ I John 1:7-8; Ephesians 5:13.

¹²² Murray, Andrew Dr (1996) *The Holiest of All*. New Kensington, PA: Whitaker House Publishers, pp. 35-356.

¹²³ Luke 8:44.

¹²⁴ Luke 10:19; Romans 16:20

Sheets explain that there is a dual heavenly pattern of partnership between God and man involved in all covenants:¹²⁵ Although Jesus did it all; the believer has to enforce the victory by faith. The heavenly pattern for prayer consists of a dual workmanship: Jesus is the Victor and believers are the enforcers; Jesus is the Redeemer and the disciples the releasers; Jesus is the Head and we are the body of Christ.

The prophet of the New Testaments' work is to be done in fasting and hiddenness that the inner prison doors of others might be opened.¹²⁶ A Christian prophet is a guard and his very life and breath is intercession within the Church.

5. CONCLUSION

The Church of the 20th century has been left behind. God is raising up a New Generation that will fear Him and will speak what He will give them to speak. It will be a generation that will love the King and honor Him, because they will have more fear of God than for men.

Jesus came to preach a glorious Gospel, a Gospel that transforms and change lives. Jesus sat down with His disciples. He imparted to them His Spirit. He taught them to cast out demons. He demonstrates the power of His Kingdom and He gave of grace, freely. When He sent them, He said the Kingdom of God has come near.

Believers need to know that the Apostolic is the manifestation of Christ on earth. Revelation 19:10 say that the Spirit of Prophecy is the testimony of Jesus. This means that the manifestation of the prophetic is the revelation of all that Jesus is. The very essence of prophecy objectively is to reveal the multiple faces of Christ.

The foundation of the Church, based on the Apostles and Prophets is the revelation of Christ.

¹²⁵ Sheets, Dutch (1996) *Intercessory Prayer*. Ventura, California, USA: Regal Publishers, pp. 46-47.

¹²⁶ Luke 11:49; Ephesians 4:11-12; Revelations 18:20.

The glorious Church that Jesus is raising up is not founded on doctrines, but on revelation. The Prophetic anointing is permitting the believer to understand the spiritual world. It is going to give the Prayer Warrior the power to modify and transform this invisible realm, which is over everything that surrounds the believer in or to establish the Kingdom of the Almighty.

The Prophetic is that which permits the believer to discover and seen the designs of God in the heavens and where His disciples have the authority to make proclamation and symbolic acts that establish the will of God in the celestial regions. It is this anointing that produces the power to straighten the crooked path, bring los the high mountains, exalt the valley and prepare the way for the Lord.

In addition, it is also this anointing that is going to give birth to the powerful revelation of Christ, the Apostle. To understand the Apostolic is to understand a new and specific revelation of Christ. The Apostolic move will raise a generation to the image of God. God is calling the Church to govern the earth. The Church of the 21st century is a conquering Church, a Church of prayer. The Church understands that intercession must be made to the end, until Christ is formed in the warrior Church of God.

God designed the Church to be His temple – His dwelling place. When the Church worship in Spirit and Truth, the heavens open and they can look at Him with open faces – and then they are transformed into His image.

-----oOo-----

Conclusion

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

*Repent; or else I will come unto thee quickly,
and will fight against them with the sword
of my mouth.*

Revelation 2:16



*...His Name... The Word of God
Revelation 19:13b*

Conclusion

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

*Repent; or else I will come unto thee quickly,
and will fight against them with the sword
of my mouth.*

Revelation 2:16



Cover Art for Chapters: Susan Langeveldt
Graphic Design: SL Studios



Conclusion

Our culture has moved into a satanic revival and the only way of confronting and stopping it, is through a revolutionary Spiritual revival of Righteousness and Truth!

God revealed Prophetically, that before such a revival – there will be a strong encounter with Satan. The Christian world must therefore become aroused. God allowed Satan to throw the gauntlet to the Church, but He also provided the Church with the Spiritual resources to overcome the challenger. Isaiah gave the message of hope:

So shall they fear the name of the LORD from the west, and his glory from the rising of the sun. When the enemy shall come in like a flood, the Spirit of the LORD shall lift up a standard against him.

Isaiah 59:19

God is able to intervene. He holds the evil within His sovereignty. His might is infinitely greater than all the power Satan can amass. Believers are called to renew their confidence in the Almightyness of God – they are called to participate in a God-authored Spiritual revival strong enough to abate the flood of evil. Believers are called to recognize the power of doctrinal prayer to become united with God.

Signs of the Satanic misdemeanor was evident in the days of Noah and as the Bible warned, so will it be in the last days. Humanity is entering into a time of sexual revolution. The perverseness of our times – as seen in child pornography, expressions of human sexual freedom and sexual abuse and misuse – are more than merely man’s fallen nature expressing itself in immoral activities. It is even more than an evolving product of the World System and the attitudes ingrained by human mass media and the entertainment Industry. It is a carefully orchestrated conspiracy at work, too sinister and subtle to be entirely of human origin. This conspiracy flows directly from the realm of evil supernaturalism and our only hope for any change necessitates divine, supernatural intervention. Only God’s power, manifested in the hearts of a caring, concerning citizen, can stop this onslaught of evil.

In no way is the satanic revival just a ‘youth’ problem. Perhaps the most far-reaching evidence of this occultic, spiritualistic revival is the New Age Movement. This “New Age” title has a rather inclusive gender – it covers a wide spectrum of different groups and movements. Many Christian leaders see it as the incipient beginnings of the religious, philosophical, political and economic globalism over which the Anti-Christ will reign at the End-Time.

Satanic seduction has infiltrated our lives of our citizens and our children. It is not something to be regarded lightly, for it threatens the very fabric and soul of our families, our communities and our nation. We have to confront it boldly with a confidence that came only from the one who defeated Satan on the cross. Can humanity still turn the tide? Turn things around? Get back to the path toward being a righteous, God-honoring people? Yes. We can defeat the powers of Darkness in the authority of the Redeemer, Jesus Christ.

The Word of God reveals that nations can collapse. The question arises, ‘Why does such disaster come to nations and cultures?’ Cultures can be demonized. Their experiences in high-places invited Satan to rule.

Demonization of the individual is now recognized as a major problem by ever-increasing evangelical leaders as the satanic revival engulfs multitudes of hurting people. Two major sins are responsible for such satanic revival in the individuals life:

- Dabbling in Occultism
- Sexual sin

In Old Testament Law, both of these **sins** were punished by death. One reason for such drastic punishment was that once demonization took place, under the Old Testament religious system, there was no known way to deal with it. It was not that these two sins were greater against God than any other sin, but that Occult activities and gross sexual sin dangerously open a person's life to demonic control. Once wicked spirits had demonized a person, their claim were fixed. Little hope for release existed in the Jewish faith.

Human strength is completely inadequate in Spiritual Warfare and the only power that will prevail over the spirit of Darkness is the Spirit of God. Spirit must be confronted by Spirit. What happened to Jesus in this regard should happen to us. The book of Acts is the story of the people of God receiving what Jesus received – the Spirit – in order to do what Jesus did – prevail in Kingdom ministry.

Another question arises pertaining to the characteristics of demonization of cultures. Noah's days depicts such a culture. Sodom and Gomorrah obviously were also demonized cultures. When such conditions prevail, God removes His protective restraint (Romans 1:24; 26-28). This surely includes more than the perverted human practice of sexual sins described. As mankind engages in such sins, demonic powers take over; they then rule because God removes his restraining Grace. The result is chaos. This is the kind of condition we face now in society. Our cultures are being demonized and nothing can confront or change this accelerating problem but God-authored, revolutionary revival.

It is important that God's people know why nations fall. The Satanic revival presently under way demands a spiritual response from God's people that is strong enough to meet the challenge. Only the power of the Gospel, unleashed through a concentrated season of prayer and repentance, is mighty enough to dismantle a Satanic revival. Believers must know that and act upon it.

A nation's fall has to do with God's sovereign judgment. This is the ultimate deciding factor. Regarding Israel and Judah – the Omnipotent God of eternity looked at their rebellion and determined to bring those nations to their finish. Through secular historians, philosophical intellectuals and absolute: The God of history and eternity knows no challenge. Nations are in His hands.

Passivity! How many have fallen into it, little knowing their state. Through passivity, much time is lost, as people become dependant upon the help of outward circumstances and environment. In the lives of so many there is so much doing, with so little accomplishing – many beginnings and few endings. For anybody to understand the Supreme Spiritual Warfare humanity is engaged in, we need a foundational revelation of the proto-evangelium in Genesis 3:15. Immediately after the fall, God proclaim a war between Satan and the women's seed and between the seed-line of Satan and the seed-line of Jesus Christ. Forever there will be enmity and war between light and darkness and between righteousness and iniquity.

And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.

Genesis 3:15

Humanity are going to have the light just a little while longer. Walk while you have the light, before darkness overtakes you. The man who walks in the dark does not know where he is going. Put your trust in the light, while you have it, so that you may become sons of light (John 12:35, 36). Has the dawn of revival vision broken over the horizon of your life? There is an urgency to get involved. God has placed that which will bring revival awakening into the hands of believers who are ready.

Revival puts holy living back into the deep, inner desires of the heart. God's people do not do the sinful, or even questionable, things they once did, because a new light has come. An inner, holy fire has invaded them.

Signs of Revival Awakening

- The sign of social, political and economic crises.
- The sign of the feelings of helplessness within the Church (Psalm 107:26-30).
- Revival would enlarge the needed manpower reserve in a short time. Revived people become eager missionary volunteers.
- Revival would energize God's people with spiritual power for prayer. United prayer pushes the enemy into hasty retreat.
- Revival leads to repentance and cleaned-up lives. God's power flows freely through a clean people.
- Revival would secure the needed funds to finance the evangelism projects. Revived people become joyful stewards.
- Revival would help create a political climate favorable to world evangelization. Changed people translate into changed political leaders who open doors for the Gospel.

Activities and Attitudes That Promote Revival (II Chronicles 7:14):

- Walk in personal victory over the world, the flesh and the devil (Romans 12:1-2).
- Commit to personal prayer for revival.
- Become part of a revival prayer group (Luke 24:49).
- Be persistent in waiting upon the Lord for revival.
- Protect the results of revival.
- Preserving the Revival

Structures for revival awakening:

- Bible study nurture groups for new believers
- Action brigades carrying Christ's love to the homeless and needy
- Alert support teams assisting new converts exiting from Satanism
- Evangelism training promoting varied outreaches to the lost
- Mobilization for world evangelization and missionary recruitment
- Structures of support details to rescue and redirect hurting people
- Seminars providing biblical balance in spiritual warfare training
- Prayer ministries to undergird and protect the revival movement
- Individual and cell-group discipling strategies
- Christ-exalting fellowship festivals and creative worship/praise celebrations

Revival Concepts and the Role of the Holy Spirit

The best definition of revival is the phrase, "***Times of refreshing ... from the presence of the Lord.***" Revivals are emotional events. As such, they are often experience-centered in their outworking. The results, however, go much deeper than emotions and feelings in genuine revival awakening. People's lives, attitudes, and actions are dramatically changed. Whole cultures are changed. Revival is an extraordinary sense of the nearness and presence of the Lord Jesus Christ among his people.

- Need for revival assumes past spiritual excellence.
- Need for revival assumes a state of present spiritual declension.

The Church of Christ has cheapened the Gospel to a solution to life's problems or an improvement of our live style. We have enticed sinner by preaching only the blessing to be obtained in following Him.

Whosoever will come after Me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross, and follow Me. For whosoever will save his life shall lose it; but whosoever shall lose his life for My sake and the Gospel's, the same shall save it.

Mark 23:15

Repentance is the prerequisite to deliverance. Many in the church want deliverance – they enjoy the sin but do not like the consequences or guilt they experienced afterwards. If there was a way to remain a Christian and still stay involved in sin, the person would do it because he/she still enjoy it. As long as people like sin, they cannot be delivered from it.

Sin will sever damage the relationship with the LORD. If we look unto the LORD on the Cross – the believer will see what the true prize involved is to be liberated from sin. If we live according to the flesh, we will surely DIE from it. The work of the Cross is not complete until the fruit of righteousness appear. The prayer of repentance is only the beginning.

God provide a way for His church to be equipped and cared for in the process of sanctification and growth. God's way is revealed in the Book of Acts. He provided house-churches. It was not meant to be a series of meetings, but a prophetic way of living in it.

House-Churches do not only change the way Christianity is seen and experienced in the streets of the world, but allow the church to develop a “*City Church*”, the coming together of the Body of Christ of a City or a region, speaking with one voice and acting as one organism under only one head.

God is changing the Church and that will turn the world. Millions of Christians around the world are aware of an imminent reformation of global proportions. They say that in effect: “The Church” as we know it, is preventing the Church to be, as God wants it. A growing number of them are surprisingly hearing God say the very same things.

There is a collective new awareness of age-old revelations, a corporate spiritual echo in the following suggestive ideas what God is saying to the Church today.

Being brought up in “*Christianity*” with churches everywhere, I have always felt that there must be something exciting about the Church, which Jesus started and about which I read in the New Testament – but somehow I have yet to discover what it is. I dreamed – together with many friends and colleagues of a church that is as simple as One-Two-Three, yet is dynamic: an explosive thing, able to turn the world and a neighborhood upside down.

The Church as a supernatural intervention; endowed with God’s gift of immortality; the way to discipleship; the way to disciple each other and to transfer the life of Jesus to each other; an experience of Grace, love and laughter, joy, forgiveness and fun, and power. A Church, which does not need much finances, rhetoric, control and manipulation, which can do without powerful and charismatic heroes, which is non-religious at heart, which can thrill people to the core, make them loose their head for joy and simple teach us “*The Way to Live*”.

The Church, which not only has a Message, but is the message, which spread like an unstoppable virus, infects whatever it touches and ultimately covers the Earth with the Glory and the Knowledge of God. Its power stems from its inventor, who has equipped it with the most genius spiritual genetic code – a sort of heavenly DNA, which allows it to transfer and reproduce Kingdom values from Heaven to Earth and transform not only water into wine, but atheists into fascinated apostles, policewomen into prophetesses, terrorists into teachers, plumbers into pastors and dignified village elders into beaming evangelists in the process. It is like a spiritual family – organic, not organized, relational, not formal; it has a persecution-proof structure, matures under tears, multiplies under pressure, grows under the carpet, flourishes in the desert, sees in the dark and thrives on chaos.

A Church that can multiply like two fish and five breads in the Hands of Jesus, where the fathers turn their hearts to the sons and the sons their hearts to the fathers, where its people are its people are its resources and which has only one name to brag about, the Lamb of God.

Church is a way of life, not a series of religious meetings. Before they were called Christians, followers have been called “*the Way*”. One of the reasons was that they have literally found “*the way to live*”.

The nature of Church is not reflected in a constant series of religious meetings led by professional clergy in holy rooms specially reserved to experienced Jesus, but in the prophetic way followers of Christ live their everyday life in spiritual extended families as a vivid answer to the questions society faces, at the place where it counts most: in their homes. It is time to change the system. In aligning itself to the religious patterns of the day, the historic Orthodox Church. They adopted a religious system, which was in essence Old Testament, complete with priests, altar a Christian temple (cathedral), frankincense and a Jewish, and synagogue-style worship pattern.

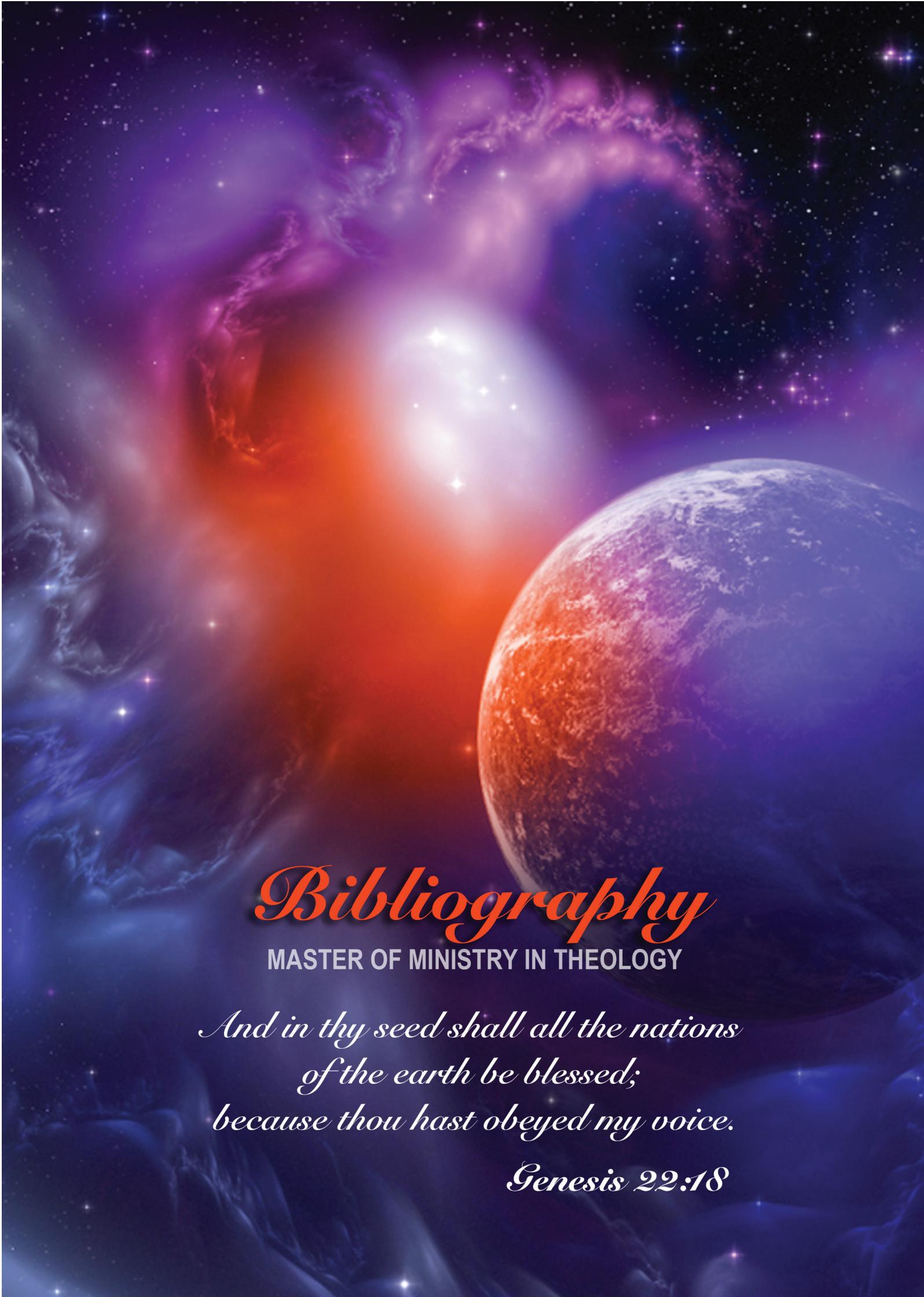
Luther did reform the content of the Gospel, but left the outer forms of “Church” remarkable untouched; the Free-Church freed the system from the State, the Baptists then Baptized it, the Quakers dry-cleaned it, the Salvation Army put it into a uniform, the Pentecostals anointed it and the Charismatic’s renewed it, but until today nobody has really changed the **superstructure**. It is about time to do just that.

The veil is torn and God is allowing people to access Himself directly through Jesus Christ, the only way. For some it may be the proverbial first-size cloud on Elijah’s sky. Other already feels the pouring rain.

A Revival cry

Although spiritual warfare is not pleasant when you are in it, the victory is fulfilling when it is over. Solace needs to be taken in the fact that we will not always fight a spiritual battle. The time is coming when Satan and all his forces will finally be judged forever. *“To him who overcomes, I will give the right to eat from the tree of life, which is in the paradise of God.”* (Revelations 2:7). Your obligation is straightforward: to overcome! As a victor, you will look back in time and realize that all the struggle, all the effort, and all of the lessons learned were well worth it.

-----oOo-----



Bibliography

MASTER OF MINISTRY IN THEOLOGY

*And in thy seed shall all the nations
of the earth be blessed;
because thou hast obeyed my voice.*

Genesis 22:18



Bibliography

MASTER OF MINISTRY IN THEOLOGY

*And in thy seed shall all the nations
of the earth be blessed;
because thou hast obeyed my voice.*

Genesis 22:18

Cover Art for Chapters: Susan Langeveldt
Graphic Design: SL Studios



Bibliography

- Adams, Jay E (1973) *The Christian Counselor's Manual: The Practice of Nouthetic Counseling*. Grand Rapids, MI: Ministry Resources Library,
- Adler, Vera (1972) *The Initiation of the World*, York Beach, Me: Samuel Weiser, Inc.
- Ankerberg, John & Weldon, John (1995) *The Facts on Self-Esteem, Psychology, And the Recovery Movement*. Harvest House Publishers.
- Barnhouse, DG (1965) *The Invisible War*, Grand Rapids, Michigan: Zondervan.
- Benson, Ezra Taft (1989) *Pride, the Universal Sin*. Ensign.
- Beverley James A (2009) *Nelson's Illustrated Guide to Religions: A Comprehensive Introduction to the Religions of the World*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson.
- Beverley, James A (2009) *Illustrated Guide to Religions*, Spring Hill, TN: Thomas Nelson.
- Bevrew *Roots of our Faith*. Bend, OR: Selah Publishing Group.
- Boyd, George A (1997) *God at War: The Bible and Spiritual Conflict*. Downer's Grove, IL: Inter Varsity.
- Boyd, Gregory A (2001) *Satan and the Problem of evil, Constructing a Trinitarian Warfare Theodicy*, Downers Grove, Illinois: Inter Varsity Press.
- Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2005) *Masters Degree: An Exposition of Biblical Warfare Central to Christian Involvement in A Theodicy considered from Philosophic-Theological Perspective*, Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Unpublished.
- Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr PhD (2006) *PhD: Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence pertaining to the Structures and strategies to destruct Christianity: Involving the Theodicy of Darkness (Three volumes)*, Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Unpublished.

- Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2007) "Mikro-Struktuur van die Lering": Bloodline Curses and Deliverance, Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Unpublished.
- Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2005) Spiritual Warfare One, Biblical outline pertaining to Spiritual Authority, Lynwood Ridge, Pretoria: Self Published.
- Brand, Connie MJ Dr (2007) Spiritual Warfare Two, Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Self-Published.
- Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2005) Spiritual Warfare Three, Biblical outline pertaining to Spiritual Authority, Lynwood Ridge, Pretoria: Self Published.
- Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2005) Spiritual Warfare Four, Biblical outline pertaining to Spiritual Authority, Lynwood Ridge, Pretoria: Self Published.
- Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2005) Spiritual Warfare Five, Biblical outline pertaining to Spiritual Authority, Lynwood Ridge, Pretoria: Self Published.
- Brand, Connie MJ Prof Dr (2005) Spiritual Warfare Six, Biblical outline pertaining to Spiritual Authority, Lynwood Ridge, Pretoria: Self Published.
- Brand, Connie MJ Dr (2007) Spiritual Warfare: Satan in Context Volume Six, Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Self-Published.
- Brooke, Tal (2000) One World. Berkeley, CA: End Run Publishers.
- Bubeck, Mark I (1975) Overcoming the Adversary: Warfare Praying against Demonic Activity, Sioux City, Iowa: Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data.
- Bubeck, Mark I (1984) The Adversary: The Christian versus Demon Activity, Chicago, Illinois: Moody Press.
- Bufford, Rodger K (1988) Counseling and the Demonic, Dallas, Texas: Word.
- Bushwell, James Olivier Jr (1962) A Systematic Theology of the Christian Religion, Grand Rapids: Zondervan.
- Calver, Clive Dr (2009) Dying to Live. Colorado Springs, CO USA: Authentic Publishers.
- Calvin, John (1977) Institutes of the Christian Religion, trans, Ford Lewis Battles, 2 Vols, Philadelphia: Westminster, While modern visions of the Institutes are published in two physical volumes, the classic citation is to reference first the book (there are four) the chapter, and finally the paragraph).

- Chaves, Rony Dr (1994 April) Cities. Mexicans in Victory Conference.
- Chesterson, AK, (1975) *The New Unhappy Lords, An exposure of Power Politics*, Hampshire: Candour Publishing Co.
- Christenson, Evelyn (1990) *Battling the prince of Darkness*, England: Scripture Press.
- Church, JR (2009) Article: Prophecy in the News magazine.
- Clark, Jonas (1954) *Imaginations*. Hallandale, Florida: Spirit of Life, P.115.
- Clark, Jonas (2001) *The Apostolic Equipping Dimension*. Hallandale, Florida: Spirit of Life Publishing.
- Cloud, Henry Dr Townsend, John Dr; (2001) *How people Grow*, Grand Rapids, Michigan: Zondervan Publishers.
- Collins, G (1988) *Can we trust Psychology?* Downer's Grove, IL: Inner Varsity
- Conner, Kevin (1980) *The foundations of Christian Doctrine*, Portland Oregon, Bible Temple Publishing.
- Crabb, Larry Dr (1977) *Effective Biblical Counseling*, Grand Rapids, MI: Zondervan Publishers.
- Dawson, John (1994) *Healing America's Wounds*. Ventura, California, USA: Regal Books.
- De La Guerre, FJ (1991) *Every New Age Knee shall bow*, Secuanda, Gauteng: De La Guerre Publishers.
- Delitzsch, Franz (1875) *Biblical Commentary on the Prophecies of Isaiah*. Edinburgh: T & T Clark.
- Dickason, CF (1987) *Demon Possession and the Christian*, Wheaton, Illinois, Good News Publishers, Geisler, Norman L, (1997) *Correcting the Cults*, Grand Rapid, Michigan: Baker Books.
- Durant, Will (1944) *Caesar and Christ*. Kingsport, Tennessee: Simon and Schuster.
- Echardt, John (1999) *Moving in Apostolic*. Ventura, California: Regal Books Publishers.
- Eddy, Patrica G (1993) *Who Tampered with the Bible*, Nashville, TN: Winston-Derek Publishers.
- Eddy, Patrica G (1993) *Who Tampered with the Bible*. Nashville, TN: Winston Derek Publishers, Inc..
- Els, Lien & Jonker, Kobus (2000/4) *Satanism in South Africa*, Lynnwood Ridge, Pretoria: Amabhuku Publications.
- Elwell, WA. "The Flesh in the New Testament" in ZPEB 2:548-549.
- Emashiser, Clifton A. *The Two Seeds of Genesis 3:15*.
- Ferguson, Marilyn (1980) *The Aquarian Conspiracy: Personal and Social Transformation in the 1980s*, Los Angeles: IP Tarcher Publishers.

- Flavius, Josephus (1870) *Antiquities of the Jews I: The Works of Flavius Josephus*. London: Milner and Sowerby.
- Floyd, Chris (2003) *Monsters, Inc.: The Pentagon plan to Create Mutant 'Super-Soldiers'*. CounterPunch (1/13/03).
- Fok, John *SATAN: Our Adversary*. Online SATANology.
- Foster, Werner ED (1964) In *Theological dictionary of the New Testament*, Volume 2, Grand Rapids: Wm, B, Eerdmans Publishers.
- Fouché, Aletta CM Dr (...) *An Eschatological Exposition of Sun Worship*. Gauteng.
- Fox, Matthew (1988) *The coming of the Cosmic Christ*. San Francisco: Harper and Row.
- Freeland, Nat (1972) *The Occult Explosion: Form Magic to ESP*, New York: GP, Putnam's Sons.
- Frey-Robin, L (1967) *Evil, Studies in Jungian Thought Series*. Evanston Ill; Northwestern University Press.
- Gardner, Thom (2005) *Healing the wounded Heart*, Shippensburg, PA: Destiny image Publishers.
- Geisler, Norman L, (1997) *Correcting the Cults*, Grand Rapid, Michigan: Baker Books.
- George Otis, Jr (1991) *The Last of the Giants*. Tarrytown, NY: Chosen Books,
- Godwin, Rick (1997) *Exposing Witchcraft in the Church*, Lake Mary, Florida: Creation House.
- Green, M (1981) *Exposing the Prince of Darkness*, Ann Arbor, Michigan: Servant Publishers.
- Gross, Martin L (1978) *The Psychological Society: A Analysis of Psychiatry, Psychotherapy, Psycho-analysis and the Psychological Revolution*. NY: Random House.
- Grudem, Wayne (1994) *Systematic Theology*, Grand Rapids, Michigan: Zondervan Publishing House.
- Hamilton, FW (2002) *The New Evidence Cosmic Top Secret: America's Secret UFO Program, USA*: Timothy Green Beckley.
- Hammond Frank & Ida (1992) *Pigs in the Parlour*, West Sussex, England: New Wine Press.
- Hamp, Douglas (2011) *Corrupting the Image*. Defender Publishing LLC,
- Harrison, RK (1977) *Flesh (in the O.T.)*. Grand Rapids, MI: Zondervan .
- Harvey, Linda (2008) *Not my child: Contemporary Paganism & the New Spirituality*, Chattanooga, Tennessee: AMG Publishers.
- Hayford, Jack (1977) *Prayer is Invading the Impossible*. South Plainfield, NJ: Logos International.

- Hears, Henrietta C (1999) *What is the Bible all about?* Ventura, Calif: Regal Books.
- Herschel, Wayne (2003) *The Hidden Records*. Printed and bound by Printability,
- Hislop, Alexander (1999) *The Two Babylon's*. Ontario, Canada: Chick Publications.
- Hodder & Stoughton (1881) *Christian Dogmatic*.
- Hodson, Geaffrey (2003) *Theosophy Answers Some Problems of Life*, Adyar, Madras, India: Theosophical Publishing House.
- Holliday, Pat Dr (2007) *Sexual Magic*, Jacksonville, FL : Published by Miracle Outreached Ministries.
- Holmes, Ernest (1983) *The Science of the Mind* (textbook). p.30.
- Holzer, Hans (2004) *True encounters with the World Beyond*, New York: Black Dog & Leventhal.
- Horgon, John (1/25/06) "We're Cracking the Neuron Code, the Brain's Secret Language." *Adjusters'*.
- Horn, Thomas (2011) *Pandemonium 'Engine*. Crane, Missouri: Defender Publishers.
- Horn, Thomas Dr (2009) *Apollyon Rising 2012*. Crane Missouri: Defender,
- Horn, Thomas R Dr (2012) *Nephilim: Star-gates*. Crane, Missouri: Anomalos Publishers.
- Horn, Tom and Nita (2010) *Forbidden Gates*. Crane, Missouri: Published in USA.
- Horrobin, Peter (2007) *Healing through Deliverance: Volume II*, Lancaster, England: Sovereign World.
- Horton, Harold (1934) *The gifts of the Spirit*, Springfield, Missouri: Radiant Books.
- Hoyt, Herman A (1961) *Espository Message on the New Birth*. Winona Lake, Ind.: BMH Books.
- Hubner, John (1989) *In Love with Porn*, West Magazine, San Jose: Mercury News.
- Huggins, Larry (1993) *The Blood Speaks*. South Plainfield, NJ: Bridge Publishing Inc..
- Hunt, Dave & McMahan, TA (1988) *The New Spirituality*. Eugene, Oregon: Harvest House Publishers, Hunt, Dave & McMahan, TA (1985) *The Seduction of Christianity: Spiritual Discernment in the Last Days*. Eugene, Oregon: Harvest House Publishers.
- Hunt, Dave & McMahan, TA (1985) *The Seduction of Christianity: Spiritual Discernment in the Last Days*. Eugene, Oregon: Harvest House Publishers.

- Hunt, Dave (1990) *Global Peace and the Rise of the Anti-Christ*, Eugene, Oregon: Harvest House publishers.
- Hunt, Dave (1990) *Global Peace*. Eugene, Oregon: Harvest House Publishers.
- Icke, David (2004) *The Robots Rebellion*. Park West, Dublin: Gateway Publishers.
- Isleib, Mary Alice (1991) *Effective Fervent Prayer*. Minneapolis, MI: Self Published.
- Jacobs, Cindy (2001) *Deliver us from Evil*, Ventura, California: Regal Books.
- Jacobs, DM (1998) *The Threat, Revealing the Secret Alien Agenda*, New York: Simon & Shuster.
- Jacobs, Dr & Wagner, CP & Pennoyer (ed) DF (1990) *Wrestling with Dark Angels, Toward a Deeper Understanding of the Supernatural Forces in Spiritual Warfare*, USA: Regal Books.
- Jeffress, Robert (2006) *The Divine Defense: Six Simple Strategies for Winning Your Greatest Battle*. Colorado Springs, CO: WaterBrook Publishers,
- Joiner, Barbara (1999) *Yours for the Giving: Spiritual Gifts*. Birmingham, AL: New Hope Publishers.
- Jose Arguelles, interviewed by John-Alexis Viereck, *Meditation*, Summer 1987, Vol, II, Also see Antero Alli, "A Post-Convergence Interview with Jose Arguelles," *Magical Blend*, Issue 18, 1988.
- Joubert, Stephan Proff; Van der Watt, Jan Proff; and Du Plessis, Gys (2009) *Bestaan die Duiwel regtig?* Vereniging, Gauteng: Christelike Uitgewersmaatskappy.
- Kass, Leon R (2010) *Life, Liberty and the Defense of Dignity: The Challenge for Bioethics*. New York: Encounter.
- Katz, Morris (2004) *The Journey*, Victoria, BC: Trafford Publishing.
- Kelly, JND *Early Christian Doctrines - FBA, Faith*, Revised Edition, London: A & C Black publishers.
- Kelsy, Morton (1974) *The Mythology of Evil*, *Journal of Religion and Health*.
- Kingsland, William (1975 orig, pub, 1937) *the Gnosis and Christianity*, Wheaton, IL: The Theosophical Publishing House.
- Kinnaman, Gary D (1990) *How to overcome the Darkness: Personal Strategies for Spiritual Warfare*, Grand Rapids, Michigan; Chosen Books.
- Klein, Adam and Spears, John (2007) *Lost in Translation Volume I and Volume II*. Bend, OR: Covenant Research institute.
- Klein, John and Spears, Adam (2005) *Devils and Demons and the Return of the Nephilim*. Bend, OR: Xulon Press Publishers.

- Koch, Kurt E (1986) *Occult ABC*, Grand Rapids, Michigan: Kregel Publications.
- König, A (1982) *Here Am I A Christian reflection on God*. Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans.
- Kraft, Charles, H (1997) *I give You Authority: Practicing the authority Jesus Gave Us*. Grand Rapids, MI: Chosen Books.
- Kurzweil, Ray (2006) *The Singularity is Near*. New York: Penguin.
- Kylstra, Chester and Betsy (2001) *Restoring the Foundations*, Hendersonville, NC: Proclaiming His Word Publications.
- Lake, John G (1994) *His Life, His Sermons, His Boldness of Faith*. Tulsa, Oklahoma: Harrison House Publishers.
- Larson, Bob (1989) *Larson's New Book of Cults*, Wheaton, Illinois: Tyndale House.
- Law, William (1971) *The Power of the Spirit*. Fort, Washington: Christian Literature Crusade,
- Leopold, HC (1989) *Exposition of Genesis*. Grand Rapids, MI.: Baker Publishers.
- Lewis, DA (1992) *Smashing the gates of Hell*, Arizona: New Leaf Press.
- Liardon, Roberts (1993) *Final Approach*. Lake Mary, FL: Creation House Publishers.
- Link, Luther (1996) *The Devil*. New York: Harry N. Abrams, Inc., Publishers,
- Lloyd-Jones, D Martyn (1977) *The Christian Soldier*, Grand Rapids, MI; Baker Books.
- Lloyd-Jones, D Martyn (1986) *The Christian Warfare: An Exposition of Ephesians 6:10-13*. Grand Rapids, MI: Baker Book.
- MacArthur, John Dr (2005) *The John MacArthur Pastor's Library: Counseling, How to Counsel Biblically*. Nashville, Tennessee: John Mac Arthur,
- MacLaine, Shirley (1989) *Going Within*. New York: Bantam.
- Maquire, Robert & Doe, Charles J (2009) *Commentary on John Bunyan's The Holy War*.
- Marrs, J (2000) *Rule by Secrecy, The Hidden History that connects the trilateral Commission, the freemasons and the Great Pyramids*, New York: Harper Collins.
- Marrs, Texe Prof (2008) *Mysterious Monuments: Encyclopedia of Secret Illuminati Designs, Masonic Architecture and Occult Places*. Austin, Texas: RiverCrest Publishing.
- Mars, J (2000) *Rule by Secrecy. The Hidden History That Connects the Trilateral Commission, the Freemasons and the Great Pyramids*. New York: Harper Collins.

- Martin, Walter (2008) *The Kingdom of the Occult*, Rio De Janeiro, Beijing: Thomas Nelson Publishers.
- Martin, Walter Dr (2008) *The Kingdom of the Occult*. Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson.
- Mcdowell, Josh & Stewart, Don (1983) *Demons, Witches, and the Occult*, Campus Crusade for Christ: Here's Life Publishers.
- Mckey Albert Gallatin (1996) *The History of freemasons, its Legendary origins*, New York: Gramercy Books.
- Mears, Henrietta C Dr (1990) *What the Bible is all about*, Ventura, California: Regal.
- Milanovich, Norma and McCune, Shirley (1996) *The Light Shall Set You Free*. Scottsdale, AZ: Athena Publishing.
- Miller, Kim (1987) "Mother God: Woman's Rites and the Tribulation." *Concerned Christians*, July/August 1987.
- Missler, Chuck and Eastman, Mark (1997) *Alien Encounters: The Secret Behind the UFO Phenomenon*. Coeur d'Alene, ID: Koinonia House.
- Möller, FP Dr; (1991) *Woorde and Lig en Lewe (Deel 1)*, Westdene, Westhove: Evangelie Uitgewers.
- Murphy, ED Dr (2003) *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*, Rio De Janeiro, Beijing; Thomas Nelson.
- Murray Andrew Dr (1996) *The Holiest of All*. New Kensington, PA: Whitaker House.
- Murray, Andrew (1981) *The Blood of the Cross*. New Kensington, PA: Whitaker House.
- Murray, Andrew (1981) *With Christ in the School of Prayer*. New Kensington, PA: Whitaker House.
- Murray, Andrew (1998) *Andrew Murray on Prayer*, New Kensington, PA: Whitaker House.
- Murray, Andrew (2010) *Divine Healing*.
- Murray, Andrew DD Dr (1963) *The Spirit of Christ*, London, Edinburgh: Oliphant's Publishers.
- Murray, Andrew Dr (1982) *Absolute Surrender*. New Kensington, PA: Whitaker House.
- Murray, Andrew Dr (1982) *Andrew Murray on the Holy Spirit*. New Kensington, PA: Whitaker House.
- Murray, Andrew Dr (1982) *Humility*. New Kensington, PA: Whitaker House Publishers.
- Murray, Andrew Dr (1983) *The Master's Indwelling*. Springdale, PA: Whitaker House.

- Murray, Andrew Dr (1984) Obtain the power of God. New Kensington, PA: Whitaker House Publishers.
- Murray, Andrew Dr (1984) The Believers New Covenant. Minneapolis, Minnesota: Bethany Publishers,
- Murray, Andrew Dr (1984) The Blessing of Obedience. New Kensington, PA: Whitaker House.
- Murray, Andrew Dr (1996) The Holiest of All. New Kensington, PA: Whitaker House Publishers.
- Myers, Allen C (1987) The Eerdmans Bible Dictionary, Grand Rapids, Michigan: William B Eerdmans Publishing Company.
- Nee, Watchman (1977) The Spiritual Man. Part III. Richmond, Virginia: Christian Fellowship Publishers, INC.
- Olukoya DK Dr (1999) Prayer Rain, Lagos, Nigeria: Mountain of Fire and Miracles Ministries.
- Olukoya, DK Dr (2001) Dealing with Witchcraft barbers, Nigeria: The Battle Cry Ministries.
- Ostman, Charles (09/04/1996) *"The Internet as an Organism: Emergent Human / Internet Symbiosis."* Thirteenth European Meeting on Cybernetics and System Research at the University of Vienna, Austria.
- Oxford (1961) Damascus Document, Manuscripts A: The Essene Writings from Qumran.
- Partridge, Christopher (2005) The New Lion Handbook: The World's Religions, Oxford, England: Lion Hudson printers.
- Pauwells, Louis and Bergier, Jacques (1967) The Dawn of Magic. Panther Books.
- Payne, Barton J (1962) The Theology of the Old Testament. Grand Rapids: Zondervan,
- Peale, Norman Vincent (1982) Positive Imaging. Fleming H. Revell,
- Penn-Lewis Jessie (1996) Secrets of Spiritual Warfare, New Kensington, PA; Whitaker House.
- Pentecost, J Dwight (1996) Your adversary The Devil, Grand Rapids, MI: Kregal Publications.
- Personal interview with Prof Dr Connie MJ Brand on *"The different Signs of the End-Times"* (2012).
- Pettegrew, Larry (2001) The New Covenant Ministry of the Holy Spirit. Grand Rapids, MI: Kregal Publications.
- Pfeiffer, Charles F Vos Howard F; Rea, John Editors (1975) Wycliffe Bible dictionary, Peabody, Massachusetts: Hendrikson Publishers.
- Phillpott Kent 91973) A Manual of Demonology and the Occult. Grand Rapids, MI: Zondervan.

- Phipott, Kent (2008) *Demonology and the Occult*, Grand Rapids, Michigan: Zondervan Publishers House.
- Powel, Thomas (1945) *Apostolic Succession*.
- Powlison, David (1992) *Integration or Inundation? In Michael Horton, ed., Power Religion: The selling out of the Evangelical Church?* Chicago: Moody Press.
- Price, Paula A Dr (2006) *The Prophet's Dictionary*, Tulsa, UK: Whitaker House publishers.
- Prince, Derek (1987) *Spiritual Warfare*, Fort Lauderdale, FL: Whitaker House Publishers.
- Prince, Derek (2008) *Protection from Deception*, Charlotte, North Carolina: Whitaker House.
- Prince, Derek Dr (1990) *Blessing or Curse: You can Choose*. Maitland, South Africa: Struik Christian Books.
- Puch, Joye Jeffries Dr (2006) *Eden*. Mustang, OK: Tata Publishing
- Quayle, Stephan (2002) *Genesis 6 Giants. End time Thunder*.
- Quayle, Stephen (2003) *Genetic Armageddon*. Bozeman, MT: End Time Publishers.
- Quayle, Stephen (2008) *Giants: Master Builders of Prehistoric and Ancient Civilizations*. Bozeman, MT: End Time Thunder Publishers.
- Ramsdwell, Edward T in Vergillius Ferm ed, *An Encyclopaedia of Religion*, New York: The Philosophical Library.
- Reed, Annete Yoshiko (2005) *Fallen Angels and the History of Judaism and Christianity: The Reception of Enochic Literature*. Cambridge
- Rhodes, Ron (2001) *The Challenge of the Cults*, Grand Rapids, Michigan: Zondervan.
- Richard, James B (2004) *Satan unmasked, The Truth Behind the Lie*, Huntsville AL: Milestone international Publishers.
- Richet, Charles; Stanley Debrath (2003) *Thirty Years of Psychical Research*, Whitefield, MO: Kessinger.
- Ritchie, Mark (1997) *Story of the Church – Augustine and the Pelagian Controversy*.
- Robeson, Carol & Jerry (1987) *Strongman's, his Name & What is His Game?* Woodburn, OR: Whitaker House.
- Robeson, Jerry & Carol Dr (1984) *Strongman's, His name: An Biblical Approach to Spiritual Warfare*. New Kensington, PA: Whitaker House.
- Ryle, JC &, Martyn D (1952) *Holiness, Its Nature, Hindrances, Difficulties, and Roots*, Great Britain: Burleigh Press.
- Ryrie, CC (1999) *Basic Theology, A Popular Systematic Guide to Understanding Biblical Truth*.

- Ryrie, Charles C (1999) *Basic Theology, A popular Systematic Guide to Understand Biblical Truth*, Chicago: Moody Press.
- Samuel Chadwick, "Joyful News" as quoted by A,W, Pink in "The Holy Spirit".
- Sandford, John & Mark (2007) *Deliverance and Inner Healing*. Grand Rapids, MI.: Baker Publishing.
- Sandford, John & Paula (1982) *The Transformation of the Inner Man*. Tulsa, OK: Victory House.
- Sandford, John and Paula (1982) *The most comprehensive book on inner healing today*. Tulsa, OK: Tulsa House INC.
- Sandford, John L, & Sandfort, Loren R (...) *The Renewal of the Mind*, Tulsa Oklahoma: Victory House Publishers.
- Sandford, John Loren (2000) *Healing the Nations: A call to global intercession*, Mill hill, London: Monarch Books.
- Sandford, John Loren an Paula (2008) *Awakening the Slumbering Spirit*. Lake Mary, Florida: Charisma House.
- Sanford, Agnes (1947) *The Healing Light*. Macalester: Self-published
- Savard, Liberty (2001) *Shattering your Strongholds, Freedom From Your Struggles*, Gainesville Florida: Bridge-Logos Publishers.
- Schaeffer, Frances A (1972) *How Should We Then Live?* Old Tappen, NJ: Fleming H, Revell publishers.
- Schaffer, Francis (1976) *Genesis in Space and Time*. Downers Grove, Ill.: Inter Varsity.
- Schleir, H (1961) *Principalities and Powers in the New Testament*, New York: Herder and Herder.
- Schwartz, Mark F & Colin, Leigh (1996) *Sexual Abuse and Eating disorders*. London: Brunner-Rutledge.
- Scofield CI (1917) *The Scofield Reference Bible*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Scott, Peck M (1978) *The Road Less Traveled*, New York, America: Simon & Schuster.
- Scott, Peck M Dr (1983) *People of the Lie*, New York, New York: Published by Simon & Schuster.
- Sheets, Dutch (1996) *Intercessory Prayer*. Ventura, California, USA: Regal Publishers.
- Sheets, Dutch (2001) *The power of Interceding Prayer*, California, USA: CUM Publishers.
- Sherman, Dean (1995) *Spiritual Warfare for every Christian, How to live in victory and retake the land*, Seattle WA; YWAM Publishers.

- Shriner, Sherry (2005) Bible Codes Revealed, the Coming UFO Invasion, USA: iUniverse.
- Simon, Bernard (2004) The Essence of the Gnostics, Royston: Hertfordshire SG85BW.
- Simon, Brand (2004) The essence of the Gnostics, Royston, Hertfordshire: Eagle Edition.
- Smith, R Payne in Charles John Ellicott (1954) Bible Commentary for English Readers. New York: Castle and Company.
- Spanger, David (1977) Reflections of the Christ. Forres, Scotland: The Findhorn Foundation,
- Springmeier, Fritz (1991) Be Wise as Serpents. Special pre-publication edition for private circulation, Chapter One.
- Stearman, Gary (2010) The Extraterrestrial Question. "*Prophecy in the News magazine*": Edition, March 2010.
- Stedman (1975) Spiritual Warfare. Portland, Ore.: Multnomah,
- Strong, James (1890) Strong's Exhaustive Concordance of the Bible, Hendrickson Publishers. Online edition. (www.corsswalk.com)
- Sumrall, Lester (1973) Demons the answer book, New Kensington, PA: Whitaker House.
- Sumrall, Lester (2001) Demonology & Deliverance I & II, South Bend, Indiana: Sumrall Publishers.
- Sumrall, Lester Dr (1993) The Gifts and ministries of the Holy Spirit. South Bend, IN: Whitaker House Publishers.
- Sutton, William Josiah (1995) The Illuminati 666. Brushton, NY: TEACH Service, Inc.
- Tandy, Vic. "*Ghost in the Machine.*" Article: Journal of the Science for Psychical Research Article.
- Tellingner, Michael (2005) Slave Species of god. Waterval Boven, SA: ZULU Planet.
- Tellingner, Michael (2011) Science and Consciousness Conference held on 25-27 November 2011 in Johannesburg , South Africa.
- Terrell, Thelma (1993) Tuella, Project World Evacuation. Inner Light Publications.
- The Journal of Transpersonal Psychology of 1984. Volume 16, No. 1, Their examination of the remains indicate that the animal's skin is typically burned along the edge of what appears to be surgical sites. The most unusual finding is the complete absence of blood within the animal's veins, muscles and ligaments.
- Theissen, Henry C (1949) Lectures in Systematic Theology, Grand Rapids, Michigan: William B, Eerdmans Publishing Company.

- Tidy, David (1995) *Discerning The Mixture*. United Kingdom: Prayer Warriors International.
- Torrey, RA (1901) *The Person & Work of the Holy Spirit*, Springdale, PA: Whitaker House.
- Townsend, John Dr (1991) *Hiding from Love*, Grand Rapids, Michigan: Zondervan Publishers.
- Tozer, A.W. *Born After Midnight*. Harrisburg: Christian Publishers, p.43.
- Tozer, AW (1985) *Christians in the Wake of the Sexual Revolution*, Portland, Ore: Multnomah.
- Unger, Merrill F (1994) *Biblical Demonology: A study of spiritual forces at work today*. Grand Rappids, MI: Kregal Publications.
- Uzorma, lyke Nathan Dr (2007) *Occult grandmaster now in Christ*, Apapa, Lagos State: Glorious People Nig Ltd.
- Valee, Jasque (1975) *The Invisible College: What a Group of Scientist Has Discovered About UFO Influences on the Human Race*. New York: Dutton.
- Van der Walt, Amelia (2008) *Exegetical Evidence pertaining to the Immanence of the Eternal Feminine from Antiquity in the Dawn of the Age of Aquarius*. Pretoria, Gauteng: Print & Bookbinding Solutions, Van der Walt, Amelia (2008) *Exegetical Evidence pertaining to the Immanence of the Eternal Feminine from Antiquity in the Dawn of the Age of Aquarius*. Pretoria, Gauteng: Print & Bookbinding Solutions.
- Vizzutti, Richard (2003) *Return of the Stargods*. Canada: Trafford Publishing,
- Wagner, Peter (1992) *Warfare Prayer*. Ventura, California: Regal Books.
- Wagner, Peter C (1991) *Territorial Spirits*, Chichester, England: British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data.
- Wagner, Peter C. Prof (1993) *Breaking Strongholds in Your City: How to use Spiritual Mapping to make your prayers more strategic, effective and targeted*. Ventura, California: Regal Books.
- Waldeck, Val (1993) *What do they believe?* Bluff, Durban: Self Published.
- Walter, Martin (2008) *The Kingdom of the Occult*, Nashville, Tennessee: Thomas Nelson Publishers.
- Webster's Third New International Dictionary, unabridged, (1986) Springfield, Mass: Merriam-Webster.
- Wigglesworth, Smith (1993) *The Secret of His Power*. Tulsa, Oklahoma: Harrison House.
- Wright, Hendry (2005) *A More Excellent Way: Be in Health. Spiritual Roots of Disease Pathways to Wholeness*. Thomaston, GA: Pleasant Valley Church INC.

Yoshiko Reed, Annette (2005) *Fallen Angels and History of Judaism and Christianity: The Reception of Enochic Literature*. New York, NY: Cambridge University press.

Zika, Bill. "Meditation and Altered States of Consciousness: A Psychodynamic Interpretation", in *Journal of Psychology and Christianity*, Vol. 3, no. 3; pp. 87-90 and relevant sections in the *Baker Encyclopedia of Psychology* and various issues in the *Journal of Psychology and Theology*.

Internet Research

- Anthropology and Hamartiology: Man and Sin.
(<http://bible.org/series/anthrology-harmatology-man-and-sin>)
- Apostle Samuel Arboleda Lima Perú.
(www.impactperu.org).
- Barnes, Albert (1962) Barnes' Notes on the New Testament. Kregel Publications.
(<http://books.google.com/books?id+qvXCoSQ1yoXC&dq=Barnes>)
- Bobgan, Martin & Deidre. The spoiling of Christianity By Psychology.
(<http://www.logosresourcespages.org/counsling/spoiling.htm>)
- Bradley, Sue (2007) Sounding the Code.
(<http://www.thecentreoflight.net>)
- Deffinbaugh, Robert L (2005) The Sons of God and the Daughters of Men (Genesis 6:1-8). (http://www.bible.org/page.asp?page_id=67)
- Emahiser, Clifton A. The Two Seeds of Genesis 3:15.
(http://www.childrenofyahweh.com/Other%20Reading/two_seeds.htm)
- Guenther, p.62.
(<http://www25.brinkster.com/lowerstroom/watchers/fallen.html>)
- Henry, Mathew. Matthew Henry's Commentary, s.v. "John 18:33-34".
(<http://www.christnotes.org/commentary>)
<http://www25.brinkster.com/lowestroom/watchers/fallen.html>, p.16.
- Jahbulon – Wikipedia.
(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Jahbulon>)
- Ryrie, Charles. Isaiah 14 and Ezekiel 28.
(<http://www.goodseed.com/learning/article/isaiah-14-ezekiel-28/>)
- Richard (2010) Retrieved from:
(http://en.wikiquote.org/wiki/Richard_Seed)
- The Covenant Redemption: Wikipedia, pp. 2-3.
(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Covenant_theology)
(<http://bible.seriespage/anthropology-hamartiology-man-and-sin>)
(<http://bible.seriespage/anthropology-hamartiology-man-and-sin>)
(<http://bible.seriespage/anthropology-hamartiology-man-and-sin>)
(http://www.childrenofyahweh.com/Other%20Reading/two_seeds.htm)
(http://www.childrenofyahweh.com/Other%20Reading/two_seeds.htm)
(http://www.childrenofyahweh.com/Other%20Reading/two_seeds.htm)
(<http://www.the-highway.com/artivleJune03.html>)
(<http://www.whatsaiththescriture.com/voice/Murray.Divine.Healing.html>)
(<http://www.whatsaiththescriture.com/voice/Murray.Divine.Healing.html>)
(https://www.adbusters.or/the_magazine/63/Were_Cracking_the_Neural_Code_the_Brains_Secret_Language.html)
(thehiddenrecords.com web)
(thehiddenrecords.com web)

- “Out-of-body experience”, (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Out-of-body_experience).
- Giants in the Earth. (2003) Part I: “Giants of the Ancient Near East”, Mysterious World (Springs 2003), accessed April 26, 2011.
(<http://www.mysteriousworld.com/Journal/2003/Spring/Giants>)
- McArthur, JP. A call for Discernment: Part 2 of 3.
(<http://www.ondoctrines.com/2mac0017.htm>)
- 911: False media – Wiki-company.
(http://wikicompany.org/wiki/911:False_media)
- Africa! Come froth out of Bondage!” of Amanda Buys.
(<http://www.kanaanministries.org>)
- A call to Holiness – Bible.org.
(<http://bible.org/seriespage/call-holiness-1-peter-114-16>)
- Actual sin. Wikipedia.
(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Actual_sin)
- Aeon – Wikipedia.
(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Aeon>)
- Age of Enlightenment - Wikipedia.
(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Age_of_Enlightenment)
- Air (classical element) – Wikipedia.
([http://www.en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Air_\(classical_element\)](http://www.en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Air_(classical_element)))
- Alchemy – Wikipedia.
(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alchemy>)
- Andrew Murray (Minister) – Wikipedia.
([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Andre_Murray_\(minister\)](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Andre_Murray_(minister)))
- Apolegetics - What is a Cult.
(<http://www.cultfaq.org/cultfaq-cult-definition.html#subject1>)
- Apologists - Who joins Cults. and Why?
(<http://www.apologeticsindex.org/265-who-joins-cults-and-why>)
- Apostolic Creed – Wikipedia.
(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/apostles'_Creed)
- Armstrong. John H. (1996) The coming Evangelical Crisis.
(http://bible.org/seriespage/bible-understanding-its_message).
- Astrology – Wikipedia.
(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Astrology>)
- Athanasius Creed - Wikipedia.
(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Athanasian_Creed)
- Atlantis rises Again.
(<http://www.crossroad.to/articles2/Atlantis.htm>)

Atonement – Wikipedia.

(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Atonement>)

Brainwashing and How to resist it.

(<http://www.crossroad.to/chart/brainwashing.html>)

Buddhism.

(<http://relionfacts.com/buddhism/index.htm>)

Buys. Amanda. Soul Care School.

(www.kanaanministries.org)

Catholic encyclopedia: Gnosticism.

(<http://newadvent.org/cathen/06592a.htm>)

Celsus - Message Board: Religions.

(<http://my.att.net/s/community.dll?ep=4&globalboard=1&discussionid=25279811&c>)

Christ – Wikichritian.

(<http://www.wikichristian.org/index.php/Messiah>)

Christian revival – Wikipedia.

(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Christian_revival)

Christian views of sin. Wikipedia.

(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Christian_view_of_sin)

Church of God - Wikipedia.

([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Church_of_God_\(Anderson,_Indiana\)](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Church_of_God_(Anderson,_Indiana)))

Clement of Alexandria.

(http://orthodoxwiki.org/Clement_of_Alexandria)

Clement of Alexandria. The Stomata. or Miscellanies.: The Gnostic Society Library.

(<http://www.gnosis.org/library/strom2htm>)

Council of Chalcedon – Wikipedia.

(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Council_of_Chalcedon)

Creed – Wikipedia.

(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Creed>)

Cult - Simply English Wikipedia.

(<http://simple.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cult>)

Cults: Definition of the word Cult.

(<http://bible.org/questions/often-word-sult-refer-negatively-certain-modern-christian-sects-its-use-implies-these->)

De Lashmutt. Gary; Mc Callum. Dennis. Occult Bondage: Definitions and Solutions.

(<http://www.xenos.org/essays/occult.htm>)

Definition of theodicy – Wikipedia.

(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Theodicy>)

Deism – Wikipedia.

(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Deism>)

Doctrine of the Holy Spirit.

(www.calvarybiblechurch.org/...holy-spirit.../1%20spirit%20intro.pdf)

Doctrine of the Holy Spirit.

(http://www.calvarybiblechurch.org/...holy_spirit.../1%20Spirit%10intro.pdf)

Earth (Classical element) – Wikipedia.

([http://www.en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Earth_\(classical_element\);](http://www.en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Earth_(classical_element);)

Ecumenical council - Christianity Knowledge Base.

(http://christianity.wikia.com/wiki/Ecumenical_Council)

Ecumenical council.

(<http://www.ccel.org/ccel/schaff/npnf214.x.xvi.x.html>)

Emanuel Swedenborg.

(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Emanuel_Swedenborg)

Ennead – Wikipedia.

(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ennead>)

Esotericism – Wikipedia.

(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Esotericism>)

Evidence for God's Existence – Bible.org.

(<http://bible.org/seriespage/evidence-gods-existence>)

Evil: Definitions on the Web.

(http://www.google.co.za/search?hl=en&rlz=1W1SKPB_en&q=define%3Aevil+&btnG=Search&meta)

Fathers of Christian Gnosticism – VisWiki.

(http://www.viswiki.com/en/Fathers_of_Christian_Gnosticism)

Filioque - Wikipedia.

(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Filioque>)

Foundations for the Study of Prophecy (Revelation) – Bible.org.

(<http://bible.org/seriespage/foundations-study-prophecy-revelation>)

Gaebelein. Frank (1997) *The Expositors' Bible Commentary*. Zondervan.

Grand Rapids: Electronic Media.

(<http://www.Bible.org>)

Gnosis - Wikipedia.

(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gnosis>)

Gnosticism – Wikipedia.

(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gnosticism>)

Gnosticism in Modern Times – Wikipedia.

(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gnosticism_in_modern_times)

Gnosticism versus Christianity.

(<http://www.crossroad.to/chart/Gnosticism.html>)

Gnosticism.

(<http://www.gnostic-jesus.com/Gnosis.html>)

Gnosticism; The Gnostic Cosmos: Dualism and Monism.

(<http://gnostic-jesus.com/Overview/salvation.html>)

Godwin. John (1972) Occult America. Online interview accessed on 9 May 2006.

(<http://www.churchofsatan.com/Pages/LaVeyOccultAmerica.html>)

Goodrick. Clark (1985) The Occult Roots of Nazism.

(<http://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Gnosis>)

Greco-Roman Mysteries – Wikipedia.

(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Greco-Roman_mysteries)

Hamartiology – Wikipedia.

(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hamartiology>)

Harrick. Greg. Anthropology & Hamartiology: Man and Sin.

(<http://bible.org/node/728>)

Hermes Trismegistus – Wikipedia.

(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hermes_Trismegistus)

Herrick. Greg. Anthropology & Hamartiology: Man and Sin.

(<http://bible.org/seriespage/anthropology-hamartiology-man-and-sin>)

Hinduism.

(<http://religionfacts.com/hinduism/index.htm>)

Holiness – Bible.org.

(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sacred>)

Holy Spirit – Wikipedia.

(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Holy_Spirit)

Holy War – Answers.com.

(<http://www.answers.com/topic/religious-war>)

Horus – Wikipedia.

(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ra-harakhty>)

Incarnation - Wikipedia.

(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Incarnation_%28Christianity%29)

Indigo children – Wikipedeia.

(http://Wikipedia.org/wiki/Indigo_children)

Introduction to Doctrine. Theological Hierarchy.

(<http://www.bible.org>)

Introduction to the Miracles of Jesus.

(<http://bible.org/seriespage/introduction-miracle-jesus>)

Islam.

(<http://www.religionfacts.com/islam/index.htm>)

Keathley J Hampton III (1998) Angelology: The doctrine of Angels.

(<http://www.hamptonk3@Bible.org>)

Keathley. Hampton J – The Bible: Understanding its Message.

(<http://bible.org/seriespage/bible-understanding-its-message>)

Keathley. J Hampton (1998) Satanology: Our Invisible Adversary.

(<http://www.Bible.org>)

Keathley. J. Hampton (1998) Satanology. Our Invisible Adversary. the Devil.

(<http://www.hamptonk3@bible.org>)

May. Edwin C ; Vilenskaya. Larissa. Overview of Current parapsychology Research in the former Soviet Union. Libraries for Fundamental Research. (<http://222.lfr.org/LFR/cs/library/Fsu.pdf>.)

Miller. Jeff. Freedom from Sin.

(<http://bible.orb/seriespage/freedom-sin>)

Miracle – Wikipedia.

(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Miracle>)

Monotheism: Only one God exists.

(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Monotheism>)

Mother goddess – Wikipedia.

(http://www.en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mother_goddess).

Movies and TV and The Medium of Society.

(<http://logosresourcepages.org/Believers/movies.htm>)

Mysticism – Wikipedia.

(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mysticism>)

Naturalism – Wikipedia.

(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Naturalism>)

Neo-Platonism - Wikipedia.

(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Theurgy>)

Nicene Creed - Wikipedia.

(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/nicene_Creed)

Occult – The Youth ministries Alert.

(<http://youthministries.wordpress.com?category/occult/>)

Occult – Wikipedia.

(<http://www.viswiki.com/en/Occult>)

Origen – Wikipedia.

(http://wikipedia.org/wiki/Origen_of_Alexandra)

Original Sin – Wikipedia.

(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Original_sin)

Pantheism – Wikipedia.

(<http://en.wikipedia.org/Pantheism>)

Peter Wagner - Wikipedia.

(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/C._Peter_Wagner)

Plato – Wikipedia.

(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Plato>)

Platonic realism – Wikipedia.

(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Platonic_realism)

Platonism – Wikipedia.

(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Platonism>)

Porphyra – Wapedia.

([http://wapedia.mobi/en/Porphyra_\(philosopher\)](http://wapedia.mobi/en/Porphyra_(philosopher)))

Ra – Wikipedia.

(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ra>)

Resurrection of Jesus - Wikipedia.

(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Resurrection_of_Jesus)

Sacred – Wikipedia.

(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sacred>)

Salvation in Gnosticism.

(<http://gnostic-jesus.com/Overview/salvation.html>)

Sawyer. James – The witness of the Spirit in the Protestant Tradition.

(<http://bible.org/seriespage/witness-spirit-protestant-tradition>)

Shaw. Elliott (2007) Greco-Roman religions. Overview of world religions

Web page. PHILTAR: University of Cumbria.

(<http://philtar.ucm.ac.uk/encyclopedia/europe/grecorom.html>)

Simon Magus - Wikipedia.

(http://en.wiki.org/wiki/Simon_Magus)

Sin - Wikipedia.

(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sin>)

Socrates – Wikipedia.

(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Socrates>).

Spiritual Warfare – Wikipedia.

(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spiritual_Warfare)

Strauss. Lehman. The Doctrine of Sin.

(<http://bible.org/article/doctrine-sin>)

Substitutionary atonement - Wikipedia.

(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Substitutionary_atonement)

The American Heritage Dictionary of the English language. 4th Edition.

Published by Houghton Mifflin Company.

(<http://www.answers.com/libRARY/Dictionary-cid-2256675>)

- The authority of the Bible – Bible.org.
(<http://bible.org/article/authority-bible>)
- The dead Sea Scrolls.
(<http://bible.org/article/dead-sea-scrolls>)
- The doctrine of Sin. Lehman Strauss.
(<http://bible.org/article/doctrine-sin>)
- The Doctrine of the Son.
(http://www.bible.org/page.php?page_id=166)
- The essence of Gnosticism.
(http://www.newdawnbooks.info/Reviews/Essence_of_the_Gnostics.html)
- The Fall of Man – Bible.com.
(<http://bible.org/seriespage/fall-man>)
- The Fall of Man – Wikipedia.
(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fall_of_Man)
- The four sons of Horus – Wikipedia.
(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/four_sons_of_horus).
- The Holy Spirit - Discipleship.
(<http://www.wcg.org/lit/disc/13HolyS.htm>)
- The people of the Lie.
(<http://www.sweetty.com>)
- The Spirit of Jezebel.
(<http://www.sweetty.com>)
- The triple goddess- Wikipedia.
([http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Triple_Goddess_\(Neopaganism\)](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Triple_Goddess_(Neopaganism)))
- Theosophy: Cardiff.
(<http://www.theosophycardiff.care4free.net/istheosophyareligion.htm>)
- Theurgy – Wikipedia.
(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Theurgy>)
- Third-Wave of the Holy Spirit.
(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Third_Wave_of_the_Holy_Spirit)
- Trinity - Wikipedia.
(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Trinity>)
- Triple Deity – Wikipedia.
(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Triple_deity)
- Valintinianism – Wikipedia.
(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Valentinianism#Sacraments>)
- Virgin birth of Jesus - Wikipedia.
(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Virgin_birth_of_Jesus)

- Walvoord. John F & Zuck. Roy B (1983) *The Bible Knowledge Commentary*.
Wheaton. Ill: Published by Victory Books.
(<http://www.Bible.org>)
- Walvoord. John F. Bible.org. Why believe the Bible?
(<http://bible.org/print/book/export/html/5565>)
- Western esotericism – Wikipedia.
(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Western_esotericism)
- What is Gnosticism.
(<http://www.gnostic-jesus.com/Gnosis.html>)
- What is Religion? Definitions and Quotes.
(<http://www.religionfacts.com/religion/quotes.htm>)
- Wicca – Wikipedia.
(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiccans>)
- Wiki: Jessie Penn-Lewis.
(http://wapedia.mobi/en/Jessie_Penn-Lewis)
- Wikipedia – Free Will.
(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Free_will_in_theology)
- Wikipedia – Pelagius.
(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pelagius>)
- Will of God – Wikipedia. (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Will_of_God)
- Witchcraft defined.
(<http://www.unhealthydevotions.com/definitions.htm>)
- Zoroastrianism – Wikipedia.
(<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Zoroastrianism>)

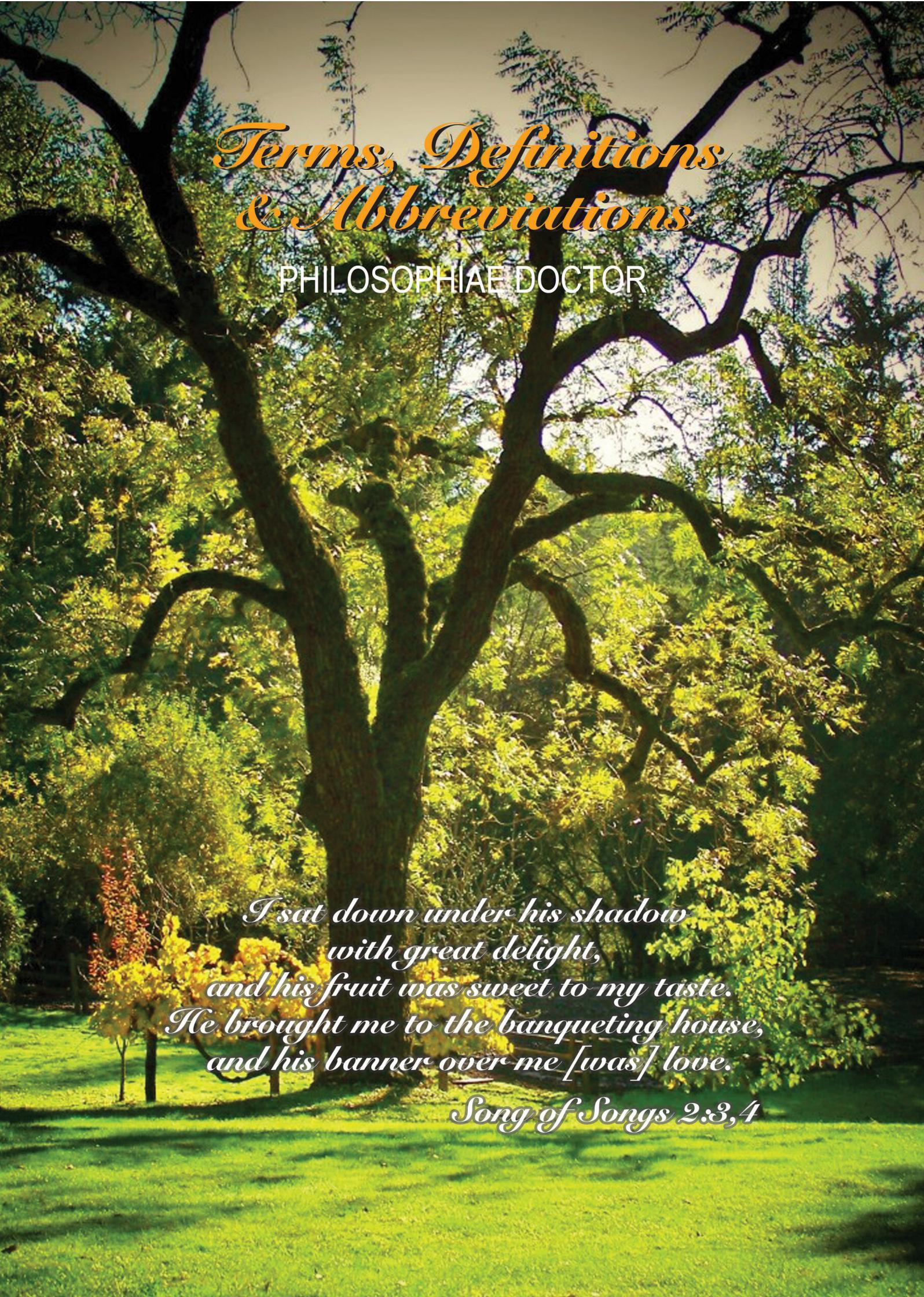
Bibles

New International Study Bible (New International Version), Grand Rapids, Michigan: Zondervan Publishing House.

The Holy Bible (The Amplified Version), Grand Rapids, Michigan: Zondervan Publishing House.

The King James Red Letter Bible.

-----oOo-----



*Terms, Definitions
& Abbreviations*

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

*I sat down under his shadow
with great delight,
and his fruit was sweet to my taste.
He brought me to the banqueting house,
and his banner over me [was] love.*

Song of Songs 2:3,4



*Terms, Definition
& Abbreviations*

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR

*I sat down under his shadow
with great delight,
and his fruit was sweet to my taste.
He brought me to the banqueting house,
and his banner over me [was] love.*

Song of Songs 2:3,4

Cover Art for Chapters: Susan Langeveldt
Graphic Design: SL Studios



Terms, Definitions and Abbreviations

A curse

A curse is the penalty given by God to a person and to his descendants as the result of their iniquity.

A Stronghold

A Stronghold is a fortified place that Satan builds to exalt himself against the knowledge and plans of God. There are different types of strongholds: Personal strongholds (sin create 'holes in our armour'); strongholds of the mind; Ideological Strongholds (the New Age is one of the most serious threats to Christianity and are inspired by invisible forces and powers of darkness); Occult strongholds (are many Ideological strongholds of witchcraft, Satanism and New Age religions which invite spirit guides to operate in areas); social strongholds (poverty, racism, injustice); strongholds between City and Church (where the church see the city government as its enemy); seats of Satan (highly oppressed and demonically controlled geographic locations that reign and rule areas); sectarian strongholds (division causing strongholds between churches, such as pride, idolatry of belief systems, fear of rejection); strongholds of iniquity (sins of the fathers that cause weaknesses in generation).

A word of Knowledge

A word of Knowledge is the supernatural revelation by God's Holy Spirit of a small fraction (or word) of God's knowledge concerning a very precise thing or person. It is Divine granted "flash" of revelation by God's Spirit. Man is passive in the receiving by it. It is one of the Gifts of revelation. The word of Knowledge depends on our fellowship with God. The mind of the person does not operate actively in it, but the "mind of the spirit". The Lord opens for a person a small window in the supernatural world. The purpose can be a warning, to enlighten and encourage, to expose something hidden, to convince a sinner, to reveal corruption, to reveal something. The word of knowledge can mightily aid in effectual prayer either for God servant in distress or for those in need of help. This gift does not work through the gift of prophecy – it is an additional gift.

A word of Wisdom

A word of Wisdom is supernatural wisdom super-nationally and divinely applied. A word of Wisdom is the supernatural revelation by God's Holy Spirit of Divine Purpose – the Supernatural unfolding of the Mind and Plans of God. It includes thus a divine command(s) and instruction of God to be obeyed.

Aion

The meaning of Aion includes "Life and Death", "everlasting", as well as "end of the age or world".

An Exorcist

An Exorcist is a person who cast out evil spirits by adjuration and conjuration by magical rites. Exorcism is carried out through the use of various rituals of exorcism and often utilize sacramental's.

Animal mutilations

Animal mutilations have been occurring worldwide for sometime. Many cases are documented around the world from 1960. Research is ongoing that details facts about UFO sightings and animal mutilation.

While abducted humans are usually returned alive following medical probing aboard UFO's, animals are returned to their pastures mutilated. From the incisions' left on the animals' maimed bodies, it appears they have also been exposed to some unknown form of probing. Mutilation is by no means a small problem. Numerous animals have been discovered throughout the world with what appears to be surgical intervention using an unknown heating element. Right before a mutilated animal is found by its owner, there is usually some type of UFO disturbance that is witnessed in the sky over the area of the mutilation site. Once the animal is found and its remains tested by vegetarians, their reports indicate that the animals are covered with strange cuts and incisions.

Animism

Animism derived from the Latin word *anima* meaning soul or life. It is a philosophical, religious or spiritual idea that souls or spirits exist not only in humans but also in animals, plants, rocks, natural phenomena such as thunder or geographic features such as mountains or rivers or other entities of the natural environment. Animism may further attribute souls to abstract concepts such as words, names or metaphors in mythology. Animism is found in religions of indigenous people, Shinto, Hinduism, Sikhism, Pantheism and Neo-Paganism. Philosophers such as Plato, Aristotle and Thomas Aquinas also contemplate the possibility that souls exist in animals, plants and people.

Anthropology

Anthropology is the study of human beings. The Greek word for man is arthropods. Man is the masterpiece of God's creative acts. He was made in the image of God to be the crowning glory of creation (Genesis 1:1-28; Psalm 94:9). He is far superior to all the animal creation combined. The finest looking ape cannot compare with man in his total being. Intelligent man is one of the greatest arguments for the existence of an intelligent God. Evolutionary theories are simply man's attempt to escape from creatorship accountability and responsibility.

Apostasy

The word Apostasy involves the renunciation / abandonment of a person's religious belief.

Ascension

Ascension involves when somebody's own individual interest is placed before other people.

Asherah

The Jewish Encyclopedia informs us that Asherah is a Hebrew word occurring frequently in the Bible and signify a wooden post or pole planted near the altars of various gods. The stone pillars seems to have represented the male god Baal (Jude 6:28), while the cult object of Asherah, probably a tree or a pole, constituted a symbol of this goddess. In the Old Testament, Asherah appears to be a goddess by the side of Baal, who consort she evidently came to be. Asherah was only one manifestation of a chief goddess of Western Asia, regarded as the wife, or as the sister of the principle Canaanite god EL.

Ashtoreth

Ashtoreth was the moon goddess of the Phoenicians, representing the passive principle in nature. On the other hand, she was identified with the planet Venus (the goddess of Venus, called Aphrodite). This worship was connected with the most impure rites is apparent from the close connection of this goddess with Asherah.

Astral projection/traveling

Astral projection/traveling is an esoteric interpretation of any form of out-of-body experience (**OBE**) that assumed the existence of an “astral body” separate from the physical body and capable of traveling outside it.

Axiom

The word “Axiom” implies the rationale, purpose and aim of a research.

Biblical Theism

Biblical Theism further states that God is the only really perfect person. God is perfect in mind – to know all (Omni-Science).

Calloused

Calloused implies to have an area of hard thickened skin.

Channeling

Channeling involves the alleged communication of spirit beings through humans as mediums.

Christian Mysticism

Christian Mysticism is the pursuit of communion with, or conscious awareness of the Christian God through direct experience, intuition, instinct or insight. Christian mysticism usually centers on a practice intended to nurture those experiences or awareness, such as deep prayer (i.e. meditation, contemplation) involving the person of Jesus Christ and the Holy Ghost. This approach and lifestyle is distinguished from other forms of Christian practice by its aim of achieving unity with the divine. In the words of Oswald Chambers, “We receive His blessings and know His Word, but do we know Him?”

Cognoscenti

Cognoscenti involve people who have a refined and superior knowledge of a subject.

Contemplation

Contemplation implies to meditate.

Death and Destruction

The Bible refers to the power of “Death and Destruction” that never gets enough, however the word *Destruction* is the Hebrew word for Sheol and Abaddon.

Deism

Deism is the belief that “a supreme being” created the universe and that this truth can be determined using reason and observation of the natural world alone.

Diana

In Ephesus Diana was worshiped as the goddess of virginity and motherhood. She was said to represent the generative powers of nature and was pictured with many breast. She might have been the most worshiped deity of the whole Roman Empire at that time. Her followers called her the 'great goddess', the 'saviour' and the 'queen of heaven'. She was known under other names, such as Artemis.

Dispensationalist

A Dispensationalist is a person who believes in God's progressive revelation.

DNA

Deoxyribonucleic acid is a nucleic acid containing the genetic instructions used in the development and functioning of all known living organisms. The DNS segments carrying this genetic information are called genes.

Ego-Theistic

Ego-Theistic is somebody's idea of his / her own importance or worth, usually of an appropriate level.

Empirical Knowledge

Empirical Knowledge is a theory of knowledge that asserts that knowledge arises from evidence gathered via sense experience. Empirical knowledge is a fundamental part of the scientific method that all hypotheses and theories must be tested against observations of the natural world, rather than resting solely on a prior reasoning, intuition or revelation. Science is considered methodologically empirical in nature.

Enlightenment Worldview

Enlightenment Worldview is the era in Western philosophy and intellectual, scientific and cultural life, centered upon the eighteenth century, in which reason was advocated as the primary source of legitimacy and authority.

Enlightenment

Enlightenment encompass achievement of a spiritual state; the realization of spiritual or religious understanding, or, especially in Buddhism, the state attained when the cycle of reincarnation ends and human desire and suffering are transcended.

Epistemology

Epistemology is the branch of philosophy that studies the nature of knowledge, its presuppositions and foundations, and its extent and validity.

Eugenics

Eugenics is the creation of more perfect **supermen** by modifying human genetic components.

Geography

Geography is the study of land areas, while demography is the study of how people are grouped in society.

Gilgamesh

Gilgamesh is born of two-thirds god and one-third human child (Lugalbanda and Ninsun).

Gnosis

The Greek language has two different words for knowledge: one of them represents Scientific or reflective knowledge, while the other, '*Gnosis*' stands for 'knowing through observation or experience. Gnostic uses this word to mean knowledge of a particular kind: A knowledge that was not gained through intellectual discovery, but through personal experience or association.

Gnosticism

Gnosticism is a pre-Christian and early Christian religious movement teaching that salvation comes by learning esoteric spiritual truths that free humanity from the material world – which in this movement is believed to be evil.

GRIN

GRIN stands for **G**enetics, **R**obotics, **A**rtificial intelligence and **N**anotechnology.

Henosis

Henosis is the process of union (unification) with “the One”, “the demiurge / the divine mind” (god). “The culmination of Henosis is Deification. Deification in this sense makes each man a god by replacing the concept of God as creator with themselves as creators, builders, craftsmen of their own lives. As specified in the writings of Plotinus, the *highest stage of deification* is tabula rasa, or a '*blank mind state*' where the individual may merge with 'the One (god)'. The absolute simplicity means that the 'nous (the person)' is then dissolved (suspended out of his body), and completely absorbed back into the monad (Gnostic salvation)....

It is the nous (the person) that ‘perceives’ and therefore causes the force – ‘the One (god)’ – to manifest as energy. The ‘Nous (the person)’ as being and perception (intellect) manifest what is called a ‘soul (World Soul)’. Examples of contemplation (meditation) are such as *internal epiphany* such as intuition and *external epiphany*, such as Theophany.”

Hermeneutic Principle

In the greater context, the passages of Ezekiel 28 and Isaiah 14, one has to consider a basic hermeneutic principle sometimes referred to as the principle of double fulfillment or double reference.

Iniquity

Iniquity means perversity, evil, to make crooked, to pervert and faulty (Romans 1).

Metaphysics

Metaphysics is a branch of philosophy that investigates principles of reality transcending those of any particular science. The word “metaphysic” derived from the Greek word “meta” meaning “beyond” or “after”. Metaphysics thus implies beyond the physical. Parmenides held’s that the changing forms and motions of existing things, are but an appearance of a single eternal reality (“being”), thus giving rise to the Parmenidean principle that “all is one”.

Monotheism

Monotheism is the belief that there is only one God who is transcendent and immanent at the same time (Omni-Present).

Morale

1. Moral principles, teachings, or conduct.
- 2.a The mental and emotional condition (as of enthusiasm, or loyalty) of an individual or group with regard to the function or tasks at hand .
- 2.b A sense of common purpose with respect to a group: ESPRIT DE CORPS.
3. The level of individual psychological well-being based on such factors as a sense of purpose and confidence in the future.

Muse

Muse in Greek Mythology is the goddesses or spirits who inspires the creation of literature and art. They are considered to be the source of knowledge.

Mysticism

Mysticism is the belief in intuitive spiritual revelation; the belief that personal communication or union with the divine is achieved through intuition, faith, ecstasy, or sudden insight rather through rational thought.

Naturalism

Naturalism (philosophy) is any of several philosophical stances wherein all phenomena or hypotheses commonly labeled as supernatural, are either false or not inherently different from natural phenomena or hypotheses.

Nephilim

Nephilim is the Hebrew word used to describe the offspring of the union between angels and women of Genesis 6. The word means “fallen ones”. We read that the angels came down twice, evidently once after the Flood, to again bear offspring with women.

The word Nephilim is used again to describe the giants living in the land that the spies reported were so huge, the Israelites feel like grasshoppers in comparison to them. Josephus wrote that the bones of the giants in the land were much evidence in his day, about 75 A.D. It is to be understood that Josephus made this observation some two thousand years ago and most of these bones would have decayed, been deeply buried or used for various purposes.

Pantheism

Pantheism is a theory, which holds that all finite things are merely aspects, modifications, or parts of one eternal and self-existing being. It regards God as one with the natural universe. God is all, and all is God. It appears in a variety of forms today, some of them a kind of reverential submission: Materialistic pantheism, Hylozoism and Pan-psychism, Neutralism, Idealism, and Philosophical mysticism. The prefix pan means “all” and refers to the idea that all that exists is God. For the pantheist, the final reality is spiritual, in fact, they saw matter as illusory, and therefore states that the existence of the material universe must be denied, to escape into the existence of the mind.

People are distracted from devotion by worldly attractions – such as ego, anger, greed, attachment and vulnerability (the Five Evils of the World), which evolves in separation from “god”. Nanak designed the word “guru” (meaning teacher) as the voice of God and the source and guide for knowledge and salvation. Salvation could only be reached through rigorous and disciplined devotion to “god”. He distinctly emphasized the irrelevance of outward observations such as rites, pilgrimages, or asceticism. He states that devotion must take place through the heart, with the spirit and the soul.

Perdition

Perdition involves punishment in hell.

Perfect image of man

Perfect in the context of this sentence implies to be a representative of the original image of man as created by God.

Pluralism

Pluralism is a system or philosophy (which in the name or respect for diversity), acknowledges the existence of different political opinions, morals, religious beliefs and cultural and social behavior in one society.

Presupposition

A Presupposition is a set of conscious or subconscious ideas and thoughts; a specific underlying involuntary ideas about matters; a frame of reference; a pro-active tendency to react in certain manner.

Prognosticates

The word prognosticates means the following: 1. To foretell or predict, esp. from signs or indications. 2. To indicate beforehand. The word “nachach” is linked to foretell things. Or its linked to witchcraft (whisper a magic spell) and humanism. It is linked to anything other than the Word of God.

Proselytizing

Proselytizing is to try to convert somebody.

Puritans

The puritans are members of a group of Protestants in the 16th and 17th century in England who believes in strict religious discipline and called for the simplification of acts of worship.

Python

Python was – according to a myth - a huge serpent who was famous for predicting future events.

Quantum physics

Quantum physics is the branch of physics that uses quantum theory.

Relativism

Relativism is generally based upon the ground that all truth or knowledge is subjective (one-sided), therefore all truth are equal. Thus, all truth is parallel.

Rephaim

Rephaim are giant occupants of Canaan of which Og, King of Bashan whose bed was eighteen feet long, belonged.

Republic democracy

A Republic democracy in this context refer to a society/nation/world order with a free and open debate prior to casting a vote pertaining to plurality of religions.

Salvation

Salvation means to be delivered, preserved, healed or made whole.

Secular Humanism

Secular Humanism is a philosophy that supports reason, ethics, and justice, and specifically rejects supernatural and religious dogma as the basis of morality and decision-making.

Sikhism

A Sikh is a member of a Indian religious group that broke away from Hinduism during the 16th century and advocate a monotheistic doctrine, incorporating some aspects of Islam. **Sikhism** is the fifth largest religion in the World (25, 8 million Sikhs). They state that God is omnipresent, but He is beyond human understanding, yet God is not wholly unknowable. This religion advocates the pursuit of salvation through discipline, personal meditation on the name and message of God. A key distinctive feature of Sikhism is a non-anthropomorphic concept of God (non-human characteristics) to the extent that one can interpret God as the Universe itself. Nanak sums up the essence of Sikh teachings in these words:

‘Realization of Truth is higher than all else. Higher still is truthful living.’ Nanak’s teachings are founded on a spiritual union with “god” that will result in salvation. The chief obstacle to attain salvation is social conflicts, which attach humanity to endless cycles of birth (reincarnation).

Stoics

Stoics considered destructive emotions as to be the result of errors in judgment, and that is sage, a person of moral and intellectual perfection, would not undergo such emotions.

The Ceremony of Expiation

In the Old Testament we find that God's people confessed their sin as a nation, where after the High Priest went into the Most Holy Place to make atonement for them. This ceremony took place once a year on that Day of Atonement. Two goats were used in the ceremony: one goat was slaughtered for the forgiveness of sin and another goat was sent into the desert, after all sin was symbolically placed on him – a token that God was removing the curse and guilt of sin.

Sacrifices were made and blood was shed so that the people's sin could be covered, until Christ's sacrifice on the cross would give people the opportunity to have their sin removed by faith forever. The discipline results in a growth towards and into 'god', through a process of five stages. The last is the final union of the spirit with God.

The goddess of heaven

The Jews were corrupted by "*the goddess of heaven*", just as are a great number of Christian professed people today. Many Bible Scholars are of opinion that the Queen of heaven refers to Semiramis, the wife of Ninus (Nimrod), who was worshipped in Egypt as Isis, in Babylon as Ishtar, as Ashtoreth by the Israelites, as Cybele by the Romans and by other eastern nations under the name of Rhea – the great goddess "mother". The word of Wisdom may be manifested through the audible divine Voice of God, or through angelic manifestations, by dreams or visions or through the spiritual Gift of Prophecy, Toques and Interpretations.

Theism

The believe system that is based on the divine revelation of God towards mankind, is called Theism.

Theophany

Theophany is the appearance of a deity to a person.

Total depravity

The doctrine of Total Depravity is a Theological doctrine that derives from the Augustine concept of Original Sin. It is the teaching that, as a consequence of the Fall of Man, every person born into the world is enslaved to the service of sin and apart from the efficacious or preeminent grace of God, is utterly unable to choose to follow God or choose to accept salvation as it is freely offered (Genesis 6:5; Job 15:14). This doctrine is advocated to various degrees by the Protestant confessions of faith and catechisms, including those of Lutheranism, Methodism, Armenians and Calvinism. Physical depravity is the resulting run down physical condition due to the actual commission of the first sin. Physical depravity is not sin, but spiritual death comes to everybody who sin. The flesh is the opportunity. The flesh is the occasion for sin to take place.

The flesh itself is not sinful, but when we attempt to satisfy a proper desire of the flesh, when Biblical told not to, that is sin (Exodus 20:14, I John 3:4). Physical depravity is the physical consequence of sin. Adam's sin had physical consequences. Physical death must now be the rule for all man. The flesh, once an occasion for good, now becomes the occasion for much evil. Man's environment, as well as body, has been beaten as a result of sin. This is physical depravity, which is not sin. However, when man obeys the normal proper desire of the flesh, when commanded by the LORD to constrain from it, then man commits sin.

This is moral depravity- the act of sinning. Physical depravity precedes moral depravity, but no man has the right to say that he committed adultery because his body forced him.

Transhumanism

Transhumanism is an international and intellectual movement that affirms the possibility and desirability of fundamentally transforming the human condition by developing and making widely available technologies to eliminate aging and to greatly enhance human intellectual, physical and psychological capacities.

Yang and Yin: Yang is the positive force of good, light, life and masculinity, while Yin is the negative force of evil, death and femininity. Definition defined by Dr Willem Harding, verbatim, University of Pretoria South Africa.

-----oOo-----

Abbreviations

- ANF: The Ante-Nicene Fathers, (1951) ed A Roberts and J Donaldson;
Grand Rapids: Wm. B Eerdmans
- ANRW: Aufstieg und Niedergang der römischen Welt, ed. H Temporina and
W. Haases (New York and Berlin: Walter de Gruyter.
- BARev: Biblical Archaeology Review
- Bib: Biblica
- BWANT: Beiträge zur Wissenschaft vom Neuen Testament
- CBQ: Catholic Biblical Quarterly
- CD: Karl Barth. Church Dogmatics. Edited and translated by Geoffrey W
Bromiley and Thomas F Torrance. Edinburgh: T & T Clark, 1936-1977.
- CTJ: Calvin Theological Journal
- CTQ: Concordia Theological Quarterly
- DMT Dimethyltryptamine
- ECT Evangelicals and Catholics Together in Mission
- HDR: Harvard Dissertation in Religion
- HFEA Human fertilization and Embryology Authority
- HUCA: Hebrew Union College Annual

IRT:	Issues in Religion and Theology
ICC:	International Critical Commentary
JSJ:	Journal for the Study of Judaism
KJV:	King James Version of the Bible
LXX:	The Septuagint (Greek translation of the Hebrew Bible)
LTQ:	Lutheran Theological Quarterly
NPNF:	Nicene and Post-Nicene Fathers
NT	New Testament
OT	Old Testament
POS:	Pretoria Oriental Series
RFID	Radio-frequency identification
SBL:	Society of Biblical Literature
TDNT:	Theological Dictionary of the New Testament, ed. Grand Rapids: Wm. B Eerdmans. (1964-74)
WBC:	Word Biblical Commentary

And ye shall call upon Me, and ye shall go and pray unto Me and I will hearken unto you. And ye shall seek me and find Me when ye shall search for Me with your whole heart. And I will be found of you, saith the LORD: and I will turn away your captivity.

Jeremiah 29:13

-----oOo-----

***I sat down under his shadow with great delight, and his fruit was sweet to my taste.
He brought me to the banqueting house, and his banner over me [was] love.***

Song of Songs 2:3,4



Addendum 1

SATANIC REVIVAL:

From a Biblical point of view, powerful and ancient entities are behind the revival of paganism. In the air above and the earth beneath are nefarious progenitors of esoteric mysticism. “*Demons*” to some and “*gods*” to others, such forces have numerous titles. They can appear in hideous forms or as beautiful angels of light.

They are the *wicked spirits* (poneria: the collective body of demon soldiers comprising Satan’s hordes), *rulers of darkness* (kosmokrators: governing spirits of darkness), *powers* (exousia: high ranking powers of evil), and *principalities* (arche: commanding generals over Satan’s fallen army) of Ephesians 6:12.

As the “*gods and goddesses*” of the underworld, they live today and encourage mysticism among pagans, witches, New Agers and even church-goers in at least the following ways:¹

- Aphrodite—sensuality, fertility rites, wiccan rituals, sacred prostitution.
- Amun-Ra—masturbation, self realization, environmentalism, Darwinism.
- Apis—animal worship, animal rights, animal channeling, occultianity.
- Apollo—humanism, oracles, channeling, psychics, drugs, visualization.
- Artemis—goddess worship, animal worship, animal rights, lesbianism.
- Asclepius—holistic medicine, psychic dreaming, spirit-guide animals.

¹ Why is an Occult Revival Seeping the Globe? Thoman Horn for *Cutting Edge magazine*. RNU News Sr. Reporter.
http://www.jesus-is-savior.com/False%20Religions/Wicca%20&%20Witchcraft/burning_man_festivals.htm

- Athene—goddess worship, feminism, the spirituality movement, lesbianism.
- Baal—oracles, polytheism, abortion, fertility issues.
- Demeter—environmental education, earth worship, goddess worship.
- Dionysus—drunkenness, Freudianism, ecstasy, pornography, lesbianism, abortion.
- Eros—eroticism, mystic sex, body worship, body piercing, sacred prostitution.
- Gaia—earth worship, environmentalism, paganism, pantheism, sweat lodges.
- Geb—environmental movement, animal rights, eco-paganism.
- Hades—devil worship, occultism, spiritism, necromancy.
- Hathor—goddess worship, earth worship, animal rights, animal worship.
- Hecate—witchcraft, necromancy, crystals, spells, druidism, feminism.
- Heka—mysticism, demonism, animal rights, environmentalism.
- Hypnos—hypnotism, psychic dreaming, prognostication, e.s.p., clairvoyance.
- Imhotep—mystic healing, animal dancing, holistic medicine, vision quests.
- Isis—wicca, witchcraft, goddess worship, magic, channeling, visualization.
- Min and Qetesh—fertility rites, body worship, sensuality, pornography.
- Osiris—occultianity, necromancy, anthropomorphism, occultism, spiritism.
- Persephone—animism, Zoroastrianism, dualism, magic, necromancy.
- Ptah—universalism, pantheism, mysticism, holistic medicine.
- Sekhmet—environmentalism, mystic medicine, animal worship.
- Seth—homosexuality, rebellion, earth worship, environmental movement.
- Vatchit—devil worship, channeling, trancing, visualization, necromancy.
- Zeus—Satanism, transexualism, pantheism, oracles, animal worship.

By whatever names they may otherwise be called, the underworld spirits elevated in the Burning Man and Occulture festivals are gathering the combined efforts of the kingdom of Satan toward a conspiracy of apocalyptic proportions. As a consequence, we are experiencing an unprecedented pagan revival at a time when the United States and Britain are considered the most advanced economic and technological powers in the world. Where will the revival of paganism lead?

ADDENDUM 2: THE DYNAMICS OF THE PROGRESSION OF SIN²	
DEMONIZATION, (STEP BY STEP)	
REGRESSION	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• The first attacks of the devil imply the repression of the victim, which involves a battle against a person's God-given abilities of release and expression.• To regress implies to go backward in spiritual force and power in contrary to progress, advance and mature. When this goes into reverse – it is the first warning signs of demonic power at work.
REPRESSION	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Demonic power is usually not spoken of in religious circles.• God made humans to express themselves through words, body language and deeds.• Anyone who represses that function of repression in a person is doing the work of Satan.• A soul is in isolation is headed for bondage. A person who is repressed became a walking dead man.• To repress a personality is to take away the joy and gladness of life. Sometimes repression begins at home.• Repression can even be seen in the abnormal environment of some religious churches where a person's fervent feelings towards God are suppressed. Repression in many cases occurs in workplaces.

² Sumrall, Lester (1973) *Demon the Answer Book*. New Kensington, PA: Whitaker House, pp. 93-113

SUPPRESSION	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• To suppress means to squeeze down.• Suppression comes from within. When feelings are not expressed, they are suppressed or kept back which lead to emotional problems on the long run.• Suppressed people are not energetic or enthusiastic about anything. Symptoms, which occur in suppression, are sadness, listlessness, inactivity, disinterestedness and even melancholy.
DEPRESSION	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Depression involves a broken spirit. When a person is pressed down for a long time his spirit became crushed.• Symptoms, which occur in depression, are emotional deadness, blank faces, blank eyes, suicidal thoughts, melancholy and even symptoms of sleeplessness and eating problems may occur. To remain depressed for a long period can promote confusion of the mind.• When a person reached a point where they have lost hope, it is a big step towards complete satanic control of the person.
OPPRESSION	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Oppression implies to be weight down above a person's strength.• Oppression occurs where people are treated cruel and unmerciful by words or actions, or where they are manipulated towards ungodly word of actions.• Some people even worry about going out of their minds because of fear. Satan torments and hurts people with lies. Satan is an oppressor.

OBSESSION	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Obsession destroys the person's personality.• People who are obsessed cannot help themselves anymore and need help from another. The reason for this is that obsession change the mind and people became so confused that straight things become crooked and the truth became distorted. This loss of perspective caused the person to be out of step with reality.• Obsession can occur by believing a lie, through jealousy, through hatred and bitterness or even through any immoral sin. The obsessed are passive, have no will power, no strength to resist the devil and became a slave to Satan. Anything that destroys a person's will power should be avoided. It needs a man or women of faith to pray for deliverance.
POSSESSION	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• The process from obsession to possession takes usually very long. Not many people are in this stage.• A possessed person is completely under the jurisdiction of the devil and has no mind of his own.• Satan has full control of that life and the person has no spirit to reach out to God and no soul to pray for help.• Symptoms which occur when person is demon-possessed are the following: When a demon uses the voice and throat of the person to speak out; when a person is insane (temporary and complete); where people became like an animal; such a person cannot look anybody straight in the eyes, or hold his/her head up to you anymore.

So shall they fear the name of the LORD from the west, and his glory from the rising of the sun. When the enemy shall come in like a flood, the Spirit of the LORD shall lift up a standard against him.

Isaiah 59:19

-----oOo-----